

TRÜBNER'S
ORIENTAL SERIES

Complete Work now Ready. Post 8vo. cloth, price 10s. 6d. each

THE SHÁHNÁMA OF FIRDAUSÍ.

Done into English by

ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A.

AND

EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

The year A.D. 1010 saw the completion of the Sháhnáma, the great Persian epic. Its author, the poet Firdausí, spent over thirty laborious years in its composition, only to experience, when the task had been achieved, a heart-breaking disappointment well worthy of inclusion in any record of the calamities of authors. His work has survived the test of time, and by general consent is accounted to be one of the few great epics of the world. Geographically, and in some other respects, it may be said to stand half-way between the epics of Europe and those of India. In its own land it has no peer, while in construction and subject-matter it is unique. Other epics centre round some heroic character or incident to which all else is subservient. In the Sháhnáma there is no lack either of heroes or of incidents, but its real hero is the ancient Persian people, and its theme their whole surviving legendary history from the days of the First Man to the death of the last Sásánian Sháh in the middle of the seventh century of our era. It is the glory of the Persian race that they alone among all nations possess such a record, based as it is on their own traditions and set forth in the words of their greatest poet. In another sense, too, the Sháhnáma is unique. The authors of the other great epics tell us little or nothing of their own personalities or of their sources of information. Their works are fairy palaces suspended in mid air; we see the result, but know not how it was achieved. The author of the Sháhnáma takes us into his confidence from the first, so that in reading it we are let into the secret of epic-making, and can apply the knowledge thus gained to solve the problem of the construction of its great congeners. To the student of comparative mythology and folk-lore, to the lover of historic romance or romantic history, and to all that are fond of tales of high achievements and the gests of heroes, the Sháhnáma is a storehouse of rich and abundant material. To set forth a complete presentation of it with the needful notes and elucidations is the object of the present translation, made from two of the best printed texts of the original—that of Vullers and Landauer, and that of Turner Macan.

THE
SHĀHNĀMA OF FIRDAUSÍ

DONE INTO ENGLISH BY
ARTHUR GEORGE WARNER, M.A.,
AND
EDMOND WARNER, B.A.

*"The homes that are the dwellings of to-day
Will sink 'neath shower and sunshine to decay,
But storm and rain shall never mar what I
Have built—the palace of my poetry."* FIRDAUSÍ.

VOL. IX

LONDON:
KEGAN PAUL, TRENCH, TRÜBNER & CO., LTD
BROADWAY HOUSE: CARTER LANE, E.C.
1925

The rights of translation and of reproduction are reserved.

PRINTED IN GREAT BRITAIN BY THE DEVONSHIRE PRESS, TORQUAY

PREFATORY NOTE .

The General Index at the end of this volume should
be consulted in preference to the Indexes to the
separate volumes of this work.—E.W.

CONTENTS

	PAGE
PREFATORY NOTE	v
ABBREVIATIONS	xi
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	xii

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (*concluded*)

KUBÁD (COMMONLY CALLED SHÍRWÍ)—	
SFCR.	
1. How Shírwí ascended the Throne, announced his Will, and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and Excuses	8
2. How Khusrau Parwíz answered Shírwí	15
3. How Shírwí grieved for Khusrau Parwíz and how the Chiefs were displeased thereat	27
4. How Bárbad lamented Khusrau Parwíz, cut off his own Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music	29
5. How the Chiefs demanded from Shírwí the Death of Khusrau Parwíz and how he was slain by Mihr Hurmuzd	32
6. How Shírwí asked Shírín in Marriage, how Shírín killed herself, and how Shírwí was slain	36
ARDSHÍR, SON OF SHÍRWÍ—	
1. How Ardshír, Son of Shírwí, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs	44
2. How Guráz was displeased at Ardshír being Sháh and how he caused Ardshír to be slain by Pírúz Son of Khusrau	45
GURÁZ (ALSO CALLED FARÁYÍN)—	
1. How Guráz (also called Faráyín) received News of the Slaying of Ardshír, hastened to Irán, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahránguráz	51
PÚRÁNDUKHT—	
1. How Púrándukht ascended the Throne and slew Pírúz, Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended	56

ÁZARMDUKHT—		PAGE
SECT.		
1.	How Ázarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died	59
FARRUKHZÁD—		
1.	How Farrukhzád ascended the Throne and how he was slain by a Slave	61
YAZDAGIRD—		
1.	How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs	70
2.	How Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Irán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother	72
3.	How Rustam wrote to Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and how he replied	78
4.	How Rustam fought with Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and was slain	83
5.	How Yazdagird consulted with the Iránians and went to Khurásán	85
6.	How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr	89
7.	How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús	90
8.	How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr met him	95
9.	How Máhwí of Súr incited Bízhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill	96
10.	How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and how the Archmages counselled Máhwí to forbear	101
11.	How Yazdagird was slain by Khusrau, the Miller	107
12.	How Máhwí of Súr was informed of the Obsequies of Yazdagird and ascended the Throne	112
13.	How Bízhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird, and of Máhwí of Súr's Accession to the Throne, led forth the Host to fight with him	115
14.	How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of Bízhan	118
15.	Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma	121
INDEX	. . . . .	123
GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS	. . . . .	135
GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS	. . . . .	139
CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS	. . . . .	177
GENERAL INDEX	. . . . .	191

THE SHAHNAMA

VOL. IX.

ABBREVIATIONS

C.—	Macan's edition of the Sháhnáma
L.—	Lumsden's do.
P.—	Mohl's do.
T.—	Tíhrán do.
V.—	Vullers' do.
BCM.	The Chahár Maqála ("Four Discourses") of Nidhámí-i-'Arúdi-i-Samarqandí. Translated into English by Edward G. Browne, M.A., M.B.
CTC.	Theophanis Chronographia. Ex Recensione Ioannis Classeni.
LEC.	The Lands of the Eastern Califate. By G. Le Strange.
NIN.	Das Iranische Nationalepos von Theodor Nöldeke.
NT.	Geschichte der Perser und Araber sur Zeit der Sasaniden . . . von Th. Nöldeke.
RM.	The Rauzat-us-safa; or, Garden of Purity. . . . By Mirkhond. . . . Translated . . . by E. Rehatsck.
RSM.	The Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy. By George Rawlinson, M.A.
ZT.	Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid-Tabari, traduite . . . Par M. Hermann Zotenberg.

NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION

a as in "water."

i as in "pique."

ü as in "rude."

a as in "servant."

i as in "sin."

u as in "foot."

ai as in "time."

au as in *ou* in "cloud."

g is always hard as in "give."

hh as *ch* in the German "buch."

zh as *z* in "azure,"

IV

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY
(Concluded)

XLIV

KUBÁD (COMMONLY CALLED SHIRWÍ)

HE REIGNED SEVEN MONTHS

ARGUMENT

Kubád on his accession sends two chiefs to accuse of mis-government the fallen and imprisoned Shál, Khusrau Parwíz, who justifies himself at great length. His fall is made the subject of a lament by Bárbad, the minstrel, who afterwards mutilates himself. The chiefs, noticing symptoms of remorse in Kubád, insist upon the death of Khusrau Parwíz who is killed with all his other sons. Kubád falls in love with, and wishes to marry, Shírín, who poisons herself rather than consent, and Kubád himself is poisoned soon afterwards.

NOTE

The days of the reign of Kubád (Kobad II., Feb.-Sept., A.D. 628) were few and evil. Tradition already had prepared the ground for this in the unfavourable account given of his early years.¹ The murder of his father was followed by that of all his brothers, and by the tragic death of Shírín, while in addition to all these horrors a frightful pestilence broke out in his reign and the great mortality that ensued still further weakened the resources of an already almost exhausted country and helped to pave the way for the successful Arab invasion of a few years later on. Kubád is represented in the poem as a loutish, uneducated youth,² but even if his abilities had been great it is difficult to see how he could have extricated himself from the coil in which

¹ See Vol. viii., p. 390

² *Id.*

he found himself involved without mishap to himself or others. He owed his release from prison and perhaps his life to the very conspirators that subsequently demanded of him for their own security the death of his father. To have refused would have been fatal to himself, while in all probability his father and his brothers, with the exception of one who would have been made Sháh, would have perished all the same. It is inconceivable that the conspirators would have run the risk to themselves of restoring Khusrau Parwíz, with his black record of ingratitude as instanced by his treatment of Bandví and Gustaham,¹ to his former position as ruler. With the exception of his infatuation for Shírín, which hardly can be regarded as historical, Kubád throughout his short reign was the victim of circumstances.

§§ 1 and 2. Kharrád, son of Barzín, was one of the most trusted ministers of Khusrau Parwíz and planned the assassination of Bahrám Chúbína.² According to Tabarí he fell at the battle of Dhú Kár.³

As the epoch of the Sásánian Dynasty draws to an end through scenes of deepening tragedy the legitimist leanings of the tradition seem to become more and more pronounced and we have an instance here. It is hardly to be supposed, historically speaking, that formal charges of misgovernment were drawn up against, and as formally answered by, Khusrau Parwíz, but rather that someone, desirous of vindicating that Sháh's memory and conversant with the circumstances of the time, soon after his death drew up the charges and the replies thereto. Versions of them are given in both the Arabic and Persian Tabarí and elsewhere. Four of the charges are found in both the Tabaris as well as in the Sháhnáma.⁴ They are :—

1. The murder by Khusrau Parwíz of his father Hurmuzd.
2. The illegitimate accumulation of treasure as a result of the financial oppression of the people.
3. The harsh treatment of the royal princes.
4. The refusal to restore the True Cross.

To these the Arabic Tabarí adds :—

1. The general ill-treatment of all prisoners.
2. Enforced recruiting for the royal Haram even of women already married.

¹ See Vol. viii., p. 354 seq.

² *Id.* p. 331 seq.

³ *Id.* p. 190.

⁴ NT, 363 seq. ZT, ii., 334 seq.

3. The keeping of the troops for a long period absent from home.

The Persian Tabarí adds :—

1. The imprisonment of the troops defeated by the Arabs at Dhú Kár and by Heraclius.
2. The exactions of arrears of tribute for the previous twenty or thirty years.
3. The attempt to slay the youthful Yazdagird (afterwards the last Sásánian Sháh).
4. The deposition of Nu'mán, prince of Híra.¹
5. The mutilation and subsequent execution of Mardánsháh.²

In the Arabic Tabarí eight charges are made against Khusrau Parwíz two of which—those relating to the royal Haram and the refusal to restore the “True Cross”—are left unanswered.

In the Persian Tabarí eleven charges are formulated to each of which in the same order an answer is made. Some of the charges, however, must be regarded as later additions while that relating to Nu'mán is not likely to have suggested itself to a Persian and must come from an Arab source. In the Sháhnáma there are eight charges, all of which are more or less answered, but not in the same order as they are preferred, but in the following :—1, 6, 7, 8, 2, 5, 3, 4. Thus Khusrau Parwíz replies to the most serious accusations—those of offences against persons—first. The Sháhnáma agrees most closely with the Arabic Tabarí, supplies the missing answer with regard to the “True Cross,” but does not deal with the *gravamen* of the royal Haram question, as that particular charge is not one of those mentioned in the poem.

Galínúsh subsequently served in the war against the Arabs, fought at the Battle of the Bridge, and was perhaps slain at Kádisiya.³

§ 5. Indignant legitimate tradition is naturally very wroth with Mihr Hurmuzd, the murderer of Khusrau Parwíz, whom it describes as the lowest of the low and vilest of the vile. According to Tabarí, however, Mihr Hurmuzd was the son of Mardánsháh, the governor of Nímrúz and one of the most obedient and faithful of Khusrau Parwíz' officials. In the Persian Tabarí's version of the Romance of Bahram

¹ See Vol. viii., p. 190.

² See p. 6.

³ NT, p. 365 note. RM, Pt. II., vol. iii., pp. 95, 116.

Chúbína that hero's brother, Yaláni-sína in the Sháhnáma, is called Mardánsháb. Yalán-sína is always represented as being one of Bahram Chúbína's most loyal adherents just as the other brother, Gurdwí, was a firm supporter of Khusrau Parwíz, while their sister Gurdyá held an intermediate position, faithful to Bahram Chúbína, but opposing his kingly ambition in every way in her power. Later on when married to Gustaham, the maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, she agreed, on condition that she should become the Sháh's wife and that a full amnesty should be given to all her adherents, to murder her husband and did so. There would be nothing strange therefore in Mardánsháb, if identical with Yalán-sína, becoming reconciled to, and receiving high office from, Khusrau Parwíz. He would serve one master as faithfully as he served the other. In the circumstances the strange thing would have been for the treacherous Sháh not to have taken the first convenient occasion against him. According to the story the Sháh, two years before his deposition, consulted the astrologers who informed him that his death would come from Nímrúz. He therefore began to suspect and summoned Mardánsháb, but finding no pretext for putting him to death, as he was perfectly loyal and withal an aged man, determined merely to cut off his right hand and make him a large present of money as compensation. The sentence was carried out. Mardánsháb regarded such a mutilation as worse than death and, when shortly afterwards the Sháh was good enough to send and express his regret for what had occurred, asked the Sháh to grant him a boon. The Sháh swore to do so, on which Mardánsháb requested that his head should be struck off in order to wipe out the disgrace put upon him. The Sháh, bound by his oath, felt himself obliged to consent and the execution took place accordingly. The Shah wished to make Mardánsháb's son governor of Nímrúz, but he refused and withdrew from the army.¹ He joined the conspiracy against Khusrau Parwíz² and by avenging his father on the Sháh justified the prediction of the astrologers.

The account given by Theophanes of the last days of the Sháh is different. As a general rule it is not prudent to put faith in stories of what occurred in Oriental palaces or prisons, but owing to the special circumstances of the case his information may be good in this instance, as it appears to be

¹ NT, p. 379. ZT, ii., 330. ² See Vol. viii., p. 196.

based on letters written by Heraclius. After the capture of Khusrau Parwíz by the conspirators, he was bound and confined in the "House of Darkness," which he had himself built as a stronghold for his treasures. Here he was sparingly fed on bread and water for, said Shírwí: "Let him eat the gold that he has vainly amassed, and for whose sake he has starved many, and made the world itself a desert." Shírwí also sent satraps to revile and spit upon him, had his son Mardásas, whom he had wished to crown, slain before his eyes, and all his other sons as well, sent his enemies to beat and spit upon him, and, after five days of such treatment, had him put to death with arrows. Shírwí then wrote to Heraclius to announce the death of the detested Khusrau Parwíz, arranged terms of peace, released all the captives, and restored the "True Cross."¹ With regard to these latter statements of Theophanes it should be observed that peace was not concluded, and the "True Cross" restored, till after the death of Shírwí.²

According to Tabarí Kubád had Mihr Hurmuzd put to death.³

§ 6. The association of Khusrau Parwíz and Shírin began, it would seem,⁴ before his accession to the throne, and he reigned for thirty-eight years. If Shírwí really wished to marry Shírin it must have been for political motives and because she had been so much in his father's confidence and might furnish useful information. For a son to marry his father's wives was, according to Persian ideas, quite the correct procedure in the circumstances.

Kubád is said to have been bitterly reproached by his two sisters, Púrándukht and Ázarmdukht, for his share in the deaths of his father and brothers, and to have suffered much from sickness and remorse. He died at Dastagird, but from what cause is uncertain.⁵ The plague was very virulent at the time. Poison was often made to account for what was really due to disease.

¹ CTC, i., 502. ² NT, p. 392 and note. ³ Id. p. 382.

⁴ See vol. viii., p. 383. ⁵ NT, p. 384 and notes.

§ 1

*How Shírwí ascended the Throne, announced his Will,
and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and
Excuses*

Now when Shírwí sat on the goodly throne,
And donned the royal crown so much desired,
The leaders of the Iránians each drew near
To proffer him the homage due to kings,
Exclaiming : “ Worshipful and honoured Sháh !
Know, God gave thee the crown, and now thou sittest
Securely on the throne of ivory,
And may thy sons and scions have the world.”

Kubád replied : “ Be ever conquering
And happy. Never will we practise ill.
How good is justice with benevolence !
The world will we keep peaceful and cut off
The works of Áhriman by every right,
Ancestral precedent that greateneth
The Glory of our Faith. I will dispatch
A message to my sire and tell him all.
He is in evil odour in the world
Through his ill deeds : let him excuse his faults
To God and turn to custom and the way.
If he shall heed me he will not resent
My conduct. Then will I devote myself
To state-affairs and strive to compass justice
Both publicly and privily, do good
Where good is due, and break no poor man’s heart.
I need two honest men of goodly speech,
Whose memories are charged with ancient lore.”

He asked the assembly : “ Whom shall I employ ?
Who is most shrewd and honest in Írán ? ”

The warriors all suggested by their looks
Two men of lore if they should give consent.
Kubád perceived whom the Írániāns
Agreed to choose : one of them was Ashtád,
The other was Kharrád, son of Barzín,
The old—two sages eloquent and heedful.
Kubád addressed them thus : “ O ye wise men,
Ye chiefs experienced and veteran !
Deem not the conduct of the world too toilsome,
Because the Great by travail compass treasure.
It is for you now to approach the Sháh ;
Perchance through you he may conform himself.
Appeal to him by instance new or old
As there is need.”

With tears unwillingly
Those sages made them ready. When Kharrád,
Son of Barzín, and when Ashtád, who had
Gashasp for sire, had mounted on their steeds,
As bidden, Kubád said : “ Now with right good will
'Tis yours to take the road to Taisafún,¹
To carry to my glorious sire a message,
And bear it all in mind from first to last.
Say : ‘ 'Twas no fault of ours nor did the Írániāns
Cause this, but having left the way of Faith
Thou hast thyself incurred God's chastisement,
For, first, no son legitimate will shed
His sire's blood though impure or give assent
Thereto and fill the hearts of upright folk
With pain. Again, thy treasures fill the world,
And thine exactions reach all provinces,
While, thirdly, many horsemen brave and famed
Within Írán who gladdened there have left
Son, country, and their own pure kith and kin,

¹ Couplet omitted.

Have parted, this to Chín and that to Rúm,
 And now are scattered o'er each march and land.
 Again, when Cæsar, who had done and borne
 So much for thee, had given thee a host
 And daughter too with treasure and much else,
 Desired of thee the Cross of Christ for Rúm,
 So that his land might be revived thereby,
 How did the Cross of Jesus profit so
 Thy treasures when complaisance on thy part
 Would have made Cæsar glad ? But thou didst not
 Restore it, hadst not wit enough for that,
 Or one to guide thee to humanity.
 Again, thy greed was such that wisdom's eye
 Was all obscured in thee, and thou didst seize
 The chattels of the poor whose curses brought
 Ill on thy head. Thou slewest thy mother's brothers,¹
 Two loyal men who gave thy throne a lustre.
 Moreover thou hadst sixteen sons whose days
 And nights were passed in prison while no chief
 Could sleep secure from thee but hid in fear.²
 Know, that which hath befall'n thee is from God ;
 Reflect on thy foul deeds. As for myself,
 I am but as the instrument in all
 This wrong, am but the heading of the tale.
 By God, 'twas not my fault, no aim of mine
 To wreck the Sháh's throne ! Now for all seek grace,
 And say so to these chieftains of Irán ;
 Turn from ill deeds to God—the Guide to good—
 Who may abate the woes that thou hast brought
 Upon thyself.' "

On hearing this the twain
 Departed with their hearts all seared and sore
 Till, sorrowful and weeping, they arrived
 At Taisafún and in that city sought

¹ Bandwí and Gustaham.

² This sentence comes at the end of the speech in the text.

The palace of Márúsipand for there
 The exalted king resided. Galínúsh
 Sat at the palace-gate : thou wouldest have said :—
 “Earth is convulsed before him !” He was armed
 In helm and breastplate, all the Arab steeds
 Wore bards, and all his soldiers were drawn up,
 Equipped, and sword in hand. He grasped a mace
 Of steel, his heart all fire and storm. Now when
 Kharrád, son of Barzín, and when Ashtád,
 Son of Gashasp, those sages twain, dismounted,
 He rose forthwith, rejoiced to look on them,
 And gave them place besetting, hailing them
 As famous chiefs. The eloquent Kharrád
 First laved his tongue in valour and then said
 To Galínúsh : “Kubád the glorious
 Hath donned in peace the Kaian crown. Irán,
 Túrán and Rúm have tidings that Shírwí¹
 Is seated on the throne of king of kings.
 Why this cuirass and helm and massive mace ?
 Who is thine enemy ?”

Said Galínúsh :—

“O veteran ! may all thy doings prosper.
 Thou art concerned about my tender frame
 Because I am in iron garniture. C. 2029
 I bless thee for thy kindness ; thou deservest
 That I shall sprinkle jewels over thee.
 Thy words are naught but good, and may the sun
 Be thine associate in the world. Declare
 Why thou hast come, then look for my reply.”

He thus gave answer : “Glorious Kubád
 Commissioned me to bear Khusrau Parwíz
 A message and if now thou wilt ask audience²
 I will deliver what the world-lord said—

¹ That being the name by which he had been generally known, his real name (Kubád) having been kept secret. See Vol. viii., pp. 371, 416.

² Reading with P.

That monarch of the flock."

Said Galínúsh :—

" Who can remember words so well as thou,
O worshipful ? Yet nathless Sháh Kubád
Gave me full many a counsel touching this,
And charged me, saying : ' Let none have by day
Or night an audience of Khusráu Parwíz
Unless thou hearest what the messenger
Hath got to say in Persian new or old.' "

Ashtád said : " I hold not my message secret,
O fortunate ! It is : ' The sword is fruiting,
And nuzzling princes' heads.' In this regard
Now ask for audience of Khusráu Parwíz
That we may tell the message of the Sháh."

This hearing Galínúsh arose, made fast
His mail, went to the Sháh with folded arms,
As servants should, and said thus : " Live for ever,
O Sháh ! May evil never vex thy heart.
There cometh by Ashtád and by Kharrád,
Son of Barzín, a message from the Sháh
From court."

Khusráu Parwíz laughed out and said :—
" Speak wiser words for if he be the king
Then what am I, and why am I within
This narrow prison, and why need'st thou ask
That I shall grant an audience unto any,
Be their words false or true ? "

So Galínúsh

Returned to those two warriors, reported
The answer of the paladin, and said :—
" Now go with folded arms, declare your message,
And hearken his reply."

Those sages twain
Of honest speech inswathed their visages
In sashes brought from Chín and, when they saw
The Sháh, did reverence and waited long

What while he sat upon a lofty throne
 Adorned with effigies of sheep and wolves,
 Impleached with gold and gems, with under him
 A couch of yellow broidery. He leaned
 On cushions hued like lapis-lazuli,
 Held a fine quince and drowsed there all amort.
 When he beheld those chiefs supreme in wisdom
 He roused himself and secretly invoked
 God's help. He laid that fine quince on the cushions
 That he might welcome those two wayfarers.¹
 The quince slipped from the cushions, rolled unbruised
 Upon the couch and thence from throne to floor.
 Ashtād ran, took it up, wiped off the dust,
 And laid the quince upon his head. The world-lord
 Turned from Ashtād that he might neither see
 Nor scent the quince. They set it on the throne,
 And stood themselves. The matter of the quince²
 Perturbed Khusrau Parwīz who boded ill,
 Looked up to heaven, and said : " O truthful Judge!
 Who can establish one whom Thou o'erthrowest,
 Who join what Thou hast broken ? When bright
 fortune
 Departeth from a race it bringeth sorrow
 Because the day of joy is passed away."

C. 2030

Then to Ashtād : " Now for thine ambassage
 From mine unnatural child of ill repute,
 And from that handful of conspirators,
 My hateful and black-hearted enemies.
 Malignant fools are they and in their folly
 Most wretched. Fortune will desert our race ;
 None will rejoice again ; the crown and throne
 Will pass to those unfit ; this royal Tree
 Will be destroyed ; the Base will be exalted ;
 The spirits of the Great grow sorrowful.

¹ "ces deux esclaves." Mohl.² Reading with P.

The majesty will bide not with our sons,
 Or with our kindred or posterity ;
 Their friends all be their chiefest enemies,
 Revilers and destroyers of the race.
 This quince hath made the secret evident ;
 The throne of king of kings will bear no fruit.
 Now tell to me the words that thou hast heard :
 I count his less than water in the stream."

Then those two men released their tongues to speak,
 And told all that Kubád, his son, had said,
 Not keeping e'en a whisper back from him.
 The king of kings, when he had heard the message,
 Writhed with distress and heaved a deep, cold sigh.
 Then said he to those chiefs : " Hear my response,
 And bear it to the young prince, every word.
 Say : ' Quit thine own misdeeds ere blaming others'.
 What thou hast uttered are they words of thine ?
 A murrain on the prompter !¹ Speak not so
 As to rejoice thy foe with thy fool's talk,
 And let him learn that thou hast not the wisdom
 To furnish speech with knowledge from thy brains.
 If thy trust is in words that profit not
 Thou mak'st default in soul and wisdom too.
 He that shall call thee wicked, then acknowledge
 Thee to be world-lord, should not sit before thee,
 And order matters whether great or small.
 Think not in future of such messages
 Or thou wilt cause thy foemen to rejoice.
 My state hath been appointed me by God ;
 My hopes are set upon the other world,
 And thou by these thy charges which are lies
 Wilt gain no glory in the nobles' eyes.' "

§ 2

How Khusrau Parwiz answered Shirwi

“ Now will I make full answer that thou mayst
 Repeat my words in public. They will serve
 As my memorial when I am gone—
 A truthful statement of my case—and thou
 Wilt know, when I reveal my grief and travail,
 That all my treasures were derived from toil.
 Thou speakest in the first place of Hurmuzd,
 His anger with me, and those bygone days :
 My father’s wrath against us was aroused
 By slanderer’s words and thus confusion came.
 When I had learned what occupied his thoughts
 I left Irán by night, avoiding roads.
 He sought my death by poison ; I perceived
 No antidote but flight and so I fled,
 And was not taken in the net of bale.
 I heard that ill had come upon the Sháh,
 And quitted Barda’ when the news arrived.
 That knave Bahrám Chúbína with his troops
 Opposed us on the battlefield. I fled
 From him too on the day of fight that I
 Might fall not in his clutches. Afterwards
 I came a second time and bravely fought,
 My troublous fortune passed away and all
 The realm that I had lost returned to me.
 My contest with him was no brief affair ;
 The whole world were spectators of the strife.
 By the command of God who multiplieth
 His benefits on us, and is the Guide
 In good and ill, Irán and Turkistán¹

¹ Túrán in the text.

Submitted and Bahrám Chúbína's plans
 Were foiled. Released from war with him I hasted,
 First, to take vengeance for my father's death.
 C. 2032 Bandwí and Gustaham, my mother's brothers,
 Men that had not a peer in any land,
 Had risked their lives for me and were all mine
 In love as well as kinship, but there were
 My father's death and mine own grief thereat ;
 I was not sluggish to avenge his blood.
 I lopped Bandwí both hand and foot for he
 Had made the Sháh's place dark, while Gustaham,
 Who disappeared and sought some distant nook,
 Was slain all unawares by my command :
 Those murderers' lives and aims all came to naught.
 Next, as to what thou said'st of thine own case,
 Of thine own strait confinement and affairs ;
 It was to keep my sons from evil deeds
 That would recoil upon themselves. Ye were
 Not straitly bound in prison, not misprized,
 And had no harm to fear. I did not then
 Treat you with scorn but held my treasury
 At your disposal, acting as the Sháhs
 Had done before, not idly or without
 A precedent. Chase, minstrelsy, and polo—
 All that befitteth chiefs—were yours at will,
 With hawks and cheetahs, jewels and dínárs.
 Your so called prison was a palace where
 Ye lived in joy. I dreaded thee moreover
 Through what the readers of the stars had said.
 That was the cause of thine imprisonment
 That thou mightst do us naught of injury—
 The very injury that thou art doing.
 I never parted with thy horoscope
 Till I had sealed and given it to Shírín.
 When I had reigned for six and thirty years,
 And thou past doubt amidst such pleasant days

Gav'st all the matter to the wind, although
 Much time had passed o'er us, there came to thee
 A letter out of Hindústán but not
 Without my cognizance. The chief of Rájas
 Sent us a letter, jewels, divers stuffs,
 An Indian scimitar, white elephant,
 And all that I could hope for in the world,
 And with the scimitar was gold brocade
 With all varieties of genis uncut.
 To thee the letter was on painted silk ;
 So when I saw the Indian script I called
 An Indian scribe, a fluent, heedful speaker,
 Who when he read the Indian Rája's words
 Wept for the letter ran : ' Live joyfully
 For thou art worthy both of joy and realm,
 And on the day of Dai in month Ázar
 Thou wilt be king and ruler of the world.
 Thy sire will reign for eight and thirty years,
 For so the stars ordain. Good times will shine
 Upon thec ; thou wilt don the crown of greatness.'
 These words have been fulfilled to me to-day,
 But we should wash nót from our hearts affection.
 I was aware that fortune had decreed
 That when thy throne had gained its brilliancy
 Mine only portion would be toil and pain,
 And that my bright day would be turned to gloom ;
 But as I gave, had Faith, made friends, and loved
 I did not lour by reason of that letter.
 I gave it, having read it, to Shírín,
 And pondered much upon it. In her keeping
 Are both the letter and the horoscope,
 And no one great or small is ware thercof.
 If thou wouldst see it make request of her ;
 Thou haply mayst regard it more or less.
 I wot that seeing it thou wilt repent,
 And seek to heal the past. For what thou said'st

C. 2033

Of bonds and of imprisonments, and how
 We have done others hurt, 'tis this world's way,
 And that of former chiefs and kings of kings,
 And if thou know'st it not speak with an archmage ;
 He will enlighten thee thereon and tell thee :—
 ' 'Tis ill to keep God's enemy alive.'

Those that were in our prison were mere dívs
 Complained of by the righteous. Neither bloodshed
 Nor utter harshness ever was our trade.
 I shut up criminals and did not hold
 Of small account wrongs done by them to others ;
 But now I hear that thou hast freed these men—
 Men worse than dragons—and for this thou art
 A sinner guilty both in word and deed
 In God's sight. Now that thou art lord be prudent,
 And if thou know'st not how consult the wise.
 Forgive not those that vex thee though thou hopest
 For wealth through them, and what can better bonds
 For one in whom thou seest naught but harm ?
 In talking of my wealth thou hast not shown
 Good sense and wisdom. We have never asked
 For more than toll and tax. When these were paid
 If any were still rich, though men might say
 That they were foes and miscreants of the seed
 Of Áhri man, we thought of God and passed
 Such matters lightly by. From Him I had
 The crown and throne, and they have cost me dear.
 The Maker of the world, the righteous Judge,
 Hath willed this change of fortune. In the world
 His will is paramount, so when He would
 Our minishment we seek not for addition.
 We sought to please our Judge, but by our toils
 Have not evaded His apportionment,
 And when He asketh me I will tell all.
 That Questioner is wiser than thou art,
 And one more potent in all good and ill.

The miscreants that stand before thee now
 Are not thy friends or kin, and what they say
 Of me that also will they say of thee
 Before thy foes. They are but slaves of gold
 And silver : thou wilt find in them no helper.
 They have possessed thy heart and there instilled
 Each fault of mine. Such words as these are not
 In thy philosophy and will not profit
 Those miscreants' minds, but I have uttered them
 For my foes' sake that they who read this letter,
 Writ in the ancient tongue, may know that lies
 Lack lustre even from the mouths of Sháhs.
 'Twill be too a memorial in the world,
 A consolation to the man of wisdom,
 And after our decease whoc'er shall read
 These words of ours will learn our policy.
 I gathered armies from Bartás and Chín,
 And everywhere appointed generals,
 Then made attacks upon mine enemies
 Till none dared raise his head. When they were
 scattered
 Our treasuries were all filled. The whole land toiled
 For us, and from the sea so many gems
 Were brought us that the shipmen grew aweary.
 Plain, sea, and mountain, all were mine. Now when
 The treasury of drachms had been expended
 The coffers were refilled with new dínárs,
 With precious stones and royal jewelry,
 As well as clothes and implements of war,
 And when our crown was twenty-six years old
 Our treasuries were rich with many gems.
 I struck a new die for my drachms and turned
 To joy and merriment. That year when I
 Had ta'en account I found the total sum
 Ten million of dínárs. Paidáwasís,¹

¹ See Vol. vii., p. 95 *note*.

In Persian reckoning, I spent and squandered.
 Each purse contained twelve thousand in dínárs,
 And those thus spent were royal, while besides
 The tribute and dínárs from Hindústán,
 The realm of Rúm and land of sorcerers ;
 Besides from every province gifts and tribute
 From all the sovereigns and potentates ;
 C. 2035 Besides New Year and Autunin offerings,
 The gifts of horses and of fair-faced slaves ;
 Besides cuirasses, helmets, axes, swords,
 Which every one sent to us liberally ;
 Besides musk, camphor, sables, beaver-skins,
 Red weasels' and white wolves', our subjects all
 Set suchlike loads upon their beasts and sought
 Our court in haste ; none was recalcitrant.

Abundant toil of all sorts have we spent
 To amass a treasure—one additional
 To those known as Khuzrá and as 'Arús,¹
 Reserved by me against an evil day.

We long discussed what name the hoard should have,
 And in the end we called it Bág Áwar.²
 Thus in my six and twentieth year of reign
 Heaven till the eight and thirtieth favoured me ;
 My chieftains were all safe, my foes all quaked,
 And now I hear that thou art sovereign—
 An evil juncture this for all the world,
 Which rest of pleasure must perforce be mute.
 Thou wilt make earth calamitous, fulfilled
 With suffering and profitless. Moreover,
 Those same injurious persons that surround thee,
 And are the Light³ of thy dark nights, will give
 Thy throne up to the wind that thou mayst not
 Enjoy the world. Were there with thee a sage,
 So that thy darkened mind might be illumined,
 Thou wouldest not do amiss in giving gifts

¹ See Vol. viii., p. 406.

² *Id.*

³ Urmuzd in text.

So that thy wealth might reach the poor. My son,
Whose days are few, whose wisdom is but scant !
Solicitude will rob thy soul of joy.

This know, that these our treasures are thy stay ;
The opportunity is in thy grasp.

They are the appanage of royalty ;
A world that is all moneyless is lost.

A pauper Sháh will be unjust, and he
Whose hand is empty hath no strength or worth.

Without the means of largess he by all
Will be declared a fraud and not a Sháh.

Moreover, if thy riches reach thy foes,
And all the idols come to Brahmans' hands,
The worshippers will turn from God, thy name
And fame be spurned. If thou art treasureless
Thou wilt not have an army, and thy subjects
Will hail thee not as Sháh. The dog is good
At begging bread, but if thou fillest him

He threateneth thy life. Again, thou said'st
About my strategy that I have stationed
The troops along the roads, and blamest me
Through ignorance, not knowing gain from loss.

The answer is that by my toil I gathered
My splendid treasures, captured foreign cities,
And shattered all my foes that we might sit
Without vexation, toil, or injury

In peace upon the pleasant throne. I scattered
My horse about the frontier, and (to show
The difference 'twixt the worthless and the worthy)
When thou recall'st the troops from every side
The foe will see the road clear, for Írán
Is like a garden in the jocund Spring,
Whose happy blossoms never fail to flower,
A garden of pomegranate and narcissus,
Of apples and of quince ; but when the orchard
Becometh void of men the enemy

C. 2036

Will root up all the marjoram and snap
 All branches of pomegranate and of quince,
 Irán's walls are its troops and gear of war,
 Its thorns all arrows on its battlements,
 And if in wantonness thou flingest down
 The garden-wall the garden is as waste,
 As sea or upland. Cast not down its wall
 Or thou wilt break the Iránians' hearts and backs,
 For then will raid and ravage, horsemen's shouts,
 And all the incidents of war ensue.
 Expose not thou our children, wives, and land
 To trouble : let but one such year clapse,
 And sages will describe thee as a fool.
 Now I have heard that thou dost give high place
 To men unworthy. Know that Núshírwán,
 Son of Kubád,¹ recorded in his Letter
 Of Counsel that whoe'er doth give his arms
 To foes doth give himself to slaughtering,
 Since, when he asketh back those arms for use,
 The enemy will fight.² As for the message
 Of Cæsar, which hath made thee call me heartless,
 And self-willed, thou recallest not the facts :
 Thy words were prompted by some counsellor.
 As for my tyranny and his good faith,
 Canst thou discern good faith from tyranny ?
 Receive mine answer, thou of little wit !
 But let me say withal, as is but right,
 Thou art the plaintiff and the witness too --
 A thing no man of wisdom would allow.
 When Cæsar washed off from his face the dust
 Of bale he chose me as his son-in-law
 For valour's sake. Whocver walketh not
 The earth for ill, and hath some share of wisdom
 Within him, knoweth that Bahrám Chúbína
 Began the feud and that the Iránians

¹ Reading with P. and T.

² See Vol. viii., p. 27.

Took sides with him. The Rúmans did not triumph
 O'er him ; the drifting sand can not bind fast
 The mountain ! But in that fight God vouchsafed
 To aid me, and the armies of the world
 Were naught to me. The Iránians have heard
 Of those events, and thou shouldst hear from them.
 As for myself, I did whate'er I could,
 Upon the day of fight, for Niyátús
 With kindness and with magnanimity,
 But have not reckoned that day's recompense,
 And Farrukhzád will tell thee just the same :
 Look not upon the world with boyish eyes.
 Gashasp, who was our treasurer, can tell,
 And that good archimage, our minister,
 That I bestowed upon the Rúman troops
 A hundred thousand purses from our treasures.
 I gave to Niyátús a thousand nuggets,
 With earrings and red gold. Each nugget's weight
 Was as a thousand treasury-miskáls
 I reckoned. I bestowed on him withal
 Fine watered pearls that experts had found flawless,
 And every one worth thirty thousand drachms
 To jewellers, and five score noble steeds,
 Selected from my stables—fifty saddled,
 The others very choice, housed in brocade,
 Mates for the wind upon the waste. I sent
 All these to Cæsar with my thanks withal.
 For what thou said'st about the Cross of Christ,
 That bit of old wood flung among my treasures—
 A matter of no loss or gain to me—
 Thou hast been listening to some Christian's talk.
 I mused that one like Cæsar, great and mighty,
 Surrounded as he is by learnéd men—
 Philosophers and potentates and priests—
 Should call one that was executed God !
 While as for this dry, rotten wood, if this

Mere useless Cross were God twould be Urmuzd,
 Whose name we give to every month's first day,
 And would have vanished from our treasury
 As Christ himself departed from the world.

Again for what thou said'st : ' Make thine excuse,
 Amend thy conduct and ensue God's path,'
 I answer : ' May the two hands of Kubád,
 His feet and lips and tongue rot ! It was God
 Who plaed the crown upon my head : I took,
 And revelled in the gift. I have returned it
 Since He demanded it. What next I wonder ?
 To Him will I confess, not to a boy
 Scarce able to distinguish good and ill.'
 All that God doth is welcome unto me
 Though I have seen much woe and bitterness.
 For eight and thirty years have I been Sháh,
 And none among the kings hath been my peer.
 He that bestowed this world on me may give
 Another but will have no thanks of mine !

C. 2038 I will pronounce a blessing on the realm :—
 ' May earth be ever teeming with the wise.'
 So long as God shall help and succour us .
 None will dare curse."

Then said he to Kharrád :—
 " O Memory of the great ones of the world !
 Say to that foolish and impetuous boy :—
 ' The lustre of our countenance is dimmed :
 Farewell to thee for ever. As for me,
 May all our converse be henceforth with sages.'
 As for yourselves, illustrious messengers,
 Ye Persians eloquent and eminent !
 To both of you I also bid farewell.
 Say nothing but the words that ye have heard.
 I give my blessing to the world at large,
 Which we have looked on as a passing thing.
 All mother-born must die—whome'er thou hast

In niind—Khusrau Parwíz back to Kubád.
 So too Húshang, Jamshíd, and Tahmúras—
 To all the world the founts of fear and hope—
 Whom dív and beast acknowledged, passed and died
 When their day ended. Farídún, the blest,
 Who banned ill, close or open, from the world,
 And stayed Zahhák the Arab's hand from evil,
 Scaped not by bravery the clutch of fate.
 So was it with Árish whose arrow's flight
 Was one farsang ;¹ victorious Káran,
 The capturer of cities ; Kai Kubád,
 Who having come from Mount Alburz became
 Through manhood world-lord over all the folk,
 And built himself a world-famed house of crystal,²
 Adorned with lustrous pearls and gates of gems.³
 So was it with Káús, that man of might,
 Who took the world by skill and policy,
 He that adventured toward the sky above,
 Unwitting of the processes of time ;
 So too with Siyáwush, that lion famed,
 Who slew two tigers in his youthful days,⁴
 And built Gang-dizh⁵ with toil but gat therefrom
 No treasure. Where are now Afrásiyáb,
 The Turkman king, whose semblance e'en in dream
 None seeth ; where Rustam, Zál, Asfandiyár,
 Whose fame is their memorial with us ;
 Gúdarz and his choice sons, three score and ten,
 Those cavaliers upon the riding-ground,
 And lions of the fray ; where Kai Khusrau,
 The noble lion-man who in the fight
 Made lions prisoners ; and Sháh Gushtásp,
 The convert to 'The Good Faith,' he by whom

¹ Much further according to the legend. See Vol. v., p. 12.

² This is attributed to Kai Káús elsewhere. See Vol. ii., pp. 81, 101.

³ This line occurs three couplets too low in C.

⁴ This is not mentioned elsewhere in the poem.

⁵ See Vol. ii., pp. 189, 279.

Grace was renewed ; where went renowned Sikandar,
 Who overturned the world, and where Jámásp,
 Who shone in astrologic lore more brightly
 Than Sol or Venus ? Where is that famed Sháh,
 Bahrám Gúr, matchless in his strength and courage ?
 No Sháh was like him in munificence ;
 The turning heaven dared not to touch his head.
 Where is that Sháh, my grandsire, bright of soul
 Who ruled the world as Kisrá Núshírwán ?
 Where are the seven and forty world-lords ?¹ Gone
 Is all their work, gone are the Great and Wise,
 The warrior-horsmen and the men of lore,
 These passing those in prowess and those these
 In years ? They all have left this spacious world,
 Left palace, hall, and riding-ground. Midst Sháhs,
 Though some were older far, I had no peer.
 I walked the world for good and ill, and held
 The evil day aloof. 'Twas mine to traverse
 Full many a ruggéd path and sweep away
 Full many a foe. My treasures fill all lands ;
 Where earth and water are my toil is seen.
 When with me too the world shall cease, and all
 The nobles' hopes grow dim, with my son also
 The throne will not abide, for he will quit it,
 And all his fortune end. What time the angel
 That taketh souls approacheth I shall say :--
 'Take my soul gently.' I will clear my heart
 By penitence, and freedom from offence
 Shall be my breastplate. Well have men of wisdom,
 Good, veteran, learned, declared : 'If wakeful fortune
 Decline one must expect fears manifold,
 And he whose day of greatness hath gone by

¹ Khusrau Parwíz was only the forty-third Sháh. Perhaps some, who never became Sháhs, such as Siyáwush and Asfandiyár, are included, or it may be that the author of this defence (see p. 4) wrote from his own point of view, not that of the supposed speaker.

Is foolish if he asketh its return.'
 This is my message to the world, to mean
 And mighty too : ere long the Sháh and all
 His famous troops will fall to slaughtering
 Each other and fling fire on field and fell ;
 Then sires will fall by sons and sons by sires ;
 Our enemies, the people that discoursed
 Of evil deeds and chilling words, will pay
 The smart when we are gone and not for long
 Enjoy the world. Since rule and greatness end
 With me what reck if Lion or another
 Shall have the sway ? "

Ashtád and brave Kharrád,
 Son of Barzín, those sages, when they heard
 The message of that leader, were heart-pierced,
 And smote their heads. Both sorrowed for their
 words ;

They buffeted their faces, rent their robes
 In grief, and scattered dust upon their heads.
 Those ancients fared forth from his presence, weeping,
 In anguish, with their hearts all arrow-points.
 With furrowed faces and in sore distress
 They went before Shírwí and every whit
 To that man brainless and incompetent
 Detailed the message that the Sháh had sent.

C. 2040

§ 3

*How Shirwí grieved for Khusrau Parwiz and how the
 Chiefs were displeased thereat*

Shírwí wept bitterly on hearing this ;
 His heart quaked for the crown and throne, and when
 The company dispersed that had dismayed him

With foul words clamouring for his father's blood,
 And burning the youth's heart, he left the throne
 Of kingship, clasped with honoured hands his head,
 And wept blood on his breast. News of that weeping
 And of the lamentation of the king,
 Came to the host and all were in dismay.
 They met, discussed Khusrau Parwíz, and cried :—
 “ If he shall sit upon the throne again
 He will disgrace the captains of the host.”

Whenas the sun rose o'er the darksome hills
 The malecontents awoke and went to court.
 The Sháh, on hearing of it, took his seat
 Upon the throne, and those of high degree,
 Akin or alien, approached the presence.
 They took their seats with scowls but no one spoke.
 The king said : “ Gibbeting is the desert
 Of him that mourneth not my father's woes.
 I call such misbegotten and a knave.
 Let none depend on such because that man
 Is rottener than a rotten willow-tree.”

He gat this answer from the men in fault :—
 “ Call whosoever saith : ‘ I serve two Sháhs ’
 A fool at heart and vile whate'er his rank.”

Shírwí rejoined : “ For Sháhs no wealth no troops !
 For one month we will utter pleasant words,
 And give no hint of duress to my sire ;
 He may make statements that will gladden us
 Because his treasures are in every coast.”

C. 2041 On hearing this they rose to seek their homes.
 Then Sháh Shírwí gave orders to the cooks :—
 “ Let nothing be denied Khusrau Parwíz :
 Serve up his food upon a golden service,
 And let the food itself be rich and grateful.”

The servers brought it but he would not eat
 The viands that were proffered, hot or cold.
 Shírín's hand brought to him all that he ate

Because she sorrowed with him in his grief.
 She was his sole good friend and soothed his woes
 Both day and night, shared all his hopes and fears,
 And quaked for him like willow in the wind.
 A month passed and meanwhile Khusrau Parwíz
 Was full of pain and anguish night and day,
 His faults and crimes recalled to memory,
 And little relish of that life had he.

§ 4

How Bárbad lamented Khusrau Parwíz, cut off his own Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music

Now list the lamentation of Bárbad,¹
 And grow forgetful of the world at large.
 On hearing that the Sháh, not by advice
 And 'gainst his will, no longer filled the throne,
 That "men are seeking how to murder him ;
 The soldiers are renouncing fealty,"
 Bárbad came from Chahram to Taisafún
 With tearful eyes and heart o'ercharged ; he came
 To that abode and saw the Sháh whercat
 His tulip-cheeks became like fenugreek.
 He bode awhile in presence of the Sháh,
 Then went with wailing to the audience-hall.
 His love flamed in his heart, his heart and soul
 Burned in his anguish for Khusrau Parwiz ;
 His eyes rained like a cloud in Spring and made
 His bosom as the margent of the sea.
 He fashioned him a dirge upon the harp,
 And to that dirge he sang a mournful plaint.

¹ For the story of Bárbad see Vol. viii., p. 396 seq.

With visage wan and heart fulfilled with grief
He thus lamented in the olden tongue :—

“ O Sháh ! O noble chieftain ! O Khusrau !
O great ! O strong ! O hero ne’er cast down !
Where are thy mastery and greatness now,
Where all thy Grace, thy fortune, and thy crown ?

“ Where that imperial circlet, towering height ?
Where are thine armlets and thine ivory throne ?
Where all thy manliness, thy Grace, and might,
Who ’neath thy wings hadst this world for thine
own ?

C. 2042 “ Oh ! whither are thy dames and minstrels gone,
Gate, audience-hall, and leaders of thy day,
The diadem and Káwa’s gonfalon,
And all the blue-steel falchions, where are they ?

“ Where are the head, the crown that loved it well—
Mate of the earrings and the throne of gold ?
Where are Shabdíz, his stirrups and his sell—
The steed that ’neath thee ever caracol’d ?

“ Where are thy helmet, head, and habergeon
All golden and compacted gem to gem,
Thy cavaliers in gold caparison,
Whose swords made enemies the sheaths for them ?

“ Where all the camels for thy progresses,
The golden litters and attendance rife,
Led steeds, white elephants, and dromedaries ?
Have one and all grown hopeless of thy life ?

“ Where are thy fluent tongue and courteous,
 Thy heart, thy purpose, and thine ardent soul ?
 Why rest of all art thou abandoned thus ?
 Hast read of such a day in any roll ?

“ Oh ! trust not to this world whose remedy
 Is weaker than its bane. ’Twas thy desire
 To have a son to aid and succour thee :
 Now through the son the gyves are on the sirc !

“ It is by sons that kings obtain their might,
 And are unblemished by time’s travailings ;
 Yet ever as his sons increased in height
 Both Grace and vigour failed the king of kings.

“ None that shall lend an ear while men recall
 The story of Khusrau Parwíz must dare
 To trust the world. Account as ruined all
 Írán and as the pards’ and lions’ lair.

“ Of the Sásánian race the Sháh was head—
 One peerless in the sight of crown and state :
 The foeman’s wishes are accomplishéd,
 And, like Írán, the race is desolate.

“ No man possessed a larger host than he,
 Yet who had cause for justice to beseech ?
 The great protector brought the misery,
 And now the wolves are making for the breach !

“ O Sháh devoid of shame ! ’ thus tell Shírwí,
 ‘ Such conduct is not worthy of this court.
 Count not upon thy troops’ fidelity
 When war is rife on all sides.’ God support

“ Thy soul, my master ! and it is my prayer
 That He thy foemen’s heads may headlong fling.
 By God and by thy life, my king ! I swear
 By New Year’s Day, by sun, and jocund Spring,

“ If e’er this hand of mine again shall turn
 To harping may no blessing light on me ;
 Mine instruments of music will I burn
 That I may ne’er behold thine enemy.”

He cut four fingers off and grasped the stumps
 Within his other palm. Returning home
 He kindled fire and burned his instruments,
 While those about Kubád both day and night
 At all that might befall them quaked with fright.

§ 5

*How the Chiefs demanded from Shírwí the Death of
 Khusráu Parwiz and how he was slain by Mihr
 Hurmuzd*

C. 2043 Shírwí, a timid, inexperienced youth,
 Found that the throne beneath him was a snare,
 While readers of mankind saw that ’twas time
 For men of might. Those that had done the ill,
 And had produced that coil, went from the hall
 Of audience to the presence of Kubád
 To mind him of their infamous designs :—
 “ We said before and now we say again
 Thy thoughts are not on government alone.
 There are two Sháhs now seated in one room,
 One on the throne and one on its degree,

And when relations grow 'twixt sire and son
They will behead the servants one and all.
It may not be, so speak of it no more."

Shírwí was frightened and he played poltroon
Because in their hands he was as a slave.
He answered : " None will bring him to the toils
Except a man whose name is infamous.
Ye must go homeward and advise thereon.
Inquire : ' What man is there that will abate
Our troubles secretly ? ' "

The Sháh's¹ ill-wishers
Sought for a murderer to murder him
By stealth, but none possessed the pluck or courage
To shed the blood of such a king and hang
A mountain round his own neck. Everywhere
The Sháh's foes sought until they met with one
Blue-eyed, pale-cheeked, his body parched and hairy,
With lips of lapis-lazuli, with feet
All dust, and belly ravenous : the head
Of that ill-doer was bare. None knew his name
Midst high and low. This villain (may he never
See jocund Paradise !) sought Farrukhzád,
And undertook the deed. " This strife is mine,"
He said. " If ye will make it worth my while
This is my quarry."

" Go and do it then
" If thou art able," Farrukhzád replied.
" Moreover open not thy lips herein.
I have a purse full of dínárs for thee,
And I will look upon thee as my son."

He gave the man a dagger keen and bright,
And then the murderer set forth in haste.
The miscreant, when he approached the Sháh,
Saw him upon the throne, a slave attending.
Khusrau Parwíz quaked when he saw that man,

C. 2044

¹ Khusrau Parwíz.

And shed tears from his eyelids on his cheeks
 Because his heart bare witness that the day
 Of heaviness was near. He cried : “ O wretch !
 What is thy name ? Thy mother needs must wail
 thee.”

The man replied : “ They call me Mihr Hurmuzd,
 A stranger here with neither friend nor mate.”

Thus said Khusrau Parwíz : “ My time hath come,
 And by the hand of an unworthy foe,
 Whose face is not a man’s, whose love none seeketh.”

He bade a boy attending him : “ Go fetch,
 My little guide ! an ewer, water, musk,
 And ambergris, with cleaner, fairer robes.”

The boy-slave heard, unwitting what was incant,
 And so the little servant went away,
 And brought a golden ewer to the Sháh
 As well as garments and a bowl of water,
 Whereon Khusrau Parwíz made haste to go,
 Gazed on the sacred twigs and muttered prayers :
 It was no time for words or private talk.
 The Sháh put on the garments brought, he made
 Beneath his breath confession of his faults,
 And wrapped a new simarre about his head
 In order not to see his murderer’s face.
 Then Mihr Hurmuzd, the dagger in his hand,
 Made fast the door and coming quickly raised
 The great king’s robe and piercéd his liverstead.

Such is the process of this whirling world,
 From thee its secret keeping closely furled !
 The blameless speaker and the boastful see
 That all its doings are but vanity,
 For be thou wealthy or in evil case
 This Wayside Inn is no abiding-place ;
 Yet be offenceless and ensue right ways
 If thou desirest to receive just praise.

When tidings reached the highways and bázárs :—

“ Khusrau Parwíz was slaughtered thus,” his foes
 Went to the palace-prison of the sad,
 Where fifteen of his noble sons were bound,
 And slew them there, though innocent, what time
 The fortune of the Sháh was overthrown.
 Shírwi, the world-lord, dared say naught and hid
 His grief though he wept sorely at the news,
 And afterwards sent twenty of his guards
 To keep his brothers’ wives and children safe
 Now that the Shah had been thus done to death.

C. 2045

So passed that reign and mighty host away,
 Its majesty, its manhood, and its sway
 Such as no kings of kings possessed before,
 Or heard of from the men renowned of yore.
 It booteth nothing what the wise man saith
 When once his head is in the dragon’s breath.
 Call this world “ crocodile ” for it doth gnaw
 The prey that it hath taken with its claw.
 The work of Sháh Khusrau Parwíz is done ;
 His famous hoards and throne and host are gone.
 To put one’s trust in this world is to be
 In quest of dates upon a willow-tree.
 Why err in such a fashion from the way
 Alike by darksome night and shining day ?
 Whate’er thy gains let them suffice thee still
 As thou art fain to save thy soul from ill,
 And in thy day of strength hold thyself weak ;
 For kindly impulses and justice seek,
 And be intent on good. For what is thine
 To give or spend do as thou dost incline ;
 All else is pain and toil. How goodlier
 Than we are friends whose faithfulness is clear !
 Such faithfulness of friends is greatly dear.

§ 6

How Shírwí asked Shírín in Marriage, how Shírín killed herself, and how Shírwí was slain

Since I have ended with Khusrau Parwíz
I speak next of Shírwí and of Shírín.

As soon as three and fifty days had passed
Since that whereon that glorious Sháh was slain
Shírwí dispatched Shírín a messenger
To say : “ Thou wicked, potent sorceress,
Learned but in necromancy and black arts !
In all Írán thou art the guiltiest.
By necromancy didst thou gain the Sháh,
And by thy craft thou bringest down the moon.
Quake, guilty one ! and come to me. Abide not
Thus in thy palace, joyful and secure.”

Shírín raged at his message and abuse
So foul and senseless. Thus she said : “ God grant
That parricides possess not Grace or presence.
I will not see the wretch e'en from afar
At funeral or feast.”

That mournful dame
Sent for a scribe and had a document
Drawn in the olden tongue, instructing him
Regarding her last wishes and estate.

C. 2046
She kept a little poison in a pyx;
She could not well procure it in the city.
She kept it on her, sewed a winding-sheet
To wrap her form—that cypress of the garden---
And then returned this answer to Shírwí :—
“ Exalted Sháh, the wearer of the crown !
Now perish all thy words and perish too
The villain’s heart and spirit that hath heard

Of witchcraft save by name and joyed therein.
 Had Sháh Khusrau Parwíz been one to cheer
 His soul with sorcery there would have been
 A sorceress within his bower, and she
 Had seen his face.¹ He kept me for his pleasure,
 And when the dawn was peeping he was wont
 To call me from the golden bower and joy
 At sight of me. Shame on thee for such words !
 Such knavish talk becometh not a king.
 Remember God, the Giver of all good,
 And utter not such words in others' hearing."

They brought the answer to the Sháh. Shírwí
 Raged 'gainst the guiltless dame² and said : " Thou
 needs
 Must come. None is blood-thirstier than thou.
 Come and behold my crown's top. If it be
 Magnifical then do it reverence."

Shírín, on hearing this, was full of pain ;
 She writhed ; her cheeks grew wan. She thus
 replied :—
 " I will not come to thee save in the presence
 Of those wise men that are about thy court,
 Men of experience and clerkly skill."

Shírwí dispatched and summoned fifty men
 Both wise and old, then sent one to Shírín,
 To say : " Arise and come. Enough of talk."

Thereat she robed herself in blue and black,
 And drew anear the Sháh, approached apace
 The Rosary of Revellers³—the spot
 Wherein those fluent Persians were—and sat
 Behind the great king's curtain as became

¹ Reading with P.

² So far as the charge of witchcraft was concerned. Shírín (Vol. viii., p. 389) had murdered Maryam, Kubád's mother.

³ " elle alla droit à la salle de fête de Schadegán." Mohl or, more strictly, Barbier de Meynard, who completed the translation from §4 to the end of the poem.

The virtuous. He sent to her to say :—

“ Two months¹ of mourning for Khusrav Parwiz
Are o'er. Now be my wife that thou mayst take
Thy pleasure and avoid a mean estate.
I will maintain thee as my father did,
And e'en with more respect and tenderness.”

Shirin replied : “ Let me be righted first,
And then my life shall be at thy dispose.

I will not hesitate in answering
The hest and purpose of thy glorious heart.”

Shirwi agreed to that fair dame's request,
Whcreat the noble lady raised her voice
Behind the royal curtains, saying : “ O Sháh !
Be happy and victorious. Thou said'st
That I was a bad woman and a witch,
Remote from purity and rectitude.”

Shirwi replied : “ 'Twas so, but generous folk
Do not take dudgeon at mere hastiness.”

Shirin addressed the other Persians present
Within the Rosary of Revellers,
And asked : “ What have ye seen in me of ill,
Guile, folly, and dark ways ? For many a year
I was the mistress of Irán and helped
The Brave in everything. I ne'er ensued
Aught but the right ; fraud and deceit I banned.
Through my word many were made governors,
And took their portions of the world full oft.
Who hath beheld my shadow in Irán
Away from home ? If any one hath marked
My shadow, crown, and state let such declare
What he hath seen or heard and by his answer
Reveal the truth.”

The magnates in attendance
All spake her fair. “ In all the world,” they said,
“ She hath no peer in public and in private.”

¹ Reading with P.

Shírín proceeded thus : “ Ye lords and chiefs
 Both veteran and redoubted ! three things make
 The worth of women that bedeck the throne
 Of greatness : one is modesty and wealth
 Wherewith her husband may adorn his house ;
 The next is bearing blessed sons, that she
 May e'en exceed her spouse in happiness ;
 The third is having beauty and fine form,
 Joined with the love of a sequestered life.
 When I was mated to Khusrau Parwíz,
 And entered on seclusion, he had come
 Weak and dispirited from Rúm to live
 Within our land, but after reached such power
 As none had heard of or had looked upon.
 Moreover I have had four sons by him
 To his great joy—Nastúr, Shahryár, Farúd,
 And Mardánsháh, blue heaven's coronal.
 Jamshíd and Farídún had not such sons ;
 May my tongue perish if I lie herein !
 Their bodies all are now beneath the dust,
 Their spirits roaming in pure Paradise.”

Unveiling then her lovely countenance,
 And musky hair, “ There is my face,” she added,
 “ Such as it is. If there be falsehood show it.
 My hair was all my hidden excellence,
 For none on earth e'er used to look thereon.
 What I display is all my sorcery,
 Not necromancy, fraud, and evil bent.”

None had beheld her hair before, no chief
 Had heard thereof. The elders were astound,
 And their mouths watered. When Shírwí beheld
 The visage of Shírín his spirit flew
 Unmarked away from him. Her face so dazed him
 That love of her filled all his heart. He cried :—
 “ I want none but thyself. If I have thee
 For wife Írán can give me nothing more.

I will not go from thy commands, but limn
My loyalty to thee upon mine eyes.”

The lady of the lovely face replied :—

“ I still need somewhat of the Iránian king.
I have two wants if thou wilt bid me speak,
And may thy king of kingship last for ever.”

Shírwí replied : “ My soul is thine, thy wish,
Whate'er it be, is granted.”

Said Shírín :—

“ All treasures laid up by me in this land
Thou shalt assign me as mine own before
This noble company and write thyself
Upon this roll that thou renouncest all,
Both small and great.”

Shírwí made haste to do
Her bidding. Having gained her wish she quitted
The Rosary of Revellers, the chiefs
And noble Persians, went home, freed her slaves,
And made them happy with that wealth of hers
Whereof she gave a part to mendicants,
And to her family a larger share.
She gave too somewhat to the Fanes of Fire,
The feasts of New Year's Day and Mihr and Sada,
To ruined homes and caravansarais
Then turned to lions' lairs. All this she gave
As offerings from Khusrau Parwíz, the world-lord,
And joyed his soul thereby. She sought the garden
And taking off her veil sat unadorned
Upon the ground and summoning her folk
Assigned with courtesy a place to each,
Then cried thus loudly : “ Hear, ye unaggrieved !
For none will ever see my face again.
Fear ye the Judge of those that seek for justice,
The Lighter of the sun and moon and stars,
And speak but truth ; deceit is not for sages.
Since first I came before Khusrau Parwíz,

First made mine entry to his golden bower,
And was chief wife and Glory of the Sháh,
Hath any fault at all appeared in me ?
There is no need to speak to save my face :
What booteth that to woman in her need ? ”

All rose to make reply : “ Famed dame of dames, C 2040
So eloquent and wise and bright of soul !
By God ! none ever saw thee, ever heard
Thy voice behind the curtains. Verily
Thy like hath sat not on the goodly throne
Since Sháh Húshang.”

Then all the servitors,
Slaves emulous and vigilant of heart,
Exclaimed : “ Exalted lady praised in Chín,
In Rúm and in Taráz ! who would presume
To speak aught ill of thee ? Could civil-doing
Besit that face of thine ? ”

Thus said Shírín : —

“ This reprobate, whom heaven above will curse,
Slew his own sire to compass crown and throne,
And may he never more see fortune’s face !
Hath he himself shut death out by a wall
Who lightly recked thus of a father’s blood ?
He sent a message to me that bedimmed
Mine own shrewd soul. I answered : ‘ While I live
My heart shall serve my Maker.’ I declared
My purpose fully, fearful of my foe :
He may defame me publicly when dead.
Ye are free agents and my slaves no longer.”

They wept much at her words and furthermore
Consumed with anguish for Khusrau Parwíz.
Informants went before the Sháh and told
What they had heard about that guiltless dame.
He asked : “ Hath that good lady further wishes ? ”

She sent to say : “ I have one wish, no more :
I fain would ope the late Sháh’s charnel-house ;

I have a great desire to look on him."

Shírwí replied : " So do, 'tis natural." The keeper oped the door. That pious lady Began her wailing, went and laid her face Upon the visage of Khusrau Parwíz, Spake of the past and took the mortal bane :¹ She sent the dust up from her own sweet life. She sat beside the Sháh with visage veiled, Clad in a single camphor-scented robe ; She set her back against the wall and died ; She died and won the plaudits of the world. Shírwí fell sick when he had heard the news, For such a spectacle affrighted him. He bade construct another sepulchre, And make her diadem of musk and camphor. C. 2050 He shut the old Sháh's charnel. Soon they gave Shírwí the bane ; the world had had its fill Of Sháhs ! Thus luckless both in birth and death He left the throne of kingship to his son. One reigneth seven months and in the eighth Doth don the camphor crown ! Of earth's good things To have possession of the throne is best, Of evils life cut short is evilest.

¹ Cf. p. 36.

XLV

ARDSHÍR, SON OF SHIRWÍ

HE REIGNED SIX MONTHS

ARGUMENT

Ardshír's accession is well received by the people. He makes Pírúz, son of Khusrau, the captain of the host. Guráz, on the pretext of avenging Khusrau Parwíz, but really with the intention of seizing the kingship for himself, schemes to bring about the death of the Sháh who is murdered at a banquet by Pírúz.

NOTE

Ardshír (Artaxerxes III., September, A.D. 628—April, A.D. 630) was, according to Tabarí, only seven years old at his accession. By some accounts he was only one year old at the time.¹ He was of course a mere puppet in the hands of the nobles. The "True Cross," if the date of its elevation at Jerusalem—Sept. 14th, A.D. 629—be correct, must have been restored during his reign.²

§ 1. The Arabic Tabarí says that the realm was administered by Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp (Mihr 'Hasis in the Persian version), the High Steward, who had charge of the Sháh's person. This may account for his being made out to be a regicide in the Sháhnáma. He really seems to have b'en a well-intentioned man who did his best in very difficult circumstances. At all events, according to the Persian Tabarí, Shahrbaráz, after taking possession of Ctesiphon, slew him and other nobles on the pretext of avenging the death of Khusrau Parwíz.

¹ NT, p. 386. ZT, ii., 347.² NT, p. 392 *note*.

§ 2. It appears that Shahrbaráz (Guráz) was not consulted when Ardshir was raised to the throne, and he made this an excuse for taking violent measures. The occasion was a favourable one for an ambitious general in command of an army. Moreover, he had an understanding, confirmed by matrimonial alliances, with Heraclius, who no doubt promised to recognise him if he became Sháh. He accordingly marched upon Ctesiphon with 6,000 or, according to another account, 60,000 troops. The High Steward made an attempt at resistance, but Shahrbaráz with the connivance of the captain of the guard and other chiefs was successful and the usual scenes of outrage and massacre ensued.¹

§ 1

How Ardshír, Son of Shírví, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs

Now as the next confronting me I voice
The reign of Sháh Ardshír, I have no choice.

When Sháh Ardshír sat on the throne both young
And old flocked to him from Irán, for many
Were chiefs grown old, to hear what he would say.²
The young Ardshír then loosed his tongue and thus
He spake : “ Ye well-tried warriors ! may one,
Whoe'er he be, that sitteth on the seat
Of sovereignty possess an open mind,
And worship God. We will ensue the course
Of former Sháhs, ensue too Grace and Faith.
May we remember God who giveth good,
May all our acts be just ! I will advance
The pious and make tyrants bleed. I trust
The army to Píruz, son of Khusrau,
Who loveth equity and loyal lieges.

¹ For the above see *Id.*, p. 386 and notes. ZT, ii., 347. RSM, p. 541.

² Couplet omitted.

They for their part with such a paladin
Still will be happy and serene of soul."

Full many were contented with his speech ;
A peaceful ruler was the wish of each.

§ 2

How Guráz was displeased at Ardshír being Sháh and how he caused Ardshír to be slain by Pírúz, Son of Khusrau

Then tidings reached Guráz, who had involved
Khusrau Parwíz in sorrow and distress,
And he dispatched from Rúm a man to say :—
“The crown of vile Shírwí is in the dust.
Hell take his soul and be his charnel-house
O'erturned ! Who ever knew a lofty cypress
Wrecked in the garden by the grass, and one
Like to Khusrau Parwíz, whose peer as king
Time's eye and heart perceive not, who bestowed
My greatness on me, and I have not turned
From his behest ? Now fate dethroneth him,
And fortune's face is utterly averse ;
The circling heaven is his foe and maketh
His portion to be hidden in the earth ;
The sun and moon amerce him of his sway,
And take the crown and throne from such a king,
Bestow the sovereignty upon Shírwí,
And give up all Írán to wretchedness !
When he passed and Ardshír assumed the crown
Both young and old rejoiced in him, but I,
If I have any portion in Írán,
Will suffer not our country's air to bréathe

C. 2051

Upon him. Have I not received the news
 Of Sháh Khusrau Parwíz wrecked by the words
 Of one of evil mark ? I will not have
 A king like this one though the age be Sháhless,
 For there is much contention in his head,
 And he adviseth with another host.

Now will I come in force with chosen chiefs
 Of Rúm and of Irán, and we shall see
 What sort of Head that is to whom such schemes
 Appeal. I will uproot him so that never
 Shall he name kingship more.”

He sent a runner

To seek the ancients of the Iránian host,
 And strove in other fashion to advance
 His ill designs by writing to Pírúz,
 Son of Khusrau, thus : “The Sásánians’ fortune
 Is louring and we need a world-aspirant
 To gird himself for action. Haply thou
 Art ware of what to do and how to take
 The needful steps, wilt seek for many helpers,
 Both young and old, wilt clear away Ardshír,
 And afterwards attain thy whole desire,
 Be safe and well contented ; but if thou
 Reveal this plot, and feed the sword of war
 With blood, I will lead forth such hosts from Rúm
 That I shall make the world dark in thine eyes.
 Heed well my words, and mayst thou think no scorn
 Of mine intent ; thou must not fall through folly.
 Oh ! pass not from the throne of majesty
 To underneath the dust. Repentance then
 Will not avail thee when in wreak my sword
 Is reaping heads.”

Pírúz, son of Khusrau,

When he had read that letter and perceived
 The whole intendment of that self-willed man,
 Much pondered on the matter and consulted

The ancient magnates, saying : “ This affair
Hath come upon me unawares and like
A revelation ! ”

This was their reply :—

“ Famed and redoubted chieftain ! if our Sháh
Shall perish we shall rightly perish too
For such a crime. Let not Guráz’ words move thee
To perpetrate such ill, but take occasion
For doing good. Write him a fitting answer,
And wake him from his dream. Say : ‘ Thwart not
thou

God’s purposes ; give not the Dív a way
To thine own heart. Reflect upon the case
Of Sháh Khusrau Parwíz and all the wrong
That led to his undoing, for what time
Thou didst depose him the Sásánian fortune
Went at one blow, and when Shírwí ascended
The royal throne and girt his kingly loins
Folk hoped such days as when Khusrau Parwíz
Was Sháh whose wits were keen in all regards,
And if the world became what it became,
And gat no profit from the state of things,
It was because the world dealt foolishly,
And by one stroke lost its advantages.
Now that Ardshír, succeeding to Kubád,
Is seated as the Sháh upon the throne,
The world rejoicing in his majesty,
And earth and time exulting in his Grace,
Why should the world, now tranquil, he convulsed
By pain and war ? Knock not at evils’ door ;
Those that slay blameless kings will prosper not.
In this strife circling heaven must not raise
Írán in dust. I fear that God will end
The Írániāns’ term for ills more heinous still.” ”

Píruz, on this wise counselled, wrote Guráz—
That villain of vile race (may none like him

C. 2053

Be ever chief !) —a profitable letter,
 And thou hadst said that one had got his heart
 Between the shears when he had read those words.
 In fierce wrath with Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
 He gathered all his baggage and commanded
 The host to march forth plainwards. At the news
 Pírúz dispatched a cameler to go
 In all haste to Tukhár to summon him,
 Informing him at large of the affair,
 Of what Guráz was doing and the strife
 About the imperial throne. Then from Tukhár
 This answer reached Pírúz, son of Khusrau :—
 “ Risk not the blood of the Iránian chiefs,
 O noble man ! but hear what saith Guráz.
 Since thou hast written on such wise perchance
 He may not come to fight with thee.”

Now when
 Pírúz, son of Khusrau, had seen that letter
 His heart had no repose from evil thoughts,
 But gloomed with thinking how to harm the Sháh,
 Whose wont it was to summon him, for he
 Was an observant man and eloquent,
 And served as minister and treasurer.
 He came one dark night for an audience,
 And found the wine bright and the welcome warm.
 Ardshír was seated in his palace-hall
 In company with many young and old,
 And when Pírúz, son of Khusrau, came raised,
 Thou wouldest have said, his head to heaven, called
 For harp, and all the hall was filled with music.
 Pírúz, son of Khusrau, when midnight came,
 Had drunk one man¹ of wine while the companions
 Of Sháh Ardshír were all bemused ; no minstrel
 Was left that kept his wits. The miscreant
 Dismissed the company : he and the Sháh

¹ See Vol. i., p. 290 note.

Alone remained. That man of outrage rose,
Laid hand upon the Sháh's lips unawares,
And held it there until Ardshír was dead.
The palace filled with scimitars and arrows.
All there—ambitious youths and warriors—
Were fautors of Pírúz, son of Khusrau.
Upon this manner ceased Ardshír to be
When he had had six months of sovereignty.

XLVI

GURÁZ (ALSO CALLED FARÁYÍN)

HE REIGNED FIFTY DAYS

ARGUMENT

Guráz, hearing of Ardshír's death, marches on Taisafún and urged on by his younger, though dissuaded by his elder son, usurps the throne. His rule described. A plot is formed against him and he is slain while returning from the chase. The throne remains vacant for a while.

NOTE

Cf. note to previous reign. Guráz (Shahr-Barz, April 27th—June 9th, A.D. 630) reigned for forty days.¹ He was one of the three chief generals employed by Khusrau Parwíz in his long war against the Eastern Roman Empire. His real name, according to Tabarí, was Farruhán. This in Pahlaví would be Farrukhán, which by a misreading has become Faráyín in the Sháhnáma. Shahrbaráz (Shahrguráz, or Shahrwaráz) is, says Tabarí, a title. Firdausí uses the shortened form Guráz, which means “boar,” because it is more convenient metrically. The title may have been appropriate enough. In the Sháhnáma the general is split up into two personalities—Guráz or Faráyín, the usurper, and Shahránguráz, the avenger of the breach made by the upstart in the sacred line of Sásánian succession.² In Tabarí the leader of the revolt is a native of Istakhr named Pusfarrukha.³ Shahránguráz in the Sháhnáma is also of the same city.

¹ NT, p. 390 and note. ² *Id.* pp. 292 and note. 388 and note. ³ *Id.*

§ 1

How Guráz (also called Faráyín) received News of the Slaying of Ardshír, hastened to Írán, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahrán-guráz

Pírúz, son of Khusrau, dispatched a post,
And letter too, in secret to Guráz,
Whose sombre soul, what time the messenger
Arrived, grew like the sun, and from those parts
He led forth such an army that the way
Was bárred to fly and emmet. Like the wind
He sped to Taisafún, his soldiers' hands
All had been bathed in blood. When he arrived
The chiefs went out to welcome him, but none
Among the troops dared breathe for they were few.
Guráz, on entering the city, stayed not C. 2054
For minister and counsellor but chose
A void place, and the magnates privily
Conferred with him. Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
Set loose his tongue and said : " Famed paladin !
Whom hast thou chosen to be king of kings,
And illustrate the crown of majesty ? "

The warrior Guráz made answer thus :—
" I have not any secrets from Írán.
To-morrow look ye out for some new Sháh
To sit like some new moon upon the throne."

Since knowledge is the glory of a man
Walk not, if thou canst help it, foolishly.
He that hath wisdom speaketh goodly words,
And as it groweth he deserteth ill.

It is the best of man's accomplishments,
 The world's endeavour and the way of God.
 Of things that grace one not there is no need
 To speak at large for he will foolishly
 Disgrace himself howe'er he may exalt
 The case in point. When wisdom hath deserted
 The head, and shame the eye, fame and disgrace,
 And cold and hot, are one—no terror this
 To any coward whether quick or dead.
 Make, if thou canst, all good thy business
 Because the world abideth not with any.
 Let all thy usance be humanity,
 Munificence and uprightness thy Faith.

When Faráyín assumed the royal crown
 He uttered what was in his mind and said :—
 “ Let me assume the kingship for a while,
 And sit upon the throne of gold in joy.
 Far better scatter wealth and be exalted
 Than purchase sixty years of servitude.
 Thus will I sit a while in sovereignty,
 Arrayed in satin¹ and in painted silk,
 And after me my son shall take my throne,
 Assume this royal crown, be king as was
 His sire, and be exalted and renowned.
 Whoe'er shall minister to our delight
 Shall be a happy man among mankind.
 In feast-time we will drink with joyful hearts,
 In war-time we will hunt our enemies.”

His elder son said privily to him :—
 “ Who of us, father ! ever wore the crown ?
 Feel not secure, take means to compass wealth ;
 Thou wast the world's protector ; keep to that.
 If any member of the royal race
 Shalt come thou wilt not long be here ; thy heart
 Will keep of kingship only grief and pain ;

¹ Or “ beaver-skins.”

Thou wilt be wretched, destitute, and wan."

Then said the younger son : " Thou hast become
Crowned in the world and hast both troops and
treasures

C. 2055

Besitting royalty, but treasureless
Wilt have to labour still. What ancestor
Of Farídún, who had Abtíñ to sire,
E'er wore the crown ? Hold fast the world by courage
And treasure. Nobody is born a king."¹

The younger's words pleased Faráyín the best,
Who bade his elder son : " Be not so raw."

He laid out in the royal offices
The muster-roll and called all troops to court.
He gave drachms night and day and many robes
Of honour ill-deserved. Within two weeks
Of all the treasury of Sháh Ardshír
Remained not what would buy an arrow's plume !
Whene'er Guráz would go forth to the pleasure
The lights were torches made of ambergris,
Four score before and four score after him :
Behind them came his friends and partisans.
Of gold and silver were the goblets all,
The golden gem-encrusted.² 'Twas his use
To feast all night. The nobles' hearts were full
Of vengeance on him. 'Twas his wont to roam
A-nights the gardens and the riding-ground.
Save but to sleep and wake, to eat and plunder,
That slight, weak-witted one knew naught. He went
Drunk ever to repose and with a sash
From Chín about his head. The troops were all
Vexed to the heart at him while all the province
Was full of turmoil and distress. He lost
All trace of generosity and grew
Unjust, unfortunate, and good for naught.
The world was wrecked by his iniquity,

¹ But cf. Vol. vi., p. 320.

² The above couplets transposed.

And at his handling people smote their heads.
 He shed the blood of innocents until
 The troops grew wroth with him. He used to shut
 His eyes for gold and would have sold the world
 To win dinárs. Folk cursed him. All desired
 His death and meeting privily discussed
 His deeds. Hurmuzd Shahránguráz, a horseman
 Redoubted of the city of Istakhr—
 The glory of the chieftains—thus addressed
 One night the Iránians secretly : “ Ye chiefs !
 The time of Faráyín is proving grievous ;
 He holdeth all the chiefs in light esteem.
 Why have your brains and hearts become thus
 straitened ?
 Through him all eyes are tearful, livers charged
 With blood. Is no physician to be found ?
 He is not royal or Sásánian ;
 Why gird the loins before him ? Of a truth
 C. 2056 Your hearts have flown out of your breasts or else
 Your pluck hath disappeared ! ”

The folk replied :—

“ Since there was no one left fit for the throne
 None is inspired by jealousy to take
 This base-born’s heart away ; but we adopt
 Thy counsel. Tell us from thy stores of lore
 How to release Irán from this insane
 And hot-brained Sháh ill both in word and deed.
 May he be never blessed ! ”

Shahránguráz

Replied : “ The Iránians have suffered long.
 If ye will harm me not but play the Persian
 E’en now by holy God’s aid will I bring him
 Down from his throne to dust.”

He gat this answer :—

“ May no harm come to thee ! All we the host
 To-day are thy supporters and thy stronghold

If ill herefrom befall thee."

Hearing this

That royal warrior sought how to set
 Hands on the worthless Sháh. Now he one day
 Took order and departed from the city
 To hunt, and of the Iránians a troop
 Of lords and lieges fared, escorting him.
 He urged his courser on and rode about
 As 'twere Ázargashasp, the cavaliers
 Encircling him and beating up the game.
 Now at what time they turned back city-wards
 Shahránguráz looked at the hapless Sháh
 With boldness, chose an arrow from his quiver,
 One that was straight and had a point of steel,
 And urged his black steed while the host looked on.
 He stretched the bow and drew it out at whiles
 To chest or head, then notched, as if in sport,
 An arrow on the string and drew the bow
 Till it concealed the point, and loosed his thumb.
 Forthwith the shaft struck on the monarch's back,
 Who dropped his whip. The arrow was all blood
 Up to the feathers and the iron head
 Protruded from his navel. All the troops
 Unsheathed and all that night while dust-clouds rose
 They plied their swords and knew not whom they
 fought,
 But took and gave back blows and cursed or blessed
 That deed. Now when the yellow Veil appeared,
 So that the world seemed like a leopard's back,
 There was a multitude of slain and maimed,
 And cavaliers and leaders were astound.
 That great host was dispersed like timid sheep
 When they perceive a wolf. Long they remained
 Without a king: none cared to claim the crown.
 For long they sought and sought in vain to trace
 Some royal scion of the noble race.

XLVII

PŪRĀNDUKIIT

SHE REIGNED SIX MONTHS

NOTE

Púrándukht (Puranducht, summer A.D. 630—autumn A.D. 631), reigned, according to Tabarí, for one year and four months. Her name, it appears, should be spelt with a B, not with a P. She is said to have restored the “True Cross,” but it seems more probable that this was done in the reign of Ardshír. She made the leader of the successful conspiracy against Shahrbaráz her prime minister.¹ She was the first historical female Sháh and it was in allusion to her reign and that of her sister Ázarmdukht that the distich is quoted in Mír Khánd :—

“ No dignity remains in a household
In which the hens are crowing like cocks.”²

§ 1

*How Púrándukht ascended the Throne and slew Pirúz,
Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended*

’Tis but crude policy when women rule,
But yet there was a lady—Púrándukht—
Surviving of the lineage of Sásán,

¹ For the above see NT, p. 390 seq. and notes, ZT, ii., 349.

² RM, Pt. II., vol. iii., p. 101.

And well read in the royal volume : her
 They seated on the throne of sovereignty,
 The Great strewed jewels over her, and then
 She spake upon this wise : " I will not have
 The people scattered,¹ and I will enrich
 The poor with treasure that they may not bide
 In their distress. God grant that in the world
 There may be none aggrieved because his pain
 Is my calamity. I will expel
 Foes from the realm and walk in royal ways."

She made search for Pírúz, son of Khusrau,
 Who was delated by an alien,
 Whereat she chose some warriors from the host
 Who brought Pírúz before her. She exclaimed :—
 " Foul-purposed miscreant !² thou shalt receive,
 As infamous, the guerdon for thy deeds."

She bade bring from the stalls a colt unbroken,
 And bound, firm as a rock, Pírúz thereto
 Without a saddle and with yoke on neck.
 The vengeful lady had that untamed steed
 Brought to the riding-ground and thither sent,
 With lassos coiled up in their saddle-straps,
 A band of warriors to urge the colt
 To utmost speed, to strive from time to time
 To throw Pírúz and ever roll itself
 Upon the ground. That colt won much applause
 Until with skin in shreds and dripping blood
 Pírúz gave up the ghost right wretchedly.
 Why having done wrong seekest thou for justice ?
 Nay, ill for ill ; that is the course of right.

Pūrāndukht ruled the world with gentleness ;
 No wind from heaven blew upon the dust,
 But when six months had passed beneath her sway
 The circle of her life bent suddenly ;
 For one week she was ailing, then expired,

C. 2058

¹ Through misgovernment.² One couplet omitted

And took away with her a fair renown.

Such is the process of the turning sky,
So potent while so impotent are we !

If thine be opulence or poverty,
If life affordeth gain or loss to thee,
If thou shalt win what thou desirest so,
Or disappointed be in wretchedness,

And whether thou be one of wealth or woe,
Both woe and wealth will pass away no less.
Reign as a Sháh a thousand years, five score,
For sixty years or thirty, ten or four,
It cometh to one thing, when all is done,
If thou hadst many years or barely one.

Oh ! may thine actions thine own comrades be,
For they in every place will succour thee.
Let go thy clutch upon this Wayside Inn
Because a goodlier place is thine to win.
If thine endeavour be to learning given
Thou wilt by knowledge roam revolving heaven.

XLVIII

ÁZARMDUKHT

SHE REIGNED FOUR MONTHS

NOTE

Before Ázarmdukht (Azermidocht, end of A.D. 631—beginning of A.D. 632) came to the throne there seems to have been a short interval during which a distant scion of the royal House, who took the name of Pírúz, ruled for less than a month. The chief noble of the time, who was governor of Khurásán, wished to make Ázarmdukht his wife on which she had him privately executed. This noble's son was the Rustam that fought and fell at Kádisíya some years later. On hearing of his father's fate Rustam, who was in temporary authority in Khurásán, marched with a great army against Ázarmdukht, overthrew her and put her to death after she had reigned six months. Her name probably means "modest girl."¹

§ 1

How Azarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died

There was another dame hight Ázarmdukht,
Who had fruition of the crown of greatness.
She came, sat down upon the royal throne,
And made herself the mistress of the world.
Her first words were : " O sages, veterans,
And masters of affairs ! be just in all,

¹ For the above see NT, p. 393 and notes, ZT, ii, 350 seq.

And follow precedent, for ye hereafter
Must make the bricks your pillow. I will foster
The loyal liege, assist him with dinárs,
And if he erreth be longsuffering ;
But him that is disloyal and deserteth
The way of wisdom and of precedent
Will I suspend in shame upon the gibbet,
Be he an Arab, Rúman cavalier,
Or Persian thane.”

C. 2059 She filled the throne four months,
But with the fifth disaster came thereto,
For she too died, the throne had not a Sháh,
But was the plaything of the ill-disposed.
With the revolving sky 'tis everything
To be all vengeful with its fosterling.

XLIX

FARRUKHZÁD

HE REIGNED ONE MONTH

NOTE

Between, and even earlier than, the death of Ázarmdukht and the accession of Yazdagird III., the order of the dynastic succession becomes very confused. The names of the Sháhs vary in the different lists. The reason is that it was a period of great internal unrest and various aspirants to the throne held contemporaneously some short-lived authority in different provinces of the empire. One of these princes, Farrukhzád (Farrukhzád-Khusrau) has received the honour of being included in the list of the Sháhs as recorded in the Sháhnáma. Two accounts of the length of his reign are given in Tabari. According to one, it lasted for six months, according to the other, for a year. Both agree that he did not die a natural death, and one of them states that his death was instigated by the adherents of Yazdagird.¹

§ 1

How Farrukhzád ascended the Throne and how he was slain by a Slave

Then from Jahram they summoned Farrukhzád,
And seated him upon the throne of kingship.
There with a pious soul he praised the Maker,

¹ NT, p. 397 and note. Cf. RSM, p. 544.

And said : " Son of the kings of kings am I,
 And would have naught but quiet in the world.
 The mischief-maker shall not be exalted
 While I am Sháh, but him that from his heart
 Ensuethe right, and is not mischievous,
 Will I hold dear as my pure soul, and seek not
 To harm the harmless. Him that beareth toil
 On our behalf we will reward with treasure.
 We will hold dear all friends and raise the fame
 Of chieftains everywhere, but all my subjects,
 Both friends and enemies, are safe with me."

The troops all blessed him : " Ne'er may earth and
 time

Lack thee." Yet when his throne was one month old
 The head of all his fortune came to dust.

He had a slave, a cypress-tree in stature,
 Fair, lusty, and well-liking. That knave's name
 Was Siyah Chashm.¹ May heaven ne'er bring his
 like !

The Sháh too had a handmaid whom he loved.
 She chanced on Siyah Chashm all unawares
 One day, who sent to say : " If thou wilt meet me
 At such a place thou shalt have endless gifts,
 And I will deck thy crown with jewelry."

The handmaid heard, made no reply, but went
 And told the thing to Farrukhzád who raged,
 And could not eat or sleep in his concern.
 He put the feet of Siyah Chashm in fetters,
 And cast him into prison. When the knave
 Had been confined awhile the Sháh released him,
 For many pled for him. The slave returned
 To serve the Sháh and cut his lifetime short,
 For just as such a bad malignant slave
 Would do he sought revenge upon the Sháh,
 And seizing on a time when Farrukhzád

¹ Black-eyed.

Reposed himself put poison in the wine.
The Sháh drank, lived one week, and all that heard
About his fate lamented him. The kingship
Was in extremities and foes appeared
On every side. The throne of king of kings,
Through these ill doings of the Iránians,
Was overturned.

Of such a fashion are
Time's revolutions ! Let it be thy care
To gather for thyself therefrom thy share.
Eat what thou hast and trust the morrow not,
For it may hold for thee a different lot :
To give to others it may take from thee.
Thou callest this a world and verily
It doth whirl ! So enjoy thine own, let go
The surplusage that thou hast toiled for so
To other folk but never to thy foe,
Else whensoe'er thy day is overpast
Thy hoards will be as is the desert-blast,
Thy treasures all become thine enemy's ;
So give away to set thy mind at ease.

L

YAZDAGIRD

HE REIGNED TWENTY YEARS

ARGUMENT

Yazdagird becomes Sháh. The country is invaded by the Arabs. He sends Rustam, the captain of the host, to oppose them. Rustam takes a despondent view of the situation, and after some attempt at negotiations is defeated by the Arabs at Kádisíya and slain. The war continues, and Yazdagird withdraws to Khurásán to get help from Máhwí of Súr, the governor. Máhwí plots with Bízhan, a Turkish prince, against Yazdagird, who is betrayed in battle and takes refuge in a mill, where he is slain by the miller at the bidding of Máhwí. Máhwí assumes the crown, makes war on Bízhan, is taken prisoner, and put to death. The poem ends with a brief passage, in which Firdausí gives some account of the completion of his undertaking, of help afforded him and of discouragements undergone, and concludes with a well founded assurance of his own future fame.

NOTE

Yazdagird (Isdegird III., A.D. 632-652 or 653) has given his name to a chronological era which still obtains among the Parsis. It dates from June 16th, A.D. 632. He was the son of Sháhryár, son of Khusrau Parwíz, and was an infant at the time when that Sháh and his sons were put to death after the accession of Shírwí (Kubád;¹) On that occasion he was taken for safety to Istakhr. Tabarí says that he was

¹See p. 34, 35.

murdered at the age of twenty-eight after a reign of twenty years. He was therefore only eight years old when a party among the nobles set him up as a puppet king at Istakhr (Persepolis), the old seat of empire, Ctesiphon at that time being in the hands of a rival claimant of the throne. In the contention that followed Yazdagird was successful, and in the course of A.D. 633 he became recognised as sole Sháh, the administration remaining in the hands of the chiefs.¹ He had succeeded to a heritage of woe. His empire was ill-prepared for the troubles that were in store for it. Exhausted by long wars, torn by domestic dissensions, and lately devastated by plague, it had to confront a new and vigorous organization inspired by religious enthusiasm and impelled thereby to extend its borders on every side. Had Yazdagird been a born leader of men and come to the throne in the prime of life, he might for the time at least have been successful, but in the circumstances, and taking into consideration what we can gather as to his own character, we can now see how hopeless from the outset his prospects were. Students of Persian, however, have probably reason to feel grateful to his reign, for even though we put aside as unsatisfactory what tradition tells us on the subject, a reasonable presumption remains that with the return of settled government to a distracted country there was a revival of interest in the story of the Iránian race and its heroes, and that compilations were then made from which we still though indirectly benefit.²

§§ 2-11. The following is intended to supplement Firdausí's inadequate account of the Arab conquest of the Sásánian empire. He appears to assign it to the last years of Yazdagird's then nominal sovereignty. From time immemorial the Iránians and Semites had been at enmity.³ In Iránian legend this feeling had found expression in the story of the wicked Sháh Zahhák, who, though originally an Aryan myth,⁴ came to be regarded in succeeding ages as an earthly king with his seat at Babylon. When, later still, the Iránians again felt the weight of Semitic oppression, he was turned into an Arab.⁵ Although during Sásánian times the semi-independent kingdom of Híra served to some extent as a buffer-state between the Persian empire and the wilder Arab

¹ NT, p. 397 *seq.* and *notes*.

² Cf. Vol. i., p. 67.

³ Id. p. 10.

⁴ Id. p. 7;

⁵ Id. pp. 54, 135, 141.

tribes there was always the liability of raids and the danger was much increased when Khusráu Parwíz was so unwise as to put an end to the long-standing dynasty of the princes of Híra and appointed a governor of his own in their stead.¹ In his reign too had occurred the disastrous battle of Dhú Kár, in which the smallness of the forces engaged were out of all proportion to the importance of the result. The Arabs celebrated their victory with songs of triumph.² With that inspiring memory and revelation of Persian weakness, with the prospect of rich spoil to be won, and a nation of infidels to be converted, it is not surprising that hostilities should break out between the young and vigorous and the old and enfeebled empire. Muhammad himself, tradition tells us, addressed a threatening letter to Khusráu Parwíz, who tore it up, and the Prophet, on hearing of this, said: "He has rent his own realm."³ Muhammad died in June, A.D. 632—the month of the child Yazdagird's accession. Abú Bakr, the first Khalífa, being apprised by an Arab chieftain, who had embraced Islam, of the state of the Persian empire, sent his great general, Khálid, to begin hostilities. Khálid was very successful in numerous engagements, and temporarily the whole tract bordering the western bank of the Euphrates from the Roman frontier almost to the Persian Gulf came into the hands of the Arabs. Khálid made Híra his headquarters, and was preparing to attack Ctesiphon and invade Irán when he was recalled by Abú Bakr to take command of the forces destined for the Syrian campaign. "This is 'Umar's doing," said Khálid. "He does not want to see me conquer Irák."⁴ The departure of Khálid was the Persians' opportunity. Encouraged by Rustam, who under Yazdagird had become commander-in-chief, the inhabitants of the conquered region rose against the Arabs but unsuccessfully. At this juncture Abú Bakr died and was succeeded by 'Umar, who began his reign by giving Abú 'Ubaida the chief command in Syria in the place of Khálid. Then, it is said, he appealed publicly to the Faithful to volunteer for the invasion of Persia and for two days in vain, the supersession of Khálid having caused great indignation. It may, however, have been thought that the acquisition of so much fertile territory and the consequent proximity to the Persian

¹ Vol. viii., p. 190.

² NT, p. 342.

³ ZT, ii., 325.

⁴ Id. iii., 348.

capital, were a sufficient achievement for the time being. Nevertheless, on the third day, when 'Umar made his appeal, Abú 'Ubaida (not Khálid's successor) offered himself and Sa'ad, son of Wakkás, followed suit. A thousand others imitated their example. 'Umar gave Abú 'Ubaida the chief command as he had been the first to volunteer. The Persians in the meantime had withdrawn to Ctesiphon, whence Rustam dispatched a force, which had with it the flag of Káwa,¹ to watch the enemy. Abú 'Ubaida, who was very inferior in numbers, threw a bridge across the Euphrates, attacked the Persians, was defeated and slain. This battle is known as "The Battle of the Bridge," and took place in November, A.D. 634. An attack, however, by the Persians on Híra failed, and the Arabs raided the Persian settlement of Baghdád (not of course the well-known city of that name²) where twice a year a fair was held. 'Umar appointed Sa'ad, son of Wakkás, to succeed Abú 'Ubaida, and both sides made efforts to reinforce their respective armies. The Persian adherents west of the Euphrates again rose. Rustam crossed the river with a great host, and advanced to Kádisíya where the Arabs had concentrated. The battle that ensued is said to have lasted four days with varying fortune till a dust-storm turned the scale in favour of the Arabs. The slaughter was very great and so was the spoil. 'Umar forbade the Arabs to make any further advance for the present, but as the situation of their camp proved to be very unhealthy he directed Sa'ad to choose a more suitable site, whereupon Sa'ad founded Kúfa. Thenceforth the whole of the region west of the Euphrates was lost to the Persians. To secure the lower course of the Euphrates and Tigris 'Umar also founded Basra, west of the Shatt-al-Arab. The battle of Kádisíya seems to have been fought A.D. 636-7, but the chronology of the period is somewhat uncertain. Then came a considerable pause in the Arab advance. The Arabs seem to have spent the interval well in securing what they had gained while the Persians on the other hand appear to have been paralysed by their misfortunes. At all events, when the invasion was resumed and Sa'ad, crossing the Euphrates, marched on Ctesiphon, no resistance was offered and Yazdagird, who had lingered there too late to secure the removal of most of his treasures, fled with his court to Hulwán.³ His example of flight seems

¹ Vol. i., p. 154 *seq.*

² See Vol. vi., p. 254.

³ See Vol. vii., p. 187.

to have been followed by a majority of the inhabitants. The Arabs came in for an immense booty according to Oriental accounts. If, however, we take into consideration the domestic troubles of the years preceding Yazdagird's accession, and what must have been the financial needs of the short-lived Sháhs of that period, we are justified in suspecting that the amount of precious metals and of the more portable forms of wealth generally was not so great as has been affirmed. Sa'ad, when he had established himself in the Persian capital, asked permission of 'Umar to pursue Yazdagird who had gathered a considerable army under the command of a Mihrán¹ at Jalúlá in the neighbourhood of Hulwán. 'Umar refused to allow Sa'ad to go in person and instructed him to send instead Háshim who was either his brother or his nephew. Háshim was much inferior in point of numbers, and it was six months before he brought the Persians to a decisive engagement. He then won a complete victory, and followed up his success at Jalúlá by the capture of Hulwán. Yazdagird fled to Rai and 'Umar, content for the moment with what had been achieved, forbade any further advance. The next stage of the Arab conquest was made outside the sphere of Sa'ad's authority, who sent, however, by 'Umar's command troops to assist. In the north Mesopotamia, and in the south Khúzistán, were invaded and annexed. A raid was made also across the Persian Gulf from Bahrain into Párs, but without lasting results, as the Arab forces got into difficulties and had to be rescued by an expedition sent for the purpose from Basra. About A.D. 640 in consequence, it is said, of complaints made by the people of Kúfa, 'Umar recalled Sa'ad and Yazdagird seized the opportunity to make a supreme effort to recover his lost possessions. A large army, summoned from the yet unconquered provinces of the empire, was concentrated at Nahávand, some fifty miles south of Hamadán, and placed under a Persian general named Pírúzán. On this 'Umar ordered Nu'mán, who was in command in Khúzistán, to gather all available forces from the regions already annexed and march against the enemy. Nu'mán, who was greatly inferior in point of numbers, found the Persians strongly encamped at Nahávand and tried in vain to bring on a general engagement. In the end he managed to effect his purpose by means of a stratagem. He broke up

¹ See *id.* p. 185.

his camp and made a hasty retreat. Pírúzán went in pursuit, on which Nu'mán turned upon him and won what the Arabs call "The Victory of Victories" (A.D. 641-2). Pírúzán was taken prisoner and slain, and Nu'mán himself fell in the fight. This was the last effort of the Persians at a national resistance. Henceforth their opposition was merely provincial or local, and wholly ineffective. One after another the remaining provinces of the Sásánian empire were overrun by the Arabs and permanently annexed, while Yazdagird, who had fled from Rai after the disaster of Nahávand, remained a fugitive till his death some ten years later.

§ 2. In Tabarí Rustam's father is called Farrukh-Hurmuzd, the governor of Khurásán, who was slain, it is said, by Ázarm-dukht and avenged by his son.¹ Khurásán probably formed part of the satrapy of Nímrúz, one of the four into which Núshírwán divided his empire.² Tradition makes the governors of that satrapy, and their sons play a very important part during the last few years of the Sásánian dynasty.³ The position of commander-in-chief held by Rustam at the battle of Kádisíya, probably indicates that he had been instrumental in bringing about the elevation of Yazdagird to the throne.⁴

Rustam's brother was named Farrukhzád.

§ 3. Mughíra, son of Shu'ba, was one of the companions of Muhammad, and played a prominent role in the affairs of the time. He went on a similar embassy to the Persians before the battle of Nahávand.⁵ He was governor for a time at Basra,⁶ Mecca,⁷ and Kúfa, where he died in A.D. 670.⁸

§ 4. Sa'ad took no personal part in the battle of Kádisíya. He was suffering from sores at the time and had to content himself with merely directing operations.⁹ Consequently he did not slay Rustam in single combat as Firdausí states. When the dust-storm came on the fourth day of the battle, Rustam was seated under an awning erected on the bank of the canal of Kádisíya and surrounded by the camels that carried his treasure. The awning was blown into the water, and Rustam took shelter among them. In the confusion caused by the storm, the Arabs broke the Persian centre. One of them, named Hilál, striking in the darkness at random among the camels, happened to hit the one under which

¹ p. 59. ² See Vol. vii., p. 214. ³ pp. 5, 6, 59, 87, 95 seq.

⁴ NT, p. 397 note. NIN, p. 13. ⁵ ZT, iii., 474. ⁶ Id. 404.

⁷ Id. iv., 2. ⁸ Id. 16. ⁹ Id. iii., 398.

Rustam was seated, and cut the cord that secured its load of treasure which fell on Rustam's head. Though injured, he made an attempt to swim across the canal, but was caught by Hilál and slain.¹

§§ 9-11. There is a general agreement in Persian tradition that Yazdigird did not die a natural death. The scene of it is mostly laid at Marv, and the most popular version associates it with a mill. Firdausí's story evidently has been worked up as the appeals addressed to Máhwí show. The villain's guilt too is more emphasized, and he is made more directly responsible for the tragedy. Elsewhere the miller murders the Sháh for mere greed. Marv appears to be a likely place for Yazdagird to have chosen to reside in, as he could easily escape thence across the Oxus in case of need. In some accounts he does cross and negotiates to little purpose with the Turks, but is brought back across the river for the final scene. What the truth of the matter was seems to be quite uncertain.

§ 14. According to the account in the Persian Tabarí, Máhwí, after the death of Yazdagird, remained at Marv till he was compelled to leave owing to the approach of the Arabs, when he fled across the Oxus and took refuge with the Turks.² Their Khán is the Bízhan of the Sháhnáma.

§ 1

How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs

When Farrukhzád departed Yazdagird
 Became the Sháh upon the day of Ard
 In month Sapandármad. What said the man
 Brave, eloquent but weary of life's span ?
 "Would that my mother had not brought me forth,
 High heaven not turned o'er me !
 The days of greatness and the days of want

¹ *Id.* 396.

* ZT, iii., 505.

For all soon cease to be.
 Time, as thou lookest, passeth ; none can take
 Arms to contend with it,
 So furnish forth the board and drain the cup,
 And sad talk intermit.
 What though thou ride high heaven yet bricks will
 prove
 Thy pillow at the last ;
 If thou be king what of the end ? First throne,
 But what when life hath past ?
 Let not thy heart be troubled, trust not much
 High heaven as thy support ;
 It acteth as it willetteth ; elephant
 And lion are its sport.
 'Twill outlast thee, its tale is long ; be not
 With pride of life o'erflown ;
 Thou canst not better Farídún or be
 Parwíz¹ with crown and throne.²

C. 2061

From those exalt seven planets do thou well
 Consider what to Yazdagird befell."

When he sat happy on the throne of kingship,
 And placed upon his head the crown of might,
 He said : " By process of the turning sky
 I am the true-born son of Núshírwán.
 Mine is the sway from sire to sire and mine
 Are Virgo, Sol, and Pisces. I will seek
 For greatness, wisdom, hardihood, contention,
 And manliness, for life and fortune stay
 With none, nor treasure, kingship, crown, and throne.
 Fame will abide for aye but not desire ;
 Put off desire then and exalt thy fame.
 It is by fame that man shall live for ever
 While his dead body lieth in the dust.
 How good are Faith and justice in a Sháh !
 The times are full of blessings on his fame.

¹ Khusrau Parwíz.² Couplet omitted.

I purpose while I live to pluck up ill,
Both root and branch."

The chiefs applauded him,
And hailed him as the monarch of the earth,
And thus it was, till sixteen years had sped,
That sun and moon revolved above his head.

§ 2

How Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Irán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother

It was so that 'Umar, the famous Arab,
Commander of the Faithful,¹ he whose sword
Turned day to night, the man approved by God,
Who hath no equal, sent the chosen Sa'ad,
Son of Wakkás, with troops against the Sháh.
When Arab fortune worsted Persian,
And the Sásánians' fortune had grown dark,
The world had had full measure of its Sháhs ;
Gold was not seen, the mite was manifest,
Good turned to evil, evil turned to good,
The path lay Hellward, not to Paradise,
The wheel of circling heaven was changed and cut
All kindness for the Persians clean away.
The slave must do the almighty Maker's will,
And bear what He inflicteth. Save with Him
There is no life or joy.

When Yazdagird
Learned what had chanced he gathered troops on all
sides,

C. 2062 And bade Hurmuzd's son lead them forth. His name

¹ He assumed this title.

Was Rustam. He was wary, wise, a warrior
 And potentate, a reader of the stars,
 Exceeding shrewd and all attent to hear
 The archimages' words. He marched away
 With all the noble, those that were alert
 And brave, and after thirty months they sought
 To fight at Kádisíya. Being learned
 In heaven's lore as an astrologer,
 And one both just and good, he said : " No time
 Is this to fight, the river of the Sháhs
 Will flow not in this bed," and so he took
 His astrolabe, observed the stars and smote
 His head because it was a day of bale,
 Then wrote in grief and told his brother all,
 First offering praise to God who had ordained
 His good and evil fortune, and proceeded :—
 " Well may the revolutions of the sky
 Fill the observer with disquietude !
 I am the guiltiest person of the time,
 And therefore have been caught by Áhriman,
 Because the kingship passeth from this House ;
 No season this of conquest and the Grace !
 From the fourth heaven Sol is looking down
 To hasten to the fight of mighty men.
 Both Mars and Venus bode mishap to us,
 And none can 'scape high heaven. Mercury
 And Saturn are opposed, the former too
 Hath entered Gemini. Such is the case,
 A great event is toward, and my heart
 Is weary of its life. I can discern
 All that will be but fain would hold my peace.
 When I agnized this secret of the sky—
 That it assigneth us but grievous travail—
 I wept right sorely for the Iránians,
 And burned for the Sásánians. Woe is me
 For head and crown, for state and throne, and woe

C. 2063

For majesty, for fortune, and for Grace
 Because hereafter will defeat betide them
 From the Arabians, the stars not turn
 Save to our hurt, and for four hundred years
 None of our royal race will rule the world !
 An envoy from our foemen came to me,
 And divers parleyings followed. ‘We,’ they said,
 ‘Will give up to the Sháh the tract between
 The river-bank and Kádisíya ; ye
 Shall grant us access to some trading centre
 That we may sell and buy ; we will not ask
 For more hereafter ; we will pay large dues,
 And will not seek the chieftains’ diadems,
 But will obey withal the king of kings,
 And render hostages at his demand.’
 Such is the talk. No action hath ensued,
 But still the stars are adverse. Long will be
 The strife. Fierce Lions will be slain by hundreds.
 The chieftains that are with me in the war—
 Galbwí of Tabaristán and Armaní,
 Who do the deeds of Áhri man in fight,
 Mahwí, he of Súrán, and other chiefs,
 Who wield the heavy mace and battle-ax—
 Heed not our foes proposals but observe :—
 ‘Who are these haughty folk and what do they
 Both in Irán and in Mázandarán ?
 For road and territory, weal and woe,
 We must employ the mace and scimitar ;
 We will exert ourselves, quit us like men,
 And make the world both dark and strait to them.’
 None of them knoweth circling heaven’s design,
 And how its aspect hath been changed to us.
 On reading this take measures with the chiefs,
 Make preparations and lead forth the host,
 Collect the treasures, handmaids, and state-robés,
 Then hasten Ázar Abádagán—

The dwelling of the Mighty and the Free.
 Whatever herds of horses thou mayst have
 Send to the treasurer of Ázargashasp.
 If soldiers seek thee from Zábulistán,
 Or from Irán, imploring thy protection,
 Receive and treat with kindness their excuses
 In view of what the turning sky is doing--
 The cause of joy and terror to us all,
 At whiles exalting and at whiles abasing.
 Let mother know my words for of a truth
 She will not look upon my face again.
 Greet her from us and counsel her at large
 Not to be troubled here below. If any
 Shall bring bad news of me be not too downcast,
 For know that in this Wayside Hostelry
 He that amasseth treasure by his toil
 Will find his toil more than such worldly treasure,
 And that another will enjoy the fruit.
 What need was there for so much toil and greed ?
 Desire is lessened not by having more.
 At all times worship God and purge thy heart
 Of all affection for this Wayside Inn
 Because our fortune is in straits, the king
 Will see me not again. Do thou and all
 Our House, both old and young, unceasingly
 Praise God and pray the Maker, for with this
 My host I am in stress, in travail, grief,
 And bitter fortune, and shall not escape
 At last. May this sweet country of Irán
 Be in prosperity ! Whenas the world
 Is straitened to the king hold treasure, life,
 And person of small worth, for of that race
 So famed and honoured there is no one left
 Save that exalted one. Watch over him
 By day and night till I have fought the Arabs.
 Be not remiss in toil for he is now

All that we have to look to in this world,
 And the Sásánians' memorial,
 For no one will behold that House again.
 Woe for the head and crown, for seal and right
 Since royal throne will go adown the blast !
 Fare well, be not concerned, and ever be
 Before the world-lord, and if ill betide him
 First give thine own head to the scimitar
 Ungrudgingly. When pulpit fronteth throne,
 And when Abú Bakr and 'Umar shall be
 As household words, our long toils will be lost,
 And long will be the fall before the rise.
 Thou wilt not see throne, diadem, or state :
 The stars award the Arabs everything.¹
 There will not be throne, crown, or golden boot,
 Or gem, or coronet or flaunting flag.
 One man will toil, another will enjoy ;
 None will give heed to justice or to bounty.²
 Then warriors will be men that fight afoot
 While horsemen will be mocked and flouted at ;
 The warlike husbandman will be despised,
 High birth and majesty will bear no fruit ;
 Then men will rob each other, none will know
 A blessing from a curse, and secret dealing
 Prevail o'er open, while the hearts of men
 Will turn to flint, sire will be foe to son,
 And son will scheme 'gainst sire ; a worthless slave
 Will be the king, high birth and majesty
 Will count for nothing ; no one will be loyal.
 There will be tyranny of soul and tongue.
 A mongrel race—Iránian, Turkman, Arab—
 Will come to be and talk in gibberish.³
 They will collect all treasures 'neath their skirts,
 Toil and resign the product to their foes.

¹ Two couplets omitted. ² Three couplets omitted.³ See Vol. i., p. 34.

Grief, travail, bitterness will thus prevail
 As joy did in Bahrám Gúr's days ; feasts, song,
 Race and renown will cease ; men will set traps,
 Will seek their profit in another's loss,
 And make their pretext Faith ; no difference
 Will be 'twixt Spring and Winter ;¹ there will be
 No wine at feasts ; they will not recognise
 Degree and place but live on barley-bread,
 And dress in wool. When much time hath passed
 thus

None will regard the noble Persian stock.
 They will be shedding blood for lucre's sake,
 An evil age will be inaugurate.
 My heart is full, my face is wan, my mouth
 Is parched, my lips are filled with sighs to think
 That after I—the paladin—have gone
 Sásánian fortune shall become thus dark ;
 So faithless hath revolving heaven grown,
 Ta'en umbrage, and withdrawn from us its love !
 If with my lance I strike a brazen mountain
 I pierce it, being brazen-bodied too,
 But now my shafts with steel-transfixing heads
 Are impotent with men that wear no mail !
 My sword, which felled the necks of elephants
 And lions at a blow, can not cut through
 An Arab skin ! My knowledge bringeth loss
 On loss upon me. Would that I possessed not
 This wisdom since it causeth me to know
 Of this ill day ! The chiefs that are with me
 From Kádisíya are both hardy men
 And hostile to the Arabs. They expect
 That this brake will be filled, that earth will run
 Like the Jihún, with our foes' blood. None knoweth
 The secret of the skies and that this strife

¹ Muhammadan years being lunar the months are associated with no particular season.

Can not be quickly ended ; but when fortune
 Departeth from a race what profit cometh
 Of travail and of fight ? Be prosperous,
 My brother ! May the Sháh's heart joy in thee
 Because this Kádisíya is my charnel,
 My breastplate is my shroud, my helmet blood :
 Such is the secret of the lofty sky.
 Bind not thine own heart to my griefs but keep
 Thine eyes upon the Sháh, and sacrifice
 Thyself for him in fight, because the day
 Of Áhri man is coming on apace
 When circling heaven will show us enmity.”

When he had sealed the letter he said thus :—
 “ My blessing be upon the messenger
 That shall convey this letter to my brother,
 And tell him not what I have said, but other ! ”

§ 3

*How Rustam wrote to Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and how
 he replied*

C. 2066 He sent a messenger in swiftness like
 The flash and thunder-clap to Sa'ad. They wrote,
 In apprehension yet not in despair,
 A letter on white silk and thus endorsed :—
 “ This from the paladin of paladins—
 The warlike Rustam, son of Hurmuzdsháh¹—
 To Sa'ad, son of Wakkás, the prudent, wise,
 And circumspect, who hath come forth to fight.”

It thus began : “ We still must fear the World-lord,
 The Holy, who sustaineth turning heaven,

¹ Cf. Mardánsháh as a proper name and p. 59.

Whose rule is justice and beneficence.
 May blessings from Him rest upon the king,
 The lustre of the signet, crown, and throne,
 The lord of sword, of diadem and lasso,
 Whose Grace restraineth Áhriman in bonds.
 A hateful matter hath occurred to us
 In these uncalled for labours and this strife.
 Reply to me and say who is your king,
 Who thou art, what thy rule and custom are,
 And whose assistance is it that ye seek
 With unmailed soldiery and unmailed chief ?
 Fed up with bread thou art still ravenous ;
 Thou hast no elephants, no throne, no baggage.
 Enough for thee to live within Frán,
 For crown and signet are another man's,
 Who hath Grace, elephants, and crown and throne—
 A famous Sháh of lengthy lineage.
 No throned king hath such stature or the moon
 In heaven such aspect. When enthroned he sitteth
 With smiles that make his silvèn teeth appear ;
 His gifts would purchase Arabs in the gross,
 And not impoverish his treasury.
 His dogs, his hawks, and cheetahs are twelve thousand,
 And they are decked with golden bells and varvels.
 The whole waste of the wielders of the spear
 Could find not in a year from end to end
 Enough to feed his cheetahs and his hounds
 When he is hunting on the plain. The Arabs,
 From drinking camels' milk and eating lizards,
 Have reached a pitch wherat the Persian throne
 Is coveted ! Shame, shame on circling heaven !
 Ye have no veneration in your eyes,
 Or, in your wisdom, love or reverence.
 With such a visage and such tastes and ways
 Is thy heart set upon the crown and throne ?
 If thou art seeking power within thy means,

C. 2067

And art not merely speaking words in jest,
 Dispatch to us some man of goodly speech,
 Send some brave veteran and man of lore,
 That he may tell me thine intent and who
 Doth lead thee to attempt the royal throne.
 Then will I send a horseman to the Sháh
 To ask of him whatever thou wilt ask,
 But seek not with so great a king to fight,
 For shame at last will come upon thy face.
 His grandsire was the world-lord Núshírwán,
 Whose justice made the agéd young again.
 His fathers have been Sháhs, and he is king ;
 The age remembereth none like to him.
 Fill not the world with curses on thyself,
 Misprize not thine own precedents. Regard
 This letter of advice and bar not thou
 Thine eyes and ears to wisdom.” When the letter
 Was sealed he gave it to high-born Pírúz,
 Son of Shápúr. To Sa’ad, son of Wakkás,
 This paladin and magnates from Írán,
 Of ardent soul, went whelmed in iron, silver,
 And gold, with golden shields and golden girdles.
 On hearing, Sa’ad, that noble man, set forth,
 Swift as the flying dust, to meet Pírúz
 With troops, forthwith dismounted and inquired
 About the army and its paladin,
 About the Sháh, his minister and host,
 The watchful leader and his provinces.
 He spread his cloak beneath Pírúz and said :—
 “ We hold the sword and spear to be our mates :
 Brave warriors make no mention of brocade,
 Of gold and silver or of food and slumber.
 Ye have no part in manhood but are like
 To women with your colours, scents, and forms.
 Your prowess is in donning broidery,
 Adorning roofs and decorating doors.”

Pírúz then gave the letter and told Sa'ad
The words of Rustam. Sa'ad heard, read, and
wondered.

He wrote an answer back in Arabic,
Announcing good and ill. He wrote there first
The name of God and of His messenger,
Muhammad, who directeth to the truth.
He spake of Jins and men, of what the Prophet,
The Háshimite,¹ had said, the Unity
Of God, of the Kurán, of promise, warning,
Of menace and of novel usages,
Of liquid pitch, of fire, and icy cold,
Of Paradise, its streams of milk and wine,
Of camphor and of musk, of bubbling springs,
Of wine and honey and the trees of heaven.²
Then : "If the Sháh accepteth the true Faith
He will obtain both worlds with joy and kingship,
And have withal the earrings and the crown,
Perpetual beauty and prosperity.

His intercessor there will be Muhammad,
His form like pure rose-water. In as much
As Paradise will be thy recompense
We must not plant thorns in the garth of bale.
The personality of Yazdagird,
This spacious world, such gardens, riding-grounds,
And halls and palaces with all the thrones
And crowns, the festivals and revelries,
Are less worth than one hair of an Hourí.
In this our Wayside Hostelry thine eyes
Are dazed by crown and treasure, and thou trustest
Too much in ivory throne, in wealth, and signet,
In fortune and in crown. Why be concerned
About a world when one draught of cold water
Out-prizeth it ? Whoever cometh forth

C. 2068

¹ Háshim was the great-grandfather of Muhammad.² This is taken from the Kurán. Cf. Vol. i., p. 99.

To fight with me will see a narrow grave,
 And Hell, naught else ; but Paradise is his
 If he believeth. Mark how he should fare.
 He still will choose the one and shun the other
 As every wise man knoweth."

Then he set

The Arab seal thereon and praised Muhammad.
 The messenger of Sa'ad, son of Wakkás,
 Went with all speed to Rustam. Now what time
 Shu'ba Mughíra went forth from the chiefs
 To journey to the paladin, a noble,
 One of the Iránians, came in from the way
 Before the captain of the host, and said :—
 "A messenger hath come—a weak, old man—
 Without a horse or weapons and ill-clad,
 With thin sword slung about his neck and shirt
 All plainly tattered."

Rustam thus apprised
 Prepared a tent-enclosure of brocade.
 They laid a carpet of gold thread of Chín ;
 The soldiery turned out like ants and locusts.
 They set a golden ante-throne whereon
 The captain of the host assumed his seat
 With eight score warriors attending him—
 Horsemen and lions on the day of battle—
 With crowns, with violet robes, and golden boots,
 With torques and earrings, while the tent-enclosure
 Was royally adorned. Shu'ba Mughíra,
 On coming to the tent-enclosure, walked not
 Upon the cloth but humbly on the ground,
 And used his scimitar as walking-stick.
 He sat upon the dust without a look
 At any—captain of the host or chief.
 Then Rustam said to him : "May thy soul joy,
 And by its knowledge make thy body strong."
 Shu'ba Mughíra said : "If thou, good sir !

Acceptest the true Faith, peace unto thee."

Now Rustam, hearing this, was vexed and frowned.
 He took and gave the letter to a reader.
 That learned man told him what was writ, and Rustam
 Made answer : " Tell him : ' Thou art neither king
 Nor an aspirant to the diadem,
 But thou hast seen my fortune in eclipse,¹
 And so thy heart ambitioneth my throne.
 The case is one of moment to the wise,
 But thou hast not considered it. If Sa'ad
 Had the Sásánian throne I well might share
 His feasts and fights, but since the faithless stars
 Bode ill, what shall I say ? This is the day
 Of bale. If for my guide I take Muhammad,
 And this new Faith for old, all will go wrong
 Beneath this crook-backed sky, and all go hard
 With us.' But as for thee, depart in peace ;
 The day of battle is no time for words.
 Tell Sa'ad : ' To die with honour is a thing
 Far better for me than crude parleying.'

C. 2069

§ 4

*How Rustam fought with Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and
 was slain*

Shu'ba Mughíra went his way, and Rustam
 Bade to array the host and sound the trumpet.
 From all sides troops assembled, clouds of dust
 Arose, and din that deafed the sharpest ears.
 " The steely lance-heads mid the murkyreck
 Are," thou hadst said, " stars mid night's azure
 gloom,"

¹ Reading with P.

While spears ne'er ceased to smite on glittering helms.
 The strife endured three days, till water failed
 The Iránians, and their warriors' hands and steeds
 Became unfit for combat. Rustam's lips
 Grew as the dust with drought, his tongue was split,
 And men and horses battened on moist clay,
 So grievous was the stress !

C. 2070

Shouts rose like thunder
 From Rustam and from Sa'ad as they advanced,
 Each from his post. Each left his army's centre,
 And drew off from the field. Departing thus
 They came beneath a steep-up eminence,
 And there those chieftains twain assailed each other
 Revengefully upon that scene of strife
 Till Rustam, roaring like a thunder-clap,
 Smote with his sword Sa'ad's charger on the head,
 Smote the swift charger which came headlong down,
 And brave Sa'ad was unhorsed. Then Rustam reared
 Aloft a trenchant blade to show to him
 The Day of Doom, and was in mind to strike
 His head off, but by reason of the dust
 Raised by the troops they could not see each other.
 Then Rustam lighted from his steed and saddle
 Of leopard-skin and fastened to his belt
 His charger's reins but, while dust blinded him,
 Sa'ad hurried up and smote him with the sword
 Upon his helm whence blood ran down his face,
 And while his eyes were blinded by the gore
 The aspiring Arab gained the upper hand,
 Again smote Rustam on the head and neck,
 And flung his warrior-body on the dust.
 None in the two hosts were aware thereof,
 Or whither those two paladins had gone,
 But searched until they found the scene of strife.
 The Iránians, when they spied their paladin
 Slashed by the scimitar from head to foot,

Fled. Many a chieftain perished in the press,
 And many failed for thirst upon the saddle.
 The world had had full measure of the Sháhs.
 The host fared to the monarch of Irán,
 And hastened on the way both day and night.
 When Rustam had been slain in fight, and when
 The chiefs' heads were all turned, the Muslim host
 Sped like a savage lion in pursuit.¹
 At that time Yazdagird was at Baghdád ;
 To him the troops came flocking and announced
 That Rustam was no more, and that the sea
 Was dry with grief, that many men had fallen,
 And that the rest had fled the battlefield.
 The hosts, both Persian and Arabian,
 Reached Karkh, and Farrukhzád, son of Hormuzd,
 Wroth and with tearful eyes came from the Arwand,
 Arrived at Karkh, fell on the enemy,
 And not an Arab warrior survived.
 The Persians marched out from Baghdád intent
 To meet the foe, and bloody was the event.

§ 5

*How Yazdagird consulted with the Iránians and went
 to Khurásán*

When Farrukhzád had gone back to the Sháh,
 All over dust and in his fighting-gear,
 He lighted from his charger, did obeisance,

¹ The French version of the rest of this section is as follows :—
 “ Yezdegird était à Bagdad lorsque ses troupes affluèrent autour de lui. Farrukhzad, fils d'Hormuzd, furieux et répandant des larmes, traversa le Tigre, entra dans Kerkh et livra un assaut terrible qui ne lassa vivant aucun des guerriers armés de lances. Les troupes sortirent aussitôt de Bagdad et allèrent chercher le combat dans la plaine ; mais lorsque la poussière de la lutte se fut dissipée, les Iraniens étaient en fuite.”

Blood in his eyes and anguish in his heart,
And said to Yazdagird : " Why weep so much ?
Is it to wash the throne of kings with tears ?

C. 2071 Thou only of the royal race art left
To wear the crown and sit upon the throne.
One, with a hundred thousand enemies,
How canst thou battle when exposed to all ?
Betake thee to the forest of Nárwan ;
The folk will gather to thee there and thence,
Like valiant Farídún, do thou renew
The fight like fire."

The king of kings gave ear.

New thoughts occurred. Upon the morrow's morn
He sat upon his throne, assumed the crown,
Held an assembly with his men of lore,
The magnates and shrewd-hearted archimates,
And said : " What seemeth good to you herein ?
What precedents recall ye from the past ?
Saith Farrukhzád to me : ' Depart and take
Thy followers to the forest of Nárwan :
The people of Ámul, are servitors,
The people of Sarí all slaves, to thee,
And, when thy troops are many, come again
With puissance to battle with the Brave.'
Do ye approve ? "

They all of them exclaimed :—
" That is the course."

The king of kings rejoined :—
" It is not well. I purpose otherwise.
Shall I desert the chieftains of Frán,
And this great host, our country, throne, and crown
To save myself ? That were not majesty,
Or manliness or policy. To fight
The foe is better for me than disgrace.
The leopard spake a saw in this regard :—
' Whene'er the time of stress shall come on thee'

Turn not in folly from thine enemy.'
 For just as subjects should obey their king
 In good and ill so he must not desert them
 In their distress and go off to his treasures.'"

The great men blessed him, saying : " Crown
 and signet

Exist for ends like these. Think what thy will
 And wishes are, and what assurances
 Thou wouldest of us."

The Sháh thus answered them :—

" Anxiety is ruin to the heart.

Our best course is to go to Khurásán
 Where we shall feel secure from strife with foes,
 For there we are possessed of many troops,
 And valiant paladins. The Turkish chiefs
 And Khán of Chín will come and do us homage
 While I will make the union stronger still
 By marriage with the daughter of Faghfúr.
 A great host will arrive to succour us,
 The magnates of Túrán and mighty men.
 There is the warden of the marches too,
 Máhwí, with horsemen, elephants, and wealth
 Of all kinds. He is our chief governor,
 The highest of the guardians of our coasts.
 I raised him when he was a vagabond,
 A minstrel and a braggart, giving him,
 Though worthless, name and worth, men, government,
 Lands, elephants. Base though he be and vile
 Still his advancement hath been at my court.
 Now I have heard an archmage quote this saw :—
 ' Of one whom thou hast wrongly harmed beware :
 Of one made rich by thee thy hopes are fair.'
 I never injured him in aught, and he
 Will 'venge me on my foe.'"

C. 2072

But Farrukhzád

Smote his two hands together and exclaimed :—

“ O Sháh who fearest God ! put little trust
 In those of evil bent. In this regard
 There is a modern saw which runneth thus :—
 ‘ Howe’er on birth thou practise witchery,
 And strivest such an one from rust to free,
 Since the All-giver framed him thus to be
 To loose God’s bonds thou wilt not find a key.’ ”

“ O mighty, raging Lion ! ” said the Sháh,
 “ To make this trial will work me no hurt.”

He stayed that night and, when the morning broke,
 Those noble men set forth and left Baghdád
 For Khurásán, and took their travail lightly.
 The chieftains of Irán all sorrowful
 Accompanied their Sháh, that noble man,
 And called down blessings on him, saying : “ May
 time,
 And earth, ne’er lack thee.”

From the host rose wails
 For grief and at the going of the king,
 And all the Iránian thanes—the warriors’ stay—
 Drew near to him with outcries and in tears,
 And said to him : “ O Sháh ! we are thy slaves
 With souls and bodies filled with love for thee.
 We all will go with thee to learn how fortune
 Will sport with our king’s life, for if we lose
 Our Sháh how can our hearts find joy in home,
 And country ? We will quit our settlements,
 Our children, and our wealth to share thy toils.
 We care not for our lives without thy throne :
 May fortune ne’er abandon thee.”¹

All tears the king of kings said to those nobles :—
 “ Be ever more intent in praising God.
 It may be I shall look on you again,
 And that our sorrows and distress will cease.

¹ Three couplets omitted.

Ye all are my true helpers and the heirlooms
 Left by my sires. I would not have you harmed :
 Share not mine ills then. We will mark the intent
 Of circling heaven, its progress, and to whom
 It sheweth love. Resign yourself thereto :
 None can evade its secret purposes.”

Then said he to the merchantmen of Chín :—
 “ Make no long tarrying here, else will the Arabs
 Convert your quest of gain to loss.”

They parted

With pain and trouble, sorrow, care, and wailing.
 So Farrukhzád, son of Húrmuzd, led forth
 The troops and called the veterans of Irán,
 And then the Sháh set out with wail and woe.
 The leader led the van. Stage after stage
 He marched to Rai and tarried there for wine,
 And minstrels, thence went he to Gurgán,
 Like wind, and stayed one se’nnight sad or glad.
 Departing thence toward Bust he set his face
 With wrinkled cheeks and body in ill case.

§ 6

How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr

The world-lord, resolute to go to Marv,
 Wrote to Máhwí of Súr, the governor,
 In rage and pain, in tears and hope deferr'd,
 And calling an experienced scribe poured forth
 His heart, and it was full. He first praised God,
 The all-wise Lord, the Fosterer, the Master
 Of circling Mars and Sol, of elephant
 And ant, at will creating out of naught,
 And needing no instructor, then proceeded :—

C. 2074

“ What hath befallen us ! And gone are all
 This kingship’s hue and perfume. Rustam’s death
 Upon the battlefield and by the hand
 Of one whose name is Sa’ad, son of Wakkás,
 A landless, low-born, witless, aimless man,
 Hath straitened all the world to us through sorrow.
 Now that Sa’ad’s army is at Taisafún,
 With woods and foot-hills fronting them, array
 Thy host to fight with his and summon all
 Thy troops to that same end:¹ Lo ! I will follow
 Behind my letter swiftly as the wind,
 And give thee what I purpose in my mind.”²

§ 7

How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús

He wrote moreover to the folk of Tús,
 With full heart and with face like sandarac,
 First offering his praises to the Judge
 “ From whom are fortune, strength, and excellnce,
 Grace, triumph, throne, and diadem of kingship.
 From foot of ant to soaring eagle’s plume,
 From elephant on land to crocodile
 In water, all are faithful, do His will,
 And draw no breath unless by His command.
 This from the world’s Sháh, mighty Yazdagird,
 Son³ of a famous king and valorous,
 Victorious leader of the Iránian host,
 Who guardeth his domain, desireth more,
 And cometh of a great, God-fearing race
 That thank their stars that they possess the crown,

¹ Three couplets omitted. ² Two couplets omitted.

³ Reading with P.

Have peopled earth and made crown, throne, and
signet

Resplendent, to his marchlords with their thrones
And treasures, Grace, high-bearing, crowns and host
At Shamíráñ, Rúína,¹ and Mount Ráda,
Kalát and elsewhere. May the Fosterer
Watch over us and keep you from the seath
Of evil hap. In sooth the chiefs have heard,
For it hath been an ensign in the world,
That in regard to warfare, valour, birth,
Our hearts are full of kindness, love, and justice.
High birth especially constraineth us—
The Sháhs—to let our toils exceed our treasures
On your behalf. What time Bahram Chúbína,
That malecontent, grew noted and rejected
Our rule and diadem ye all abandoned
Your marches, spacious cities, pleasures,
Your parks and palaces, and in that case,
In terror of disaster, made your homes
On dale and lofty height. If God almighty
Shall grant me strength and fortune favour us
I will repay your good deeds lavishly,
And pray to Him who watcheth o'er the world.
In sooth ye must have heard of what the stars
Have brought upon our head by these vile Snakes
With looks like Áhriman, who lack all knowledge,
Shame, fame, and treasure, fortune and descent,
And fain would let the world go to the winds.
It is the compass of the lofty sky
That tribulation shall befall this realm
By these vile miscreants, these Raven-heads,²
Devoid of sense and knowledge, fame and shame.
These greedy men, who covet diadems,

C. 2075

¹ "Rouindiz." Mohl.

² The Persians translated "Aráb" by "Zágh" (raven) and applied the expression to those hated enemies.

Have fixed their eyes upon this royal state,
 And Núshírwán once dreamed that this our throne
 Would lose its brilliant lustre. He beheld
 A hundred thousand Arabs—raging camels
 With bits¹ snapped—seeking how to cross the Arwand,
 And bring destruction on our fields and fells,
 Saw that both Fire and Fane of Fire would perish,
 The light of New Year end and Sada feast,
 That in Frán and Babylon dark smoke
 Would rise from tilth and crop to Saturn's sphere,
 While on the world-king's hall the battlements
 Would tumble to the ground.² The dream is now
 Fulfilled and heaven's favour fain to quit us.
 Those that we value most will be misprized,
 The base will be set up on high by fortune,
 Ill scattered through the world, mishap apert
 And good concealed. In all the provinces
 Some tyrant, some obscene calamity,
 And signs of dark night's coming will appear,
 Our glorious fortune be cut off from us.
 Now as our counsellors and paladins—
 Men of pure rede—advise we purpose going
 To Khurásán and to its warlike marchlords.
 Because now of the governor of Tús
 Have I led here the elephants and drums,
 And we shall see how fortune will make bonds
 Of our frail knots. I am girt up for battle
 That I may meet the Arabs face to face,
 While Farrukhzád—my very veins and skin,
 And my firm friend—is now at Altúníya,
 Intent on fight, and host confronteth host,
 While Kashmigán, that warrior's son, hath reached
 Our court and spoken well and loyally.

¹ Properly the piece of wood passed through a perforation made in the nostrils of a camel to guide it by.

² See Vol. viii., p. 66.

C. 2076

I heard what he could tell about these marches,
 Their heights and depths, their caves, retreats, the
 hold

Upon Mount Gumbadán and Jarmana,
 The fort of Lázhawardí for our stores,
 Spots such as Ál, Makhzúm, and waste of Gil :
 He kindly opened all his heart to me.
 My host for battle is too numerous
 To tarry long within these narrow holds.
 We have held council ; all the paladins
 Attended ; we debated and resolved
 To take with us crown, throne, and seal and
 signet,
 All garments of Kashmír and Rúm and Chin,
 Such goods as we can gather from Kibchák
 And from Kírwán, all that we have in hand
 Of clothes and carpets, articles of gold,
 With gems uncut and all that most we prize,
 And provand and equipment for the future.
 Of oxen forty thousand will drag loads
 Of unthrashed corn and after these will come
 Twelve thousand asses drawing loads of dates
 For us. A trusty archimage will bring
 Pistachios, millet, and pomegranate-juice.
 Attending on the outcome they will send
 Thereafter many asses' loads of salt,
 And add a thousand camels' loads of millet,
 Fat from the tails of sheep and butter-skins.
 A thousand Bactrian camels will bring dates,
 Another thousand sugar, as their loads.
 Twelve thousand also will bring drums of honey.
 All these will come at one time to the holds.
 Besides all these my servants will bring in
 Some forty thousand salted carcases,
 And of black naphtha in the next two months
 Three hundred camel-loads. An archimage

With escort will arrive from¹ Shamírán,
 And from Mount Ráda while, in sight of all
 The elders and the wise, the mountain-chiefs,
 Sent by the marchlords, will convey whate'er
 Is needed to the gates and give the list
 To our own treasurer, and if the Great
 Among the folk will but restrain themselves
 They will in sooth receive no injury
 Among the valleys and the lofty hills
 From Arab or from Turkman. Help from you
 In these our strenuous times will aid us much.
 Our minister, that wise and holy man,
 Will now give orders to our treasurer
 To send five robes of Persian make to all
 That toil for us and, when those toils are over,
 A splendid turban of gold broidery.
 In these our present troubles each shall have
 Two score drachms from our treasures, afterwards,
 For service rendered, for each drachm three-score,
 Each worth more than ten dángs,² and he will read
 This legend : ‘In the name of holy God,
 The Object of our reverence, hopes, and fears,’
 Upon one side. The other side will bear
 Our face and crown, the legend : ‘Through our love
 The earth becometh fruitful.’ These have been
 Prepared for New Year’s Day, the nobles’ eyes
 Fulfilled with wealth. God’s blessing on the man
 Whose faults are few and who forgetteth not
 Our diadem.”

The Sháh when he had sealed
 The letter sent it to the army-chiefs.
 With this king’s missive in his hand there came
 A horseman of high fortune and high aim.

¹ Reading with P.

² The dág properly was a quarter of a drachm.

§ 8

How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr met him

Thence they conveyed the drums and came to Tús
 From Nishápúr. Máhwí of Súr had news :—
 “The Sháh is on the road to Dahistán,”
 And went to meet him with a mighty power,
 All spearmen and in coats of mail, and when
 The Glory of the royal state appeared,
 The flag of majesty and such a host,
 Alighted from his steed forthwith and paid
 His duty to the king of kings, walked softly
 Upon the burning dust and from his eyes
 Shed tears of reverence. He kissed the ground,
 Prolonging his obeisance. All his troops
 Acclaimed the Sháh and touched earth with their
 heads,

While Farrukhzád enranked his powers when he
 Beheld the visage of Máhwí of Súr
 By whom his heart was joyed and whom he coun-
 selléd

At large : “This Sháh of royal race do I
 Commit to thee to serve him, suffering not
 The blast to blow on him, and none save thee
 To earn his thanks. I must depart to Rai,
 Uncertain whether I shall see again
 The royal crown for 'gainst these Arab spearmen
 Full many such as I have died in battle.
 There was not one within the world like Rustam,
 The horseman, never hath the ear of sage
 Heard tell of such, yet by a Raven-head¹

C. 2078

See p. 91, note.

Was he cut off, so adverse was our day !
 God grant to him a place among the Just,
 And give the swarthy Ravens to our spears !

Máhwí replied : “ O paladin ! the Sháh
 Is eye and soul to me. I undertake
 In thy place to defend thy king, thy Heaven.”

So Farrukhzád, son of Húrmuzd, departed
 To Rai as bidden by the Sháh. The sky
 Revolved awhile with matters in this stay,
 And all love passed from that malignant’s brain,
 And none dared go to battle with the Arabs
 Because the azure sky was helping them ;
 The visage of the monarch of Írán
 Grew wrinkled ; the foe’s deeds made strait his heart.
 Máhwí saw that the Sháh was at a stay,
 And driven on by fortune helplessly,
 Ambitioned speedily the throne and changed
 In policy, in manners, and dispose,
 Then for a season he began to affect
 Ill health and barely showed the Sháh respect.

§ 9

How Máhwí of Súr incited Bízhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill

There was a paladin, a Turk by race,
 A man of influence and named Bízhan ;
 He dwelt within the coasts of Samarkand
 Where he had many kin. Ill-starred Mahwí,
 Becoming self-assertive, wrote to him :—
 “ Thou prosperous scion of the paladins !

A strife hath risen that will bring thee profit :
 The Sháh is of all places here at Marv
 And with no troops ! His head and crown and state,
 Wealth, throne, and host, are thine if thou wilt come.
 Recall the vengeance owing to thy sires,
 And give this unjust race its just reward.”

Bízhan, considering the letter, saw
 That insolent Máhwí would win the world,
 Then spake thus to his minister : “ Thou chief
 Of upright men ! what sayest thou to this ?
 If I lead forth a host to aid Máhwí
 ’Twill be my ruin here.”¹

The minister

Replied : “ O lion-hearted warrior !
 ’Twere shame to help Máhwí and then withdraw.
 Command Barsám to set forth with a host
 To aid upon this scene of strife. The sage
 Will term thee daft to go and fight in person
 At the insistence of this man of Súr.”

C. 2079

Bízhan replied : “ ’Tis well, I will not go
 Myself.”

He therefore bade Barsám to lead
 Ten thousand valiant cavaliers and swordsmen
 To Marv with all the implements of war
 If haply he might take the Sháh. That host
 Went like a flying pheasant from Bukhárá
 To Marv within one week. One night at cock-erow
 The sound of tymbals went up from the plain.
 How could the king of kings suspect Mahwí
 Of Súr to be his enemy ? Shouts rose.
 A cavalier reached Yazdagird at dawn
 To say : “ Máhwí saith thus : ‘ A host of Turks
 Hath come. What is the bidding of the Sháh ?
 The Khán and the Faghfúr of Chín command :
 Earth is not able to support their host ! ’ ”

¹ Two couplets omitted.

The Sháh wroth donned his mail. The armies ranged.¹

He formed his troops to right and left, and all Advanced to battle. Spear in hand he held The centre, and the whole world was bedimmed With flying dust. He saw how lustily The Turks engaged, unsheathed his sword, and came, As 'twere an elephant before his troops. Earth Nile-wise flowed. Like thundering cloud he charged,

But not a warrior supported him ; All turned their backs upon that man of name, And left him mid the horsemen of the foe. The world's king, when Máhwí withdrew, perceived The practice hid till then—the intent and plan To capture him—yet played the man in sight, Displaying valour, strength, and warriorship, Slew many at the centre, but at length Fled in despair, with falchion of Kábul In hand, pursued by many Turks. He sped Like lightning mid night's gloom and spied a mill On the canal of Zark². Alighting there The world's king lay in hiding from his foes Within the mill. The horsemen searched for him ; All Zark was hue and cry. The Sháh abandoned His gold-trapped steed, his mace, and scimitar With golden sheath. The Turks with loud shouts sought him,

Excited by that steed and equipage. The Sháh within the mill-house lurked in hay. With this false Hostel thus it ever is : The ascent is lofty and profound the abyss. With Yazdagird, while fortune slumbered not, A throne enskied³ by heaven was his lot, And now it was a mill ! Excess of sweet

¹ Couplet omitted.

² See LEC, p. 400.

³ Reading with T.

Bred bane for him and, if thou art discreet,
 Affect not this world for its end is ill.
 Whiles a tame serpent to the touch it still
 At whiles will bite, and hot that bite will be.
 Why then affect this cozening hostelry
 While like a drum the signal to be gone
 Thou hearest, bidding : “ Bind the baggage on,
 And for sole throne the grave’s floor look upon ? ”

With mouth untasting and with tearful eyes
 The Sháh abode until the sun arose,
 And then the miller oped the mill-house door.
 He bore a truss of grass upon his back.
 A low-born-man was he, by name Khusrau,
 Poor, foolish, unrespected, purposeless.
 He lived upon the profits of his mill,
 Which gave him full employment. He beheld
 A warrior, like a lofty cypress, sitting
 In dolour on the ground with kingly crown
 Upon his head and with brocade of Rúm
 Bright on his breast ; his eyes a stag’s, his chest
 And neck a lion’s ; of beholding him
 The eye ne’er tired. He was unique in form ;
 Wore golden boots ; his sleeves were fringed with
 pearls
 And gold. Khusrau looked, stood astound, and
 called
 On God, then said : “ O man of sunlike mien !
 Say in what sort thou camest to this mill ?
 Why didst thou take it for thy resting-place
 Full as it is of wheat and dust and hay ?
 Who art thou with such form, such Grace and looks ?
 Sure, heaven never saw the like of thee ! ”

The Sháh replied : “ I am Iránian-born,
 In flight before the army of Túrán.”

The miller said, abashed : “ I have no comrade
 Save penury, but still, if barley-bread,

With some poor cresses from the river-bank,
Will serve thee I will bring them ; naught have I
Besides : a man so straitened well may wail."

Through stress of fight the Sháh had rested not,
Or eaten, for three days and so replied :—
“ Bring what thou hast, that and the sacred twigs
Will serve my turn.”

C. 2081

The poor and lowly miller
Brought him the cresses and the barley-bread,
Made haste to fetch the sacred twigs and, reaching
The toll-house¹ on the way, crossed to the chief
Of Zark to make request for them. Máhwí
Had sent men on all sides to find the Sháh,
And so the chieftain asked the miller : “ Friend !
For whom need’st thou the sacred twigs ? ”

Khusrau

Replied : “ There is a warrior at the mill,
And seated on the hay, a cypress slim
In height, a sun in looks, a man of Grace,
With eyebrows arched and melancholy eyes :
His mouth is full of sighs, his soul is sad.
I set stale fare before him—barley-bread,
Such as I eat myself—but he is fain
To take the sacred twigs while muttering grace.²
Thou well mayst muse at him.”

The chief rejoined :—

“ Go and inform Máhwí of Súr hereof,
For that foul miscreant must not reveal
His proper bent when he shall hear of this.”³

Forthwith he charged a trusty man to take

¹ The toll-house was at the ford or ferry. The same word might also mean a place of worship and accordingly Mohl or rather his successor (see p. 37 *note*) translates :— “ Il se rendit au lieu où était l’oratoire et fit prévenir aussitôt le chef de Zark qu’on lui demandait le Barsom.”

² See Vol. i., p. 80 s.v. *Bdj.*

³ I.e. if subsequently he should learn that we knew and did not tell him.

The miller to Máhwí who asked of him,
Then anxious for himself ; “ For whom didst thou
Require the sacred twigs ? Tell me the truth.”

The miller all a-tremble made reply :—
“ I had been out to fetch a load and flung
The mill-door open roughly, when know this :
The sun was in mine eyes, but his are like
Those of a startled fawn ; his locks are dark
As the third watch of night ; his breath suggesteth
Musk, and his face embellisheth his crown.
One that hath never seen the Grace of God
Should take the mill-house key. His diadem
Is full of uncut jewels, and his breast
Bright with brocade of Rúm. The mill hath grown
As ‘twere a sun through him, and yet his food
Is barley-bread, his seat upon the hay !
‘ Spring,’ thou wouldst say, ‘ in Paradisc is he :
No thane e’er set so tall a cypress-tree.’ ”

§ 10

*How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and
how the Archimages counselled Máhwí to forbear*

Now when Máhwí had taken thought he knew :—
“ ’Tis none but Yazdagird ! ” and bade the miller :—
“ Haste and cut off his head forthwith or I
Will cut thine own off presently and leave
None of thy stock alive.”

C. 2082

The chiefs, the nobles,
And mighty men heard this and all the assembly
Were filled with wrath at him ; their tongues were
charged

With words, their eyes with tears. An archimage,
 By name Rádwí, whose mind wore wisdom's bridle,
 Said to Máhwí : " O thou malignant one !
 Why hath the Dív confused thine eyes ? This know :
 The royal and prophetic offices
 Are two gems set within one finger-ring.
 To break one is to trample life and wisdom
 Beneath thy feet. Reflect upon thy words,
 And then forbear. Be not the Maker's foe.
 First will disaster come on thee herefrom,
 Then thou wilt leave a seed-plot for thy child,
 With fruit of colocynth and leafage blood.
 Ere long thou wilt behold thy head abased ;
 Thy villainy will be exposed ; thy sons
 Will reap what thou hast sown. This deed of thine
 Will wreck the Faith of God, and crown and throne
 Will curse thee."

Then a devotee devout,
 Who never put his hand forth to injustice,
 By name Hurmuzd, son of Kharrád, a man
 Who rested in the Faith, said to Máhwí :—
 " O thou oppressor ! quit not thus the way
 Of holy God. I see thy heart and sense
 Bedimmed. We see thy breast a tomb. Though
 strong
 Thou hast no brain ; thy mind is weak ; thou seckest
 The smoke and not the fire. I see that thou
 Wouldst have the malediction of the world,
 And, when thou quit'st it, travail, smart, and anguish.
 Now will thy lifetime prove a wretched one,
 And fire thy dwelling-place when thou departest."

He sat. Shahrán rose and addressed Máhwí :—
 " Why this audacity ? Thou hast opposed
 The king of kings and cottoned with the Khán
 And the Faghfúr. Full many of this race
 Have proved of no account yet men ne'er hasted

To slay them. Shed not, as thou art a slave,
The blood of Sháhs because thou wilt be cursed
Till Doomsday."

This he said, and sat down weeping
In anguish with heart full and eyes all gall.

Then Mihr-i-Núsh stood forth in deep distress,
With lamentation, and addressed Máhwí :—

" O evil man of evil race, who art
Not well advised or just ! a crocodile
Respecteth royal blood, a leopard finding
A slain king doth not rend him. O thou worse
In love and instinct than the beasts of prey !

Thou covetest the Sháh's crown ! When Jamishíd
Was slaughtered by Zahhák did that affect

Heaven's will ? Nay, when Zahhák had won the earth
Abtíń appeared, the glorious Farídún

Was born, the fashion of the world was changed,
And thou hast heard what tyrannous Zahhák
Brought on himself as sequel of his crimes,
For though he lived above a thousand years
Still in the end the avenger came to him.

Then, secondly, when Túr, the exalted one,
Afflicted by his longing for Íráń,
Slew in his folly virtuous Íraj,

On whom the very dust looked pityingly,
Dispatched him¹ to the hero Farídún,
And gave the world to sorrow, Minúchihr,
One of the race, appeared and undid all

Those bonds. When, thirdly, princely Siyáwush
Went forth to war, albeit reluctantly,
Afrásiyáb, inspired by Garsíwaz,
Washed shame and honour from his mind and wits,
And slew the youthful and right royal prince,
So that the world became his enemy.

Sprung from that prince the world-lord Kai Khusrau

C. 2083

¹ His head, according to the story. See Vol. i., p. 202.

Came and filled all the world with hubbub, clave
 Asunder with his scimitar his grandsire,¹
 And frayed all those that else had sought revenge.
 The fourth count is the feud against Arjásp.
 The slayer of Luhrásp. Aslāndiyár
 Went forth to fight with him and took swift wreak.
 Fifth, is the vengeance ta'en for Sháh Hurmuzd.
 Khusrau Parwíz, whenas he felt confirmed
 In heart and power, dealt in the way we know
 Both with Bandwí and Gustaham. The sky,
 Which then revolved, revolveth still.² Forgetting
 What they had done for him, when his sire's blood
 And love and family appealed to him,
 He in his day of strength abated theirs.³
 One may not scorn the occasion of revenge,
 For such a time will quickly come to thee,
 And thou wilt suffer for thine evil thoughts,
 Thy son will reap what thou hast sown, and fate
 Will not rest long from vengeance ; so refrain
 From all this treasure-hoard, this heritage
 Of crown and precious things. Thou art revolting
 Because the Dív enjoineth, and abjuring
 The way of God. The Dív, as thou wilt learn,⁴
 Is tempting thee with things not for thine honour.
 Burn not thy soul and body in Hell-fire ;
 Dim not this world-illumining crown but gather
 Thy scattered troops ; recant what thou hast said ;
 Go ask the Sháh to pardon thee and when
 Thou seest him renew thy fealty.
 From there prepare to battle with the foe ;
 Be instant both in counsel and excuse,
 For not to hearken to the words of sages
 Will mark thee out as evil in both worlds.
 Men bring to naught things done a day too late.

¹ Afrásiyáb, whose daughter Farangíz married Siyáwush.
² I.e. history repeats itself. ³ Vol. viii., pp. 354, 358.

Wilt thou treat Yazdagird, the king of kings,
 Worse than malignant Turks, for in the fray
 He is a lion, on the throne a Sháh
 As bright as sun and moon, a memory
 Of the Sásánians ? None is girdle-girt
 Like him. From sirc to sirc his ancestors
 Were mighty men and compassers of wisdom
 From Núshírwán, the Sháh, back to Ardshír,
 While, seventh backward from Ardshír, Sásán,
 The world-lord, had the crown,¹ for God entrusted
 To him the Kaian crown, and all the kings
 Were of that glorious race. Now many a man
 Hath been thy better, but they ne'er conceived
 Designs like these. As for Bahrám Chúbína,
 Three hundred thousand skilful cavaliers
 On barded steeds fled at one shaft of his,²
 And left the field of fight to him ; but when
 His heart grew weary of the race of Sháhs
 The head of his resplendent fortune fell.
 So Faráyín, who sought the throne of kings
 Unworthily and bathed his hands in blood,
 Was in like manner miserably slain :
 This age endureth not such mockeries.
 Fear Him, the Lord, the Maker of the world,
 For He created throne and crown and signet.
 Defame not thine own person wantonly
 Because ere long such things will rise against thee.
 Know that whocver speaketh not the truth
 To thee is thy soul's foe. Now thou art sick
 While I am as the leech, a leech that wailcth,

¹ *De jure* not *de facto*. The first Sásán, here referred to, was the son of Dárá and after his father's overthrow by Sikandar took refuge in obscurity. Several generations later a descendant of his of the same name became the father of Ardshír Pápakán—the founder of the Sásánian Dynasty. The Sásánians, naturally sought to connect themselves with the old line of the Persian monarchy, with the Achaemenids in history and with the Kaiánians in legend. Cf. Vol. vi., p. 199.

² See Vol. viii., p. 126.

And sheddeth drops of blood. Thou art thyself
Less than the slave of slaves. Be not ambitious
In thy heart's thoughts. Leave strife to holy God,
And seek in honour's way the throne of greatness."

The shepherd-born¹ had set his heart upon
The throne : the archimages' rede was hard.
So hath it ever been ; 'tis no new thing :
The flouts of fortune are past reckoning,
Exalting to the sky above this one,
And making that vile, wretched, and undone,
Not leagued with that, on war with this not bent,
But void of wit, shame, Faith, and precedent.

The archimages all, till the world gloomed and moon
Succeeded sun, warned that vindictive man,
Who was not one hair better for their talk,
And said when night came : " Ye must leave me now
C. 2085 O sages ! I will ponder this to-night,
And take all kinds of wisdom to my breast.
We will call twenty wise men from the host
That we may need not to deplore this ill."

The prudent archimages went their ways,
The men of war arrived. Mähwí held session
With his confederates² and said : " What think ye
Herein ? If Yazdagird remain alive
Troops will collect to him from every side ;
My secret purposes have been exposed,
And all, both great and small, have heard thercof !
My life will end through his hostility,
And neither folk nor field and fell be left."

A wise man said : " Thou shouldst not have acted
At first so. If the monarch of Frán
Be ill-disposed toward thee then past doubt
Ill will befall thee from him, yet 'tis ill
To shed his blood for then God will avenge him.
To left and right are cares and pains of all kinds :

¹ I.e. Mähwí. Cf. p. 87.

² Reading with P.

Consider how thou need'st must act herein."

Máhwí's son said to him : " Well counselled sire !
 Since thou hast made the Sháh thine enemy
 Be rid of him ; troops from Máchin and Chín
 Will come to him and earth grow strait for us.
 Hold this no trifle. Since thou hast prevailed
 Tempt not the maws of lions. Thou and all
 Thy host will be uprooted from the world
 If standard-wise the Sháh's skirt be unsurl'd."

§ 11

How Yazdagird was slain by Khusrau, the Miller

Thereat the shameless, infamous Máhwí
 Turned fiercely to the miller, saying : " Up !
 Take cavaliers and shed my foeman's blood."

The miller, hearing, knew not what to do,
 But when at night the moon assumed her throne
 Departed mill-ward to the Sháh and when
 He left the court-gate of Máhwí his eyes
 Were charged with tear-drops and his heart was full.
 Forthwith Máhwí dispatched some cavaliers
 To follow swift as smoke, instructing them :—
 " See that ye sully not the crown and earrings,
 The signet and the royal robes with blood,
 And strip the Sháh when lifeless."

With his eyes
 All tearful and cheeks yellow as the sun
 The miller went, exclaiming : " Judge almighty,
 Who art above the processes of time !
 Wring presently his heart and soul for this
 Abhorred behest ! "

With heart all shame and qualm,

With wetted cheeks and tongue all charged with dust,
 He reached the Sháh and drawing nigh with caution,
 As one would speak a secret in the ear,
 Stabbed with a dirk his middle. At the blow
 The Sháh cried : “ Ah ! ” Then tumbled head and
 crown,
 And barley-bread before him, to the dust !
 He that abideth when he might depart
 From this world hath no wisdom in his heart,
 And wisdom is not in the turning sky,
 Whose love is as its stress and enmity.
 ’Tis well to look not on the world and so
 From these its doings love and wrath not know.
 The planets weary of their fosterlings,

And guiltless folk like Yazdagird are slain ;
 None else hath perished thus of all the kings,

Nor of his host a plier of the rein.
 The horsemen of accursed Máhwí, on seeing
 That royal Tree thus laid to rest afar
 From palace and his scenes of ease, drew near,
 Gazed, one and all, upon his face, removed
 His cincture, violet robe, and coronet,
 His torque and golden boots, and left him there
 In miserable case upon the ground—
 The monarch of Irán flung on the dust,
 Blood-boltered, with gashed side !¹ Those emissaries,
 When they arose, all framed their tongues to curse :—
 “ Oh ! may Máhwí himself fare, prostrate thus,
 All gory on earth’s face.”

They told Máhwí :—

“ The exalted Sháh hath passed away from throne,
 From battle and delights,” and he commanded
 To take, when it was night, the monarch’s corpse,
 And fling it in the stream. The miller took
 The body of the Sháh forth from the mill,

¹ Reading the couplet that follows here two couplets lower.

And flung it (mark the horror !) in the water,¹
And there it floated with a bobbing head !²

When it was day and people went abroad
Two men of worship visited the spot.
One of these men austere and sober reached
The river-bank and, when he saw the corpse
All naked in the water, hurried back
In consternation to the monastery,
And told the other monks what he had seen :—
“ The Sháh, the master of the world, is drowned,
And naked in the water-way of Zark ! ”

Then many of those holy men—the chief
And others of all ranks—set forth. A cry
Of anguish rose from them : “ O noble man,
And royal crown-possessor ! none e'er saw
The wearer of it in such plight as this,
Or ever heard before the time of Christ
A case like this king's through his wicked slave,
This misbegotten dog, this reprobate,
Who fawned upon his master till ill came ;
Máhwi's just portion is to be accursed.
Woe for the head and crown, the height and mien !
Woe for the breast and arms, the hands and mace !
Woe for the last descendant of Ardshír !
Woe for that cavalier so young and goodly !
Strong wast thou ; thou hadst wisdom in thy soul,
And thou hast gone to bear the news hereof
To Núshírwán that, though thy face was moonlike,
And though thou wast a king and soughtest crowns,
Yet in the mill they pierced thy liverstead,
And flung thy naked body in the stream ! ”³

Four of the monks went stripped into the water,
Seized the bare body of the youthful king,

C. 2087

¹ Thus, if we interpret the passage by strict Zoroastrian principles, polluting one of the elements and adding sacrilege to regicide, but cf. Vol. iv., p. 129.

² Couplets omitted.

³ Three couplets omitted.

That grandson of the world-lord Núshírwán,
 And drew it to the bank while young and old
 Lamented greatly. They prepared for him
 Within the garth a charnel-house and raised
 Its summit to the clouds. They sealed his wound
 With gum, with pitch, with camphor, and with musk,
 And then arrayed him in brocade of gold,
 With fine Egyptian linen underneath,
 And dark-blue Russian cloth o'er all. They decked
 His place of rest with wine and gum and camphor,
 With musk and with rose-water.

When the form

Was hidden of that noble Cypress-tree
 What said that honoured thane of Marv ? " In secret
 A guerdon waiteth him that after travail
 Departeth with good conscience from the world."

Another said : " Though man may laugh, yet know
 That he is of the sufferers, for he
 Will find the falseness of the turning sky,
 Which will reveal to him both rise and fall."

Another said : " Call not him one of wit
 That serveth his own form with princes' blood,
 And seeketh wealth, despite of infamy,
 With soul unfearful of an evil end."

Another said : " Since the Sháh's lips are closed
 I see not crown or royal seat or signet,
 Or courtiers or a realm or diadem,
 Or throne or helmet, and if these possess
 No moment in themselves why this expense
 Of toil and time ? "

" Thy good report, I see,"

Another said, " will win thee worthy praise.
 Thou in the garth of Paradise didst set
 A cypress : now thy soul beholdeth it."

Another said : " God took thy soul and gave
 Thy body to the care of the devout.

Hereby thy soul is profited, hereby
Will harm betide the foe. The Sháh hath now
His work in Paradise ; his foeman's soul
Is on the road to Hell."

Another said :—

" Wise, knowledge-loving Sháh sprung from Ardshír !
Thou reapest now the crop that thou didst sow :
The lamp of sovereignty is still alight."

Another said : " Though thou'rt asleep, young king !
Thy spirit is awake. Thy lips are mute,
And with full many a groan thy spirit passed
And left thy body free. Thy work is done :
Thy soul is busy now. Thy foeman's head
Is on the stake. Although thy tongue is tied
Thy spirit speaketh, and thy soul is purged
Although thy form is pierced, while if thy hand
Have dropped the reins thy spirit still will wield
The spear in battle."

Said another one :—

" O famous warrior ! thou hast departed
With thine own works as guide. Thy royal seat
Is now in Paradise ; this earth of bale
Is now another's share."

" The man that slew
One such as thee," another said, " will look
Upon harsh days anon."

The prelate said :—

" Thy slaves are we and laud thy holy soul.
Be this, thy charnel, as a garth all tulips,
This bier thine upland and thy plain of joy."

They spake, took up the bier and carried it
From waste to mausoleum. Thither came
The hapless Sháh, crown, throne, and casque at end.
O man of many years, whose words still run !

Turn from the path of greed, break off thy strain.
What shall we say hereof ? Was justice done,

C. 2089

Or vengeance by the seven planets ta'en,
 On Yazdagird ? The sage, if unresolved
 Upon the point, could make me no reply,
 Or if he spake 'twould be in words involved
 That keep the answer still a mystery.
 If thou hast means, good man ! indulge thy heart ;
 Trust not to what the morrow promiseth,
 Because the world and thou perforce must part,
 And time accounteth for thine every breath;
 Thou shouldest sow not any save good seed
 In what remaineth of thy mortal strife ;
 Control the door of appetite and greed ;
 He that provided will provide through life,
 And life itself will but produce for thee
 Fair fame and happiness, good friend ! Then still
 With all thy might eschew iniquity,
 For from a wise man should proceed no ill.
 Bring wine ; our day is nearly o'er and hence
 We must away, for what hath been will be.
 Had I incomings balancing expense
 Then time would be a brother unto me.
 The hail this year like death on me hath come,
 Though death itself were better than the hail,
 And heaven's lofty, far-extending dome
 Hath caused my fuel, wheat, and sheep to fail.

§ 12

*How Máhwí of Súr was informed of the Obsequies¹ of
 Yazdagird and ascended the Throne*

One came and told Máhwí of Súr : "The world-lord
 Is hidden in the dust. The prelates, priests,

¹ "Slaying" in the text.

And monks of Rúm—all those of life austere,
Both young and old, throughout that march and
land—

Went wailing, took his body from the stream,
And made for him within the garth a charnel—
A great one, higher than the mountain-slopes.”¹

Máhwí, that luckless wretch, exclaimed : “ Írán
Had ne'er before affinity with Rúm.”

He sent and slew the builders of that charnel,
With those that mourned, and gave that march to
spoil,

Such was his will and worth ! Thereafter he
Made search throughout the world and found not one
Of that great stock. He had a crown and signet,
The Sháh’s erewhile, and to that shepherd-born
The throne appealed. He called his intimates,
Announced the purpose that he had at heart,
And told his minister : “ Experienced man !
The day of strife and battle is upon us.

I have no treasure, fame or lineage,
And may but give my head up to the winds.
The name that is upon my signet-ring
Is Yazdagird : my scimitar hath failed
To make men yield to me. Throughout Írán
Men are his slaves although his kin is scattered.
The sages do not hail me as the Sháh,
The soldiers do not recognise my seal.
My machinations tended otherwise.

Oh ! wherefore did I shed the world-king’s blood ?
All-night am I sore-troubled in my thoughts :
The World-lord knoweth how it is with me.”

The counsellor replied : “ The thing is done,
And common talk. Act for thine own behoof,
For thou hast burst thy belt. The Sháh is dust
Within the charnel ; dust hath healed his soul.

C. 2090

¹ Reading with P.

Call round thee all the world-experienced men,
 And set thy tongue to words of pleasantness.
 Say thus : ‘ The Sháh gave me the crown and signet
 As emblems of authority, perceiving
 The coming of an army from the Turks,
 Called me at dead of night, and said : “ When bruit
 Of war ariseth who can say which side
 The dust will be, so take this crown and ring,
 For they may help thee on the day of battle.
 I have one daughter only left to me :
 In truth she is in hiding from the Arabs.
 Hereafter yield not to the foe my throne,
 And by these tokens walk thou in my steps.”
 I have then from the Sháh as legacy
 This crown and in accord to his behest
 Am sitting on the throne.’ By this device
 Give thou thine acts a gloss for who will know
 The truth from falsehood ? ”

“ Good ! ” exclaimed Máhwí,
 “ Thou art a minister—a peerless one ! ”

He summoned all the captains of the host,
 And spake at large to them to that effect.
 They knew : “ It is not true, and well it were
 To cut his head off for his shamelessness.”

A paladin observed : “ ’Tis thy concern
 If what thou sayest be the truth or not.”

He heard and sat him down upon the throne,
 By his deceit gat hold of Khurásán,
 Distributed the earth among his chiefs,
 And said : “ I am the world’s king with the signet.”

He called his kin and said the same at large ;
 He took the whole earth as it were a gift ;
 The stars were in amaze at him. He chose
 The vicious as accorded to his nature,
 Debased the sages and made everywhere
 Chiefs of the bad. The head of right was humbled,

And knavery on all sides manifest.
 He gave his elder son Balkh and Harát,
 And sent troops to each quarter. As his host
 And treasures grew the heart of that ingrate
 Was gratified. He gave his troops rewards
 And put them in good case ; he filled the heads
 Of his own kith and kin with vapourings.
 Then with his troops and valiant warriors,
 Preceded by the scouts and Garsiyún—
 A veteran chief—they marched upon Bukhárá,
 Intent on war, for “ Chách and Samarkand
 Are ours,” Máhwí said, “ and they must be made
 The captives of this crown and seal, for so
 Did Yazdagird, king of the world, command—
 Chief of the planets seven. With the sword
 Will I take vengeance on Bízhan by whom
 The fortune of earth’s king was turned to gloom.”

C. 2091

§ 13

*How Bízhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird and
 of Máhwí of Súr’s Accession to the Throne, led
 forth the Host to fight with him*

In time news reached Bízhan : “ Máhwí hath scized
 The throne of might and everywhere imposeth
 His seal and signet ; earth accepteth him,
 And now with warlike troops his face is turned
 Toward the Jíhún for battle.”

“ Who bestowed
 The signet on him ? ” asked Bízhan, and one
 Acquainted him with all : “ When thou didst reach
 The desert of Farab, and fortune’s lips
 Were closed to good and ill, there parted hence

To him a force of haughty cavaliers
 In quest of fame, for he had said : ‘ If thou
 Wilt send me troops I will dispatch to thee
 By privy pact the crown of king of kings
 With golden throne and signet. In the world
 The sovereignty is fitly thine.’ Thy troops
 Went hence in haste and found the Sháh at Marv.
 They compassed him about. The Iránians fled.
 When that wise king was left alone he feared
 That ill might come upon him from the host.
 There was a certain mill upon the ford,
 And thither went the Sháh, a sun in Grace.
 Máhwí of Súr heard of him, sent and slew him,
 And through the royal signet gained the world
 When he had slain his master. Now the more part
 Of praise and blame in this affair is thine,
 Thine were the valiant horsemen and the strife.”

Barsám said thus : “ O king ! what time¹ I took
 A mounted force from Chách² Máhwí had said
 To thee : ‘ The golden throne of Yazdagird,
 His armlets set with gems, his crown withal
 And treasure, will I send to Balkh. The throne
 And crown within the world must needs be thine.’
 I fought three days at Marv. When on the fourth
 The world’s light shone I battled furiously,
 For I was pressed. Tyrannical Máhwí
 Displayed his back. The Iránian king of kings,
 Abandoned, like a furious lion charged
 My troops and slaughtered many of my chiefs,
 But, when he had no comrades left, he too
 Displayed his back ; but how that master-slayer,
 That faithless slave, put him to death I know not.
 Thus with no toil Máhwí obtained and used
 His master’s treasures. Then the miscreant,
 Becoming dazed by so much wealth, appeared,

Thou mightest say, as if he ne'er had seen me !
 Although my troops remained two months at Marv
 He gave us no kind look but put to death,
 And privily, his lord, so great a king,
 The lustre of the world, a cavalier
 That 'raiseth o'er the orbit of the moon
 His head amidst the host ' thou wouldest have said.
 No Turk encountered and escaped his mace :
 He broke our nobles' hearts. I have not seen
 Such breastplate, hand, and mace. Máhwí thus
 furnished
 Seized on the realm in this unholy wise.
 Now that the foe in arms invadeth thee
 Thou and thine army must be up and doing.
 Let not weeds blossom in the royal garden
 Or it will be forgotten."

Hearing this,
 Bízhan raged much at having helped to dim
 The fortune of the Sháh, then bade assemble
 His host of Turks, his horsemen of the day
 Of battle, sped forth from Káchár Báshí,
 And lost no time upon the road. Whenas
 He drew anear Bukhárá all the waste
 Was covered with his troops to whom he said :—
 " Haste not and let Máhwí be first to lead
 His host across the water¹ to contend
 With me. Perchance on him I may avenge
 The Sháh."

He asked thereafter : " Did the king
 Leave no availful child ? Had he no brother ?
 In the default of sons had he no daughter,
 Whom we might carry with us and assist,
 And take full satisfaction of Máhwí ? "

Barsám replied : " My lord ! this race's day
 Is passed ; the Arabs hold those provinces ;

* The Oxus.

No Sháh is left or worshipper of Fire."

Bízhan, on hearing this, resumed his march,
Astound at this world's doings. Scouts announced :—
“A host hath come and campeth at Baigand.
They crossed in boats, their dust obscured the sun.”

Bízhan, the chief, led on his troops to war,
And when Máhwí of Súr beheld them thou

C. 2093 Hadst said : “His soul took flight.” He was in
dudgeon

At all those breastplates, helmets, shields of Chín,
At all those maces, spears, and battle-axes
Of Chách. The air grew dark and earth was lost
To sight therein as he arrayed his host.

§ 14

*How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of
Bízhan*

Bízhan, when he had drawn up his array,
Prepared an ambush for the Iránians ;
Máhwí knew of it and with loud exclaims
Departed from among his troops. Bízhan
Looked forth, beheld the flag, and knew : “Máhwí
Is minded to take flight,” and bade Barsám :—
“Lead from the central host what troops thou hast,
And draw toward one side ; we must not let
Máhwí decline the battle and haste thus
Jíhún-wards. Speed and keep him well in sight,
For we must deal with him in other wise.”

Barsám of Chín observed the flag and drew
His troops apart until with frowning face,
And malisons upon his lips, he reached
The desert of Farab, there found Máhwí,

And, with his weight upon the stirrups, charged ;
 Then, closing face to face, he plied his sword,
 Displaying valour, seized his foeman's belt,
 Unseated him and dashed him to the ground,
 Alighted, bound his hands, and then remounting
 Drove him along in front. With that came up
 Barsám's own comrades, and the bruit of him
 Filled all the plain. They said : " O chief ! Máhwí
 Should be beheaded on the way."

He answered :—

" Not so ; Bízhan as yet is not informed
 About the capture."

Presently Bízhan

Gat news : " That ill-conditioned slave is taken,"
 Heard and grew glad of heart. He hugged himself,
 And thus released from care roared lion-like.
 Then many valiant Turks came and discussed
 The fashion of the slaying of MÁhwí.
 All that they recognised as of his court
 They put to death—a countless multitude.
 They looted all the baggage and dragged off
 MÁhwí stripped bare of all. The guilty wretch
 Lost all his wits when he beheld Bízhan,
 Was as a soulless body with affright,

And strewed upon his head the unstable sand.
 Bízhan said : " O thou miscreant ! may none have
 A slave like thee ! Why didst thou put to death
 That righteous Sháh, the lord of victory
 And throne, and by ancestral right both Sháh
 And king, the memory of Núshírwán ? "
 MÁhwí made answer thus : " The evil-doer
 Can look for naught but slaying and reproach.
 Now smite my neck for wrong done and fling down
 My head in presence of this company."

The other gave reply : " I will so act
 That I shall banish vengeance from my heart,"

Struck off Máhwí's hand with the scimitar,
And said : " This hand hath not a peer in crime."

The hand thus lopped, he said : " Cut off his feet
That he may not escape," and further bade :—
Cut off his nose and ears, let him be placed
Upon a horse out on the burning sand
Until he sleepeth in his shame."

They bound him

From head to foot with cords, the clarions sounded,
A herald went the circuit of the host,
And, as he passed the entry of the tents,
Made proclamation : " Slaves that slay your masters !
Indulge no foolish thoughts, and may all those
Without compunction for a monarch's life
Be as Máhwí and never see the throne."

There was a prince, by name Guráz, at once
The glory and the pleasure of Máhwí.
He was the governor of Marv what time
Máhwí died wretchedly. As eldest son
He was his father's lustre, who had made
A crown of gold for him. When fortune loured
Upon Máhwí the horsemen rode to Marv
From all sides. Tumult spread. The war-cry rose,
And strife and turmoil filled the land. Guráz
Was slain mid those dark doings, and the day
Of all his race was done. He had three sons
Among his troops, three favourite sons possessed
Of crown and throne. A lofty pyre was kindled,
And he and his three sons were burned thereon.
None of the seed remained or if some did
Men harried them. The chieftains cursed that race,
All vengeful for the slaughter of the Sháh :—
" May it be cursed and may there never fail
A man to curse it as it hath deserved."

Bízhan, the Turk, too was an evil-doer.
His own time came, his wisdom was estranged,

And I have heard that he grew mad at last,
 And was so till he slew himself. Well done,
 Thou still revolving, crook-backed sky ! Since then
 Hath been the epoch of 'Umar, made known
 The Faith, and to a pulpit changed the throne.

C 2095

§ 15

Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma

When five and sixty years had passed me by
 I viewed my task with more anxiety,
 And as my yearning to achieve it grew
 My fortune's star receded from my view.
 Persians well read and men of high degree
 Wrote all my work out and would take no fee.
 I over-looked from far, and thou hadst said
 That they had rather handselled me instead !
 Naught but their praises had I for my part,
 And while they praised I had a broken heart.
 The mouths of their old money-bags were tied,
 Whereat mine ardent heart was mortified.
 Of famous nobles of this town 'Alí,
 The Dílamite,¹ most shared the work with me,
 For he, a man of ardent temper made,
 Through kindness of soul forwent no aid.
 Husain, son of Kutíb, a Persian lord,
 Asked me for naught without its due reward,
 But furnished gold and silver, clothes and meat,
 And found me ways and means, and wings and feet.
 As for taxation, naught thereof know I ;
 All at mine ease in mine own quilt I lie.

¹ In Vol. i., p. 35, the names are given according to the reading
of BCM.

What time my years attained to ten times seven
 And one my poetry surmounted heaven.
 For five and thirty years I bore much pain
 Here in this Wayside Inn in quest of gain,
 But all the five and thirty years thus past
 Naught helped ; they gave my travail to the blast,
 And my hopes too have gone for evermore
 Now that mine age all but hath reached fourscore.
 I end the story of Sháh Yazdagird,
 And in Sapandármad, the day of Ard,
 And year four hundred of Muhammad's Flight,
 The last words of this royal book I write.
 For ever flourishing be Sháh Mahmúd,
 His head still green, his heart with joy imbued.
 I have so lauded him that publicly
 And privily my words will never die.
 Of praises from the Great I had much store ;
 The praises that I give to him are more.
 May he, the man of wisdom, live for aye,
 His doings turn to his content alway.
 This tale of sixty thousand couplets I
 Have left to him by way of memory.
 C. 2096 My life from days of youth to old hath sped
 In talk and hearkening what others said.
 When this, my famous tale, was done at last
 O'er all the realm my reputation past.
 All men of prudence, rede, and Faith will give
 Applause to me when I have ceased to live,
 Yet live I shall ; the seed of words have I
 Flung broad-cast and henceforth I shall not die.

The Sháhnáma of Firdausí is ended.

INDEX

This Index and the Table of Contents at the beginning of the volume are complementary. References to the latter are in Roman numerals.

A

- ABBREVIATIONS, list of, xi
- Abtíñ, father of Farídún, 53, 103
- Abú Bakr, Khalifa, 76
 - begins war with Persian Empire, 66
- Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, 66
 - supersedes Khálid in Syria, 66
- Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, 67
 - made commander in Persian campaign, 67
 - slain, 67
- Afrásiyáb, ruler of Túrán, 25, 103
- Áhriaman, the Evil Principle, 8, 18, 73, 74, 79, 91
- Ál, place, 93
- Alburz, Mount, 25
- 'Alí, the Dflamite, friend of Fir-dausí, 121
- Altúníya, place, 92
- Ámul, city in Mázandarán, 86
- Apologue, 86
- Apothegms, 87, 88, 110
- Arab, Arabs, 3, 5, 25, 60, 69, 70, 72, 75 *seq.*, 79, 89, 92, 94, *seq.*, 114, 117
 - invasion of Irán by, 3, 65 *seq.*
 - steeds, 11
 - tribes, 65
 - triumph of, over Dhú Kár, 66
 - chieftain, incites Abú Bakr to invade Persia, 66
 - concentrate at Kádisíya, 67

- Arab, Arabs, booty found by, at Ctesiphon (?), 68
- annex Mesopotamia, 68
- Khuzistán, 68
- ='Umar, 72
- seal, 82
- =Sa'ad, 84
- defecated, 85
- Núshírwán's dream of, 92
- Arabian, Arabians, 74, 85
- Arabic, 81
- Archmages, viii
- Ard, day, 70, 122
- Ardshír Pápakán, first Sásánian Sháh, 105, 106, 111
- Ardshír, son of Shirwí, Sháh, vii, 43 *seq.*
 - makes Píruz general, 44
 - entertains Píruz at feast, 48
 - death of, 49
 - treasury of, squandered by Guráz, 53
- Árish, famous Iránian archer, 25
- Arjásp, king of Túrán, 104
- Armaní, Iránian chief, 74
- 'Arús, treasure, 20
- Arwand (Tigris), river, 85, 92
- Asfandiyyár, son of Sháh Gush-tásp, 25, 26 *note*, 104
- Ashtád, Iránian chief, 11 *seq.*
 - chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisafún, 9
 - and Kharrád parley with Galínísh, 11
 - visit Khusrau Parwíz, 12
 - report to Shirwí, 27
- Astrolabe, 73

Astrologer, 73
 Ázar, month and day, 17
 Ázar, Ábádagán (Ázargashasp *q.v.*), 74
 Ázaigashasp, spirit of the lightning, 55
 temple of (Ázar Ábádagán) at Shíz (Takht-i-Salaimán) in Ázarbáiján, 75
 Ázarmdukht, Sháh, viii, 56, 59, 69
 reproaches Kubád, 7
 end of, 59, 60

B

BABYLON, 65, 92
 Zahhák, king of, 65
 Bactrian, camels, 93
 Bád Áwar, treasure, 20
 Baghdád, Persian settlement of, 67
 raided by Arabs, 67
 Baghdád, city (*Cf.* Vol. viii, p. 109 note), 88
 Yazdagird quits, 88
 Bahrain, group of islands in Persian Gulf, 68
 Bahrám Chúbína, Iránian hero, 6, 15, 16, 22, 91, 105
 assassination of, referred to, 4
 Romance of, 5
 Bahrám Gúr, Sháh, 26, 77
 Baigand, city and fortress between Bukhárá and Oxus,
 Máhwí encamps at, 118
 Balkh, city, 116
 bestowed by Máhwí on his son, 115
 Bandwí, maternal uncle of Khusráu Parwíz 4
 execution of, referred to, 4, 16, 104
 Bárbad, minstrel, vii, 29 and note
 visits Khusráu Parwíz in prison, 29
 lament of, 30

Barda', city on the borders of Ázarbáiján and Armenia, 15
 Barsám, general of Bízhan 97, 117
 marches on Marv, 97, 116
 Máhwí's conduct to, 117
 pursues and overtakes Máhwí, 118
 captures Máhwí, 119
 Bartás, region in Turkistán, 19
 Barzín, father of Kharrád, 4, 9, 12, 27
 Basra (Bassora), city on the Shatt-el-Arab, 68, 69
 founded by 'Umar, 67
 Battle of the Bridge, 5, 67
 Bízhan, Khán of Turks, viii, 70, 96
 Máhwí writes to, 96
 consults his minister, 97
 sends troops to Marv, 97
 Máhwí makes war on, 115
 marches against Máhwí, 117
 lays ambush for Máhwí, 118
 sends Barsám in pursuit of Máhwí, 118
 hears of Máhwí's capture, 119
 puts Máhwí to death, 120
 goes mad and kills himself, 120, 121
 Brahman, 21
 Bridge, Battle of the, 5, 67
 Bukhárá, city on the Zarafshán river in the province of Sughd, 97, 115, 117
 Bust, city in Sístán, 89

C

CÆSAR, 10, 23
 letter of, about the True Cross referred to, 22
 Chách (Táshkand), city in Túrán, 115, 116
 battle-axes of, 118
 Chahram (Jahram), city in Párs 20, 61

Chín country (often = Túrán), 10,
19, 41, 107, 118
sashcs from, 12, 53
gold thread of, 82
Khán of, 87
merchantmen of, 89
shields of, 118
Christ, 24, 109
Cross of, 23
Christian, 23
Commander of the Faithful, 72
'Umar, the first 72 and *note*
Contents Table of, vii
Cross, the true, 4, 5, 10, 24
restoration of, 7, 56
of Christ, 23
Elevation of, 43
Crystal, House of, 25 and *note*
Ctesiphon (*Taisafún q.v.*), 65
seq.
taken by Shahrbaráz, 43, 44
Sa'ad, 67
booty found at, 68

D

DAHISTÁN, town, also district
north of the Atrak. 95
Dai, day, 17
Dáng, coin, 94 and *note*
Darkness, House of, 7
Dastagírd, city, 7
Dhú Kár, Battle of, 4, 5, 66
Dílamite, 'Alí the, friend of Fir-
dausí, 121
Dív, dívs, 18, 25
= Áhri man, 47, 102, 104

E

EGYPTIAN, 110
linen, 110

F

FAGHFÚR of Chín, 87, 97, 102
Faithful, Commander of the, 72
'Umar, the first, 72 and *note*

Farab (Firabr), town on the
Oxus opposite to Ámwí,
desert cf, 115, 118
Faráyín (Guráz, Shahrbaráz *q.v.*),
Sháh, vii, 50, 53, 105
accession-speech of, 52
counselled by his eldest son,
52
counselled by his youngest
son, 53
misrule of, 53
plot against, 54
Farídún, Sháh, 25, 39, 53, 71,
86, 103
Farruhán (Fariukhán). *See* Far-
áyín.
Farrukhán (Farruhán). *See* Far-
áyín.
Farrukh-Hurmuzd (Hurmuzd
q.v.), father of Rustam, 69
Farrukhzád, Sháh, viii, 61 *seq.*,
70
Siyah Chashm and, 62
poisons, 63
Farrukhzád, son of Hurmuzd,
brother of Rustam, and
favourite of Khusrau Par-
wíz, 23, 87, 92, 95
bribes Mihr Hurmuzd to
murder Khusrau Parwíz,
33
defeats the Arabs, 85
counsels Yazdagírd, 86, 87
leads the host to Khurásán,
89
entrusts Yazdagírd to
Máhwí, 95
goes to Rai, 96
Farúd, son of Shírín and Khusrau
Parwíz, 39
Firdausí, 69
account of Arab conquest
by, supplemented, 65
Yazdagírd's death, 70,
107
reflections on, 108,
111
on completion of Sháhnáma,
121
friends and assistants of, 121
exempt from taxation, 121

Firdausí, time spent on Sháh-náma, by, 122
 praise of Sultán Mahmúd, by, 122
 Flight of Muhammad, referred to, 122
 Ford and toll-house of Zark, 100
 and note, 116

G

GALBWÍ, Iránian chief, 74
 Galínúsh, Persian general, 5, 11,
 12
 parley of, with Kharrád and Ashtád, 11
 Gang-dízh, stronghold, 25
 Garsíwaz, brother of Afrásiyáb, 103
 Garsiyún, Iránian chief, 115
 Gashasp, father of Ashtád q.v., 11
 Gemini, constellation, 73
 Gil (Gil, Gilán ?), district on south-west coast of Caspian, 93
 Glory. See Grace.
 Grace or Glory, the divine, 8, 26,
 30, 31, 41, 44, 47, 73, 74,
 79, 90, 91, 95, 99, 100,
 101, 116
 Gúdarz, Iránian hero, 25
 seventy sons of, 25
 Gumbadán, Mount, 93
 stronghold on, 93
 Guráz (Shahrbaráz, Faráyín q.v.) general of Khusrau Parwiz and Sháh, vii, 44
 rebellion of, 45
 message of, 45
 writes to Pírúz, 46
 Pírúz writes to, 47
 account of, 50
 meaning of, 50
 dual personality of, 50
 marches on Taisafún, 51
 confers with Iránian mag-nates, 51
 misrule of, 53
 conspiracy against, 54
 goes hunting, 55

Guráz, end of, 55
 Guráz, son of Máhwí,
 referred to, 107, 115
 governor of Maív, 120
 put to death with his sons, 120
 Gurdwí, brother of Bahrám Chúbína, 6
 Gurdyá, sister of Bahrám Chúbína, 6
 Gurgán, province on the south-eastern shores of the Caspian, 89
 Gushtásp, Sháh, 25
 Gustaham, maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwiz, 4, 6
 assassination of, referred to, 16, 104

H

HAMADÁN, city in 'Irák 'Ajamí, 68
 Haram, of Khusrau Parwiz, 4, 5
 Harát, city in north-western Afghánistán, 115
 bestowed by Máhwí on his son, 115
 Háshim, Arab general, 68
 sent by 'Umar in pursuit of Yazdagird, 68
 wins battle of Jalulá, 68
 takes Hulwán, 68
 Háshimite=Muhammad, 81 and note
 Heraclius, Eastern Roman Emperor, 5, 7
 Shírwi's letter to, 7
 alliance of, with Shahr-baráz, 44
 Hilál, Arab, 69
 slayer of Rustam son of Farrukh-Hurmuzd, 70
 Hindústán, 17, 20
 Híra, city, west of the Euphrates near Nedjef, 5, 66
 kingdom of, 65
 abolished by Khusrau Parwiz, 66
 attacked by Persians, 67

Houri, 81
 House of Darkness, 7
 Crystal, 25 and *note*
 Hulwán, town on the border of
 'Irák 'Ajamí, west of Kir-
 mánsháh
 Yazdagird retires to, 67
 taken by Háshim, 68
 Hormuzd, son of Núshírwán,
 Sháh, 4, 15, 104
 Hormuzd (Hormuzdsháh, Far-
 rukh-Hormuzd *q.v.*),
 father of Rustam, 72, 78
 85, 89, 96
 Hormuzd Shahránguráz (Shah-
 ránguráz *q.v.*), 54
 Hormuzd, devotee, 102
 pleads with Máliwí for Yaz-
 dagird, 102
 Husain, friend of Firdausí, 121
 Húshang, Sháh, 25, 41

I

INDIAN, scimitar, 17
 script, 17
 scribe, 17
 Íraj, son of Farídún, 103
 'Irák, 66
 Írán, vii, viii, 9 *seq.*, 15, 21, 22,
 31, 36, 38, 39, 44, 45, 51,
 66, 74, 75, 79, 85, 86, 88,
 92, 96, 103, 106, 108, 113
 Iránian, Iránians, viii, 22, 23,
 40, 47, 48, 63, 73, 76, 88,
 90, 116
 homage Shírwí, 8
 choose two chiefs to visit
 Khusrau Parwíz in prison,
 9
 plot against Guráz, 54
 go hunting with Guráz, 55
 race, 65
 enmity of, with Semite,
 65
 announces arrival of Shu'ba
 Mughíra to Rustam, 82
 defeat of, at Kádisíya, 84
 retreat to Yazdagird, 85
 —born, 99

Iránians, defeat of, at Marv, 116
 ambushed, 118
 Istékh (Persepolis), 50, 54
 Yazdagird taken to, 64
 made Sháh at, 65

J

JAHRAM. *See* Chahram.
 Jalúlá, 68
 Jámasp, minister of Gushtásp, 26
 Jamshíd Sháh, 25, 39, 103
 Jarmaua, place, 93
 Jerusálem, 43
 Elevation of the True Cross
 at, 43
 Jesus, 10
 Jíhún (Oxus), river, 77, 115, 118
 Jins, 81

K

KÁBUL, city
 falchion of, 98
 Káchár Báshí, city in Túrán, 117
 Kádisíya, town west of Euphi-
 rates and near
 Nedjef, 5, 73, 74, 77, 78
 Battle of, 5, 67, 69
 date of, 67
 canal of, 69
 Rustam advances to, 73
 Kaián, crown, 11, 105
 Kai Káús, Sháh, 25
 Kai Khusrau, Sháh, 25, 103
 Kai Kubád, Sháh, 25
 Kalát, stronghold, 91
 Káran, Iránian hero, 25
 Karkh, a suburb of Baghdád, 85
 Arab defeat at, 85
 Kashmigán, son of Farrukhzád,
 92
 Káwa, the smith, 30
 flag of, 30, 67
 Khálid, Arab general, 66
 begins hostilities against
 Persian Empire, 66
 recalled to lead Syrian cam-
 paign, 66

- Khán of Chín, 87, 102
 =Bízhan, 97
 Kharrád, son of Barzín, Iránian minister, 4, 11, 12, 24
 end of, 4
 chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisé fún, 9
 Ashtád and, parley with Galinúsh, 11
 visit Khusrau Parwíz, 12
 report to Shírwí, 27
 Kharrád, father of Hurmuzd, 102
 Khurásán, province in north-eastern Irán, viii, 59, 69, 87, 88, 92
 Máhwí becomes master of, 114
 Khusrau Parwíz, Sháh, vii, 4 seq., 11, 12, 25, 26 note, 30, 31, 33 seq., 38 seq., 45 seq.
 charges against, 4, 5, 9, 10
 reply of, to charges, 5, 14 seq.
 Haram of, 4, 5
 last days of, Theophanes' account of, 6
 Shírwí's treatment of, 7
 sons of, executed, 7, 35
 Shírín and, 7
 imprisoned at Taisafún, 9
 companionship by Shírín, 29
 Bárbad visits, 29
 laments over, 30
 steed of, 30
 son of, 31
 referred to, 33 and note
 kingdom of Hírə abolished by, 66
 Muhammad's letter to, 66
 Khusrau, father of Pírúz, vii, 44, 46, 48, 49, 51, 57
 Khusrau, a miller, viii, 99. *See* Miller.
 Khúzistán (Susiana), province at head of Persian Gulf annexed by Arabs, 68
 Khuzrá, treasure, 20
 Kibchák, region east of the Jaxartes and north of Táshkand, 93
- Kírwán (Karwán, district north of Jaxartes ?), 93
 Kisrá Núshírwán. *See* Núshírwán.
 Kubád, son of Pírúz, Sháh, 22, 25
 Kubád (Shírwí *q.v.*), Sháh, vii, 3, 4, 9, 11, 12, 14, 24, 32, 47, 64
 tragic reign of, 3
 pestilence during, 3
 boorishness of, 3
 difficult situation of, 3
 reproached by his sisters, 7
 Kúfa, city, west of Euphrates and north of Nedjef, 68, 69
 founded by Sa'ad, 67
 Kurán, 81
 quoted, 81 and *note*
 Kutíb, father of Husain, 121
- L
- Lázhawardí fort, 93
 Luhrásp, Sháh, 104
- M
- MÁCHÍN (China), 107
 Mahmúd, Sultán, praise of 122
 Makhzúm, place, 93
 Máhwí, Persian chief, viii, 70, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100 seq. 118
 described, 87
 Farrukhzád entrusts Yazdagird to, 95
 accepts charge of Yazdagird, 96
 becomes disaffected to Yazdagird, 96
 writes to Bízhan, 96, 116
 betrays Yazdagird, 97, 98, 116, 117
 quest of, for Yazdagird, 100
 has tidings of Yazdagird, 101
 consults his warriors, 106
 son of, counsels, 107

- Máhwí, son of, receives Balkh and Harát, 115
 governor of Marv, 120
 put to death with his sons, 120
 sends miller to slay Yazdagird, 107, 116
 troops after miller with instructions, 107
 troops of, strip corpse of Yazdagird, 108
 hears of death of Yazdagird, 108
 bids miller throw corpse of Yazdagird into stream, 108
 slays monks, 113
 consults his intimates and minister, 113
 advised by his minister, 113
 claims the throne on false pretences, 114
 becomes master of Khurásán, 114
 evil rule of, 114
 makes war on Bízhan, 115
 conduct of, to Barsám, 117
 crosses Oxus and camps at Baigand, 118
 flees, 118
 overtaken by Barsám, 118
 captured by Barsám, 119
 put to death by Bízhan, 120
- Marchlords, viii
- Mardánsháh (*Yalán-sína q.v.*), 5, 6
 son of, 5, 6
 conspires against Khusrau Parwíz, 6
 mutilation and execution of, 6
- Mardánsháh (*Mardásas*), son of Shífrín and Khusrau Parwíz, 39
- Mardásas (*Mardánsháh q.v.*), 7
 execution of, 7
- Mars, planet, 73, 89
- Márúsipand, palace, 11
- Marv, oasis and city in ancient northern Khurásán, now in Turkistan, 70, 89, 116, 117
- Marv, traditional scene of Yazdagird's death, 70
 Yazdagird at, 97, 116
 thane of, 110
 apothegm of, 110
 conduct of Máhwí to Barsám at, 117
 Guráz, son of Máhwí, governor of, 120
- Mázandarán, region between Alburz range and Caspian, 74
- Mecca, city, 69
- Mercury, planet, 73
- Mesopotamia, annexed by Arabs, 68
- Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp, minister of Ardshír, son of Shífrí, in Arabic Tabarí, 43
 put to death, 43
- Mihr, feast, 40
- Mihr'Hasis, minister of Ardshír, son of Shífrí, in Persian Tabarí, 43
 put to death, 43
- Mihr Hurmuzd, murderer of Khusrau Parwíz, vii, 34
 account of, 5
 referred to, 6, 33
 conspires against Khusrau Parwíz, 6
 put to death, 7
 described, 33
- Mihr-i-Núsh, 103
 pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, 103
- Mill, viii, 98, 116
- Miller, viii, 70
 Yazdagird and, 99
 informs chief of Zark about Yazdagird, 100
 informs Máhwí about Yazdagird, 101
 bidden to slay Yazdagird, 107
 bidden to fling corpse into stream, 108
- Minúchihr, Sháh, 103
- Mír Khánd, distich of, quoted, 56
- Monks, 109
 find Yazdagird, 109

Monks, lament over and entomb Yazdagird, 109 *seq.*
 sentences of, over Yazdagird, 110
 slain by Máhwí, 113
 Mughíra, son of Shu'ba. *See* Shu'ba Mughíra, 69
 Muhammad, the Prophet, 69, 81
seq.
 letter of, to Khusrau Parwiz, 66
 Flight of, referred to, 122
 Muslim, 85

N

NANÁVAND, city, south of Hamadán, 68, 69
 Yazdagird concentrates his forces at, 68
 Battle of, 69
 Nárwan, forest of, 86
 Nastúr, son of Shírfín and Khusrau Parwíz, 39
 Nile, 98
 Nímrúz*, 5, 6
 satrapy of, 69
 Nishápúr, city in Khurásán, 95
 Niyátús (Theodosius, son of Maurice), 23
 Note on Pronunciation, xii
 Nu'mán bin Munzír, prince of Híra, 5
 Nu'mán, Arab general, 68
 sent by 'Umar to fight Yazdagird, 68
 defeats Píruzán at Nahávand, 68
 slain, 69
 Núshírwán, Sháh, 22, 26, 71, 80, 92, 105, 109, 110, 119
 Letter of Counsel of, 22
 division of Empire by, 69
 dream of, 92

O

OMEN of the quince, 13, 14
 Oxus (Jíhún), river
 referred to, 117 and *note*, 118

P

PAHЛАVÍ, middle Persian language of Ashkánian (Parthian) and Sásánian times, 50
 Paidáwasís, Persian coin = five dínárs, 19
 Párs (Persis, Farsistán), country on eastern shore of Persian Gulf, 68
 Parsís, 64
 Parwíz. *See* Khusrau Parwíz.
 Persepolis (Istakhr), 65
 Persia, 66
 Persian, Persians, 5, 7, 20, 37, 40, 54, 60, 66, 67, 69, 70, 72, 77, 79, 85, 121
 ideas on marriage, 7
 language, 12, 65
 =Ashtád and Kharrád, 24
 exonerate Shírfín, 38
 empire, 65, 66
 Gulf, 66, 68
 win "The Battle of the Bridge," 67

fail in attack on Híra, 67
 defeat of, at Kádisíya, 67, 84

Jalúlá, 68
 Nahávand, 69
 Shu'ba Mughíra's embassy to, 69
 robes, 94
 transcribe Sháhnáma for Firdausí, 121
 Pestilence, in reign of Kubád, 3, 7
 Píruz, son of Khusrau, minister of Ardshír son of Shírfí, vii
 appointed general, 44

*See p. 333 *note*.

Pírúz, letter of Guráz to, 46
 takes counsel, 46
 writes to Guráz, 47
 Guráz marches against, 48
 appeals to Tukhár, 48
 feasts with Ardshír, 48
 informs Guráz of the death
 of Ardshír, 51
 put to death, 57
 Pírúz, Íránian prince, 59
 Pírúz, son of Shápúr, Íránian
 noble
 takes Rustam's letter to
 Sa'ad, 80, 81
 Pírúzán, Persian general,
 commands Persian forces at
 Nahávand, 68
 slain, 69
 Piscos, constellation, 71
 Plaguc. *See Pestilence.*
 Pronunciation, Note on, xii
 Púrándukht, Sháh, vii, 56
 reproaches Kubád, 7
 makes Shahráguráz prime
 minister, 56
 True Cross and, 56
 Pusfarrukh, 50

Q

QUINCE, omen of the, 13, 14

R

RÁDA, Mount, 91, 94
 Rádwí, archimage
 pleads with Mähwí for Yaz-
 dagird, 102
 Rai, city and district near Tih-
 rán, 68, 69, 89, 95, 96
 Rája, 17
 letter of, 17
 put in charge of Shírin, 17
 Raven, Raven-head, 91 and *note*,
 95 *note*, 96
 Revellers Rosary of 38, 40
 Roman, 50, 66
 Rosary of Revellers, 38, 40
 Rúina, place, 91

Rúm, Eastern Roman Empire,
 10, 11, 20, 39, 41, 45, 46,
 113
 brocade of, 99, 101
 monks of, slain by Mähwí,
 113
 Rúman, Rúmans, 23, 60
 Russian, cloth, 110
 Rustam, son of Zál, Íránian hero,
 25
 Rustam, Persian commander
 in chief under Yazdagird
 III., viii, 66, 67, 69, 73,
 81 *seq.*, 90, 95
 overthrows Ázarmdukht, 59
 advances to Kádisíya, 67,
 73
 end of, 69
 finds evil aspects in the stars,
 73
 writes to his brother, 73
 hears of Shu'ba Mughlíra's
 arrival, 82

S

SA'AD, son of Wakkás, Arab
 general, viii, 67, 68, 82
 seq., 90
 succeeds Abú 'Ubaida, 67
 at Kádisíya, 67, 69
 founds Kúfa, 67
 takes Ctesiphon, 67
 recalled, 68
 sent by 'Umar to invade
 Írán, 72
 letter of Rustam to, 78
 taken by Pírúz 80, 81
 Sada, feast, 40, 92
 Samarkand, city in Turkistán,
 96, 115
 Sapandármad, month, 70, 122
 Sarí, city in Mázandarán, 86
 Sásán, son of Dárá, 105 and *note*
 lineage of 56, 105
 Sásánian, Sásánians, 4, 5, 46,
 47, 50, 54, 65, 72, 73, 76,
 77, 83, 105
 Dynasty, 4

- Sásánian, Empire, conquered by the Arabs, 65 *seq.*
- Satrapy, satrapies, Núshírwán's four, 69
- Saturn, planet, 73
sphere of, 92
- Seasons, confusion of the, 77 *note*
- Semite, race, enmity of, with Iránians, 65
- Shabdíz, steed of Khusrau Parwíz, 30
- Sháhnáma, viii, 4 *seq.*, 43, 50, 61, 70
completion of, Firdausí on, 121
length of, 122
date when completed, 122
- Shahrán, 102
pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagírd, 102
- Shahránguráz (Ilurmuzd Shah-ránguráz, Guráz *q.v.*), vii, 50
heads conspiracy against Guráz, 54
- Shahrbaráz (Guráz *q.v.*), Iránian general, 43, 50
rebellion of, 43, 44
alliance of, with Heraclius, 44
- Shahr-Barz. *See* Shahrbaráz.
- Shahguráz (Shahrbaráz *q.v.*), 50
- Shahrwaráz (Shahrbaráz *q.v.*), 50
- Shahryár, son of Shírín and Khusrau Parwíz, 39
father of Yazdagírd, 64
- Shamfrán, stronghold north of Harát (?), 91, 94
- Shápúr, father of Pírúz, 80
- Shatt-al-Arab, the combined streams of the Tigris and Euphrates, 67
- Shírín, wife of Khusrau Parwíz, vii, 28, 36
Khusrau Parwíz and, 7
has charge of Shírwi's horoscope, 16
Raja's letter, 17
companions Khusrau Parwíz in prison, 29
reproached and summoned by Shírwi, 36
- Shírín, makes her will, 36
goes to Court, 37
justifies herself, 38, 40
sons of, 39
unveils to the Court, 39
Shírwi falls in love with, 39
makes request of Shírwi, 40, 41
goes home, 40
distributes her wealth, 40
frees her slaves, 41
poisons herself, 42
- Shírwi (Kubád *q.v.*), Sháh, vii, 7, 8, 11, 27, 28, 31 *seq.*, 36, 45, 47, 64
treatment of Khusrau Parwíz by, 7
writes to Heraclius, 7
horoscope of, 16
kept by Shírín, 16
- Ashtád and Khariád report their interview with Khusrau Parwíz to, 27
- reproaches and summons Shírín, 36, 37
falls in love with Shírín, 39
grants Shírín's requests, 40, 42
poisoned, 42
son of, 42
length of reign of, 42
- Shu'ba Mughírá, companion of the Prophet, 69, 83
embassy of, 69, 82
- Sikandar (Alexander the Great), Sháh, 26
- Siyali Chasm, slave of Farrukh-zád, 62
handmaid of Farrukh-zád and, 62
imprisoned, 62
released, 62
poisons Farrukh-zád, 63
- Siyáwush, son of Kai Káús, 25 and *note*, 26 *note*, 103
- Snakes=Arabs, 91
- Súr, Súrán, city near Ispahán, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100, 116, 118
- Syrian, 66

T

TABARÍ, historian, 4, 56, 61, 64, 69
 Arabic, 4, 5, 7, 43, 50
 Persian, 4, 5, 43, 70
 Tabaristán (Mázandarán), 74
 Table of Contents, vii
 Tahmúras, Sháh, 25
 Taisafún (Ctesiphon), city on left bank of Tigris, 9, 10, 90
 Khusrau Parwíz imprisoned at, 9
 Dárbad visits Khusrau Parwíz at, 29
 Taráz, city north-east of Táshkand, 41
 Taxation, Firdausí's exemption from, 121
 Theophanes, Greek Chronicler, account of last days of Khusrau Parwíz by, 6
 Tigris, river, 67
 Toll-house and ford of Zark, 100 and *note*, 116
 Tukhár, Iránian general, refuses to help Píruz against Guráz, 48
 Túr, son of Farídún, 103
 Túrán, 11, 89, 99
 Turk, Turks, 70, 96 *seq.*, 105, 114, 117, 120
 Turkish, 87
 Turkistán, 15
 Turkman, Turkmans, 25, 76, 94 king = Afrásiyáb, 25
 Tús, city in Khurásán, viii, 90, 95
 governor of, 92

U

'UMAR, Khalífa, 66 *seq.*, 72, 76, 121
 founds Basra, 67
 sends Háshim in pursuit of Yazdagird, 68
 Nu'mán to fight Yazdagird, 68
 Sa'ad to invade Irán, 72
 Urmuzd, the Good Principle, 24

V

VIENUS, planet, 26, 73
 Victory of Victories, The, 69
 Virgo, constellation, 71

W

WAKKÁS, father of Sa'ad *q.v.*, viii, 72, 78, 82, 90

Y

YALÁN-SÍNA (Mardánsháh *q.v.*), 6
 Yazdagird, Sháh, viii, 5, 61, 64 *seq.*, 68 *seq.*, 72, 81, 90, 101, 105, 106, 113, 115, 116, 122
 Era of, 64
 taken for safety to Istakhr, 64
 age of, at accession, 65
 difficult position of, 65
 historical importance of reign of, 65
 flight of, from Ctesiphon, 67
 Hulwán, 68
 last attempt of, to recover his empire, 68
 concentrates his forces at Nahávand, 68
 defeated and a fugitive, 69
 death of, referred to, 69
 host returns to, after Kádisíya, 85
 hears of Rustam's death, 85
 quits Baghídád, 88
 makes for Marv, 89
 entrusted to Máhwí by Farrukhzád, 95, 96
 at Marv, 97, 116
 hears of the coming of the Turks, 97
 betrayed by Máhwí, 98
 defeated, 98, 116

Yazdagird, miller and, 99 *seq.*
 described, 99, 101
 Máhwí bids miller slay, 107,
 116
 slain, stripped and flung into
 stream, 108, 109 and *note*
 corpse of, recovered, lam-
 ented over and entombed,
 109 *seq.*
 Firdausí on, 111

Z

ZÁBULISTÁN, 75*
 Zahhák, Sháh, 25, 65, 103

Zahhák, an Aryan myth, 65
 king of Babylon, 65
 an Arab, 65
 Zál, son of Sám and father of
 Rustam, 25
 Zark, town south-east of Marv,
 98
 canal of, 98
 corpse of Yazdagird flung
 into, 109
 recovered from, 109
 ford and toll-house of, 100
 and *note*
 chief of, 100
 hears from miller about
 Yazdagird, 109

GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS

C.—	Macan's edition of the Sháhnáma
L.—	Lumsden's Dō.
P.—	Mohl's do.
T.—	Tíhrán do.
V.—	Vullers' dc.
AM.	The Voiage and Travayle of Sir John Maundeville, Knight ... Edited . . . by John Ashton.
AS.	The Sháh Námeh of . . Firðausí. Translated and abridged. . . . By James Atkinson Esq.
BAG.	A History of Ancient Geography. By E. H. Bunbury F.R.G.S.
BAN.	A Plain and Literal Translation of the Arabian Nights' Entertainments. . . . By Richard F. Burton.
BBR.	Buddhist Records of the Western World. Translated from the Chinese of Hiuen Tsiang (A.D. 629). By Samuel Beal.
BCM.	The Chahár Maqála (" Four Discourses ") of Nidhám-i- 'Arúdí-i-Samarquandí. Translated into English by Edward G. Browne, M.A., M.B.
BGDF.	The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. By Edward Gibbon. Edited by J. B. Bury, M.A.
BHA.	The History of Alexander the Great, being the Syriac Version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes. Edited . . . with an English Translation and Notes, by Ernest A. Wallis Budge, M.A.
BLEA.	The Life and Exploits of Alexander the Great, being a Series of Translations of the Ethiopic Histories of Alexander. . . . By E. A. Wallis Budge, M.A.
BLHP.	A Literary History of Persia. By Edward G. Browne, M.A.
BLRE.	History of the Lower Roman Empire. By J. B. Bury.
BPB.	Photius: Bibliotheca. Ex Recensione Immanuelis Bek- keri.
CIG.	Corpus Inscriptionum Graecarum.
CTC.	Theophanis Chronographia. Ex Recensione Ioannis Classeni.
DAA.	Arriani Anabasis . . . F. Dübner.
DAI.	Arriæni Indica . . . F. Dübner.
DEI.	J. Darmesteter, Études Iraniannes.

136 *GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS*

- DFKHP. History of the Parsis. By Dcsabhai Framji Karaka, C.S.I.
- DIA. The History of Antiquity. From the German of Professor Max Duncker. By the late Evelyn Abbot, M.A.
- DZA. Professor Darmesteter's Trans. of the Zandavasta in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Parts¹ and pages.
- EHI. The History of India as told by its own Historians. By Sir H. M. Elliot, K.C.B.
- EP. Eastern Persia, an Account of the Journeys of the Persian Boundary Commission, 1870-71-72.
- GDF. The History of the Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire. By Edward Gibbon, Esq. With Notes by Dean Milman and M. Guizot. Edited, with additional Notes, by William Smith, L.L.D.
- GH. The Land of the Hittites. . . . By John Garstang, D.Sc.
- GHP. Histoire des Perses par le Comte de Gobineau.
- GIP. Grundriss der Iranischen Philologie.
- GKS. Kleine Schriften von Alfred von Gutschmid.
- GYZ. Geiger : Das Yátkár-i Zarfrán und sein Verhältniss zum Sáhnáme. Sitzungsberichte der philosophisch-philologischen und historischen Classe der k.b. Akademie der Wissenschaften zu München. 1890. Bd. II. Heft I. p. 43.
- HAP. History of Art in Persia from the French of Georges Perrot and Charles Chipiez.
- HB. The Country of Balochistan. . . . By A. W. Hughes, F.R.G.S.
- HEP. Essays on the Sacred Language, Writing and Religion of the Persis. By Martin Haug, Ph. D. Edited and enlarged by E. W. West, Ph. D.
- HIE. The Indian Empire. By W. W. Hunter, C.S.I., C.I.E., L.L.D.
- HLP. The Legend of Perseus. By E. S. Hartland.
- HQC. Q. Curtius Rufus . . . ed. Edmundus Hedicke.
- HRVP. Veterum Persarum . . . Religionis Historia. Ed. 2nd. By Thomas Hyde.
- HS. Syntagma Dissertationum quas olim auctor doctissimus Thomas Hyde S.T.P. separatim edidit.
- JFB. The earliest English version of the Fables of Bidpai . . . now again edited and induced by Joseph Jacobs.
- JP. Persia Past and Present, by Professor A. V. Williams Jackson.
- JRGS. The Journal of the Royal Geographical Society.
- JZ. Zoroaster. By A. V. Williams Jackson.
- KA. Asia. By A. H. Keane, F.R.G.S.
- KUR. Kitab-i-Yamini of Al Utbi. Translated by the Rev. James Reynolds, B.A.
- LAN. The Arabian Nights' Entertainments. A New Translation from the Arabic. . . . By Edward William Lane.
- LEC. The Lands of the Eastern Caliphate. By G. Le Strange.

¹The second edition of Part I. is referred to unless otherwise specified.

GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS 137

- LPC. A View of the History and Coinage of the Parthians. By John Lindsay, Esq.
- MA. Alexandre le Grand . . . Par Paul Meyer.
- MCAI. Ancient India as described by Megasthenes and Arrian. . . . By J. W. M'Crindle, M.A.
- MCI. The Invasion of India by Alexander the Great. . . . By J. W. M'Crindle, M.A. . . . New Edition.
- MF. Reliqua Arriani et Scriptorum de rebus Alexandri M. Fragmenta colligit . . . Carolus Muller.
- MGN. Narrative of a Journey through the Province of Khorassan, etc. By Colonel C. M. MacGregor, C.S.I., C.I.E.
- MHP. History of Persia. By Sir John Malcolm, G.C.B.
- MLM. The Life of Muhammad. By William Muir, Esq.
- MM. Maçoudi : Les Prairies d'Or. Texte et traduction par C. Barbier de Meynard et Pavet de Courteille.
- MPC. Pseudo-Callisthenes, primum edidit Carolus Mullerus.
- MSJP. A Second Journey through Persia, etc. By James Morier Esq.
- MZA. Rev. L. H. Mills' Trans. of the Zandavasta in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Part and pages.
- NAR. Beiträge zur Geschichte des Alexanderromans, von Prof. Dr. Th. Nöldeke in Denkschriften der . . . Akademie der Wissenschaften . . . Wien, 1890.
- NIN. Das Iranische Nationalepos von Theodor Nöldeke.
- NK. Geschichte des Artachšīr i Pāpakān aus dem Pellewi übersetzt . . . von Th. Nöldeke.
- NPS. Nöldeke : Persische Studien. II. Sitzungsberichte der Kaiserlichen Akademie der Wissenschaften. CXXVI. Band.
- NSEH. Sketches from Eastern History. By Theodor Nöldeke. English Translation.
- NT. Geschichte der Perser und Araber zur Zeit der Sasaniden . . . von Th. Nöldeke.
- OHS. The History of the Saracens. By Simon Ockley. Fourth Edition.
- RFGM. The Five Great Monarchies of the Ancient Eastern World. By George Rawlinson, M.A.
- RH. The History of Herodotus. . . . By George Rawlinson, M.A.
- RK. The Koran translated from the Arabic. By J. M. Rodwell. Second Edition.
- RM. (*In Vols. III and IV*) The Mahábhárata translated into English Prose (*by Kisari Mohan Ganguli*). Published by Pratápa Chandra Rái, C.I.E.
 (*Elsewhere*) The Rauzat-us-safa ; or, Garden of Purity. . . . By . . . Mirkhond . . . Translated by E. Rehatsek.
- RP. (*In Vols. I and V*) Records of the Past. First Series.
 (*Elsewhere*) Professor Rawlinson's Parthia in the Story of the Nations' Series.

138 *GENERAL LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS*

- RPNS. Records of the Past. Second Series.
- RSM. The Seventh Great Oriental Monarchy. By George Rawlinson, M.A.
- SAC. The Chronology of Ancient Nations . . . of Albírúní . . . translated . . . by Dr. C. Edward Sachau.
- SHC. The "Higher Criticism" and the Verdict of the Monuments. By the Rev. A. H. Sayce.
- SK. The Koran . . . Translated . . . by George Sale, Gent.
- SM. History of the Early Kings of Persia . . . Translated from the original . . . Persian of Mirkhond . . . by David Shea.
- SP. The Periplus of the Erythraean Sea . . . Translated from the Greek and annotated by Wilfrid H. Schoff, A.M.
- STD. The Dabistán . . . Translated : . . by David Shea and Anthony Troyer.
- WLS. In the Land of the Lion and Sun . . . By C. J. Wills, M.D.
- WPR. The Pársí Religion. By John Wilson.
- WPT. Dr. E. W. West's Trans. of the Pahlaví Texts in the Sacred Books of the East. Reference to Parts and pages.
- YMP. The Book of Sir Marco Polo . . . newly translated. . . . By Colonel Henry Yule, C.B.
- ZT. *Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid Tabari*, traduite . . . Par M. Hermann Zotenburg.

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME I	Vol. I	PAGE
PREFACE		vii
 INTRODUCTION		
CHAPTER I.—LAND AND PEOPLE		3
CHAPTER II.—POET AND POEM		23
CHAPTER III.—TEXT AND TRANSLATION		76
 LIST OF PREVIOUS TRANSLATORS		
ANCIENT PERSIAN CALENDAR		87
GENEALOGICAL TABLES		88
ABBREVIATIONS		90
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION		93
		95
 THE SHÁHNÁMA		
THE PRELUDE—		
SECT.		
1. Invocation		100
2. Discourse in Praise of Wisdom		101
3. Of the Making of the World		102
4. Of the Nature of Man		104
5. Of the Nature of the Sun		105
6. Of the Nature of the Moon		105
7. In Praise of the Prophet and his Companions		106
8. On the Compilation of the Sháhnáma		108
9. Of the Poet Dakíki		109
10. How the present Book was begun		109
11. In Praise of Abú Mansúr, Son of Muhammad		110
12. In Praise of Sultán Mahmúd		112
 THE BEGINNING OF THE HISTORY: THE		
PISHDÁDIAN DYNASTY		
GAIÚMART—		
1. The Greatness of Gaiúmart and the Envy of Ahriman		118
2. How Siyámak was slain by the Dív		120
3. How Húshang and Gaitímart went to fight the Black Dív		121

140 GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

HÚSHANG—

SECT.		VOL. I
	PAGE	
1.	The Accession of Húshang and his civilising Arts .	122
2.	How the Feast of Sada was founded	123

TAHMÚRÁS—

1.	Tahmúras ascends the Throne, invents new Arts, subdues the Dívs, and dies	126
----	--	-----

JAMSHÍD—

1.	The Greatness and Fall of Jamshíd	131
2.	The Story of Zahhák and his Father	135
3.	How Iblís turned Cook	137
4.	How the Fortunes of Jamshíd went to Wrack .	139

ZAHHÁK—

1.	The evil Customs of Zahhák and the Device of Irmá'íl and Karmá'íl	145
2.	How Zahhák saw Farídún in a Dream	147
3.	The Birth of Farídún	150
4.	How Farídún questioned his Mother about his Origin	152
5.	The Story of Zahhák and Káwa the Smith	154
6.	How Farídún went to Battle with Zahhák	159
7.	How Farídún saw the Sisters of Jamshíd	161
8.	The Story of Farídún and the Minister of Zahhák .	164
9.	How Farídún bound Zahhák	166

FARÍDÚN—

1.	How Farídún ascended the Throne	174
2.	How Farídún sent Jandal to Yaman	177
3.	How the King of Yaman answered Jandal	181
4.	How the Sons of Farídún went to the King of Yaman	183
5.	How Sarv proved the Sons of Farídún by Sorcery .	184
6.	How Farídún made Trial of his Sons	186
7.	How Farídún divided the World among his Sons .	189
8.	How Salm grew envious of Íraj	189
9.	How Salm and Túr sent a Message to Farídún .	191
10.	How Farídún made Answer to his Sons	193
11.	How Íraj went to his Brothers	197
12.	How Íraj was slain by his Brothers	199
13.	How Farídún received Tidings of the Murder of Íraj	202
14.	How a Daughter was born to Íraj	205
15.	The Birth of Minúchihr	206
16.	How Salm and Túr had Tidings of Minúchihr .	208
17.	How Farídún received his Sons' Message	209
18.	How Farídún made Answer to his Sons	211
19.	How Farídún sent Minúchihr to fight Túr and Salm	215
20.	How Minúchihr attacked the Host of Túr	218

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

141

FARÍDÚN (*continued*)

SECT.		VOL. I.
21.	How Túr was slain by Minúchihr	PAGE 220
22.	How Minúchihr wrote to announce his Victory to Farídún	221
23.	How Káran took the Castle of the Aláns	223
24.	How Kákwi, the Grandson of Zahhák, attacked the Iránians	225
25.	How Salm fled and was slain by Minúchihr	227
26.	How the Head of Salm was sent to Farídún	229
27.	The Death of Farídún	232

MINÚCHIHR—

1.	How Minúchihr ascended the Throne and made an Oration	237
2.	The Birth of Zál	239
3.	How Sám had a Dream touching the Case of his Son	243
4.	How Minúchihr took Knowledge of the Case of Sám and Zál	248
5.	How Zál went back to Zábulistán	251
6.	How Sám gave the Kinglom to Zál	253
7.	How Zál visited Mihráb of Kábúl	256
8.	How Rúdába took Counsel with her Damsels	259
9.	How Rúdába's Damsels went to see Zál	263
10.	How the Damsels returned to Rúdába	267
11.	How Zál went to Rúdába	270
12.	How Zál consulted the Archimages in the Matter of Rúdába	273
13.	How Zál wrote to Sám to explain the Casc	275
14.	How Sám consulted the Archimages in the Matter of Zál	278
15.	How Síndukht heard of the Case of Rúdába	280
16.	How Mihráb was made aware of his Daughter's Case	284
17.	How Minúchihr heard of the Case of Zál and Rúdába	288
18.	How Sám came to Minúchihr	289
19.	How Sám went to fight Mihráb	292
20.	How Zál went on a Mission to Minúchihr	295
21.	How Mihráb was wroth with Síndukht	299
22.	How Sám comforted Síndukht	301
23.	How Zál came to Minúchihr with Sám's Letter	306
24.	How the Archimages questioned Zál	308
25.	How Zál answered the Archimages	309
26.	How Zál displayed his Accomplishment before Minúchihr	311
27.	Minúchihr's Answer to Sám's Letter	314
28.	How Zál came to Sám	316
29.	The Story of the Birth of Rustam	320
30.	How Sám came to see Rustam	324
31.	How Rustam slew the White Elephant	327

142 GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

	VOL. I.
	PAGE
MINÚCHIHR (<i>continued</i>)	
SECT.	
32. How Rustam went to Mount Sipand	330
33. How Rustam wrote a Letter announcing his Victory to Zál	332
34. The Letter of Zál to Sám	334
35. Minúchihr's last Counsels to his Son	335
NAUDAR—	
1. How Naudar succeeded to the Throne	339
2. How Pashang heard of the Death of Minúchihr	342
3. How Afrásiyáb came to the Land of Irán	345
4. How Bármán and Kubád fought together and how Kubád was slain	346
5. How Afrásiyáb fought with Naudar the second Time	350
6. How Naudar fought with Afrásiyáb the third Time	352
7. How Naudar was taken by Afrásiyáb	355
8. How Wísa found his Son that had been slain	356
9. How Shamásás and Khazarwán invaded Zábulistán	358
10. How Zál came to help Mihráb	359
11. How Naudar was slain by Afrásiyáb	362
12. How Zál had Tidings of the Death of Naudar	364
13. How Iglrifás was slain by his Brother	367
ZAV—	
1. Zav is elected Sháh	370
GARSHÁSP—	
1. How Garshásp succeeded to the Throne and died, and how Afrásiyáb invaded Irán	374
2. How Rustam caught Rakhs	378
3. How Zál led the Host against Afrásiyáb	381
4. How Rustam brought Kai Kubád from Mount Alburz	382
INDEX	389

VOLUME II

	PAGE
GENEALOGICAL TABLES	3
ABBREVIATIONS	5
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	6

THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY

KAI KUBÁD—

SECT.	PAGE
1. How Kai Kubád ascended the Throne and warred against Túrán	11
2. How Rustam fought with Afrásiyáb	13
3. How Afrásiyáb came to his Father	16
4. How Pashang sued to Kai Kubád for Peace	18
5. How Kai Kubád came to Istakhr of Párs	22

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

143

KAI KÁÚS—

VOL. II

PART I. THE WAR WITH MÁZANDARÁN—

SECT.	PAGE
1. The Prelude	29
2. How Káús sat upon the Throne and was tempted to invade Mázandarán.	30
3. How Zál gave Counsel to Káús	36
4. How Káús went to Mázandarán.	38
5. The Message of Kai Káús to Zál and Rustam	42

THE SEVEN COURSES OF RUSTAM—

6. The First Course. How Rakhsh fought with a Lion	44
7. The Second Course. How Rustam found a Spring .	46
8. The Third Course. How Rustam fought with a Dragon	48
9. The Fourth Course. How Rustam slew a Witch .	50
10. The Fifth Course. How Rustam took Úlad cap- tive	52
11. The Sixth Course. How Rustam fought with the Dív Arzhang	57
12. The Seventh Course. How Rustam slew the White Dív	59
13. How Káús wrote to the King of Mázandarán .	63
14. How Rustam went on an Embassy to the King of Mázandarán	66
15. How Káús fought with the King of Mázandarán .	70
16. How Káús returned to the Land of Frán and fare- welled Rustam	76

PART II. THE DOINGS OF KAI KÁÚS IN THE LAND
OF BARBARISTÁN AND OTHER TALES—

1. How Kai Káús warred with the King of Hámá- varán	82
2. How Káús asked to Wife Súdába, the Daughter of the King of Hámávarán	86
3. How the King of Hámávarán made Káús Prisoner .	88
4. How Afrásiyáb invaded the Land of Frán .	91
5. How Rustam sent a Message to the King of Hám- ávarán	93
6. How Rustam fought with Three Kings and deliv- ered Káús	95
7. How Káús sent a Message to Afrásiyáb	98
8. How Káús ordered the World	101
9. How Káús beguiled by Iblís ascended the Sky .	102
10. How Rustam brought back Káús	104

THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF THE SEVEN WARRIORS—

11. How Rustam went with the Seven Warriors to the Hunting-ground of Afrásiyáb	107
12. How Rustam fought with the Túrániens	111

KAI KÁÚS—

PART II THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF THE SEVEN WARRIORS

(continued)—

SECT.

13. How Pilsam fought with the Frániens	112
14. How Afrásiyáb fled from the Battlefield	116

PART III. SUHRÁB—

1. The Prelude	119
2. How Rustam went to the Chace	120
3. How Rustam came to the City of Samangán	122
4. How Talmína, the Daughter of the King of Saman- gán, came to Rustam	123
5. The Birth of Suhráb	126
6. How Suhráb chose his Charger	127
7. How Afrásiyáb sent Bármán and Húmán to Suhráb	129
8. How Suhráb came to White Castle	131
9. How Suhráb fought with Gurdáfríd	132
10. The Letter of Gazldaham to Káús	136
11. How Suhráb took White Castle	137
12. How Káús wrote to Rustam and summoned him from Zábulistán	138
13. How Káús was wroth with Rustam	142
14. How Káús and Rustam led forth the Host	148
15. How Rustam slew Zhanda Razm	149
16. How Suhráb asked Hajr the Names of the Chiefs of Irán	152
17. How Suhráb attacked the Army of Káús	159
18. How Rustam fought with Suhráb	162
19. How Rustam and Suhráb returned to Camp	165
20. How Suhráb overthrew Rustam	168
21. How Suhráb was slain by Rustam	172
22. How Rustam asked Káús for an Elixir	177
23. How Rustam lamented for Suhráb	179
24. How Rustam returned to Zábulistán	182
25. How Suhráb's Mother received the Tidings of his Death	184

PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH—

1. The Prelude	191
2. The Story of the Mother of Siyáwush	193
3. The Birth of Siyáwush	195
4. How Siyáwush arrived from Zábulistán	197
5. The Death of the Mother of Siyáwush	199
6. How Súdába fell in Love with Siyáwush	200
7. How Siyáwush visited Súdába	202
8. How Siyáwush visited the Bower the second Time	206
9. How Siyáwush visited the Bower the third Time	210
10. How Súdába beguiled Káús	211
11. How Súdába and a Sorceress devised a Scheme	214
12. How Káús inquired into the Matter of the Babes	215
13. How Siyáwush passed through the Fire	218

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

145

KAI KÁÚS—

PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH (<i>continued</i>)— SECT.	VOL. II PAGE
14. How Siyáwush begged Súdába's Life of his Father	222
15. How Káús heard of the Coming of Afrásiyáb	224
16. How Siyáwush led forth the Host	226
17. The Letter of Siyáwush to Kai Káús	229
18. The Answer of Kai Káús to the Letter of Siyáwush	230
19. How Afrásiyáb had a Dream and was afraid.	232
20. How Afrásiyáb inquired of the Sages concerning his Dream	234
21. How Afrásiyáb took Counsel with the Nobles	235
22. How Garsíwaz came to Siyáwush	238
23. How Siyáwush made a Treaty with Afrásiyáb	239
24. How Siyáwush sent Rustam to Káús	242
25. How Rustam gave the Message to Káús	243
26. How Káús sent Rustam to Sístán	246
27. The Answer of Káús to the Letter of Siyáwush	247
28. How Siyáwush took Counsel with Bahrám and Zanga	249
29. How Zanga went to Afrásiyáb	252
30. How Afrásiyáb wrote to Siyáwush	255
31. How Siyáwush gave up the Host to Bahrám.	257
32. The Interview of Siyáwush with Afrásiyáb	261
33. How Siyáwush displayed his Prowess before Afrásiyáb	263
34. How Afrásiyáb and Siyáwush went to the Chase	267
35. How Pírán gave his Daughter to Siyáwush	268
36. How Pírán spake to Siyáwush about Farangís	270
37. How Pírán spake with Afrásiyáb	272
38. The Wedding of Farangís and Siyáwush	274
39. How Afrásiyáb bestowed a Province on Siyáwush.	276
40. How Siyáwush built Gang-dízh	279
41. How Siyáwush discoursed with Pírán about the Future	282
42. How Afrásiyáb sent Pírán into the Provinces	285
43. How Siyáwush built Siyáwushgird	285
44. How Pírán visited Siyáwushgird	287
45. How Afrásiyáb sent Garsíwaz to Siyáwush	289
46. The Birth of Farúd, the Son of Siyáwush	291
47. How Siyáwush played at Polo	292
48. How Garsíwaz returned and spake Evil before Afrásiyáb	296
49. How Garsíwaz returned to Siyáwush	301
50. The Letter of Siyáwush to Afrásiyáb	306
51. How Afrásiyáb came to fight with Siyáwush	307
52. How Siyáwush had a Dream	308
53. The Parting Words of Siyáwush to Farangís.	310
54. How Siyáwush was taken by Afrásiyáb	312
55. How Farangís bewailed herself before Afrásiyáb	317
56. How Siyáwush was slain by Gurví	320
57. How Pírán saved Farangís	323

KAI KÁÚS—

PART IV. THE STORY OF SIYÁWUSH (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL. II
SECT.	PAGE
58. The Birth of Kai Khusrau	325
59. How Píráñ entrusted Kai Khusrau to the Shepherds	328
60. How Píráñ brought Kai Khusrau before Afrásiyáb	330
61. How Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird	333
PART V. HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH AND HOW GÍV BROUGHT KAI KHUSRAU TO ÍRÁN—	
1. Firdausí's Lament over his old Age	336
2. How Káús heard of the Case of Siyáwush	337
3. How Rustam came to Káús	338
4. How Rustam slew Súdába and led forth the Host	340
5. How Farámarz slew Warázád	341
6. How Surkha led his Troops to fight with Rustam	344
7. How Afrásiyáb led forth the Host to avenge his Son	348
8. How Pílsam was slain by Rustam	350
9. How Afrásiyáb fled from Rustam	353
10. How Afrásiyáb sent Khusrau to Khutan	355
11. How Rustam reigned over Túrán for Seven Years	357
12. How Zawára went to the Hunting-ground of Siyáwush	359
13. How Rustam harried the Land of Túrán	360
14. How Rustam returned to Írán	361
15. How Gúdarz had a Dream of Kai Khusrau	363
16. How Gív went to Túrán in Quest of Kai Khusrau	365
17. The Finding of Kai Khusrau	369
18. How Gív and Kai Khusrau went to Siyáwushgird	373
19. How Kai Khusrau won Bihzád	374
20. How Farangís went with Kai Khusrau and Gív to Írán	377
21. How Kúlbád and Nastíhan fled from Gív	378
22. How Píráñ pursued Kai Khusrau	380
23. How Píráñ contended with Gív	382
24. How Píráñ was taken by Gív	385
25. How Farangís delivered Píráñ from Gív	386
26. How Afrásiyáb found Píráñ on the Way	388
27. How Gív disputed with the Toll-man	390
28. How Kai Khusrau crossed the Jíhún	392
29. How Kai Khusrau came to Ispahán	394
30. How Kai Khusrau came to Káús	397
31. How Tús refused Allegiance to Kai Khusrau	399
32. How Gúdarz was wroth with Tús	402
33. How Gúdarz and Tús went before Káús on the Matter of the Kingship	403
34. How Tús and Farámarz went to the Castle of Bahman and came back foiled	405
35. How Kai Khusrau went to the Castle of Bahman and took it	406

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

147

KAI KÁÚS—

PART V. HOW RUSTAM AVENGED SIYÁWUSH, etc. (*continued*)—

	VOL. II
SECT.	PAGE
36. How Kai Khusrau returned in Triumph	409
37. How Káús set Khusrau upon the Throne of King- ship	411
INDEX	413

VOLUME III

	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS	3
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	4

THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (*continued*)

KAI KHUSRAU—

PART I. HOW KAI KHUSRAU, TO AVENGE SIYÁWUSH,
SENT A HOST AGAINST TÚRÁN—

	PAGE
SECT.	
1. The Prelude	15
2. How the Nobles did Homage to Kai Khusrau	17
3. How Kai Khusrau made a Progress through his Realm	19
4. How Kai Khusrau swore to Kai Káús to take Vengeance on Afrásiyáb	20
5. How Kai Khusrau numbered the Paladins	24
6. How Kai Khusrau bestowed Treasures on the Paladins	26
7. How Kai Khusrau sent Rustam to the Land of Hind	30
8. How Kai Khusrau reviewed the Host	31

THE STORY OF FARÚD THE SON OF SIYÁWUSH—

9. The Prelude	37
10. How Tús went to Turkistán	38
11. How Farúd heard of the Coming of Tús	41
12. How Farúd and Tukhár went to view the Host	44
13. How Bahrám came to Farúd upon the Mountain	47
14. How Bahrám went back to Tús	51
15. How Rívníz was slain by Farúd	52
16. How Zarásp was slain by Farúd	53
17. How Tús fought with Farúd	54
18. How Gív fought with Farúd	57
19. How Bízhan fought with Farúd	61
20. How Farúd was slain	62
21. How Jaríra slew herself	66
22. How Tús led the Host to the Kása Rúd, and how Paláshán was slain by Bízhan	68
23. How the Iránians suffered in a Snowstorm	71
24. How Bahrám captured Kabúda	73
25. How the Iránians fought with Tazháv	75
26. How Afrásiyáb had Tidings of Tús and his Host	78

KAI KHUSRAU—

THE STORY OF FARÚD THE SON OF SIYÁWUSH (*continued*)—

	VOL. III
SECT.	PAGE
27. How Píráñ made a Night-attack on the Iránians	80
28. How Kai Khusrau recalled Tús	84
29. How Fariburz asked a Truce of Píráñ	87
30. How the Iránians were defeated by the Turkmans	89
31. How Bahrám returned to look for his Whip upon the Battlefield	95
32. How Bahrám was slain by Tazháv	98
33. How Gív slew Tazháv in revenge for Bahrám	101
34. How the Iránians went back to Khusrau	104

PART II. THE STORY OF KÁMÚS OF KASHÁN—

1. The Prelude	110
2. How Khusrau reviled Tús	111
3. How Khusrau pardoned the Iránians	113
4. How Khusrau sent Tús to Túráñ	115
5. The Message of Píráñ to the Army of Irán	117
6. How Afrásiyáb sent an Army to Píráñ	118
7. How Tús slew Arzhang	119
8. How Húmán fought with Tús	120
9. How the Iránians and Túráñians fought the second Time	125
10. How the Túráñians used Sorcery against the Host of Irán	128
11. How the Iránians retreated to Mount Hamáwan	131
12. How the Host of Túráñ beleaguered Mount Hamáwan	132
13. How Píráñ went in Pursuit of the Iránians to Mount Hamáwan	137
14. How the Iránians made a Night-attack	139
15. How Kai Khusrau had Tidings of his Host	142
16. How Fariburz asked to Wife Farangís, the Mother of Kai Khusrau	146
17. How Tús saw Siyáwush in a Dream	149
18. How Afrásiyáb sent the Khán and Kámús to help Píráñ	151
19. How the Khán of Chín came to Hamáwan	153
20. How the Iránians took Counsel how to act	155
21. How Gúdarz had Tidings of the Coming of Rustam	156
22. How the Khán of Chín went to reconnoitre the Army of Irán	160
23. How Fariburz reached Mount Hamáwan	163
24. How Píráñ took Counsel with the Khán of Chín	164
25. How Gív and Tús fought with Kámús	168
26. The Coming of Rustam	170
27. How the Iránians and Túráñians arrayed their Hosts	174
28. How Rustam fought with Ashkabús	179

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

149

KAI KHUSRAU—

PART II	THE STORY OF KÁMÚS OF KASHÁN (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL III
SECT.		PAGE
29.	How Píráñ held converse concerning the Coming of Rustam	182
30.	How the Iránians and Túránians set the Battle in Array	185
31.	How Alwá was slain by Kámús	187
32.	How Kámús was slain by Rustam	188

PART III. THE STORY OF RUSTAM AND THE KHÁN OF
CHÍN—

1.	How the Khán of Chín had Tidings of the Slaying of Kámús	192
2.	How Chingish fared with Rustam	194
3.	How the Khán of Chín sent Húmán to Rustam . .	196
4.	How Píráñ took Counsel with Húmán and the Khán	199
5.	How Píráñ came to Rustam	201
6.	How the Túránians took Counsel for Battle with the Iránians	206
7.	How Rustam harangued his Troops	211
8.	How the Iránians and Túránians set the Battle in Array	215
9.	How Rustam reproached Píráñ	217
10.	How the Battle was joined	219
11.	How Shangul fought with Rustam and fled . . .	221
12.	How Rustam fought with Sáwa	223
13.	How Rustam slew Gahár of Gahán	224
14.	How the Khán was taken Prisoner	227
15.	How the Host of the Túránians was defeated .	230
16.	How Rustam divided the Spoil	232
17.	How Rustam wrote a Letter to Kai Khusrau .	237
18.	How Kai Khusrau made Answer to Rustam's Letter	239
19.	How Afrásiyáb had Tidings of the Case of his Army	241
20.	How Rustam fought with Káfúr the Man-eater .	243
21.	How Afrásiyáb had Tidings of the Coming of Rustam	249
22.	Afrásiyáb's Letter to Púládwand	254
23.	How Púládwand fought with Gív and Tús . .	257
24.	How Rustam fought with Púládwand	259
25.	The Wrestling of Rustam and Púládwand .	262
26.	How Afrásiyáb fled from Rustam	265
27.	How Rustam returned to the Court of the Sháh .	267
28.	How Rustam went back to Sístán	269

PART IV. THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF RUSTAM
WITH THE DÍV AKWÁN—

i.	Prelude	272
----	-------------------	-----

KAI KHUSRAU—	VOL. III
PART IV. THE STORY OF THE FIGHT OF RUSTAM, etc. (<i>continued</i>)—	
SECT.	PAGE
2. How Khusrau summoned Rustam to fight the Dív Akwán	273
3. How Rustam went in Quest of the Dív	275
4. How the Dív Akwán flung Rustam into the Sea	276
5. How Afrásiyáb came to inspect his Steeds, and how Rustam slew the Dív Akwán	279
6. How Rustam went back to the Land of Írán	281
PART V. THE STORY OF BÍZHAN AND MANÍZHA—	
1. The Prelude	287
2. How the Irmánians appealed to Khusrau	289
3. How Bízhan went to fight the wild Boars	292
4. How Gurgín beguiled Bízhan	294
5. How Bízhan went to see Manízha, Daughter of Afrásiyáb	296
6. How Bízhan went to the Tent of Manízha	298
7. How Manízha carried off Bízhan to her Palace	299
8. How Garsíwaz brought Bízhan before Afrásiyáb	301
9. How Píráñ begged Bízhan's Life from Afrásiyáb	305
10. How Afrásiyáb put Bízhan in Ward	309
11. How Gurgín returned to Írán and lied about Bízhan	310
12. How Gív brought Gurgín before Khusrau	315
13. How Kai Khusrau saw Bízhan in the Cup that showed the World	318
14. How Khusrau wrote a Letter to Rustam	319
15. How Gív bore the Letter of Kai Khusrau to Rustam	321
16. How Rustam made a Feast for Gív	324
17. How Rustam came to Khusrau	326
18. How Kai Khusrau held Feast with the Paladins	329
19. How Rustam made Petition for Gurgín to the Sháh	331
20. How Rustam equipped his Escort	333
21. How Rustam went to the City of Khutan to Píráñ	334
22. How Manízha came before Rustam	337
23. How Bízhan heard of the Coming of Rustam	340
24. How Rustam took Bízhan out of the Pit	344
25. How Rustam attacked the Palace of Afrásiyáb by Night	347
26. How Afrásiyáb went to fight with Rustam	349
27. How Afrásiyáb was defeated by the Írániens	351
28. How Rustam returned to Kai Khusrau	353
29. How Kai Khusrau made a Feast	355
INDEX	359

VOLUME IV

ABBREVIATIONS	PAGE
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	4

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

151

THE KAIĀNIAN DYNASTY (*continued*)

VOL. IV

KAI KHUSRAU (*continued*)—

PART VI. THE BATTLE OF THE TWELVE RUKHS—

SECT.		PAGE
1.	The Prelude	9
2.	How Afrásiyáb called together his Host	10
3.	How Kai Khusrau sent Gúdarz to fight the Túr- ánians	12
4.	How Gív was made the Bearer of Overtures from Gúdarz to Píráñ	16
5.	How Gív visited Píráñ at Wísağırd	19
6.	The Arraying of the Hosts.	22
7.	How Bízhan went to Gív to urge him to fight	26
8.	How Húmán asked Píráñ for Leave to fight	29
9.	How Húmán challenged Ruhhám	31
10.	How Húmán challenged Faríburz	34
11.	How Húmán challenged Gúdarz.	35
12.	How Bízhan heard of the Doings of Húmán	39
13.	How Gív gave the Mail of Siyáwush to Bízhan	44
14.	How Húmán came to battle with Bízhan	47
15.	How Húmán was slain by Bízhan	49
16.	How Nastíhan made a Night-attack and was slain	53
17.	How Gúdarz asked aid of Khusrau	56
18.	The Answer of Khusrau to the letter of Gúdarz	58
19.	How Khusrau arrayed the Host.	61
20.	How Píráñ wrote to Gúdarz Son of Kishwád.	63
21.	The Answer of Gúdarz to the Letter of Píráñ	68
22.	How Píráñ asked Succour from Afrásiyáb	75
23.	The Answer of Afrásiyáb to the Letter of Píráñ	78
24.	How the Iránians and Túránians fought a pitched Battle	81
25.	How Gív fought with Píráñ and how Gív's Horse jibbed	84
26.	How Gúdarz and Píráñ arranged a Battle of Eleven Rukhs	88
27.	How Píráñ harangued his Men of Name	93
28.	How Gúdarz and Píráñ chose the Warriors for the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs	95
29.	How Faríburz fought with Kulbád	99
30.	How Gív fought with Gurví	99
31.	How Guráza fought with Siyámak	100
32.	How Furúhil fought with Zangula	101
33.	How Ruhhám fought with Bármán	102
34.	How Bízhan fought with Rúín	102
35.	How Hajír fought with Sipahram	103
36.	How Gurgín fought with Andarímán	104
37.	How Barta fought with Kuhrám	105
38.	How Zanga, Son of Sháwarán, fought with Akhást .	105
39.	How Gúdarz fought with Píráñ	106

KAI KHUSRAU—

VOL. IV

PART VI. THE BATTLE OF THE TWELVE RUKHS (*continued*)—

SECT.

	PAGE
40. How Gúdarz returned to the Warriors of Írán	109
41. How Láhhák and Farshídward bewailed Píráñ	112
42. How Láhhák and Farshídward took the Road to Túráñ	115
43. How Gustaham pursued Láhhák and Farshídward	117
44. How Bízhan followed after Gustaham	119
45. How Láhhák and Farshídward were slain by Gustaham	121
46. How Bízhan beheld Gustaham in the Mead	123
47. How Kai Khusrau built a Charnel-house for Píráñ and for the other Chiefs of Túráñ, and how he slew Gurví the Son of Zira	126
48. How the Túráñians asked Quarter of Kai Khusrau	129
49. How Bízhan returned with Gustaham	132

PART VII. THE GREAT WAR OF KAI KHUSRAU WITH AFRÁSIYÁB—

1. In Praise of Sultán Mahmúd	139
2. How Kai Khusrau arrayed his Host against Afrásiyáb	145
3. How Afrásiyáb heard that Píráñ was slain and that Kai Khusrau had arrayed his Host	150
4. How Kai Khusrau had Tidings that Afrásiyáb advanced to fight with him	157
5. How Shída came before his Father Afrásiyáb	158
6. How Afrásiyáb sent an Embassage to Kai Khusrau	161
7. How Kai Khusrau sent an Answer to Afrásiyáb	168
8. How Kai Khusrau fought with Shída the Son of Afrásiyáb	171
9. How Shída was slain by Khusrau	175
10. How the Battle was joined between the Hosts	177
11. How Afrásiyáb fled	183
12. How Kai Khusrau announced his Victory to Káús	185
13. How Afrásiyáb went to Gang-bihisht	186
14. How Khusrau crossed the Jíhún	187
15. How Kai Khusrau fought with Afrásiyáb the second Time	190
16. How Afrásiyáb took Refuge in Gang-bihisht	193
17. The Letter of Afrásiyáb to the Faghfúr of Chín	196
18. How Kai Khusrau arrived before Gang-bihisht	198
19. How Jahn came to Kai Khusrau with an Embassage from Afrásiyáb	200
20. How Kai Khusrau made Answer to Jahn	204
21. How Kai Khusrau fought with Afrásiyáb and took Gang-bihisht	207
22. How Afrásiyáb fled from Gang-bihisht	211
23. How Kai Khusrau gave Quarter to the Family of Afrásiyáb	212

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

153

KAI KHUSRAU—

PART VII. THE GREAT WAR, ETC. (<i>continued</i>)— SECT.	VOL IV PAGE
24. How Kai Khusrau exhorted the Iránians	216
25. How Kai Khusrau wrote a Letter with the News of his Victory to Kai Káús	217
26. How Kai Khusrau had Tidings of the Coming of Afrásiyáb with the Host of the Faghfúr.	219
27. The Message of Afrásiyáb to Kai Khusrau	221
28. How the Iránians and Túániáns fought	223
29. How Afrásiyáb made a Night-attack upon Kai Khusrau and was defeated	224
30. How the Faghfúr of Chín sent an Envoy to Kai Khusrau	229
31. How Afrásiyáb crossed the Sea	230
32. How Kai Khusrau sent the Prisoners and Treasure to Káús with a Letter	232
33. The Answer of Sháh Káús to the Letter of Khusrau	237
34. The Embassage of Kai Khusrau to the Faghfúr of Chín and the King of Makrán	238
35. How Kai Khusrau fought with the King of Makrán and how the King of Makrán was slain	241
36. How Kai Khusrau crossed the Sea	245
37. How Kai Khusrau reached Gang-dízh.	247
38. How Kai Khusrau returned from Gang-dízh to Siyáwushgird	250
39. How Kai Khusrau returned from Túrán to the Land of Irán	254
40. How Kai Khusrau returned to his Grandsire	256
41. How Afrásiyáb was captured by Húm of the Race of Farídún	259
42. How Afrásiyáb escaped from Húm	261
43. How Káús and Khusrau came to Húm	264
44. How Afrásiyáb was taken the second Time and how he and Garsíwaz were slain	266
45. How Káús and Khusrau returned to Párs	269
46. The Death of Kai Káús	270
47. How Kai Khusrau fell into Melancholy	272
48. How the Nobles inquired why Khusrau had closed his Court	275
49. How the Iránians summoned Zál and Rustam	277
50. How Kai Khusrau saw Surúsh in a Dream	280
51. How Zál admonished Kai Khusrau	282
52. How Kai Khusrau answered Zál.	284
53. How Zál rebuked Kai Khusrau.	286
54. How Kai Khusrau answered and how Zál excused himself	288
55. How Kai Khusrau gave his last Charge to the Iránians	291
56. How Kai Khusrau appointed Gúdarz to be his Mandatary	294

KAI KHUSRAU—

PART VII. THE GREAT WAR, <i>etc.</i> (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL. IV
SECT.	PAGE
57. How Zál asked of Kai Khusrau a Patent for Rustam	296
58. How Kai Kausrau gave a Patent to Gív	298
59. How Kai Khusrau gave a Patent to Tús	299
60. How Kai Khusrau gave the Kingship to Luhrásp	300
61. How Kai Khusrau farewelled his Women	304
62. How Kai Khusrau went to the Mountains and vanished in the Snow	305
63. How the Paladins were lost in the Snow	308
64. How Luhrásp had Tidings of the Disappearance of Kai Khusrau	311

LUHRÁSP—

1. How Luhrásp built a Fire-temple at Balkh	316
2. How Gushtásp quitted Luhrásp in Wrath	318
3. How Gushtásp returned with Zarír	320
4. How Gushtásp set off for Rúm	323
5. How Gushtásp arrived in Rúm	324
6. How a Village-chief entertained Gushtásp	327
7. The Story of Katáyún the Daughter of Cæsar	329
8. How Cæsar gave Katáyún to Gushtásp	331
9. How Mírín asked in Marriage Cæsar's second Daughter	333
10. How Gushtásp slew the Wolf	337
11. How Ahran asked Cæsar's third Daughter in Marriage	342
12. How Gushtásp slew the Dragon and how Cæsar gave his Daughter to Ahran	346
13. How Gushtásp displayed his Prowess upon the Riding-ground	349
14. How Cæsar wrote to Ilyás and demanded Tribute .	352
15. How Gushtásp fought with Ilyás and slew him .	355
16. How Cæsar demanded from Luhrásp Tribute for Irán	356
17. How Zarír carried a Message from Luhrásp to Cæsar	359
18. How Gushtásp returned with Zarír to the Land of Irán and received the Throne from Luhrásp .	361
INDEX	367

VOLUME V

ABBREVIATIONS	PAGE
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	3
	5

THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (*continued*)

GUSHTÁSP—

PART I. THE COMING OF ZARDUHSHT AND THE WAR WITH ARJÁSP—	
SECT.	

1. How Firdausí saw Dakífi in a Dream	30
2. How Luhrásp went to Balkh and Gushtásp sat upon the Throne	31

GUSHTÁSP—

PART I. THE COMING OF ZARDUHSHT, etc. (<i>continued</i>)— SECT.	VOL. V PAGE
3. How Zarduhsh appeared and how Gushtásp accepted his Evangel	33
4. How Gushtásp refused to Arjásp the Tribute for Irán	35
5. How Arjásp wrote a Letter to Gushtásp	37
6. How Arjásp sent Envoys to Gushtásp.	40
7. How Zarír made Answer to Arjásp	42
8. How the Envoys returned to Arjásp with the Letter of Gushtásp	43
9. How Gushtásp assembled his Troops	47
10. How Jámásp foretold the Issue of the Battle to Gushtásp	48
11. How Gushtásp and Arjásp arrayed their Hosts	54
12. The Beginning of the Battle between the Iránians and Túrániens, and how Ardshír, Shírú, and Shídasp were slain	56
13. How Girámí, Jámásp's Son, and Nívzár were slain	58
14. How Zarír, the Brother of Gushtásp, was slain by Bídirafsh	61
15. How Asfandiyár heard of the Slaying of Zarír	65
16. How Asfandiyár went to Battle with Arjásp	66
17. How Nastúr and Asfandiyár slew Bídirafsh.	69
18. How Arjásp fled from the Battle	71
19. How the Turkmans received Quarter from Asfandiyár	72
20. How Gushtásp returned to Balkh	74
21. How Gushtásp sent Asfandiyár to all the Provinces, and how the Folk received from him the good Religion	76
22. How Gurazm spake Evil of Asfandiyár	78
23. How Jámásp came to Asfandiyár	80
24. How Gushtásp imprisoned Asfandiyár.	82
25. How Gushtásp went to Sístán and how Arjásp arrayed his Host the second Time.	85
26. The Words of Dakíkí being ended, Firðausí resumeth, praising Sháh Mahmúd and criticising Dakíkí	87
27. How the Host of Arjásp marched to Balkh and how Luhrásp was slain	89
28. How Gushtásp heard of the Slaying of Luhrásp and led his Army toward Balkh	93
29. How Gushtásp was put to Flight by Arjásp	96
30. How Jámásp visited Asfandiyár.	98
31. How Asfandiyár saw his Brother Farshídward	103
32. How Asfandiyár came to the Mountain to Gush-tásp	106
33. How Gushtásp sent Asfandiyár the second Time to fight Arjásp	114

156 GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

GUSHTÁSP—

PART II. THE STORY OF THE SEVEN STAGES—

SECT.

1. The Praise of Mahmúd the great King	PAGE 118
--	-------------

THE SEVEN STAGES OF ASFANDIYÁR—

2. The First Stage: How Asfandiyár slew two Wolves	119
3 The Second Stage: How Asfandiyár slew two Lions	124
4. The Third Stage: How Asfandiyár slew a Dragon	125
5. The Fourth Stage: How Asfandiyár slew a Witch	128
6. The Fifth Stage: How Asfandiyár slew the Simurgh	131
7. The Sixth Stage: How Asfandiyár passed through the Snow	134
8. The Seventh Stage: How Asfandiyár crossed the River and slew Gurgsár	139
9. How Asfandiyár went to the Brazen Hold in the Guise of a Merchant	143
10. How the Sisters of Asfandiyár recognised him	147
11. How Bishútán assaulted the Brazen Hold	150
12. How Asfandiyár slew Arjásp	152
13. How Asfandiyár slew Kuhram	155
14. How Asfandiyár wrote a Letter to Gushtásp and his Answer	159
15. How Asfandiyár returned to Gushtásp	161

PART III. THE STORY OF ASFANDIYÁR'S FIGHT WITH RUSTAM—

1. How Asfandiyár ambitioned the Throne and how Gushtásp took Counsel with the Astrologers	167
2. How Asfandiyár demanded the Kingdom from his Father	170
3. How Gushtásp answered his Son	172
4. How Katáyún counselled Asfandiyár	175
5. How Asfandiyár led a Host to Zábul	177
6. How Asfandiyár sent Bahman to Rustam	179
7. How Bahman came to Zál	182
8. How Bahman gave a Message to Rustam	184
9. How Rustam made Answer to Asfandiyár	187
10. How Bahman returned	190
11. The Meeting of Rustam and Asfandiyár	192
12. How Asfandiyár summoned not Rustam to the Feast	196
13. How Asfandiyár excused himself for not summoning Rustam to the Feast	198
14. How Asfandiyár spake Shame of the Race of Rustam	200

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

157

GUSHTÁSP—

	Vol V
PART III THE STORY OF ASFANDIYÁR'S FIGHT, etc. (<i>continued</i>)—	
SECT.	PAGE
15. How Rustam answered Asfandiyár, praising his own Race and Deeds	202
16. How Asfandiyár boasted of his Ancestry	204
17. How Rustam vaunted his Valour	207
18. How Rustam drank wine with Asfandiyár	210
19. How Rustam returned to his Palace	215
20. How Zál counselled Rustam	218
21. How Rustam fought with Asfandiyár	222
22. How the Sons of Asfandiyár were slain by Zawárá and Farámarz	225
23. How Rustam fled to the Heights	229
24. How Rustam took Counsel with his Kin	234
25. How the Símurgh succoured Rustam	235
26. How Rustam went back to fight Asfandiyár	240
27. How Rustam shot Asfandiyár in the Eyes with an Arrow	243
28. How Asfandiyár told his last Wishes to Rustam	247
29. How Bishútán bare the Coffin of Asfandiyár to Gushtásپ	251
30. How Rustam sent Bahman back to Irán	256

PART IV. THE STORY OF RUSTAM AND SHAGHÁD

1. The Prelude	261
2. How Rustam went to Kábúl on behalf of his Brother Shaghád	263
3. How the King of Kábúl dug Pits in the Hunting-ground and how Rustam and Zawárá fell thereto	268
4. How Rustam slew Shaghád and died	271
5. How Zál received News of the Slaying of Rustam and Zawárá, and how Farámarz brought their Coffins and set them in the Charnel-house	273
6. How Farámarz led an Army to avenge Rustam and slew the King of Kábúl	276
7. How Rúdába lost her Wits through Mourning for Rustam	278
8. How Gushtásپ gave the Kingdom to Bahman and died	279

BAHMAN, SON OF ASFANDIYÁR—

1. How Bahman sought Revenge for the Death of Asfandiyár	283
2. How Bahman put Zál in Bonds	285
3. How Farámarz fought with Bahman and was put to Death	287
4. How Bahman released Zál and returned to Irán	288
5. How Bahman married his own Daughter Humái and appointed his Successor	290

HUMÁI—	VOL. V
SECT.	PAGE
1. How Humái cast away her Son Dáráb on the River Farát in an Ark	294
2. How the Launderer brought up Dáráb.	296
3. How Dáráb questioned the Launderer's Wife about his Parentage, and how he fought against the Rúmans	300
4. How Rashnawád learned the Case of Dáráb.	302
5. How Dáráb fought against the Host of Rúm.	305
6. How Humái recognised her Son.	307
7. How Humái seated Dáráb upon the Throne.	309
INDEX	313

VOLUME VI

GENEALOGICAL TABLE OF THE SÁSÁNIANS	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS.	3
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	5

THE KAIÁNIAN DYNASTY (*concluded*)

DÁRÁB—	
1. How Dáráb built the City of Dárágírd	20
2. How Dáráb defeated the Host of Shu'íb	21
3. How Dáráb fought with Failakús and took to Wife his Daughter	22
4. How Dáráb sent back the Daughter of Failakús to Rúm, and how Sikandar was born	25

DÁRÁ, SON OF DÁRÁB—

1. How Dárá harangued the Chiefs and took Order for the Realm	34
2. The Death of Failakús and Sikandar's Accession to the Throne	35
3. How Sikandar went as his own Ambassador to Dárá	38
4. How Dárá fought with Sikandar and was worsted.	42
5. How Dárá fought with Sikandar the second Time.	43
6. How Sikandar fought with Dárá the third Time, and how Dárá fled to Kirmán	46
7. How Dárá wrote to Sikandar to propose Peace	49
8. How Dárá was slain by his Ministers	50
9. How Dárá told his last Wishes to Sikandar and died	52
10. How Sikandar wrote to the Nobles of Irán	57

SIKANDAR—

1. How Sikandar sat upon the Throne of Irán	85
2. How Sikandar wrote to Dilárái and Rúshanak, the Wife and Daughter of Dárá, touching the Nuptials of Rúshanak.	85

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

159

SIKANDAR (*continued*)—

VOL. VI

SECT.	PAGE
3. How Dilárái answered the Letter of Sikandar	87
4. How Sikandar sent his Mother, Náhíd, to fetch Rúshanak, and how he married her	89
5. How Kaid of Hind had a Dream, and how Mihrán interpreted it	91
6. How Sikandar marched against Kaid of Hind and wrote a Letter to him	98
7. How Kaid of Hind answered Sikandar's Letter and announced the Sending of the Four Wonders	99
8. How Sikandar sent back the Messenger to receive the Four Wonders	100
9. How Sikandar sent Ten Sages with a Letter to inspect the Four Wonders of Kaid of Hind	101
10. How the Ten Sages brought the Daughter, the Cup, the Leech, and the Sage, from Kaid of Hind to Sikandar	103
11. How Sikandar tested the Sage, the Leech, and the Cup sent by Kaid of Hind	104
12. How Sikandar led a Host against Fúr of Hind and wrote a Letter to him	110
13. How Fúr answered the Letter of Sikandar	111
14. How Sikandar arrayed his Host to fight with Fúr of Hind and made iron Steeds and Riders filled with Naphtha	112
15. How the Host of Sikandar fought with the Host of Fúr, how Fúr was slain by Sikandar, and how Sikandar seated Sawurg upon the Throne of Fúr	116
16. How Sikandar went on a Pilgrimage to the House of the Kaaba	119
17. How Sikandar led his Troops from Judda toward Misr	121
18. Sikandar's Letter to Kaidáfa, Queen of Andalús, and her Answer	123
19. How Sikandar led his Troops to Andalús and took the Hold of King Faryán	124
20. How Sikandar went as an Ambassador to Kaidáfa and was recognised by her	127
21. How Kaidáfa counselled Sikandar	132
22. How Tainúsh, the Son of Kaidáfa, was wroth with Sikandar, and how Sikandar took Precaution against him	134
23. How Sikandar made a Compact with Kaidáfa and returned to his Troops	138
24. How Sikandar went to the Country of the Brahmins, inquired into their Mysteries, and received an Answer	143

SECT.	SIKANDAR (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL. VI
		PAGE
25.	How Sikandar came to the Western Sea and saw Wonders	147
26.	How Sikandar reached the Land of Habash, fought, and was victorious	149
27.	How Sikandar reached the Land of the Narmpái, how he fought and was victorious, how he slew a Dragon, ascended a Mountain, and was forewarned of his own Death	150
28.	How Sikandar reached the City of Women, named Harúm, and saw Wonders there	153
29.	How Sikandar went into the Gloom to seek the Water of Life and spake with Birds and Isráfíl	159
30.	How Sikandar went to the East, saw Wonders, and built a Barrier against Yájúj and Májúj	163
31.	How Sikandar saw a Corpse in a Palace of Jewels on the Top of a Mountain, and the Speaking Tree, and how he was warned of his Death	166
32.	How Sikandar marched his Army to Chín, carried his own Letter to Faghfúr, and returned to his Army with the Answer	169
33.	How Sikandar returned from Chín, made War against the Sindians, and went to Yaman	174
34.	How Sikandar marched toward Bábil and found the Treasure of Kai Khusrau in a City	176
35.	How Sikandar went to the City of Bábil, wrote a Letter to Arastálís, and received his Answer	178
36.	Sikandar's Letter to his Mother	181
37.	How Sikandar's Life ended and how they carried his Coffin to Iskandariyá	183
38.	How the Sages and other Folk lamented Sikandar	185
39.	How the Mother and Wife of Sikandar lamented him	187
40.	Firdausí's Complaint of the Sky and Appeal to God	189

THE ASHKÁNIAN DYNASTY

SECT.		
1.	The Praise of Mahmúd	207
2.	The Tribal Kings	210
3.	How Pápák saw Sásán in a Dream and gave him a Daughter in Marriage	211
4.	How Ardshír Pápákán was born, and of his Case with Ardawán	213
5.	How Ardawán's Slave-girl fell in Love with Ardshír and how he fled with her to Párs	217
6.	How Ardawán heard of the Flight of Ardshír with the Damsel and pursued them	220
7.	How Ardawán wrote to Bahman, his Son, to take Ardshír	223

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

161

THE ASHKÁNIAN DYNASTY (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL. VI
SECT.	PAGE
8. How Tabák helped Ardshír, fought with Bahman, and conquered him	225
9. How Ardawán led forth his Host for Battle with Ardshír and was slain	227
10. How Ardshír fought with the Kurds and was defeated	230
11. How Ardshír attacked the Kurds by Night and overthrew them	232
12. The Story of Haftwád and the Case of the Worm .	232
13. How Ardshír fought with Haftwád and was worsted	236
14. How Míhrak of Jahram sacked the Palace of Ardshír	237
15. How Ardshír heard about the Worm and made Shift to slay it	239
16. How Ardshír slew Haftwád	244

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY

ARDSHÍR PÁPAKÁN—

SECT.	
1. How Ardshír Pápakán sat upon the Throne in Baghdád	258
2. The Case of Ardshír and the Daughter of Ardawán .	259
3. How Shápúr was born to Ardshír by the Daughter of Ardawán, and how after seven Years Ard- shír heard of his Son and acknowledged him .	261
4. How Ardshír, to find out the Future of his Reign, sent to Kaid of Hind, and Kaid's Reply	266
5. The Adventure of Shápúr with the Daughter of Míhrak, and his taking her to Wife	268
6. How Urmuzd was born to Shápúr by the Daughter of Míhrak	271
7. Of the Wisdom of Ardshír and his Method of administering the Realm	273
8. How Kharrád praised Ardshír	284
9. On the Faithlessness of Fortune	285
10. How Ardshír charged Shápúr and died	286
11. Thanksgiving to the Maker and Praise of Mahmúd, the great King	291

SHÁPÚR, SON OF ARDSHÍR—

1. How Shápúr sat upon the Throne and delivered a Charge to the Chieftains	295
2. How Shápúr fought with the Rúmans, how Baz- ánush, their General, was taken Prisoner, and how César made Peace with Shápúr	296
3. How Shápúr seated Urmuzd upon the Throne and died	299

162 GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

URMUZD, SON OF SHÁPÚR—	VOL. VI
SECT.	PAGE
1. How Urmuzd addressed the Assembly	302
2. How Urmuzd gave up the Throne to Bahrám, charged him, and died	303
BAHRÁM, SON OF URMUZD—	
1. How Bahrám succeeded to the Throne, charged the Nobles, and died	307
BAHRÁM, SON OF BAHRÁM—	
1. How Bahrám, Son of Bahrám, ascended the Throne, charged the Nobles, and died	311
BAHRÁM BAHRÁMIYÁN—	
1. How Bahrám Bahrámiyán succeeded to the Throne and died four Months after	313
NARSÍ, SON OF BAHRÁM—	
1. How Narsí succeeded to the Throne, counselled his Son, and died	315
URMUZD, SON OF NARSÍ—	
1. How Urmuzd, Son of Narsí, ascended the Throne, and how his Life ended	318
SHÁPÚR, SON OF URMUZD, SURNAMED ZÚ'L AKTÁF—	
1. How Shápúr, Son of Urmuzd, was born forty days after his Father's Death, and how he was crowned	328
2. How Táir, the Arab, carried off the Daughter of Narsí and married her, how Shápúr went to Yaman to fight him, and how his Daughter fell in Love with Shápúr	330
3. How Táir was bemused by his Daughter and how she came to Shápúr, who took the Hold and slew Táir	333
4. How Shápúr went disguised as a Merchant to Rúm, how he was taken by Cæsar, and how Cæsar ravaged the Land of Írán	335
5. How the Damsel took Measures to free Shápúr, and how he fled with her from Rúm	339
6. How the High Priest and the Captain of the Host, hearing of Shápúr's Arrival, went to him with the Troops	345
7. How Shápúr made a Night-attack, and how Cæsar was taken	346
8. How Shápúr went to Rúm and fought with Yánus, Cæsar's Brother	351
9. How the Rúmans placed Bazánish upon the Throne of Cæsar; his Letter to Shápúr and the Answer	353

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

163

SHÁPÚR, SON OF URMUZD, (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL. VI
SECT.	PAGE
10. How Bazánúsh went to Shápúr and made a Treaty of Peace	355
11. How Mání, the Painter, came to Shápúr with Pre- tence of being a Prophet, and was slain	358
12. How Shápúr made his Brother Ardshír Regent till his own Son should grow up, and how his Days ended	360
 ARDSHÍR, BROTHER OF SHÁPÚR—	
1. How Ardshír sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers	363
 SHÁPÚR, SON OF SHÁPÚR—	
1. How Shápúr, Son of Shápúr, sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers	365
 BAHRÁM, SON OF SHÁPÚR—	
1. How Bahrám sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers	368
 YAZDAGIRD, SON OF SHÁPÚR—	
1. How Yazdagird sat upon the Throne and gave a Charge to the Officers	374
2. How Bahrám Gúr, Son of Yazdagird, was born and sent to be brought up by Munzir, the Arab	375
3. How Bahrám went to the Chase with a Damsel and how he displayed his Accomplishment	382
4. How Bahrám showed his Accomplishment in the Chase before Munzir	384
5. How Bahrám came with Nu'mán to Yazdagird	386
6. How Yazdagird put Bahrám in Bonds, how he escaped by the good Offices of Tainúsh, and how he returned to Munzír	389
7. How Yazdagird, by the Advice of an Archmage, went to the Spring of Sav and was killed by a Water-horse	391
8. How the Iránians took Counsel and placed Khus- rau upon the Throne	394
9. How Bahrám Gúr heard of the Death of his Father and invaded Irán	395
10. How the Iránians heard of Bahrám's Pillaging and wrote to Munzir, and how he replied	397
11. How Bahrám Gúr arrived at Jahram with the Host of Munzir, and how the Iránians went out to him	400
12. How Bahrám Gúr harangued the Iránians as to his Fitness to rule, how they rejected him but promised him the Kingship if he would take the Crown from between the Lions	402

YAZDAGIRD, SON OF SHÁPÚR (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL. VI
SECT.	PAGE
13. How Bahrám and Khusráu went to the Waste, and how Bahrám slew the Lions and took his Seat upon the Throne	409
INDEX	413

VOLUME VII

	PAGE
PREFATORY NOTE	v
ABBREVIATIONS	xvi
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	xviii

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (*continued*)

BAHRÁM GÚR—

SECT.	
1. How Bahrám ascended the Throne, charged the Officers, and wrote Letters to all the Chiefs	7
2. How Bahrám pardoned the Fault of the Frániáns, farewelled Munzir and Nu'mán, and remitted the Frániáns' Arrears of Taxes	9
3. How Bahrám went to the House of Lambák, the Water-carrier, and became his Guest	12
4. How Bahrám went to the House of Baráhám, the Jew, who treated him scurvily	16
5. How Bahrám bestowed the Wealth of Baráhám upon Lambák	19
6. How Bahrám slew Lions and forbade Wine- drinking	21
7. The Story of the young Shoemaker and how Bahrám allowed Wine again	24
8. How Rúzbih, Bahrám's High Priest, ruined a Village by a Stratagem and restored it	26
9. How Bahrám married a Country Miller's Daughters .	31
10. How Bahrám found the Treasures of Jamshíd and bestowed them upon the Poor	34
11. How Bahrám, returning from Hunting, went to the House of a Merchant and departed displeased .	39
12. How Bahrám slew a Dragon and went to a Yokel's House	42
13. How Bahrám went to the Chase and espoused the Daughters of the Thane Barzín	48
14. How Bahrám slew Lions, went to the House of a Jeweller, and married his Daughter	55
15. How Bahrám went to the Chase and passed the Night in the House of Farshídward	67
16. How a Bramble-grubber revealed the Case of Farshídward, and how Bahrám bestowed that Householder's Wealth upon the Poor	70

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS 165

BAHRÁM GÚR (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL. VII
SECT.	PAGE
17. How Bahrám went to the Chase and slew Lions	74
18. How Bahrám went to hunt the Onager, showed his Skill before the Princes, and returned to Baghdád and Istakhr	80
19. How the Khán of Chín led forth a Host to war with Bahrám, and how the Frániacs asked Quarter of the Khán and submitted to him	84
20. How Bahrám attacked the Host of the Khán and took him	89
21. How Bahrám took a Pledge from the Túrániacs, how he set up a Pillar to delimit the Realm, and placed Shahra upon the Throne of Túrán	90
22. How Bahrám wrote to announce his Victory to his Brother Narsí and returned to Irán	92
23. How Bahrám wrote a Letter of Directions to his Officials	96
24. How Bahrám called before him the Envoy of Cæsar, and how the Envoy questioned and answered the Archmages	101
25. How Bahrám dismissed Cæsar's Envoy and charged his own Officials	106
26. How Bahrám went with his own Letter to Shangul King of Hind	109
27. How Shangul received the Letter from Bahrám and made Reply	114
28. How Shangul prepared a Feast for Bahrám, and how Bahrám displayed his Prowess	116
29. How Shangul suspected Bahrám and kept him from Irán	118
30. How Bahrám fought with the Wolf at the Bidding of Shangul and slew it	121
31. How Bahrám slew a Dragon	124
32. How Shangul became troubled about Bahrám and gave a Daughter to him	126
33. How Faghfúr of Chín wrote to Bahrám and how he replied	129
34. How Bahrám fled from Hindústán to Irán with the Daughter of Shangul	131
35. How Shangul followed Bahrám, learned who he was, and was reconciled to him	135
36. How Shangul went back to Hind and Bahrám to Irán	137
37. How Shangul with seven Kings visited Bahrám	140
38. How Shangul returned to Hindústán, and how Bahrám remitted the Property-tax to the Land-owners	144
39. How Bahrám summoned Gipsies from Hindústán	148
40. How the Time of Bahrám came to an End	150

YAZDAGIRD, SON OF BAURÁM GÚR—	VOL. VII
SECT.	PAGE
1. How Yazdagird sat upon the Throne and exhorted the Captains of the Host	154
 HURMUZ—	
1. How Hurmuz, Son of Yazdagird, ascended the Throne	157
 PÍRÚZ—	
1. How Pírúz sat upon the Throne and made an Oration	161
2. How Pírúz built the Cities of Pírúz-Rám and Bádán-Pírúz, and how he went to war with Túrán	163
3. The Letter of Khúshnawáz to Pírúz	165
4. How Pírúz fought with Khúshnawáz and was slain	167
 BALÁSH—	
1. How Balásh ascended the Throne and harangued the Iránians	171
2. How Súfarai had Tidings of the Slaying of Pírúz, how he wrote a Letter to Khúshnawáz, and how Khúshnawáz replied	173
3. How Súfarai fought with Khúshnawáz, and how Kubád was released from his Bondage	176
 KUBÁD, SON OF PÍRÚZ—	
1. How Kubád sat upon the Throne and made an Oration to the Iránians	188
2. How Súfarai went to Shíráz, how the Iránians slandered him to Kubád, and how Kubád slew him	190
3. How the Iránians put Kubád in Bonds and com- mitted him to Rizmihr, the Son of Súfarai, and how Jámásp, the Brother of Kubád, was set upon the Throne	195
4. How Kubád escaped from Ward with Rizmihr, how he wedded the Daughter of a Thane, and how he took Refuge with the Haitálians	197
5. How Kubád returned from Haitál to Irán, how he had Tidings of the Birth of his Son, Núshír- wán, and reascended the Throne	199
6. The Story of Kubád and Mazdak, and how Kubád adopted the Faith of Mazdak	201
7. How Núshírwán rejected the Faith of Mazdak and slew him and his Followers	205
8. How Kubád nominated Kisrá as Successor, and how the Great gave him the name of Núshírwán	209

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

167

NÚSHÍRWÁN—

VOL VII

PART I. NÚSHÍRWÁN'S ADMINISTRATION OF THE
REALM, HIS WARS WITH FRONTIER-TRIBES
AND WITH RÚM, AND THE REVOLT OF
NÚSHZÁD—

SECT.		PAGE
1. The Prelude		220
2. How Núshírwán ascended the Throne and made an Oration to the Iránians		221
3. How Núshírwán divided his Realm into four Parts and wrote a Decree to his Officers on the Administration of Justice		224
4. How Núshírwán required Bábak to muster the Host		230
5. How Núshírwán harangued the Iránians, and how the Kings acknowledged his Supremacy		234
6. How Núshírwán went round his Empire and built a Wall in the Pass between Irán and Túrán .		236
7. How Núshírwán chastised the Aláns and the Men of Balúch and Gilán		239
8. How Munzir, the Arab, came to Núshírwán for Succour against the Injustice of Cæsar		244
9. The Letter of Sháh Núshírwán to Cæsar of Rúm .		247
10. How the Letter of Núshírwán reached Cæsar and how he replied		248
11. How Núshírwán went to war with Cæsar		249
12. How Núshírwán took divers Strongholds in his March to Rúm		254
13. The Battle of Núshírwán with Farfúriyús, the Leader of Cæsar's Host, the Victory of Núshí- wán, and his Capture of Kálíníyús and Antá- kiya		255
14. How Núshírwán built the City of Zíb-i-Khusrau in the Likeness of Antákiya and settled the Rúman Captives therein		259
15. How Cæsar wrote to Núshírwán and sent Tribute .		261
16. The Birth of Núshzád, the Son of Núshírwán, by a Woman who was a Christian		263
17. The Sickness of Núshírwán and the Sedition of Núshzád		265
18. The Letter of Núshírwán to Rám Barzín, the Warden of the March of Madá'in, respecting the Taking of Núshzád		267
19. How Rám Barzín fought with Núshzád, and how Núshzád was slain		272

PART II. THE STORY OF BÚZURJMIHR AND THE
SEVEN BANQUETS OF NÚSHÍRWÁN—

1. How Núshírwán had a Dream and how Búzurjmihr interpreted it	281
---	-----

NÚSHÍRWÁN—

PART II. THE STORY OF BÚZURJMIHR, etc. (<i>continued</i>)—VOL. VII		PAGE
SECT.		
2.	The first Banquet of Núshírwán to the Sages, and the Counsels of Búzurjmihr	287
3.	The second Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages	290
4.	The third Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages	296
5.	The fourth Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages	301
6.	The fifth Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages	304
7.	The sixth Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages	307
8.	The seventh Banquet of Núshírwán to Búzurjmihr and the Archimages	312
PART III. THE STORY OF MAHBÚD AND OTHER MATTERS—		
SECT.		
1.	The Story of Mahbúd, the Wazír of Núshírwán, and how Mahbúd and his Sons were slain by the Sorcery of Zúrán and a Jew	318
2.	How the Sorcery of Zúrán and the Jew in the Matter of Mahbúd was discovered, and how both were slain by Command of Núshírwán .	323
3.	In Praise of the Wisdom of Núshírwán, and how he built the City of Súrsán	326
4.	The Story of the War of the Khán with Ghátkar, the Prince of the Haitálians, the Defeat of Ghátkar, and how they set Faghánísh upon the Throne	328
5.	How Núshírwán had Tidings of the Battle of the Khán with the Haitálians and how he led a Host against the Khán	333
6.	How the Khán had Tidings of the Coming of the Host of Núshírwán to Gurgán and wrote a Letter in the Cause of Peace	337
7.	How Núshírwán answered the Letter of the Khán	342
8.	How the Khán bethought himself and wrote offer- ing his Daughter in Marriage to Núshírwán .	345
9.	How Núshírwán answered the Letter, and sent Míhrán Sitád to see and fetch the Daughter of the Khán	349
10.	How the Khán sent his Daughter, escorted by Míhrán, with a Letter and Treasures to Núshírwán	354
11.	How the Khán withdrew, and how Núshírwán marched from Gurgán to Taisafún	358
12.	Discourse on the Justice of Núshírwán and how Mortals had Peace under his Usages	364

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

169

NÚSHÍRWÁN—

PART III. THE STORY OF MAHBÚD, etc. (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL. VII	
SECT.		PAGE
13. How Búzurjmihr counselled Núshírwán and dis- coursed on good Deeds and Words.	366	
PART IV. THE INTRODUCTION OF THE GAME OF CHESS INTO ÍRÁN. THE LEGEND OF THE INVEN- TION OF THE GAME. THE DISCOVERY OF THE BOOK OF KALÍLA AND DIMNA		
1. How the Rája of Hind sent the Game of Chess to Núshírwán	384	
2. How Búzurjmihr invented Nard, and how Núshír- wán sent it with a Letter to the Rája of Hind.	389	
3. The Story of Gav and Talhand, and the Invention of Chess	394	
4. How Núshírwán sent Barzwí, the Leech, to Hin- dústán to fetch a wondrous Drug, and how Barzwí brought back the Book of Kalila and Dimna	423	
INDEX	433	

VOL. VIII

	PAGE
ABBREVIATIONS	xv
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	xvi

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (*continued*)NÚSHÍRWÁN (*continued*)—PART V. THE FALL AND RESTORATION TO FAVOUR OF
BÚZURJMIHR, AND THE WISDOM OF NÚSH-
ÍRWÁN—

SECT.

1. How Núshírwán was wroth with Búzurjmihr and ordered him to be put in Ward	4
2. How the Ambassador of Cæsar came to Núshírwán with a locked Casket and how Búzurjmihr was set at large to declare its Contents	8
3. Discourse on the Responses of Núshírwán	14
4. Núshírwán's Letter of Counsel to his Son Hurmuzd	25
5. How an Archmage questioned Núshírwán and how he made Answer	28

PART VI. THE SHÁH'S LAST YEARS—

1. How Núshírwán made ready to war against Cæsar	43
2. How Núshírwán took the Stronghold of Sakila and how a Shoemaker had Dealings with him.	46
3. How the Envoy of Cæsar came to Núshírwán with Apologies and Presents.	51
4. How Núshírwán chose Hurmuzd as his Successor.	54

170 GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

NÚSHÍRWÁN—

PART VI. THE SIÁH'S LAST YEARS (<i>continued</i>)— SECT.	VOL VIII	PAGE
5. How the Archimages questioned Hurmuzd and how he replied		57
6. How Núshírwán appointed Hurmuzd as his Successor and gave him parting Counsels		61
7. How Núshírwán had a Dream and how Búzurjmíhr interpreted it as signifying the Appearance of Muhammad		66

HURMUZD, SON OF NÚSHÍRWÁN—

1. The Prelude	77
2. How Hurmuzd ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs	78
3. How Hurmuzd slew Izid Gashasp, Zarduhsh, Símáh Barzín, and Bahrám Ázarmihán, his Father's Ministers	81
4. How Hurmuzd turned from Tyranny to Justice	90
5. How Hosts gathered from all Sides against Hurmuzd, and how he took Counsel with his Wazírs	92
6. How Hurmuzd heard of Bahrám Chúbína and sent for him	96
7. How Bahrám Chúbína came to Hurmuzd and was made Captain of the Host	100
8. How Bahrám Chúbína went with twelve thousand Cavaliers to fight King Sáwa	106
9. How King Sáwa sent a Message to Bahrám Chúbína and his Answer	113
10. How King Sáwa and Bahrám Chúbína set the Battle in Array against each other	115
11. How King Sáwa sent another Message to Bahrám Chúbína and his Answer	117
12. How Bahrám Chúbína had a Dream in the Night, how he gave Battle the next Morning, and how King Sáwa was slain	121
13. How Bahrám Chúbína sent a Letter announcing his Victory, and the Head of King Sáwa, to Hurmuzd, and his Answer	129
14. How Bahrám Chúbína fought with Parmúda, Son of King Sáwa, and overcame him, and how Parmúda took Refuge in the Hold of Áwáza	134
15. How Bahrám Chúbína sent a Message to Parmúda and how Parmúda asked Quarter	138
16. How Bahrám Chúbína asked of Hurmuzd a Warrant to spare the Life of Parmúda and the Answer	141
17. How Hurmuzd's Letter, granting Quarter to Parmúda, reached Bahrám Chúbína, and how Bahrám Chúbína was wroth with Parmúda	143

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

171

	VOL.	PAGE
HURMUZD, SON OF NÚSHÍRWÁN (<i>continued</i>)—	VIII	
SECT.		
18. How Parmúda came before Hurmuzd with the Treasures sent by Bahrám Chúbína	149	
19. How Hurmuzd heard of the Ill-doing of Bahrám Chúbína and made a Compact with the Khán	151	
20. How Hurmuzd wrote a chiding Letter to Bahrám Chúbína and sent him a Distaff-case, Cotton, and Women's Raiment	153	
21. How Bahrám Chúbína put on the Woman's Dress and showed himself therein to the Chiefs of the Host	154	
22. How Bahrám Chúbína went to hunt and saw a Lady who foretold the Future to him	156	
23. How Bahrám Chúbína assumed the royal Style and how Kharrád, Son of Barzín, and the Archscribe fled	158	
24. How Hurmuzd received News of Bahrám Chúbína's Doings, and how Bahrám Chúbína sent a Frail of Swords to Hurmuzd.	160	
25. How Bahrám Chúbína made known to the Chiefs his Designs upon the Throne, and how his Sister Gurdya advised him	163	
26. Bahrám Chúbína's Letter to the Khán and how he coined Money with the name of Khusrau Parwíz and sent it to Hurmuzd	172	
27. How Bahrám Chúbína wrote to Hurmuzd and how Khusrau Parwíz fled from his Father	173	
28. How Hurmuzd sent Ayín Gashasp with an Army to fight Bahrám Chúbína and how he was slain by his Comrade	177	
29. How Hurmuzd grieved, refused Audience to the Iránians, and was blinded by Bandví and Gustaham	182	
30. How Khusrau Parwíz heard of the Blinding of Hurmuzd	184	
KHUSRAU PARWÍZ—		
1. The Prelude	196	
2. How Khusrau Parwíz sat upon the Throne and made an Oration.	197	
3. How Khusrau Parwíz visited his Father and asked Forgiveness	198	
4. How Bahrám Chúbína heard of the Blinding of Sháh Hurmuzd and how he led his Troops against Khusrau Parwíz	200	
5. How Khusrau Parwíz and Bahrám Chúbína met and parleyed	204	
6. How Bahrám Chúbína and Khusrau Parwíz returned, how Gurdya advised Bahrám Chúbína, and how Khusrau Parwíz told his Purpose to the Iránians	220	

KHUSRAU PARWÍZ (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL VIII
SECT.	PAGE
7. How Bahrám Chúbína attacked the Army of Khusrau Parwíz by Night and how Klusrau Parwíz fled	226
8. How Khusrau Parwíz went to his Sire and fled to Rúm, and how Hurmuzd was slain	230
9. How Bahrám Chúbína sent Troops after Khusrau Parwíz and how Bandví contrived to rescue him from their Hands.	233
10. How Bahrám, the Son of Siyáwush, took Bandví and carried him to Bahrám Chúbína	237
11. How Bahrám Chúbína summoned the Magnates of Irán, how they discussed his Pretensions to the Kingdom, and how he acceded to the Throne	239
12. How Bandví plotted with Bahrám, the Son of Siyáwush, to slay Bahrám Chúbína, and how Bandví fled from Bond	245
13. How Khusrau Parwíz went toward Rúm by the Desert-route and how a Hermit told him of the Past and Future	249
14. How a Cavalier of Cæsar came to Khusrau Parwíz and how he sent an Answer by Gustaham, Báwlí, Andiyán, Kharrád, Son of Barzín, and Shápúr to Cæsar.	257
15. How Cæsar answered the Letter of Khusrau Parwíz	260
16. How Cæsar wrote to Khusrau Parwíz, declining to help him, and his Answer	261
17. How Cæsar wrote the second Time to Khusrau Parwíz about giving him Aid	264
18. How Khusrau Parwíz answered Cæsar about the Alliance	269
19. How Cæsar made a Talisman and deceived the Envoys of Khusrau Parwíz, and how Kharrád, Son of Barzín, solved the Mystery	271
20. How Kharrád, Son of Barzín, expounded the Faith of the Indians and exhorted Cæsar	275
21. How Cæsar sent a Host and his Daughter to Khusrau Parwíz.	278
22. How Khusrau Parwíz led his Host to Ázar Ábádá-gán and how Bandví met him on the Way	281
23. How Bahrám Chúbína had Tidings of the Coming of Khusrau Parwíz and wrote a Letter to the Chiefs of Irán, and how the Letter fell into the Hands of Khusrau Parwíz and his Answer	284
24. How Khusrau Parwíz fought with Bahrám Chúbína and how Kút, the Rúman, was slain	288
25. How Khusrau Parwíz fought with Bahrám Chúbína the second Time, was defeated, and escaped from him by the Help of Surúsh.	292

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

173

KHUSRAU PARWÍZ (<i>continued</i>)—	VOL.	PAGE
SECT.		
26. How Khusrau Parwíz fought the third Time with Bahrám Chúbína and defeated him	300	
27. How Khusrau Parwíz sent an Army under Nastúh after Bahrám Chúbína, and how Bahrám Chúbína captured him and reached the Khán of Chín	303	
28. How Khusrau Parwíz pillaged the Camp of Bah- rám Chúbína and wrote a Letter to Cæsar who answered it with a Robe of Honour and Gifts	306	
29. How Niyátús was wroth with Bandví and how Maryam made Peace between them	309	
30. How Khusrau Parwíz gave Presents to Niyátús and the Rúmans, how he dismissed them to Rúm, and wrote Patents for the Nobles of Irán	312	
31. Firdausí's Lament for the Death of his Son	315	
32. The Story of Bahrám Chúbína and the Khán of Chín	316	
33. How Makátúra was slain by Bahrám Chúbína	320	
34. How the Lion-ape slew a Daughter of the Khán, how it was slain by Bahrám Chúbína, and how the Khán gave him a Daughter and the King- dom of Chín	322	
35. How Khusrau Parwíz heard of the Case of Bahrám Chúbína and wrote a Letter to the Khán, and how he replied*	327	
36. How Khusrau Parwíz sent Kharrád, Son of Barzín, to the Khán and how he schemed to slay Bah- rám Chúbína	331	
37. How Bahrám Chúbína was slain by Kulún as Kharrád, Son of Barzín, had planned	336	
38. How the Khán had Tidings of Bahrám Chúbína's Death and how he destroyed the House and Family of Kulún	343	
39. How Khusrau Parwíz had Tidings of the Slaying of Bahrám Chúbína and honoured Kharrád, Son of Barzín	345	
40. How the Khán sent his Brother to Gurdya, the Sister of Bahrám Chúbína, with a Letter touching her Brother's Death and asking her in Marriage as his Queen, and her Answer	346	
41. How Gurdya consulted her Nobles and fled from Marv	349	
42. How the Khán received Tidings of the Flight of Gurdya and how he sent Tuwurg with an Army after her, and how Gurdya slew Tuwurg	351	
43. How Gurdya wrote to Gurdví	354	
44. How Khusrau Parwíz slew Bandví	354	
45. How Gustaham rebelled against Khusrau Parwíz and took Gurdya to Wife	355	

KHUSRAU PARWÍZ (*continued*)—

VOL. VIII

SECT.	PAGE
46. How Khusrau Parwíz took Counsel with Gurdwí concerning Gustaham and how Gurdyá, prompted by Gurdwí, slew him	358
47. How Gurdyá wrote to Khusrau Parwíz and how he summoned and married her	361
48. How Gurdyá showed her Accomplishment before Khusrau Parwíz	363
49. How Khusrau Parwíz sent an ill-disposed March-lord to Rai and how he oppressed the Folk there	365
50. How Gurdyá made Sport before Khusrau Parwíz and how he gave Rai to her	367
51. How Khusrau Parwíz portioned out his Realm	368
52. How Shírwí, the Son of Khusrau Parwíz, was born of Maryam with bad Auspices and how Khusrau Parwíz informed Cæsar	371
53. How Cæsar wrote a Letter to Khusrau Parwíz, sent Gifts, and asked for the Cross of Christ	374
54. How Khusrau Parwíz answered Cæsar's Letter and sent Gifts	379

THE STORY OF KHUSRAU PARWÍZ AND SHÍRFÍN—

55. The Prelude	382
56. How Khusrau Parwíz loved Shírfín, how they parted, how he met her again while hunting and sent her to his Bower	383
57. How the Nobles heard that Shírfín had come to the Bower of Khusrau Parwíz and how they advised him and were satisfied with his Answer	386
58. How Shírfín murdered Maryam and Khusrau Parwíz put Shírwí in Bonds	389
59. How Khusrau Parwíz made the Throne of Tákdis	391
60. The Story of Sarkash and Bárbad, the Minstrel, and Khusrau Parwíz	396
61. How Khuśrau Parwíz built the Palace of Madá'in	400
62. Discourse on the Splendour and Greatness of Khusrau Parwíz	405
63. How Khusrau Parwíz turned from Justice, how the Chiefs revolted, and how Guráz called in Cæsar	407
64. How Cæsar withdrew through an Expedient of Khusrau Parwíz and how the Chiefs released Shírwí from Bonds	409
65. How Khusrau Parwíz was taken and how Shírwí sent him to Taisafún	418
INDEX	423

GENERAL TABLE OF CONTENTS

175

VOL. IX

	PAGE
PREFATORY NOTE	v
ABBREVIATIONS	xi
NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION	xii

THE SÁSÁNIAN DYNASTY (*concluded*)

KUBÁD (COMMONLY CALLED SHÍRWÍ)—

SECT.

1. How Shírwí ascended the Throne, announced his Will, and sent Chiefs to his Father with Counsel and Excuses	8
2. How Khusrau Parwíz answered Shírwí	15
3. How Shírwí grieved for Khusrau Parwíz and how the Chiefs were displeased thereat	27
4. How Bárbad lamented Khusrau Parwíz, cut off his own Fingers, and burned his Instruments of Music	29
5. How the Chiefs demanded from Shírwí the Death of Khusrau Parwíz and how he was slain by Mihr Hurmuzd	32
6. How Shírwí asked Shírfín in Marriage, how Shírfín killed herself, and how Shírwí was slain	36

ARDSHÍR, SON OF SHÍRWÍ—

1. How Ardshír, Son of Shírwí, ascended the Throne and harangued the Chiefs	44
2. How Guráz was displeased at Ardshír being Sháh and how he caused Ardshír to be slain by Píruz Son of Khusrau	45

GURÁZ ALSO CALLED FARÁYÍN—

1. How Guráz, (also called Faráyín,) received News of the Slaying of Ardshír, hastened to Irán, took Possession of the Throne, and was killed by Shahránguráz	51
---	----

PÚRÁNDUKHT—

1. How Púrándukht ascended the Throne and slew Píruz, Son of Khusrau, and how her own Life ended	56
--	----

ÁZARMDUKHT—

1. How Ázarmdukht ascended the Throne and how she died	59
--	----

FARRUKHZÁD—

1. How Farrukhzád ascended the Throne and how he was slain by a Slave	61
---	----

YAZDAGIRD—

VOL. IX

PAGE

SECT.		
1.	How Yazdagird ascended the Throne and addressed the Chiefs	70
2.	How Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, invaded Irán, how Yazdagird sent Rustam to oppose him, and how Rustam wrote a Letter to his Brother	72
3.	How Rustam wrote to Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and how he replied	78
4.	How Rustam fought with Sa'ad, Son of Wakkás, and was slain	83
5.	How Yazdagird consulted with the Iránians and went to Khurásán	85
6.	How Yazdagird wrote to Máhwí of Súr	89
7.	How Yazdagird wrote to the Marchlords of Tús	90
8.	How Yazdagird went to Tús and how Máhwí of Súr met him	95
9.	How Máhwí of Súr incited Bízhan to war with Yazdagird and how Yazdagird fled and hid himself in a Mill	96
10.	How Máhwí of Súr sent the Miller to kill Yazdagird, and how the Archimages counselled Máhwí to forbear	101
11.	How Yazdagird was slain by Khusrau, the Miller	107
12.	How Máhwí of Súr was informed of the Obsequies of Yazdagird and ascended the Throne	112
13.	How Bízhan, hearing of the Slaying of Yazdagird and of Máhwí of Súr's Accession to the Throne, led forth the Host to fight with him	115
14.	How Máhwí of Súr was taken and slain by Order of Bízhan	118
15.	Account of the Completion of the Sháhnáma	121

CORRECTIONS AND ADDITIONS

VOLUME I.

- Page xii, line 21, for 'Evil' read 'civil.'
- Page xiii, line 15, for 'Born' read 'born.'
- Page 4, line 4, delete 'still.'
- Page 5, line 22, after 'camel' add 'of which the red-haired variety was most esteemed.'
- Page 6, line 21, for 'Scythian' read 'Elamitic.'
- Page 7, line 19, for 'was' read 'became,' line 25 and elsewhere, for 'Tritá' and 'Traitána' read 'Trita' and 'Traitana.'
- Page 9, line 16 and elsewhere, for 'Ázartbiján' read 'Ázarbáiján.'
- Page 10, bottom The date of the fall of Nineveh has lately been assigned to the year B.C. 612. See 'The Fall of Nineveh,' p. 9 seq. By C. J. Gadd.
- reference number 2, after R insert P.
- Page 11, line 29 and elsewhere, for 'Hira and Anbar' read 'Híra and Ambár.'
- Page 13, reference number 2, for 'NESH' read 'NSEH.'
- Page 14, line 25, for 'Sámánides' read 'Sámánids.'
- Page 17, delete lines 7-10.
reference number 1, add 'See too A. V. Williams Jackson,'
'From Constantinople to the Home of Omar Khayyam,'
Ch. v.'
- Page 19, line 19, for 'Sacaestan' read 'Sacaestán.'
reference number 3, delete 'iii.'
- Page 21, line 7 and elsewhere, for 'Nuh' read 'Núh.'
line 12, for 'appealed' read 'turned.'
- Page 29, line 12 from bottom, cf LEC, pp. 206, 207 and note.
- Page 31, delete lines 13-16, and read 'that Fazl, son of Ahmad, is referred to on both occasions.'
- Page 33, line 23, delete full stop, insert comma, and for 'Such is not' read 'not be in.'
- Page 34, five lines from bottom, delete 'While I sat looking on' and read 'While I o'erlooked from far.'
- Page 37, line 22, for 'Arúdi' read 'Arúdi.'
- Page 38, seven lines from bottom, for 'Bazh' read 'Bázh.'
six lines from bottom, after 'city' add reference number 1.
at bottom add note 'The quarter in which Bázh was situated was known as Tabarán.'
- Page 39, bottom, reference number 1, delete '§1 and 7' and read 'The too spiritual conception of the Deity in §1 and the references to 'Alf in §7.'

- Page 41, last line, for 'axe' read 'ax.'
- Page 43, note 2, for 'fakká' read 'fakká,' and for 'Cf.' read 'Cf.'
- Page 45, line 24, after 'indigo' add reference number 2.
line five from bottom, after 'Cemetery' add reference number 3.
at bottom add ' * Cf. Encl. Brit. (11th ed.), Vol. II, p. 917,
col. 2.
- * Professor A. V. Williams Jackson's suggestion that, as
burial in the Muhammadan cemetery was refused, the
corpse of Firdausí was reconveyed within the walls and
buried in ground belonging to him, seems far from im-
probable. From Constantinople to the Tomb of Omar
Khayyám, p. 291.
- Page 50, line 7, for 'Ahriman' read 'Áhriman.'
- Page 51, line 23, add reference number 1.
bottom, add ' * Thus Pírán (see p. 55) may represent Perun,
the Slavonic god of thunder.'
- Page 61, line 3, delete 'which' and to end of sentence, and insert 'i.e.
of Ázargashasp.'
- Page 62, bottom, after reference number 7 insert DZA, i, 209.
- Page 67, line 18, end, add 'bin.'
- Page 68, line 9, end add 'or identical with.'
bottom, reference number 1, add NIN, 15.
- Page 69, bottom, for '108' read '107.'
- Page 71, line 19, after 'Oxus' insert 'Caspian.'
line 20, after 'Dardanelles' insert 'Mediterranean.'
bottom, reference number 6, after '80' add 'notes.'
- Page 73, line 8 from bottom, for 'land' read 'earth.'
" 7 " after 'Sháhs' add reference number 1.
" 5 " after 'canal' add reference number 2.
bottom, add ' * Kai Kubád. See Vol. ii, p. 22. * Id. 192.'
- Page 74, line 8, after 'tree' add reference number 1.
bottom, add ' * Cercis Siliquastum.'
- Page 77, line 11, for 'the first half' read 'three-fifths.'
line 8 from bottom, after 'repetitions' add reference
number 1.
bottom, add ' * These of course do not include the great
duplications of tradition in the poem.'
- Page 82, line 11, for 'regarded' read 'looked upon.'
line 25, after 'farr' add reference number 2.
bottom, add ' * pp. 369, 370.'
- Page 83, line 18, before 'múbidán' insert—
line 25, after 'subject' add reference number 2.
bottom, add ' * The expression is used, however, of Bahrám
Gúr (Vol. vii, p. 78) and of Núshírwán (viii, p. 14).
It is also applied to non-Írániens, to Suhráb, who was
opposing the Írániens (ii 145), Pírán (ii, 261, 275, 324,
iii, 106), Pílsam (ii, 352), Tazháv, an Íránián deserter
(iii, 28), Bazánúsh (vi, 297), and there are other
instances.'
- Page 84, line 3, for 'camp enclosure' read 'camp-enclosure.'

Page 85, line 20, *for* 'end' *read* 'beginning.'

Page 87, bottom, *add* 'Rogers, The Shah-namah of Fardusi. Translated from the original Persian. 1909. (A version partly in verse and partly in epitomized prose)

Page 88, lines 11 and 27, *for* 'Ardibihisht' *read* 'Ardibihisht.'
 line 12 and bottom, *for* 'Sharívar' *read* 'Shahrívar.'
 lines 12 and 26, *for* 'Farvardín' *read* 'Farwardín.'
 line 17 and page 89, line 3, *for* 'Ádar' *read* 'Ázar.'

Page 89, line 4, *for* 'Dín' *read* 'Dai.'

Page 90, line 9, *for* '3 generations' *read* '4 generations' and *add at bottom*,¹ See Vol. v. p. 203.
for 'Barmaiún. Kataiún.' *read* 'Purmáya. Kaiánush.'
 15 *add as son to Minúchehr* 'Zarasp.'
 17, *add as son to Tús* 'Zarásp.'

Page 92, line 5 *add as descendant from Tiir* 'Máh Áfrísl, d.'
 line 10, *add as descendant of Wisa* 'Kurúkhán.'
 line 11, *for* 'Píráñ' *read* 'Píráñ=Gulshahr.'
 line 15, *to descendants of Afrdsiydb add* 'Manízha, d.=Bízhan'
and delete 'Rúín.'

line 17, *for* 'Kurakhán' *read* 'Kurákhán.'

Page 93, lines 20 and 22, transpose 'EP' and 'EHI.'

Page 94, *delete lines 4-5.*

bottom, add 'ZT. Chronique de Abou-Djafar-Mo'hammed-Ben-Djarir-Ben-Yezid Tabari. Traduite sur la version Persane d'Abou-'Ali Mo'hammed Bel'ami par M. Hermann Zotenberg.'

Page 100, line 4, *for* 'Shaddad son of Ad' *read* 'Shaddád son of 'Ad.'

Page 100, line 7, *for* 'Shaddad' *read* 'Shaddád.'

Page 100, line 10, *for* 'Nasiru'd' *read* 'Násiru'd.'

Page 104, after line 4 *insert*—

'Thus is it now: what the world's end will be
 None knoweth openly or privily.'

Page 106, line 12, *for* 'The' *read* 'In,'

Page 108, line 15, *for* 'with' *read* 'to.'

Page 112, line 2, *for* 'The' *read* 'In.'

8 from bottom, *for* 'light' *read* 'blaze.'

Page 113, line 7 and elsewhere, *for* 'Ind' *read* 'Hind.'

line 19, end, *add full stop.*

Page 117, line 2, *Delete* 'FOR.'

Page 118, line 4, *for* 'mountain of the holy' *read* 'Mountain of the Holy.'

Page 120, line 1, *for* 'Slain' *read* 'slain' and *delete* 'the Hand of.'

Page 121, line 5, *for* 'Fight' *read* 'fight.'

Page 126, line 5, *add* 'This is the first of many doublets in the poem.'
 line 16, *for* 'gold' *read* 'good.'

Page 129, line 6 from bottom, *for* 'o' *read* 'of.'

- Page 130, line 11, after 'gallery' insert ...
 line 23, for 'have' read 'find,' and add to reference 4
 'WPT. i. 142.'
- Page 131, line 15, for 'They' read 'they.'
- Page 132, line 11, add full stop at end.
- Page 135, line 3, for 'departed from' read 'abandoned.'
 line 11 from bottom, end, delete comma and insert full stop.
- Page 138, line 8 from bottom, delete 'thou my' and read 'any.'
- Page 141, line 4 from bottom, for 'light' read 'Grace.'
- Page 142, line 5 from bottom, for 'downstricken' read 'down-
 stricken.'
 line 4 from bottom, for 'Áspikán' read 'Áspíkán.'
- Page 143, line 7, for '1' read '2.'
 15, for '2' read '3.'
 20, for 'Baghdad' read 'Baghdád.'
 25, after 'Ispahán' add reference number 4.
 31, for reference number 3 read 5.
 33, for reference number 4 read 6.
 bottom, after reference 3 insert 'ZT, i, 117,' and for
 reference numbers 4 and 5 read 5 and 6.
- Page 145, line 25, for 'Evil' read 'evil.'
- Page 147, line 7, for 'Kúrds' read 'Kurds.'
- Page 161, line 6, for 'Bait al' read 'Baitu'l.'
- Page 171, line 2, for 'HIS REIGN WAS' read 'HE REIGNED.'
- Page 173, line 31, for 'glory' read 'Glory.'
- Page 174, after line 21 add '§24. We have here another doublet.
 Cf. p. 290.'
- Page 175, line 13, for 'He,' read 'Be.'
- Page 181, line 13, delete 'never' and insert it after 'children.'
 2 from bottom, end, insert comma.
- Page 184, line 18, for 'except' read 'unless.'
- Page 189, line 4 from bottom, for 'Envious' read 'envious.'
- Page 199, line 7 from bottom, for 'Slain' read 'slain.'
- Page 201, note, line 4, for 'Námáh' read 'Námah.'
- Page 205, line 9, for 'Born' read 'born.'
- Page 207, line 13, for 'Chach' read 'Chách.'
- Page 208, line 12, for 'wagons did they fill' read 'wains they
 filled.'
- Page 209, line 19, for 'no longer harboureth' read 'hath ceased
 to harbour.'
 line 20, for 'evident' read 'plain.'
- Page 211, delete line 2 and read 'With treasure and brocade,
 dinárs and gems.'
- Page 212, line 21, for 'All' read 'all.'
 line 7 from bottom, for 'torquoise' read 'turquoise.'
- Page 219, line 5 from bottom, for 'a' read 'the' and after 'ball'
 add reference number 1.
 bottom, insert 'See p. 79.'
- Page 221, line 18, for 'Announce' read 'announce.'
 line 7, from bottom, for 'he' read 'He,'

- Page 224, line 11, after 'me' insert 'stay.'
- Page 224, line 12, for 'Stop to draw breath' read 'To breathe.'
- 22, for 'moralising' read 'moralling'
- Page 226, line 4, delete 'ot ou'
- Page 227, line 21, for 'Slain' read 'slain' and delete 'the Hand of.'
- Page 228, line 9, for 'produce of it' read 'fruit thereof.'
- Page 230, line 9, for 'our avenging' read 'vengeful.'
- Page 236, after line 7 insert '§18' Cf. previous reign, §24.
- line 8, beginning, insert '§29'
- 5 from bottom, beginning, insert '§31.'
- Page 237, bottom, note 1, add 'But cf. Vol. v. p. 30.'
- Page 250, side reference, prefix 'V.'
- Page 252, line 15, for 'Danbar' read 'Dambar.'
- Page 256, line 4, for 'Dunbar' read 'Dambar.'
- Page 275, line 3 from bottom, for 'Explain' read 'explain.'
- Page 280, line 9, and elsewhere, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty' when not absolute.
- Page 284, line 1, for 'Aware' read 'aware.'
- Page 292, line 20, for 'War against' read 'fight.'
- Page 293, end of note, add '309.'
- Page 299, line 6 from bottom, for 'Wroth' read 'wroth.'
- Page 307, line 7 from bottom, add reference number 1 after 'lasso.'
- Page 325, line 11, for 'Sám' read 'Zál.'
- Page 337, line 2, delete 'FOR.'
- Page 338, line 6, for 'Yast' read 'Yasht,' and at bottom, note 1, after 1 insert 'Cf. p. 59.'
- From 342, line 3 from bottom, for 'Knowhow' read 'Know how.'
- Page 347, line 10, for 'lowered' read 'loured.'
- Page 351, side reference, insert 2.
- 4 lines from bottom, insert comma after 'throb.'
- Page 352, line 4, delete semicolon.
- Page 354, line 21, for 'Guzhdaham' read 'Gazhdaham.'
- Page 355, line 4 from bottom, delete comma at end.
- Page 358, line 6 and elsewhere, for 'Hirmund' read 'Hirmund.'
- Page 366, line 12, delete 'not.'
- Page 373, line 2, for 'HIS REIGN WAS' read 'HE REIGNED.'
- Page 378, line 7, for 'lance' read 'spear.'
- Page 380, line 6 from bottom, after 'harm' add reference number 1, and at bottom add '1 Cf. BLHP, i, 452. Jackson, "From Constantinople to the Tomb of Omar Khayyam," p. 119.'
- Page 381, line 4 from bottom, for 'plants' read 'plans.'

VOLUME II.

- Page v, line 13, end, add—
- Page ix, line 25, delete 'Kai.'
- Page 3, line, 12, for 'Kataiún' read 'Katáyún.'

- Page 3, line 15, to children of Gushtásp add Faishídward, Shírú, and thirty-seven others (un-named), for ' Bíshú-tan ' read ' Bishtán and for ' Afrid ' read ' Áfríd. bottom, after (20) insert =d. of Kaid.
- Page 5, line 20, after ' d'Or,' add full stop, and for ' texte ' read ' Texte.'
- Page 6, heading, for ' NOTE ON PRONUNCIATION ' read ' ABBREVIATIONS.'
- Page 18, line 4, for ' Kharzarwán ' read ' Khazarwán.'
- Page 19, line 18, for ' Turkestán ' read ' Turkistán.'
- Page 27, line 1, delete full stop at end.
line 4 from bottom. ' There is actually a tribe existing to this day among the Elburz Mountains, or the fastnesses of ancient Hyrcania, which still bears the name Div Sapeed.' S. G. W. Benjamin, Persia and the Persians, p. 302.
- Page 29, note 1, add ' Vol. v, p. 116.'
- Page 61, line 9, for ' bears ' read ' bear.'
- Page 69 line 20 add semicolon at end.
- Page 81, line 3 from bottom, after ' crystal ' insert reference number 9 and at bottom add ' Ru'ns near Aivan-i-Kait (Kai?) some forty miles South-east of Tíhrán are still traditionally ascribed to Kai Káús. See A. V. Williams Jackson. From Constantinople to the Home of Omar Khayyam, p. 123.'
- Page 89, line 25, end, insert comma.
26 after ' Káús ' insert comma.
- Page 96, line 6 from bottom, after ' Zawára ' add reference number 1 and at bottom add ' This is the first mention of Rustam's brother.'
- Page 97, line 5, for ' a Zam of ' read ' Zam's stream with.' bottom, delete ' The name of a river ' and read ' i.e. the Oxus.'
- Page 103, line 12, for ' What ever ' read ' Whatever.'
- Page 118, bottom, for ' i, p. 236 ' read ' v, p. 30.'
- Page 119, bottom, after ' V ' insert full stop.
- Page 121, line 21, after ' him ' insert reference number 1, and at bottom add ' C. adds rightly :—
They led him herdwards
That they might have their portion from that steed ;
As I have heard, he covered forty mares
And one became with foal.
Cf. p. 128 and NIN, p. 45 note 1.
- Page 157, line 7, for ' spoken ' read ' unspoken.'
- Page 196, line 16, for ' heart and eyes ' read ' Heart and Eyes.'
- Page 200, line 11, for ' she ' read ' She.'
- Page 221, line 13, for ' unled ' read ' unsoled.'
- Page 224, end of last line, insert reference number 1 and add at bottom ' See pp. 38 seq., 88 seq.'
- Page 225, line 12, for ' All-righteous ' read ' all-righteous.'
- Page 229, line 16, for ' Who ' read ' who.' and elsewhere.

- Page 247, line 5 and elsewhere, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty' when not absolute.
- Page 252, line 4, for 'my' read 'mine.'
- Page 256, line 6 from bottom, for 'caparisoned' read 'betrapped.'
- Page 257, line 2 from bottom, delete full stop and insert comma at end.
- Page 261, line 21 and elsewhere, for 'Holy' read 'holy' when not absolute.
- Page 265, line 18, delete comma at end.
- Page 281, line 22, for 'Iráu' read 'Túrán.'
- Page 285, line 1, for 'dressed' read 'drest.'
- Page 306, line 14, end, insert semicolon.
- Page 310, line 4 from bottom, for 'All-holy' read 'all-holy.'
- Page 312, line 4 from bottom, after 'league' insert comma.
- Page 313, line 5 from bottom, end, insert comma.
4 from bottom after 'hearing' insert comma.
- Page 321, line 1, end, add reference number 1.
12, end, add reference number 2.
bottom, insert 'See p. 261.' See p. 293.'
- Page 328, line 11, for 'Kálur' read 'Kálú.'
5 from bottom, for 'blunt' read 'pointless.'
4 from bottom, for 'would go' read 'hunted,' and
insert full stop at end.
3 from bottom, delete 'To hunt,' and for 'at' read
'At.'
- Page 341, line 8 from bottom, for 'Kawá' read 'Káwa.'
- Page 374, line 6 from bottom, end, insert reference number 1.
bottom, insert 'See p. 312.'
- Page 377, line 22, insert reference number 1.
bottom, insert 'See p. 273.'
- Page 384, line 7 from bottom, delete comma and insert full stop at end.
- Page 390, bottom, delete "and insert".
- Page 395, line 3, end, insert reference number 1.
bottom, insert 'See p. 363.'
- Page 412, last line, for 'toward' read 'tow'rd.'

VOLUME III.

- Page 3, line 24, end, add 'Kisari Mohan Ganguli and published by.'
- Page 14, line 30, end, add reference number 5 and 'The text also allows the view that Farúd dwelt on Mount Sapad. See Vol. v, p. 30.'
- Page 15, Note 1, end, add 'There was no difficulty in finding an additional rhyme without using 'Pashan.' 'Gashan' (much) rhymes with 'Pashan' in Vol. viii, p. 397 and note.'
- Page 20, line 22, end, add reference number 1, and at bottom
'Cf. Vol. I, p. 61.'
- Page 36, line 8, for 'Tis' read 'Tis.'
- Page 45, line 23, for 'that' read 'thou.'

- Page 59, line 17 and elsewhere, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty'
when not absolute.
- Page 68, line 18, for 'stoneand' read 'stone and'
- Page 83, note 2, end, add '(p. 10).'
- Page 84, line 7 from bottom and elsewhere, for 'All-holy' read
'all-holy' when not absolute.
- Page 102, line 22 for 'Omnipotent' read 'omnipotent.'
- Page 110, line 2 and elsewhere, for 'Who' read 'who.'
6, for 'Whom' read 'whom.'
- Page 130, line 11, add comma at end.
- Page 134, line 6, end, add!
line 15, end, add ''.
- Page 141, line 2 from bottom and elsewhere, for 'Holy' read 'holy'
when not absolute.
- Page 148, note, for 'Pehlevan' read 'Pehlewan' and after 'donna'
delete comma
- Page 151, line 4 from bottom, add full stop at end.
- Page 172, note, for 'Car' read 'car.'
- Page 191, line 12, for 'Abul' read 'Abu'l.'
- Page 194, line 8, for 'Khan' read 'Khán.'
- Page 213, line 22, for 'Oleader' read 'O leader.'
- Page 234, note, for 'Et' read 'et' and for 'comblan' read 'com-
blant.'
- Page 237, line 7, prefix ''.
- Page 241, line 22, delete 'far.'
- Page 251, note, for 'Sur' read 'sur.'
- Page 275, line 10, end, delete !
- Page 285, line 8 from bottom, for 'fraicheur' read 'fraîcheur.'
" last line, add reference number 2.
- Page 287, side reference, for 'V. 1063' read 'V. 1065' and subse-
quent side references consecutively, i.e., 'V. 1066,'
'V. 1067,' etc., up to page 305.
- Page 294, line 7, for 'buffalos' read 'buffalocs.'
- Page 298, note, for 'La' read 'la.'
- Page 304, line 11, delete semicolon and insert comma.
- Page 305, line 25, add side reference 'V. 1086,' and read subsequent
side references consecutively, i.e., 'V. 1087,'
'V. 1088,' etc., up to page 356.
- Page 318, note, for 'Il' read 'il.'
- Page 328, line 12, end, insert semicolon.
- Page 348, line 15, add comma at end.

VOLUME IV.

- Page v, line 5, end, delete full stop and insert —
- Page ix, line 10, for 'wrath' read 'Wrath.'
- Page 8, line 10, end, add 'See Vol. vii, pp. 381, 422.'
- Page 31, line 6, delete comma and insert semicolon.
- Page 40, line 9, end, add reference number 1, and insert at bottom
'Cf. Vol. i. p. 386 and note.'

Page 85, note, *prefix reference number 1.*

Page 139, note 2, add 'It is interesting to find the dog appearing in the Book of Tobit in which there are Irāmān elements. Cf. Vol. iii, p. 271 and *Encl. Brit.* 11th Ed. s.v. *Tobit.*'

Page 141, line 9, end, *delete*—

Page 143, line 6, from bottom, *insert comma at end.*

Page 144, line 8, *delete comma and insert semicolon.*

Page 150, line 8, *for 'buffalos' read 'buffaloes.'*

§3. There appears to be a doublet here as Afrásiyáb is first said to be beyond Jaz and then at Baigand, i.e., in the neighbourhood first of the Jaxartes and then of the Oxus, but the context favours the latter position.

Page 155, line 10, *delete and insert 'He ranged the army's centre and its wings.'*

Page 256, line 1, *delete and insert 'All filled with minstrelsy and harp and wine.'*

bottom, delete comma and insert semicolon.

Page 259, line 7 from bottom, *delete 'Barda', a cavern' and insert 'to Barda', one'*

Page 262, note 2, Add 'The situation of Barda' would, however, make Lake Gokcha more appropriate. Cf. p. 259.'

Page 304, line 14, end, *delete comma and insert semicolon.*

Page 324, line 12 from bottom, *for 'shore' read 'river', and at bottom add note '1 The Euphrates.'*

Page 325, line 8 *after 'city' add reference number 1 and at bottom add note '1 Shúráb. Cf. Vol. vii, p. 254.'*

Page 339, line 1, *for 'sea' read 'river.'*

Page 340, line 3, *for 'sea' read 'stream.'*

Page 344, line 16, *for 'sea' read 'stream.'*

25, *for 'sea' read 'river.'*

28, *for 'sea' read 'stream.'*

31, *for 'sea' read 'stream.'*

Page 346, line 18, end, *add reference number 1, and at bottom add note '1 Cf. Vol. v, p. 233 note.'*

VOLUME V.

Page 14, line 2 from bottom, end, *add reference number 11, and at bottom '1 Spítáma seems to mean 'White.'*

See JZ, p. 13.'

Page 30, line 19, *for 'Girdkuh' read 'Girdkúh.'*

line 24, add 'It has been stated by an oriental authority that Dizh Gumbadán ('the Domed Fort') and Girdkuh were identical. See LEC, p. 365.'

Page 71, line 13, *for 'his' read 'a.'*

- Page 71, line 17, end, add reference number 1 and at bottom ' 1 In Firðausí Núsh Ázar is the son of Asfandiyár, but in Dálikí may of course be a brother and the one referred to above.'
- Page 126, line 4, end, add reference number 1 and at bottom ' 1 Cf. p. 233 note.'
- Page 133, line 21, for ' wisdom' read ' wisdom.'
- Page 160, line 23, end, add quotation mark.'
- Page 161, last line, end, insert full stop.
- Page 214, line 14, end, add quotation mark.'
- Page 277, line 8, insert full stop.
6 from bottom, end, insert semicolon.
- Page 288, note 1, add ' Cf. E.P. i, 256.'

VOLUME VI.

- Page vi, line 3, for ' Married' read ' married.'
- Page ix, line 14, for ' Rúmáns' read ' Rúmans.'
- Page 3, line 8 from bottom, delete ' Rustam.'
7 from bottom, for ' Chubína' read ' Chúbína.'
4 from bottom, for ' Shirví' read ' Shírví'
- Page 6, line 21, for ' Muller' read ' Müller.'
- Page 15, line 10, for ' legend' read ' Legend.'
note 3, add ' Cf. Vol. vii, p. 79.'
- Page 17, line 1, for ' Mukaffa' read ' Mukaffa'
- Page 39, line 6 from bottom, end, delete ? and insert !
- Page 64, line 8, for ' Ravi' read ' Rávi.'
- Page 81, line 2, end, insert hyphen.
- Page 89, line 5, for ' Married' read ' married.'
- Page 98, line 14, end, insert comma.
- Page 133, line 4, end, insert semicolon.
- Page 135, line 12 from bottom, read ' He must not privily devise.'
10 from bottom, for ' wise' read ' sage.'
- Page 136, line 4, end, insert !
- Page 137, line 7, end, insert comma.
- Page 150, bottom line, end, insert comma.
- Page 154, line 13 from bottom, end, insert full stop.
- Page 161, line 20, end, insert reference number 1.
bottom, insert note ' 1 Cf. Vol. i, pp. 118, 132.'
- Page 207, line 7, after ' above' insert '(p. 195).'
- Page 209, line 10, end, insert reference number 2, and at bottom add note
' 2 Mohl, rightly according to Nöldeke (NIN, p. 26
and note), reads ' Sámánians' for ' Ashkánians.' The
former claimed descent from Bahrám Chubína.'
- Page 210, line 13 from bottom, end, delete comma.
- Page 212, note, add ' Cf. p. 201.'
- Page 231, line 4 from bottom, end, insert comma.
- Page 250, line 9 from bottom, for ' Chubína' read ' Chúbína.'
- Page 288, line 9, beginning, delete ".
- Page 291, line 10 from bottom, after ' Oh' insert !
- Page 292, line 1, end, insert comma.

- Page 296, line 6 from bottom, for 'Rúmdáns' read 'Rúmans.'
- Page 298, line 13 from bottom, for 'Pars' read 'Párs.'
- Page 304, bottom line, end, *insert comma.*
- Page 312, line 3, for 'respect' read 'respecteth' and for 'thou art' 'thou're.'
- Page 316, second note, *prefix* 2.
- Page 323, note, line 5 from bottom, end, *insert comma.*
- Page 327, line 7, for 'Ambar' read 'Ambár.'
- line 8, for 'Abbasid' read 'Abbásid.'
- Page 339, note, for 'Shammas' read 'Shammás.'
- Page 372, line 2 from bottom, for 'the spring of' read 'a lake near.'
bottom line, after 'birth-place' *add, reference number* 8,
and at bottom add note 'The lake in question
being the source of two rivers the expression
'Spring' used by Firdausí in connexion with
it is not wholly inappropriate.'
- Page 376, line 7 from bottom, for 'great' read 'Great.'
- Page 387, line 12 from bottom, *prefix* ".
- Page 402, line 1, end, *insert comma.*

VOLUME VII.

- Page vii, line 4, for 'SASÁNIAN' read 'SÁSÁNIAN.'
- Page xi, line 13 from bottom, for 'Feasts' read 'Banquets.'
- Page 85, line 16 from bottom, *insert comma at end.*
3 from bottom, for 'Kharzarwán' read 'Khazarwán.'
- Page 95, line 18 end *delete comma and insert semicolon.*
- Page 106, line 15, after 'scabbards' *insert comma.*
- Page 110, line 15, for 'an as' read 'as an.'
- Page 118, line 11 from bottom, for 'Irán' read 'Írín.'
- Page 155, line 9 from bottom, *delete semicolon and insert comma.*
- Page 156, line 6, after 'Hormisdas' *delete comma and insert* 'III.'
- Page 184, note, line 14 from bottom, after 'bunch' *delete . and insert ?*
- Page 185, bottom note, *prefix* 4.
- Page 207, heading, for 'KUBAD' read 'KUBÁD.'
- Page 209, line 2, after 'below' *insert reference number* 1, and at
bottom *add* 'Cf. MHP, ii, 77, RH, Bk. iii,
ch. 35 and note.'
- line 3 from bottom, end, *delete 1 and insert 2, and before
note delete 1 and insert 2.*
- Page 217, line 4 from bottom. Sura appears to be identical with
Thapsacus of which Tiphsah (1 Kings, iv. 24)
meaning probably 'ford' seems to have been
the Hebrew form. The army of Cyrus the
Younger in his expedition against his brother
Artaxerxes II. (Mnemon) crossed the river there
on foot. Xenophon, Anabasis, I, iv, 17.

- Page 227, line 5 from bottom, after 'crown' insert comma.
 Page 231, bottom line, delete full stop and insert comma.
 Page 239 and 247, heading, read 'NUSHÍRWÁN'
 Page 251, line 13 from bottom, for 'Garshasp' read 'Gashasp'
 Page 263, line 6 from bottom, delete comma and insert semicolon.
 Page 275, bottom line, end, insert comma.
 Page 300 line 11, insert comma after 'For' and 'know.'
 Page 331, line 4, delete 'the' and insert 'from.'
 Page 348, line 20, for 'Sáh' read 'Sháh.'
 Page 369, line 18, for 'frowning face' read 'looks afront.'
 Page 395, line 10, for 'was' read 'were.'
 11, for 'were' read 'was.'
 Page 400, line 1, for 'crown' read 'treasure.'
 2, for 'treasure' read 'crown because.'
 Page 410, bottom line, for 'Almighty' read 'almighty.'

VOLUME VIII

Page 348, line 6 from bottom, *for* 'in a letter to the king'
read 'to the monarch in a letter.'

Page 353, line 5, *for* 'If' *read* 'It'

Page 362, line 11 from bottom, *delete* hyphen.

Page 374, line 8, *for* 'Ot' *read* 'Of.'

Page 411, line 8, *for* 'the' *read* 'thy.'

Page 421, line 12 from bottom, *for* 'Galínús' *read* 'Galínúsh.'

GENERAL INDEX

This Index and the General Table of Contents in this volume are complementary. References to the latter are in Italics.

A

- AAISHMA DAÉVA, demon, iii., 272
=Asmodeus probably, iii.,
272
Ábán, genius, iii, 287, 328
'Abbás, Arab chief, attacks Hur-
muzd, viii, 93
'Abbásid, 'Abbásids, Muhamma-
dan dynasty, vi, 327
rise of, i, 13
fall of, i, 14
Abbreviations, General List of,
ix, 135
Abdaas, bishop, vi, 372
Abraham, patriarch, vi, 65
Abtí (Áptya, Áthwya), mythi-
cal Iránian hero, husband
of Farának and father of
Farídún, ix, 53, 103
legend of, i, 145
Zahhák slays, i, 151, 153
Farídún avenges, i, 170
mythological origin of, i,
171, 172, 174
Abú-'Alí Muhammad, Persian
poet, Sháhnáma of, i, 69
Abú Bakr, the first Khalífa
(A.D. 632-4), i, 12, ix, 76
begins war with Persian
Empire, ix, 66

Abú Dulaf, friend of Firdausí, i,
35
assists Firdausí, i, 35
reciter of the Sháhnáma,
i, 39

- Abú'l 'Abbás Fazl bin Ahmad,
minister of Mahmúd and
perhaps a patron of Fir-
dausí, i, 30, 100, iv, 141
account of, i, 36
disgrace of, may have af-
fected Firdausí, i, 37
Abú'l Fazl, minister under the
Sámánids, father of Abú
'Alí al Bal'amí who trans-
lated Tabarí, vii, 430
patron of Rúdagí, vii, 383
Abú'l Kásim (Firdausí, *q.v.*), i,
24, 38, 99, 112, iv, 140,
v, 89, 119, vi, 20, 207,
viii, 28
Abú'l Kásim of Gurgán, shaikh,
iii, 191
dream of, about Firdausí, iii,
191
Abú' Muzaffar. *See* Nasr.
Abú Mansúr bin Abdu'r Razzák,
prince of Tús, i, 67 *seq.*,
vi, 16
Sháhnáma of, vi, 16
probably compiled by
Magi for, i, 69, viii, 71,
73
importance of, for Fir-
dausí, viii, 73.
Abú Mansúr bin Muhammad, son
of above (?), 139
patron of Firdausí, i, 29, 110
murdered, i, 29, 111
praise of, i, 110
advice of, to Firdausí, i,
111

- Abú Raihán Muhammad. *See* Albírúní.
- Abú Tálib, uncle of Muhammad, i, 12
- Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, ix, 66
supersedes Khálid in Syria, ix, 66
- Abú 'Ubaida, Arab general, ix, 67
made commander in Persian campaign, ix, 67
slain, ix, 67
- Accession of a Sháh, ceremony at, vi, 409
- Achaemenid, Achaemenids, the, first historical Persian dynasty, i, 64, v, 10, 281, vi, 194, 197, 198
- Achshunwar. *See* Akhshunwar.
- 'Ád, father of Shaddád, *q.v.*
- Arab tribe, viii, 276
- 'Adan, seaport and territory in southern Arabia, vi, 386
- Ádar. *See* Ázar.
- Ádarbád, son of Mahraspand, Zoroastrian Saint, v, 16
note
ordeal of, v, 16 *note*
- Aden. *See* 'Adan.
- Adonis, iv, 315
- Ægean sea, vi, 204
- Afrásiyáb, son of Pashang, ruler of Túrán and one of the arch-enemies of Irán, 142-153, i, 42, 55, 72, ii, 11, 13, 14, 16 *seq.*, 20, 79, 81, 98 *seq.*, 118, 127, 149, 184, 189, 242 *seq.*, 257 *seq.*, 283, 286, 288, 322 *seq.*, 335, 347 *seq.*, 360 *seq.*, 369, 373, 380, 381, 386, 392 *seq.*, 401 *seq.*, iii, 8, 12, 13, 15, 23, 26, 27, 29, 40, 42, 47, 73, 76 *seq.*, 100, 108, 123, 134, 136, 143, 146, 152, 153, 164, 165, 176, 183, 185, 193, 200 *seq.*, 207 *seq.*, 211, 213, 218, 223, 228, 241, 260 *seq.*, 268, 271, 277 *seq.*, 285, 295, 298, 300, 320, 333, 337, 339, 346
- Afrásiyáb—*cont.*
- seq.*, iv, 7, 8, 17, 19 *seq.*, 25, 29, 46, 56, 58 *seq.*, 65, 66, 70, 75, *seq.*, 83, 89, 93, 94, 96, 103, 108, 110, 113, 117, 128, 129, 145, 146, 150 *seq.*, 192 *seq.*, 235, 252, 253, 273, 287, 289, 294 v, 12, 13, 21, 44, 62, 176, 203, 208, vi, 15, 79, 177, 240 and *note*, vii, 330, 335, 337, 359, viii, 242, 300, 349, ix, 25, 103
one of the Zoroastrian triad of evil, i, 59 and *note*
mythological origin of, i, 337
first mention of, in Sháhnáma, i, 342
advocates war with Naudar, i, 343
bidden by Pashang to invade Irán, i, 343
sends Shamásás and Khazarwán to invade Sístán, i, 345
marches to Dahistán, i, 346
writes to Pashang, i, 346
encourages Bármán to challenge the Iránians to single combat, i, 347
rewards Bármán, i, 348
fights with Naudar, i, 348
and *seq.*
encounters Káran, i, 350
victorious, i, 350, 352
belenguers Naudar in Dahistán, i, 353
sends Kurúkhán to attack Párs, i, 353
takes Naudar and other chiefs prisoners, i, 355
hears of the death of Bármán and bids Wisa pursue Káran, i, 356
hears of the Turkman defeats, i, 362
sends for, and slays, Naudar, i, 362
spares the other captives at Ighríras' request, i, 363

Afrásiyáb, imprisons the captives at Sarí, i, 363
 advances to Rai, i, 363
 wroth with, and slays, Igh-ríras, i, 367
 fights with Zál, i, 368
 Pashang's wrath with, i, 374
 invades Irán, i, 374 *seq.*, 381
 sends Kulún to intercept Rustam, i, 382
 fights with Arabs for Irán and takes it, ii, 92
 king of Túrán and Chín, ii, 99
 expelled from Irán by Kai Káús and Rustam, ii, 101
 fights with the Seven Warriors, ii., III *seq.*
 nearly taken prisoner by Rustam, ii, 14, 116, 354, iii, 242, 250 and *note*
 plot of, against Suhráb and Rustam, ii, 129
 gifts of, to Suhráb, ii, 130
 identical with Astyages in legend, ii, 191
 referred to, ii, 322, 347, 394, iii, 206, iv, 145, 150, 194
 invades Irán, ii, 224 *seq.*
 dream of, ii, 232, 243, 297, iv, 170, 267
 determines to sue for peace and sends hostages, ii, 235 *seq.*
 receives Zanga and consults Píráń, ii, 253 *seq.*
 sends Píráń to welcome Siyáwush, ii, 258
 plays at polo with Siyáwush, ii, 264
 marries Farangís to Siyáwush, ii, 275
 recalls Siyáwush, from Gang-dizh, ii, 285
 sends Garsíwaz to Siyáwushgird, ii, 289
 deceived by Garsíwaz respecting Siyáwush, ii, 296 *seq.*

Afrásiyáb, sends Garsíwaz to summon Siyáwush and Farangís to court, ii, 300 *seq.*
 attacks, takes, and has Siyáwush executed, ii, 314 *seq.*
 appealed to by Farangís, ii, 317
 ill-treatment of Farangís by, ii, 320, 322
 referred to, iv, 204
 appeal of Píráń to, ii, 324
 referred to, iv, 205
 spares Farangís, ii, 325, and her son Kai Khusrau, ii, 327
 interview of, with Kai Khusrau, ii, 332
 referred to, iv, 205
 sends Surkha against the Iránians, ii, 344
 marches to avenge Surkha, ii, 348
 fights with Tús, ii, 353
 rescue of, from Rustam by Húmán, ii, 354
 crosses the sea of Chín, ii, 356
 consults Píráń about Kai Khusrau, ii, 356
 returns, ii, 362
 vengeance of, on Irán, ii, 363
 pursues Kai Khusrau, ii, 388 *seq.*
 disgraces Píráń, ii, 390
 turns back at the Jílúń, ii, 394
 Kai Khusrau's oath to take vengeance on, iii, 21
 hears of the approach of the Iránian host, iii, 71
 bids Píráń gather troops, iii, 71, 79
 numbers the host, iii, 79
 loss of kindred of, in battle, iii, 94
 rewards Píráń, iii, 106
 reinforces Píráń, iii, 118

Afrásiyáb, announces to his chiefs the defeat of his host, iii, 242
 exhorted by his host to continue the war, iii, 243, 249
 makes his preparations, iii, 243, 250
 sends Farghár to spy on Rustam, iii, 250
 consults with Shída, iii, 250
 describes Rustam, iii, 251
 receives Farghár's report, iii, 253
 consults with Pírán, iii, 253
 bids Pírán continue the war, iii, 254
 sends Shída to summon Púládwand, iii, 255
 consults Púládwand, iii, 256
 interferes in the fight between Rustam and Púládwand, iii, 263
 withdraws to Chín and Máchín, iii, 265
 goes in pursuit of Rustam and is defeated, iii, 280
 hears of the case of Bízhan and Manízha iii, 301
 consults Kurákhán, iii, 301
 sends Garsíwaz to search Manízha's palace, iii, 301
 sentences Bízhan to death, iii, 304
 respites Bízhan, iii, 308
 imprisons Bízhan, iii, 309
 disgraces Manízha, iii, 309
 escapes from Rustam, iii, 348
 bids Pírán prepare for war, iii, 349
 arrays the host against Rustam, iii, 350
 flees from Rustam, iii, 352
 goes to Khallukh, iv, 10
 addresses his nobles, iv, 10
 sends Shída to Kharazm, iv, 11
 Pírán against Frán, iv, 11
 reinforcements and bids him break off negotiations with Gív, iv, 20

Afrásiyáb, receives tidings from Pírán, iv, 77
 =king of Gang, iv, 134
 Kai Khusrau's great war with, 152, iv, 135 *seq.*
 encamped at Baigand (Kunduz), iv, 151
 hears ill tidings of Pírán and of the host, iv, 151
 distress of, iv, 152
 swears to be avenged on Kai Khusrau, iv, 152
 hears of the advance of Kai Khusrau, iv, 153
 harangues and equips his host, iv, 153
 patrols the Jíhún with boats, iv, 153
 holds a council, summons Kurákhán, and crosses the Jíhún, iv, 154
 sends Kurákhán with half the host to Bukhárá, iv, 154
 marches to Ámwí, iv, 154
 encamps in Gílán, iv, 155
 arrays his host, iv, 155
 takes his post at the centre, iv, 155
 gives Shída command of the left wing, iv, 155
 sends Jahn to guard Shída's rear, iv, 155
 gives a grandson command of the right wing, iv, 156
 commands to Gurdgír, Nastúh, Ighrifás, and Garsíwaz, iv, 156
 proposes to invade Nímrúz, iv, 156
 reviews the host and prepares to encounter Kai Khusrau, iv, 158
 urged by Shída not to delay the attack, iv, 159
 reply of, iv, 160
 wishes to meet Kai Khusrau in single combat, iv, 161
 sends Shída on an embassage to Kai Khusrau, iv, 161

Afrásiyáb, hears of Shída's death, iv, 176
 grief of, iv, 176
 commands in person against Kai Khusrau, iv, 179
 sends Jahn to the left, iv, 180
 reinforced by Garsíwaz, iv, 181
 forced by Garsíwaz and Jahn to quit the field, iv, 182
 returns to camp, iv, 183
 abandons his camp and re-crosses the Jíhún, iv, 184
 joins forces with Kurákhán, iv, 186
 stays at Bukhárá, iv, 186
 withdraws to Gang-bihisht, iv, 187
 reinforced by Kákula, iv, 188
 sends troops to Chách, iv, 188
 under Tawurg desertward, iv, 188
 marches to meet Kai Khusrau, iv, 190
 commands the centre, iv, 190
 hears of Kurákhán's defeat and return, iv, 193
 hears that Rustam is advancing, iv, 194
 fails in attempt to surprise Rustam and withdraws to Gang-bihisht, iv, 194, *seq.*
 asks aid from the Faghfúr, iv, 196
 prepares Gang-bihisht for a siege, iv, 197
 besieged in Gang-bihisht, iv, 198, 208 *seq.*
 offers terms of peace to Kai Khusrau, iv, 203
 rallies his troops at the storming of Gang-bihisht, iv, 209
 escapes, iv, 211
 gets possession of the treasures of Píráñ, iv, 219

Afrásiyáb, arrays his host to fight with Kai Khusrau, iv, 220
 offers Kai Khusrau peace or single combat, iv, 221
 fights a general engagement against Kai Khusrau, iv, 223, 226
 defeated and escapes by flight, iv, 227
 army, of, surrenders to Kai Khusrau, iv, 228
 takes refuge at Gang-dizh, iv, 230
 captive kindred of, sent to Kai Káús by Kai Khusrau, iv, 232
 Kai Káús on, iv, 237
 Khusrau's inquiries concerning, iv, 247
 hears of Kai Khusrau's approach and quits Gang-dizh, iv, 248
 searched for by Kai Khusrau, iv, 248
 fears of the Iránians concerning, iv, 249
 Kai Khusrau takes counsel with Kai Káús about, iv, 258
 wanderings and wretched plight of, iv, 259
 takes refuge in a cave near Barda', iv, 259
 lament of, overheard by Húm, iv, 260
 capture of, by Húm, iv, 261
 Darmesteter on, iv, 136
 pitied and unbound by Húm, iv, 262
 escapes into lake Urumiah, iv, 262 and *note*
 attracted by the voice of Garsíwaz, iv, 265
 holds converse with Garsíwaz, iv, 266
 recapture of, by Húm, iv, 266
 slain by Kai Khusrau, iv, 268

Afrásiyáb, daughter of = Fa-
rangís, iv, 304
Khén of Chín descended
from, vii, 334
hoard of, viii, 148, 406

Africa, vi, 30

Áfrígh, king of Khírazm, ii, 190

'Aírlít, genie, i, 42

Agani, Sargon I. of, v, 293

Age, old, Firdausí's lament over
his, ii, 336
Golden. *See* Golden.

Aghráeratha (Ighríras, *q.v.*), iv,
137

Aghrérád (Ighríras, *q.v.*), i, 338

Aghríras. *See* Ighríras.

Agni, Vedic personification of
fire, ii, 25

Ahdnámak (Andarznámak), Pah-
lavi treatise, vi, 257

Ahmad, son of Ismá'íl, Sámánid,
vii, 383

Ahmad, son of Sahl, lord of Marv,
v, 260, 261

Ahmad, Fazl son of. *See* Ábú'l
'Abbás Fazl.

Ahmad Hasan Maimandí, minis-
ter of Mahmúd, i, 32, 39,
45

Ahmad ibn Muhammad, patron
of Firdausí, i, 29

Ahran, Rúman chief, 154, iv,
342 *seq.*, 353
bidden by Caesar to slay the
dragon of Mount Sakila,
iv, 342
takes counsel with Mírin,
iv, 342
referred by Mírin to Híshwí,
iv, 344

Ahran, required by Gushtásp to
furnish him with arms, iv,
345
goes with Gushtásp and
Híshwí to Mount Sakila,
iv, 346

Híshwí and; welcome Gushtásp
on his return, iv,
347
gives gifts to Gushtásp, iv,
347

Ahran, has the dead dragon con-
veyed to Caesar's court,
iv, 348

marries Caesar's third
daughter, iv, 348

Mírin and, display their
accomplishment on the
riding-ground, iv, 349

Caesar's wrath with Mírin
and, iv, 351

Mírin and, send a scornful
message to Caesar, iv, 353

set to guard the baggage,
iv, 355

Áhriman, the Zoroastrian Evil
Principle, sometimes used
metaphorically, 139, i, 5, 6,
50, 134, 138, 159, 194, 205,
218, 236, 238, 241, 245,
287, 315, 360; ii, 34, 42,
43, 51, 53, 56, 78, 160,
208, 214, 217, 250, 260,
303, 315, 324, 358, 361,
374 *seq.*, 405 *seq.*; iii,
17, 123, 214, 228, 251, 266,
275, 277, 287, 293, 294,
300, 303, 304, 314, 316,
318, 338; iv, 23, 41 *seq.*,
45, 46, 89, 103, 124, 128,
130, 162, 163, 179, 206,
243, 272, 288, 342, 348,
352; v, 17, 33, 36, 45, 50,
90, 99, 103, 122, 123, 125,
147, 177, 198, 206, 246,
271, 276; vi, 106, 112,
206, 240, 281, 290, 299,
318, 384; vii, 89, 233,
265, 271, 290, 312, 323,
334, 359, 366, 367, 369;
viii, 19, 21, 22, 86, 87, 176,
177, 198, 210, 219, 243,
293, 333, 364, 421; ix,
8, 18, 73, 74, 79, 91
envies Gaiúmart, i, 118

son of (the Black Dív), i, 119

Surúsh warns Gaiúmart
against, i, 119

ridden by Tahmúras, i, 125,
127

=Záhhák, i, 162

=Salm and Túr, i, 194

- Áhri man=Afrásiyáb, i, 366
 Faith of, ii, 358; vi, 281, 290
 =idolater, viii, 54
 =Bandwí or Gustaham,
 viii, 89
 =Kharrád, son of Barzín,
 viii, 111
 =Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 295
 Ahuna Vairyá, Zoroastrian
 sacred formula, v, 17
 Ahura Mazda (Urmuzd), the
 Zoroastrian Good Prin-
 ciple, i, 116, 235; ii, 25
 81; iv, 137
 Ahwáz, city and province
 (Khúzistán, Susiana), i,
 286; vi, 35, 199, 298, 357;
 vii, 197, 198, 201, 214,
 224; viii, 400, 402
 Airán-vágó (frán-vej *q.v.*), ii, 189
 Akem Manau, Zoroastrian de-
 mon, iii, 271, 272
 =Akúmán=Akwán, iii 272
 assails Zarduhsh, v, 17
 Akesines (Chináb), Indian river,
 vi, 31, 64
 Akhást, Túráñian hero, 151;
 iv, 105
 chosen to fight with Zanga,
 iv, 97
 slain by Zanga, iv, 106
 Akhshunwar (Achshunwar),
 Haitálian king, vii, 160
 Akki, foster-father of Sargon I
 of Agani, v, 293
 Aknaton, Pharaoh (XVIII
 dynasty)
 lover of peace like Yazda-
 gird, son of Shápúr, vi, 371
 'Akr Bábil, prison, viii, 194, 196
 Akúmán. *See* Akem Manau.
 Akwán, dív, 150, iii, 270 *seq.*, 280
seq., 284, 309
 Story of, iii, 271
 Professor Nöldeke on the,
 iii, 271
 Firðausi on, iii, 273, 281
 boulder of, iii, 271, 276, 309,
 343, 344, 347
 removed from pit's mouth
 by Rustam, iii, 345
- Akwán, appears in the form of
 an onager, iii, 273 *seq.*
 pursued by Rustam, iii, 275
 foils Rustam, iii, 276
 takes Rustam at a disad-
 vantage, iii, 276
 offers Rustam a choice of
 deaths, iii, 277
 outwitted by Rustam, iii,
 277
 slain by Rustam, iii, 281
 described by Rustam, iii, 282
 Ál, place, ix, 93
 Aláns (Alani), people, now the
 Ossetes of the Caucasus,
 141, 167, 1, 217; iv, 14,
 60, 65, 301; vi, 395;
 viii, 360
 invade Irán, i, 19
 castle of the, i, 223
 taken by Káran, i, 223,
seq.
 castellan of, duped by
 Káran, i, 224
 monarch of, vi, 395
 Núshírwán's dealings with,
 vii, 216, 239 *seq.*
 King of=Khusrau Parwíz,
 viii, 208, 209, 213
 Alár, a village in Ardshír-Khurra
q.v., vi, 205
 Albírúní, Abú Raihán Muham-
 mad, Oriental author and
 chronologist (A.D. 973-
 1048), ii, 189
 account of Alfír (Gangdizh ?)
 by, ii, 190
 Alburz, mountain-range south of
 the Caspian, also mythi-
 cal range (Hara-bere-
 zaiti) surrounding the
 earth, 142, i, 4, 71, 145,
 158, 235, 248, 250, 277,
 298, 351, 373; ii, 11, 23,
 27, 79, 96, 144, 336, 401;
 iii, 120; iv, 136; v, 202;
 vii, 177; ix, 95
 Farídún taken by his mother
 to, i, 152
 Zál cast away, and found,
 upon, i, 241 *seq.*

- Alburz, Kai Kubád brought by
 Rustam from, i, 382 *seq.*
 Kai Káus' buildings on, ii,
 81
- Aleppo (Chalybon - Beroea), city
 in northern Syria, vii,
 218; viii, 41
- Alexander I, king of Epirus
 Italian expedition of, vi, 12
 attributed to Alexander
 the Great, vi, 12
- Alexander the Great (Sikandar
 q.v.), B.C. 356-323, son of
 Philip II of Macedon and
 his queen Olympias, i, 14,
 49; ii, 8 *seq.*; iv, 314;
 v, 30; vi, 193, 194, 204,
 252, 253, 373; vii, 383
 barrier of, i, 16; vi, 78
 legend of, in the Kurán,
 vi, 78
 persecutor of Zoroastrian-
 ism, i, 15, 59, 61, 63, 338
 paternity of, i, 55 and *note*;
 vi, 16, 18
 one of the Zoroastrian triad
 of evil, i, 59 and *note*
 said to have burnt the Zoro-
 astrian scriptures, i, 63
 Zoroastrianism under, i, 63
 Era of, ii, 190
 accompanied by experts to
 the East, vi, 11
 Romance of, origin and
 growth of, vi, 12 *seq.*
 diagram to illustrate, vi,
 84
- Syriac Christian Legend of,
 See Syriac.
- Muhammad's references to,
 in the Kurán, vi, 15, 77
 Persian national hero, how
 he became, vi, 15
 cities founded by, vi, 13,
 18
 name, Persian legend of his,
 vi, 19
- Aristotle, tutor of, vi, 29
 letter to, vi, 68
 correspondence about the
 succession with, vi, 81
- Alexander the Great, Roxana
 (Rúshanak) and, vi, 30, 32
 reign of, first years of, in
 history and romance, vi,
 30
- Darius' banquet, his flight
 from, vi, 30
 his pursuit of, vi, 31
 murderers of, his treat-
 ment of them in history
 and romance, vi, 32, 33
 daughter of, marries, vi,
 33
- Fakírs and, vi, 61
- Calanus and, vi, 61
- Porus and, historical ac-
 count of, vi, 63
 camp of, his visit to, vi, 64
- iron steeds, his device of, vi,
 64
- stature of, vi, 64
- Cleophas and, vi, 65
- Ammon, Oasis of, his visit
 to, vi, 65
- Candace (Kaidáfa) and, vi,
 65 *seq.*
- Antigonus (Naitkún), as-
 sumes name of, vi, 66
- Plutarch's Life of, vi, 67
- Brahmans, visit of, to the,
 vi, 67
- Indus mistaken for the Nile
 by, vi, 68
- marvels of his return-jour-
 ney, vi, 69
- admiral of (Nearchus), vi, 69
- Amazons and, vi, 12, 72
 legend of, vi, 72
- Gloom and Fount of Life,
 legend of his expedition
 to, in the Pseudo-Cal-
 listhenes, vi, 74 *seq.*
- Andreas, his cook, legend of,
 vi, 76
 in the Kurán, vi, 77
- Will of, vi, 81
- death of, vi, 82
- dispute over his place of
 interment, vi, 82
- corpse of, taken to Memphis,
 vi, 82

- Alexander, the Great, interred at Alexandria, vi, 82
 tomb of, vi, 82
 Mas'údí on, vi, 82
 S. Chrysostom on, vi, 82
 wars on the death of, vi, 197
- Alexander, son of Alexander the Great and Cleophasis (?), vi, 65
- Alexandria (Iskandariya *q.v.*), city and sea-port in Egypt, vi, 13, 15, 17, 83 founded by Alexander the Great, vi, 13
- Pseudo-Callisthenes originated at, vi, 13
- Alexander, the Great, buried at, vi, 82
 his tomb at, vi, 82
 Mas'údí on, vi, 82
 S. Chrysostom on, vi, 82
- Alfír (Gangdizh ?), palace-fortress of the capital of Khárazm, ii, 190
- Al Hadr. *See* Hatra.
- 'Alí, husband of Fátima, daughter of Muhammad, and fourth Khalifa (A.D. 656 — 661)
 Muhammad on, i, 12, 106
 cult of, i, 13
 known as "the Lion," i, 13, 107
 assassination of, i, 13
 Firdausí's references to, i, 24, 37, 40, 41, 106, 107; ii, 337 and *note*
- 'Alí, the Dílamite, friend and helper of Firdausí, i, 35; ix, 121
 transcriber of the Sháhnáma, i, 39
- Alif, terminal, Firdausí's use of, iii, 283
- Al Iskandarús. *See* Halai.
- Al Khidr (Khísir *q.v.*), the Green Prophet, vi, 78 and *note*
- Alkús, Túránian hero, ii, 114
 Alkús, fights with, and worsts, Zawára, ii, 115
 slain by Rustam, ii, 115
- Allah, Muhammadan name of the Deity, i, 50
- Al Mansúr, 'Abbásid Khalifa (A.D. 754-775), founder of Baghdád, vi, 254
- Almás, river, iii, 251
- Alp-Arselan (Arslán), Seljúk Sultán (A.D. 1063-1073), ii, 219 *note*
- Alptigín, founder of the Ghazní-vid dynasty, i, 20
- Altúnýa, place, ix, 92
- Alwá, Rustam's spear-bearer, slain by Kámús, i 49, iii, 188
- Alwá, Iránian hero, probably identical with the above, v, 166
 slain by Núsh Ázar, v, 226
- Amasis, viii, 193
- Amazons, their disputed visit to Alexander, the Great, vi, 12, 72
 origin of, vi, 71
 described, vi, 153 *seq.*
 Sikandar's correspondence with, and visit to, vi, 153 *seq.*
- Ambár (Anbár, Pírúz - Shápúr), city on the left bank of the Euphrates some forty miles west of Baghdád, founded by Shápúr son of Urmuzd (Sapor II.) The word means "granaries." vi, 327; viii, 188
 foundation of, attributed to the Azdites, i, 11
- Ambassadors, instances of kings and chiefs going in person as ambassadors or spies, vi, 325
- Ambúh, place, iii, 41
- Amen-Ra, Egyptian god personated by Nectanebus, vi, 16

- Ameshapentas, the, personifications of good qualities in Zoroastrian theology, iii, 271; v, 15 *seq.*
- Amida (Diyárbakr), city on the upper Tigris, vii, 187
- Amín, 'Abbásid Khalifa, (A.D. 809-813), i, 14
- Ammianus Marcellinus (4th century A.D.) Roman historian, v, 13
- Ammon, Oasis of, Alexander the Great's visit to, vi, 30, 65
- 'Ammúriya, Rúman stronghold in Asia Minor between Sívrí Hisár and Ak-Shahr probably representing the ancient Amorium but sometimes confounded with Angora (Angúriya) the ancient Ancyra further to the north-east, vi, 23 *note*, 89, viii, 46 (*Cf.* LEC. pp. 134, 153)
- Failakús marches from, against Dáráb, vi, 23
- Amorium. See 'Ammúriya.
- Amr, Arab chief, attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 93
- Ámul, city in Mázandarán, i, 145, 177, 289, 298, 344, 366, 367; ii, 18, 104; v, 284; vii, 89, 237; viii, 355, 356, 358, 392; ix, 86
- Ámul. See Ámwí.
- Amulet, of Kai Khusrav, iv, 133 given by Zarduhst to Asfandiyár, v, 130
- Ámwí (Ámul, Amúyah, now Charjúi), city on the left bank of the Oxus where crossed by the route from Marv to Bukhárá, iv, 11, 65, 154, 184, 206; vii, 91 and *note*, 331, 357, 359; viii, 354
- Anábdéh, vi, 32
- Anæsthetics, employment of, i, 236, 321 *seq.*
- Anbár. See Ambár.
- Ancyra. See Ammúriya.
- Andalús (Land of the West or of the Vandals), Spain, 159, vi, 66, 122, 138
- queen of (Kaidála *q.v.*), vi, 121 *seq.*
- Andamán, Iránian noble, viii, 202
- Andaráb, town in Afghánistán between Balkh and Kábul, iv, 65
- Andarímán, Túránian hero, 151, ii, 264; iv, 26; v, 29 fights with Gustaham, iv, 87 steed of, slain by Hajír, iv, 87 rescued by the Turkmans, iv, 87 chosen to fight with Gurgín, iv, 97 slain by Gurgín, iv, 104
- Andarímán (Vandaremaini), brother of Arjásp, v, 12, 141, 155 commands one wing of the host, v, 46 executed by Asfandiyár, v, 158
- Andarznámak (Ahdnámak), Pahlaví treatise, vi, 257
- Andív, country, viii, 313
- Andiyán, Iránian warrior, 172 viii, 225, 257, 259, 269, 293, 294, 296 deceived by Caesar's talisman, viii, 273
- Bahrám Chúbina writes to, viii, 285 receives Kirmán, viii, 313
- Andreanticus, sea, vi, 77
- Andreas, Alexander the Great's cook, legend of, vi, 76 *seq.* in Kurán, vi, 77
- Androphagoi, the, iii, 191
- Anestres Castri=Núshírwán, vii, 383
- Angora. See 'Ammúriya.
- Angra Mainyu=Áhriman, ii, 28
- Animals, domestication of, i, 126
- Ant, the, Firðausí's plea for, i, 201 and *note*

- Antálkiya (Antioch), city in Syria on the Orontes, 167, viii, 41
taken by Núshírwán, vii, 218, 258 *seq.*
- Antigonus (Naitkún), name assumed by Alexander the Great in legend, vi, 66
- Antioch. *See* Antákiya.
New, vii, 218, 259
- Antiochus, Macedonian general, vi, 76
- Antiochus Sidetes, ii, 80, 81
- Aogemaide, Pahlaví treatise, iv, 136
- Antipater, regent in Macedonia for Alexander the Great, intrigued against by Olympias, vi, 82
- Aphrodite, goddess, iv, 315
- Apollo, god, and the Python, vi, 203
- Apologues, i, 242, 265, 285; iii, 332; iv, 18, 21, 28, 47; vi, 310; ix, 86
- Apothegms, i, 259, 260; ii, 157, 158, 170, 224, 254, 273, 298, 300, 313, 315, 330, 357, 383; iii, 53, 91, 96, 167, 188, 212, 260, 277, 301, 316, 341, 348, 350, 351; iv, 13, 32, 33, 38, 39, 59, 93, 108, 121, 131, 268; v, 78, 105, 168, 214, 242, 249, 250, 265; vi, 50, 303, 343; vii, 17, 18, 20, 42, 270, 277, 296, 301, 403; viii, 119, 166, 206, 215, 221, 235, 295; ix, 87, 88, 110
- Apprentice, a merchant's, entertains, and finds favour with, Bahrám Gúr, vii, 40 *seq.*
- Aprics (Pharoah-Hophra, B.C. 589-570), vi, 16
- Apsheron, peninsula on the western shore of the Caspian, i, 58, *note*.
- Áptya. *See* Abtíñ.
- Arab, Arabs, 162, 163, ii, 79, 81, 99; iii, 14; iv, 14; v, 31; vi, 66, 171, 209, 254, 321 *seq.*, 377, 385, 396, 398, 402, 406; vii, 10, 107, 201, 219, 244, 245, 247; viii, 67, 94, 188, 190, 191, 208, 230, 241, 250, 251; ix, 3, 5, 25, 60, 69, 70, 72, 75 *seq.*, 79, 89, 92, 94 *seq.*, 114, 117
migration of, northward, i, 11
raids of, into Persian territory, i, 12; vi, 17, 21, 322
domination of, over Irán, i, 12 *seq.*
king = Mardás, i, 135
= Záhhák, i, 139, 275
rebellion of, against Kai Káús, ii, 83
Afrásiyáb fights with, for Irán, ii, 92
Dáráb demands tribute from vi, 22
steed, i, 243, 251, 290; vi, 380; viii, 126, 302; ix, 11
cymbal, vi, 244
invasion of, viii, 72, 93; ix, 3, 65 *seq.*
withdraw, viii, 96
sage, sages, vii, 406
quoted, vii, 277
tribes, ix, 65
triumph of, over Dhú Kár, ix, 66
chieftain, incites Abú Bakr to invade Persia, ix, 66
concentrate at Kádisíya, ix, 67
booty found by, at Ctesiphon (?), ix, 68
annex Mesopotamia, ix, 68
Khúzistán, ix, 68
= 'Umar, ix, 72
seal, ix, 82
= Sa'ad, ix, 84
defeated, ix, 85
Núshírwán's dream of, viii, 66 *seq.*, ix, 92

- Arabia, ii, 100; vi, 70, 72, 206, 322, 355; viii, 24 *note*
trade of, ancient, i, 11
Irán and, the portion of
Íraj, i, 189
Shápur son of Urmuzd's
expedition to, vi, 322
- Arabian, Arabians, vi, 378, 388,
ix, 74, 85
Faith, vi, 95
Nights, i, 51; vi, 71, 78, 250;
vii, 317
provenance of, vi, 250;
vii, 3
quoted, vi, 73
- Arabic, language, i, 32; vi,
147, 205; viii, 73; ix,
81
infrequent in Sháhnáma, i,
47
versions of Pahlaví texts, vi,
255 *seq.*
- Fables of Bidpai (Kalila and
Dimna) translated into,
vii, 382, 430
Tabarí. *See* Tabarí.
- Arachosia, the district about
Kandahar, vi, 32
- Aragán (Rámkubád), town, vii,
188
- Aral Sea, i, 57 *note*; iii, 10
- Arar tree, vi, 19
- Aras (Araxes), river in Ázabáján, v, 13, 14
confused with the Oxus, i,
71, 370
- Árash, king of the Khúzians
q.v., iv, 146, 148
- Árash, son of Kai Kubád. *See*
Kai Árash.
- Árash, Ashkánian king, vi, 197,
210
- Árash, Iránian chief, vi, 394
- Arash, city. *See* Hulwán.
- Arastális (Aristotle *q.v.*), 160,
vi, 35
counsels Sikandar, vi, 179
sentences of, over the coffin
of Sikandar, vi, 185
- Árásti, uncle of Zarduhsh (Zor-
oaster), v, 17
- Araxes (Aras *q.v.*), battle of, viii,
76
- Árayish-i Rúm (Hierapolis), city
in northern Syria, west
of the Euphrates and
north of Aleppo, vii, 217,
218, 254; viii, 188
taken by Núshírwán, vii,
255
- Arba, river, viii, 194, 195
- Archer, iv, 179
constellation, v, 86
- Archery, i, 263, 297, 312, 359;
ii, 163, 266, 293, 328;
iii, 53 *seq.*, 74, 93, 98 *seq.*,
170 *seq.*, 246; iv, 38, 48,
99, 101, 102, 104, 107, 122,
179, 338; v, III, 122,
229, 239 *seq.*, 272; vi,
379, 383 *seq.*; vii, 54,
55, 80, 118, 122, 125
- Archimages, 141, 168, 170, 176
- Architect, Rúman, and Khusrau
Parwíz, viii, 401 *seq.*
- Architecture, invention of, i,
129, 133
- Archscribe, 171. *See* Izid Gas-
hasp and Mihrán.
- Ard, day, i, 88, *q.v.*, ii, 287; iv,
252; vi, 298, 390 and
note; vii, 112; ix, 70,
122
- Sháhnáma finished on the
day of, i, 24
- Ardabíl (Bádán - Pírúz *q.v.*), city
in Ázabáján, ii, 336, 405,
iv, 147, 188; vii, 89, 163,
224; viii, 93, 99, 100,
184, 226
- Ardawán, Bahrám, Artabanus
III or IV, the last Ash-
kánian (Parthian) king,
160, 161, vi, 3, 205, 214
seq., 254 *seq.*, viii, 214, 285
- Macrinus, his war and treaty
with, i, 81
effect of, on Persian coin-
age, i, 81
- =Bahrám, vi, 197, 210
status of, in Persian tradi-
tion, vi, 201

Ardawán, daughter of 161, vi, 202
 marries Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 202, 229
 incited by her brother Bahman to poison Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 259
 condemned to death, vi, 260
 saved by Ardshír Pápakán's minister, vi, 260
 gives birth to Shápúr, vi, 261
 restored to favour, vi, 265
 writes to Pápak, vi, 214
 summons Ardshír Pápakán to court, vi, 214
 receives gifts from Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 215
 highly esteems Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 215
 sons of, vi, 215, 255, 267
note
 their fate, vi, 228, 229 and
note, 259
 disgraces Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 216
 Ardshír Pápakán intrigues with slave-girl of, 160, vi, 201, 217 *seq.*
 eldest son of, made ruler of Párs, vi, 218 and *note*
 consults the astrologers, vi, 218
 Ardshír Pápakán, vainly pursued by, vi, 221 *seq.*
 returns to Rai, vi, 223
 writes to his son about Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 223
 Ardshír Pápakán marches against, vi, 227
 prepares to encounter Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 227
 defeated, captured by Kharrád, and slain by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 228
 buried by Tabák, vi, 229
 palace of, at Rai spared (?) by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 229 and *note*.

Ardawán, secretary of, slain by Shápúr, vi, 256
 == Mihrak == Mithrak == Mádik (?), vi, 256
 Ardibibisht, ameshaspenta *q.v.*, iii, 286, 328
 month, i, 82; v, 16, 39, 92 *note*
 Ardshír, son of Bízhan, goes with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
 hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
 Ardshír, son of Gushtásp, 155, v, 26, 51
 death of, foretold by Jámasp, v, 49
 slain, v, 57
 Ardshír, Iránian hero, perhaps the son of Bízhan, *supra*
 tells Nastúr where to find Zarír, v, 67
 takes Farámarz prisoner, v, 288
 Ardshír (Bahman *q.v.*), Sháh, vi, 213, 271 and *note*
 meaning of, v, 259 and *note*
 Ardshír (Artaxerxes II), brother of Shápúr, Sásánian Sháh, 163, vi, 3, 328
 Shápúr arranges for the succession with, vi, 360 *seq.*
 title of, vi, 364
 abdication of, vi, 364
 Ardshír, high priest *temp.*, Píruz, vii, 179 *seq.*
 released by Khúshnawáz, vii, 180
 Ardshír, high priest *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 304, 333, 337, 342
 discourse of, vii, 305
 questions Búzurjmihr, vii, 308
 Ardshír Khurra (Khurra - i - Ardshír), city, (Gúr or Júr, now Firuzábád), and district in Párs, vi, 199, 205, 206, 229 and *note*, 231, 241, 245; vii, 206; viii, 251, 252, 412 and *note*

Ardshír Khurra, city, Ardshír
 Pápakán builds a fire-
 temple in, vi, 230
 makes irrigation-works in,
 vi, 230
 meaning of, vi, 290 *note*
 Ardshír Pápakán (Artaxerxes I),
 Sháh and founder of the
 Sásánian dynasty, 160,
 161; i, 42; ii, 10; v, 10;
 vi, 193, 209 *note*, 213 *seq.*,
 294 *seq.*, 303, 307, 315,
 322, 325, 405; vii, 79,
 185, 212; viii, 191, 214,
 222, 265, 270, 285, 392,
 393; ix, 105, 109, 111
 Notes on, vi, 193 *seq.*, 254
seq.
 founds a new national
 dynasty, restores Zoroas-
 trianism, and collects its
 scriptures, i, 62 *seq.*
 genealogical table of his
 descendants, vi, 3
 rise of, compared to that of
 Cyrus the Great, vi, 194
 Tabari's account of, vi, 198
 legend of Cyrus the Great
 transferred to, vi, 195
 birth of, vi, 213
 summoned to court by Arda-
 wán, vi, 214
 equipped by Pápak, vi, 214
 presents gifts to Ardashán,
 vi, 215
 Ardashán favours, vi, 215
 prowess of, in the chase, vi,
 215
 disgraced, vi, 216
 writes to Pápak, vi, 216
 advised by Pápak, vi, 216
 intrigues with Gulgár, vi,
 217 *seq.*
 hears from Gulgár of the
 presage of the astrologers,
 vi, 219
 flees with Gulgár to Párs,
 vi, 220 *seq.*
 followed by the divine Grace
 in the form of a mountain-
 sheep, i, 374; vi, 221 *seq.*

Ardshír Pápakán, adherents flock
 to, vi, 223
 addresses his supporters, vi,
 224
 sounds a city, vi, 202, 224
 receives promises of help,
 vi, 224
 joined by Tabák, vi, 225
 Tabák and, defeat Bah-
 man, son of Ardashán, vi,
 226
 marches from Párs against
 Ardashán, vi, 227
 defeats and slays Ardashán,
 vi, 228
 as recorded in Kárnámak,
 vi, 202
 gives the spoil to the troops,
 vi, 229
 spares (?) Ardashán's palace
 at Rai, vi, 229 and *note*
 Tabák counsels, vi, 229
 marriage of, with Ardashán's
 daughter, vi, 202, 229, 259
 returns to Párs, vi, 229
 builds Khurra-i-Ardshír, vi,
 229 and *note*
 irrigation-works of, at
 Khurra-i-Ardshír, vi, 230
 war of, with the Kurds, vi,
 196, 230 *seq.*
 and Haftwád, vi, 236 *seq.*
 message sent by arrow to,
 vi, 238
 worsted by Haftwád and
 entertained and coun-
 selled by two youths, vi,
 239 *seq.*
 slays Mihrak, vi, 241
 marches to attack the Worm
 vi, 241
 gives instructions to Shahr-
 gír, vi, 241
 stratagem of, against the
 Worm, vi, 242
 slays the Worm and its
 attendants, vi, 244
 summons Shahrgír, vi, 244
 and *note*
 takes Haftwád's stronghold,
 vi, 244

Ardshír Pápakán, defeats and slays Haftwád and Sháhwí, vi, 245 carries off the spoil, vi, 245 builds a Fire-temple, vi, 245 rewards the two youths, vi, 245 invasion of Kirmán by, vi, 205, 245 goes to Taisafún, vi, 245 principles of government of, vi, 250, 273 *seq.*, 286 *seq.* Reign of, 161, vi, 254 *seq.* Note on, vi, 254 length of, vi, 254 Tabarí on, vi, 254 coins of, vi, 256, 257, 265 Shápúr crowned by, vi, 257 cities of, vi, 257 prophecy of, vi, 257 enthroned at Baghdád, vi, 258 title of King of kings of, vi, 193, 199, 254, 258, 273 inaugural address of, vi, 258 daughter of Ardashán and, stories of, vi, 255 plot of, with her brother Bahman, to poison, vi, 259 discovers plot against him, vi, 260 consults his minister, vi, 260 condemns the daughter of Ardashán to death, vi, 260 minister of, saves daughter of Ardashán and mutilates himself, vi, 196, 261 Shápúr, son of, born, vi, 261 hears about Shápúr from his minister, vi, 262 recognises and acknowledges Shápúr, vi, 264 restores the daughter of Ardashán to favour, vi, 265 rewards his minister, vi, 265 makes a new coinage in honour of his minister, vi, 256, 265 builds Jund-i-Shápúr, vi, 266

Ardshír Pápakán, harassed by wars, consults Káid, vi, 266 wroth at Kaid's advice, vi, 267 seeks in vain for the daughter of Mihrak, vi, 268 referred to, vi, 270 discovers Urmuzd, vi, 271 counsels Urmuzd, vi, 280 calls and counsels Shápúr, vi, 286 *seq.* Church and State, his views on, vi, 250 *seq.*, 286 duration of his dynasty, vi, 252, 257, 289 death of, vi, 291 Balúchistán, his failure to conquer, vii, 242 Nard, invention of, attributed to, vii, 382 True Cross in treasury of, viii, 380 Ardshír, son of Shirwí, Sháh, 175, ix, 43 *seq.* makes Píruz general, ix, 44 entertains Píruz at feast, ix, 48 death of, ix, 49 treasury of, squandered by Guráz, ix, 53 Aregat-aspá. *See* Arjásp. Aries, constellation, i, 88, 118, 310, 335; iii, 26, 38, 187, 318; iv, 24, 147, 158, 180; v, 39, 109, 118, 119, 126; viii, 342, 394 Ariobarzanes, the murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32 Ariobarzanes, satrap, vi, 32 and note Árish, legendary Iránian archer, v, 62; vii, 234 and note; viii, 75, 219 and note; ix, 25 Aristobulus, Greek writer, *temp.* Alexander the Great, vi, 12 Aristotle (Arastális *q.v.*), Greek philosopher (B.C. 384-322)

Aristotle, Alexander the Great's tutor, vi, 29
 letter to, vi, 68
 correspondence with, about the succession, vi, 81, 83
 silk-worm, his account of, vi, 204
 Arjásp, Túrárian hero, ii, 264; iv, 26
 Arjásp (*Aregat-aspā*), king of Túrán, 155, 156, i, 61; ii, 9, 29; iii, 109; v, 9, 11 seq., 20, 22, 24 seq., 29, 31, 51 seq., 89, 98, 99, 107 seq., 116, 141, 142, 159, 167, 171, 172, 180, 206; vii, 330, 335, 337, 359; viii, 95, 104, 148; ix, 104 hoard of, viii, 148
 in receipt of tribute from Gushtásp, v, 32
 hears of Gushtásp's resolve not to pay tribute, summons, and harangues his priests, v, 36
 sends Bídírafsh and Námkhást to Gushtásp, v, 37, 40
 receives Gushtásp's answer and calls out the host, v, 45
 gives one wing to Kuhram, v, 46
 the other to Andarímán, v, 46
 the chief command to Gurgsár, v, 46
 banner to Bídírafsh, v, 46
 vanguard to Khashásh, v, 46
 rear to Húshdív, v, 46
 marches against Irán, v, 46
 defeat of, foretold by Jámásp, v, 52
 gives one wing to Bídírafsh, v, 55
 the other to Gurgsár, v, 56
 centre to Námkhást, v, 56
 takes the rear himself, v, 56

Arjásp, gives Kuhram the command in chief, v, 56
 thrice offers rewards to any that will fight Zarír, v, 61, 62
 offer of, accepted by Bídírafsh, v, 62
 calls for Bídírafsh to fight Nastúr, v, 69
 fights with the Iránians, v, 71
 defeat of, v, 72
 proclaimed by Gushtásp, v, 75
 hears of Asfandiyár's imprisonment and of Gushtásp's absence in Sistán, v, 86
 Summons his chiefs, v, 86
 sends Sitúh as spy to Irán, v, 86
 on receiving Sitúh's report calls out the host, v, 87
 sends Kuhram to attack Balkh, v, 90
 marches against Gushtásp, v, 94
 commands the centre, v, 95
 defeats Gushtásp and be-leaguers him on a mountain, v, 96
 Asfandiyár's vow of, and prayer for, vengeance on, v, 103, 104
 hears of Asfandiyár's arrival, v, 108
 proposes to retréat, v, 108
 sends away the spoil of Balkh, v, 108
 five sons of, v, 108
 persuaded by Gurgsár to re-main and fight, v, 108, 109
 makes Gurgsár leader of the host, v, 109
 arrays the host, v, 109
 commands the centre, v, 109
 surveys the battlefield from a height, v, 110
 prepares for flight if needful, v, 110

Arjásp, dismayed at Asfandi-yár's prowess, reproaches Gurgsár v, 111
hears of Gurgsár's capture and flees, v, 112
entertains Asfandiyár disguised as a merchant, v, 145
questions Asfandiyár, v, 146
allows Asfandiyár to entertain the Turkman chiefs, v, 149
prepares to attack Bishútán, v, 151
bids Kuhram prepare for war, v, 151
sends out Turkhán with troops to reconnoitre, v, 151
hears from Kuhram that Asfandiyár has come, v, 152
bids the Turkmans march out in force, v, 152
palace of, attacked by Asfandiyár, v, 153
arms and encounters Asfandiyár, v, 153, 154
beheaded by Asfandiyár, v, 154
palace of, fired and his women carried off by Asfandiyár, v, 154, 162,
head of, thrown from the ramparts of the Brazen Hold, v, 157
sons of, grieve for, v, 157
Asfandiyár takes the treasure of, v, 161
Khán of Chín descended from, vii, 334
Arjuna, one of the five Pándavas (Indian mythology) iv, 138, 139
Ark, 158
Arman, Armenia or district in Ázrbáiján, vii, 263
Armaní, Iránian chief, ix, 74
Armenia (Arman, Irmán *q.v.*), country, iii, 12; vi, 202, 203; vii, 153, 224; viii, 93, 96, 184, 193, 202, 377

Armenia, Roman, vii, 187
Armenian, Armenians (Irmáni), iii, 286; viii, 188, 189, 195, 226, 248, 282
version of the Pseudo-Calisthenes, vi, 14
—like, viii, 254
=Mausil, viii, 293 and *note*
Armín, son of Kai Kubád. See Kai Armín.
Arnawáz, sister of Jamshíd, wife of Zahhák and Farídún, and mother of Iraj, i, 142 married to Zahhák, i, 146 *seq.*
counsels Zahhák as to his dream, i, 148
Farídún meets, i, 162
Zahhák tries to kill, i, 167 son of, by Farídún, i, 177
Arnold, Mathew, his "Sohrab and Rustum," ii, 118
Arrán, the modern Karabagh, the region between the Kur and Aras rivers, i, 9
Arrian, Greek historian (A.D. 96-180), vi, 31, 68
Anabasis of, vi, 12
Indica of, vi, 12
Caspian Gates of, vi, 32
on the stature of Porus, vi, 64
Ichthyophagi, vi, 69 *seq.*
Alexander and the Amazons, vi, 72
death of Alexander, vi, 82
Arrow-shots, three famous, viii, 75
Bahrám Chúbína's, viii, 126
Arsacés, name of the founder and other kings of the Parthian (Ashkánian) dynasty, vi, 197
Arsacid, Arsacids, dynastic title of the above, iii, 9; vi, 205, 255; vii, 156, 185, 212
imperial system of, vi, 198
some of, escape from Ardshir Pápakán to Armenia, vi, 203

- Arsac'd, rivalry of, with Sásánians, viii, 73
- Arsalás, murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32
- Arses, Sháh (B.C. 338-336) vi, 29
- Arslán Jázib, one of Mahmúd's generals, i, 100
referred to, i, 114
- Artabanus III (II according to some reckonings), Parthian king (A.D. 10-40), iii, 9, 10
- Artabanus, son of above, iii, 9
- Artabanus, Persian captain of the guard *temp.* Xerxes, v, 282
Rustam and, v, 282
- Artabanus III or IV (Ardawán *q.v.*), vi, 201
- Artang, the house of the heresiarch Mání, ii, 19 and *note*; vii, 355 and *note*; viii, 172 and *note*, 362 and *note*
- Artaxerxes Longimanus, Sháh, v, 281, 282
Bahman and, v, 282
- Artaxerxes Mnemon, Sháh, i, 59
- Artaxerxes Ochus, Sháh (B.C. 359-338), vi, 18 *note*, 29
Nectanebus II conquered by vi, 29
murdered, vi, 29
- Artaxerxes I, Sásánian Sháh.
See Ardshír Pápkán.
- Artaxerxes II (Ardshír brother of Shápúr), Sásánian Sháh, vi, 363
- Arts, invention of the. *See* Gaiúmart, Húshang, Tahmúras, and Jamshíd.
- 'Arús, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*, ix, 20
- Arwand (Dijla, Tigris), ii, 392, 404; vi, 329; viii, 90; ix, 85, 92
Farídún's crossing of the, i, 160
- Arzhang, a dív and commander of the troops of Mázan-darán, 143; ii, 43; 44, 56 *seq.*, 63, 64; v, 203
Arzhang, put in charge of Kai Káús and his troops when taken prisoners, ii, 41
slain by Rustam, ii, 57
- Arzhang, dungeon of, iii, 309
- Arzhang, Túránian hero, 148, iii, 76, 77
challenges the Iránians, iii, 119
slain, iii, 120
- Arzhang, Mání the heresiarch's house. *See* Artang.
- Aryan, Aryans, race, iii, 10 and *note*, iv, 137
race, i, 7
early seats of, i, 7
meaning of, i, 7
organization of, i, 7
primitive religion of, i, 7
belief in magic of, i, 8
division of, i, 8
India and Irán conquered by, i, 8
Indian, their relations with the Iránians, i, 15
- Árzú, daughter of Sarv and wife of Salm, i, 188 and *note*
referred to, i, 178 *seq.*
- Árzú, daughter of Máhiyár the jeweller, vii, 59, 61
referred to, vii, 55, 56, 58
sings to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 60
Bahrám Gúr woos and weds, vii, 61 *seq.*
meaning of, vii, 65 *note*
- Ascalon, city in Palestine, v, 292
- Asclepias acida*, plant. *See* Homa.
- Asfandiyár (Spento-data, Span-dát), mythical Iránian hero, son of Sháh Gush-tásp, and the rival in legend of Rustam, 155-157, i, 42, 55; ii, 29; v, 9, 10, 12, 24 *seq.*, 29, 30, 41 *seq.*, 45, 49, 69 *seq.*, 90 *seq.*, 258, 259, 261, 279, 281 *seq.*, 289, 290, 293; vi, 15, 49, 55, 200, 213, 224, 242, 251, 271; viii, 95, 104 and

Asfandiyyár—*cont.*

note, 171, 270, 332, 395
note; ix, 25, 26 *note*, 104
 invulnerability of, v, 19
 sisters of, 156, v, 20, 22
 carried off by the Turk-
 mans, v, 93, 100, 171
 rescued by, v, 153, 162
 lament over, v, 252 *seq.*
 marriage of, with Humái,
 v, 22, 77
 ignored by Firdausi, v, 22
 birth of, v, 32
 answers, in conjunction with
 Zarír and Jámásp, Ar-
 jásp's letter, v, 42
 triumph of, over Arjásp
 foretold by Jámásp, v, 52
 given command of one wing,
 v, 55
 addresses his five brothers,
 v, 65
 hears his father's offer of
 the crown and throne to
 the avenger of Zarír, v, 66
 slays Bídirafsh, v, 70
 presents the head of Bídira-
 fsh and the steed of Zarír
 to Gushtásp, v, 71
 divides the host, v, 71
 attacks, with Nastúr and
 Núsh Ázar, the Turkmans,
 v, 71
 grants quarter to the Turk-
 mans, v, 72
 made chief ruler of Irán
 under Gushtásp and sent
 by him to convert the
 world, v, 76
 rests from his labours, v, 77
 makes Farshídward gover-
 nor of Khurásán, v, 77
 reports the success of his
 administration to Gush-
 tásp, v, 77
 slandered by Gurazm, v, 78
 recalled to court, v, 80 *seq.*
 sons of, 157, v, 80, 81
 resigns his host to Bahman,
 v, 82
 arraigned by Gushtásp, v, 83

Asfandiyyár, put in bonds, v.
 84
 sent to Gumbadán, v, 84
 solaced by Bahman and
 others, v, 85
 Jámásp advises Gushtásp
 to release, v, 97
 hears of arrival of Jámásp,
 v, 98, 99
 parley of, with Jámásp, v,
 99 *seq.*
 eight and thirty brothers
 of, v, 101, 103, 111, 160
 bids Jámásp send for black-
 smiths, v, 101
 breaks his bonds himself, v,
 102, 206
 calls for his steed and arms,
 v, 102
 sets off with Jámásp, Bah-
 man, and Núsh Ázar, v,
 103
 vow of, v, 103
 laments over Farshídward,
 v, 104
 prays that he may avenge
 Farshídward on Arjásp, v,
 104
 shrouds Farshídward, v, 105
 sees and addresses the corpse
 of Gurazm, v, 105
 passes the Turkman trenches
 and defeats the outposts,
 v, 106
 interview of, with Gush-
 tásp, v, 106
 receives the promise of the
 crown and undertakes to
 deliver Gushtásp, v, 107
 arrays and leads the host,
 v, 109
 attacks the Turkmans, v,
 110
 defeats Kuhram, v, 110
 takes Gurgsár prisoner, v,
 111
 defeats Arjásp, v, 112, 206
 grants quarter to the Turk-
 mans, v, 113
 distributes the spoil, v,
 114

- Asfandiyár, undertakes to rescue his sisters from the Turkmans, v, 115
 prepares to invade Túrán, v, 115
 Seven Stages (Haft Khwán) of, ii, 29; v, 27, 118, 119, 121, 135, 162; viii, 171
 Story of, 156, v, 116 *seq.*
 compared with Rustam's, v, 117
 rivalry in legend between Rustam and, v, 116
 quits Balkh and goes, with Gurgsár as guide, to Túrán, v, 120
 offers the kingdom of the Turkmans to Gurgsár in return for faithful service, v, 120
 questions Gurgsár, v, 120 *seq.*, 124, 125, 128, 131, 134, 139, 141
 during his adventures in the Seven Stages, leaves Bishútan in command, v, 122, 124, 126, 129, 132 *note*, 144
 praised by Bishútan and the host, v, 123, 125, 131, 133
 scythed chariot made by, v, 126
 revived by Bishútan after encountering the dragon, v, 127
 song of, v, 129
 amulet given to, by Zarduhsh, v, 130
 encourages the Iránians to persevere, v, 136
 prays for deliverance from the snow, v, 138
 leaves the baggage behind, v, 138
 reproaches Gurgsár for giving false information, v, 139, 140
 offers to make Gurgsár captain of the Brazen Hold if he will be a trusty guide, v, 140
- Asfandiyár, guided by Gurgsár crosses ford with host, v, 140
 cursed by Gurgsár, v, 141
 slays Gurgsár, v, 141
 surveys the Brazen Hold, v, 142
 captures, questions, and slays two Turkmans, v, 142
 Bishútan and, consult, v, 143
 stratagem of, to take the Brazen Hold, v, 116, 143
 disguised as a merchant, interviews Arjásp, v, 145
 assumes the name of Khar-rád, v, 146
 questioned by Arjásp, v, 146
 trades as a merchant in the Brazen Hold, v, 147
 meets his sisters, v, 147
 gives a banquet to the Turkman chiefs, v, 149
 surprises the Brazen Hold, v, 152 *seq.*
 provides for his sisters' safety, v, 153
 attacks the palace of Arjásp, v, 153
 encounters Arjásp, v, 154
 beheads Arjásp, v, 154
 fires Arjásp's palace, v, 154
 carries off the women, v, 154
 quits the Brazen Hold and leaves Sáwa in charge, v, 154
 joins Bishútan, v, 155
 pursues Kuhram to the Brazen Hold, v, 156
 encounters and takes Kuhram prisoner, v, 157
 grants no quarter to the Turkmans, v, 158
 puts to death Andarímán and Kuhram, v, 158
 announces his victory to Gushtásp, v, 159
 disposes of the spoil, v, 161

- Asfandiyár, carries off his sisters, the womenfolk of Arjásp, and others from the Brazen Hold, v, 162 sets fire to, and dismantles, the Brazen Hold, v, 162 sends his sons homeward by different routes, v, 162 returns himself by the Seven Stages, v, 162 picks up his left baggage, v, 162 hunts while waiting for his sons, v, 162 rejoined by his sons, v, 163 welcome of, on his return to Frán, v, 163 banquets with Gushtásp, v, 164 fight of, with Rustam, Story of, 156 recited by Nadr, son of Hárith, at Mecca, v, 166 complains to his mother of Gushtásp's treatment of him, v, 167 counselled by his mother, v, 168, 175 fate of, foretold by Jámásp, v, 169 recounts his deeds before Gushtásp, v, 170 promised the throne by Gushtásp when he has brought Rustam and his kin in bonds to court, v, 173, 174 meets with an ill omen on starting for Zábulistán, v, 177 consults with Bishútán, v, 178 sends Bahman on an embassage, v, 179 *seq.* message of, to Rustam, v, 179 receives Rustam's answer from, and is wroth with, Bahman, v, 191 converses of Rustam with Bishútán, v, 192 Asfandiyár, goes attended to meet Rustam, v, 192 parleys with Rustam, v, 192 *seq.* declines Rustam's invitation to visit him, v, 193 invites Rustam to a feast, v, 195 repents of having invited Rustam, v, 196 counselled by Bishútán to keep on friendly terms with Rustam, v, 196, 217 does not summon Rustam to the feast, v, 197 wrangles with Rustam, v, 198 *seq.* does not assign Rustam his proper seat at the feast, v, 200 remonstrated with by Rustam, v, 200 bids Bahman resign his own seat to Rustam, v, 200 vilifies Zál and Rustam, v, 201 recounts his lineage, v, 205 his exploits, v, 205 his capture of a hill-fort, v, 206 tries a handgrip with Rustam, v, 208 challenges Rustam, v, 209 astonished at Rustam's prowess at the board, v, 210 declines Rustam's overtures, v, 211 *seq.* calls Zábulistán "Babble-stead," v, 216 parodies Rustam's address to royal tent-enclosure, v, 216 arms for fight with Rustam, v, 223 refuses Rustam's suggestion of a general engagement, v, 224 informed by Bahman of the slaying of Núsh Ázar and Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 227

Asfandiyár, enraged with Rustam, v, 228
 wounds Rustam and Rakhsh, v, 229
 jeers at Rustam v, 229
 calls upon Rustam to surrender, v, 230
 returns to camp, laments for Núsh Ázar and Mihr-i-Núsh, and sends their corpses to Gushtásp with a message, v, 232
 converses with Bishútán of the fight with Rustam, v, 232, 240
 Símurgh instructs Rustam how to overcome, v, 237 seq.
 branch of tamarisk fatal to, v, 239 and *note*
 summoned by Rustam to fight and becomes despondent, v, 240
 Rustam's final effort for peace with, v, 241 seq.
 Bahman and Bishútán hear of the overthrow of, v, 244
 address of, to Bishútán, v, 245
 Rustam bewails, v, 246
 confides Bahman to Rustam, v, 248
 foretells evil for Rustam, v, 248
 gives his last charge to Bishútán, v, 249
 death of, v, 250
 Rustam laments over, v, 250
 corpse of, sent to Gushtásp by Rustam, v, 251
 funeral procession of, conducted by Bishútán, v, 251
 lamentations over, v, 252 seq.
 corpse of, displayed by Bishútán, v, 253
 Rustam writes to Gushtásp to excuse himself in the matter of, v, 256
 Xerxes and, v, 282

Asfandiyár, Bahman on the vengeance due for, v, 283
 referred to, v, 288
 Asfandiyár-náma (Spand-dát-náma), v, 26, 27
 Ashemaogha, vii, 188
 Ashi Vanguhi, the genius of piety, iv, 137
 Ashk, presumed founder of the Ashkánian (Parthian) dynasty, vi, 197, 210
 meaning of, vi, 197
 Ashkabús, Túránian hero, 148, iii, 183, 186, 207, 268
 challenges the Iránians, iii, 179
 Ruhhám worsted by, iii, 179
 Rustam's fight with, iii, 109, 179 seq.
 referred to, viii, 75
 parleys with Rustam, iii, 180
 slain by Rustam, iii, 181
 Ashkánian, Ashkánians, race and dynasty, i, 49; iii, 9, 11; v, 10, 282; vi, 196, 209; viii, 214
 duration of rule, vi, 193
 times, Firdausí's lack of materials for, vi, 193
 surviving traditions of, transferred to other dynasties, vi, 194
 importance of, vi, 194
 genealogy, vi, 197
 Ashkash, Iránian hero, iii, 33, 34, 89, 347, 350, 352; iv, 13, 57, 61, 65
 Rustam and, go to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
 conveys baggage toward Irán, iii, 346
 Kai Khusrau sends, to Khárazm, iv, 15
 Shídá defeated by, iv, 60, 72
 troops of, recalled, iv, 145
 sent with a host to Zam, iv, 157
 pillage of Makrán by, stopped by Kai Khusrau, iv, 243

- Ashkash, appointed governor of Makrán, iv, 244
 Kai Khusrau welcomed by, on his return from Gāng-dīzī, iv, 251
 Ashtád, Iránian chief, ix, 11 *seq.*
 chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisafún, ix, 9
 and Kharrád parley with Galínúsh, ix, 11
 visit Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 12
 report to Shírwí, ix, 27
 Asia, iv, 315, v, 293, viii, 187
 Minor, vi, 30; viii, 193, 194
 Central, vi, 73
 Asmodeus, demon, iii, 272
 Asoka, Indian king (B.C. 264-228-7), i, 15
 Asp, as Persian termination, ii, 9
 Ássurbanipal, Assyrian king, and Khusrau Parwíz, reigns of compared, viii, 193
 Assyria, v, 292
 Assyrians, i, 10
 invasions of Irán by, i, 10
 Astawadhd. *See* Haftwád.
 Astivihád, demon, iv, 137
 Astrolabe, i, 104, 188, 310 *note*; ii, 215, 273; iv, 158, 297; vi, 376; vii, 353; ix, 73
 Astrologer, Astrologers, Astrology, i, 104, 188, 255, 310 and *note*; ii, 233, 284, 409; iv, 27, 158, 159, 279, 284, 334, 335; v, 48, 168 *seq.*, 263; vi, 108, 109, 114, 132, 195, 198, 201, 218, 227, 377; ix, 73
 importance of, in Sháh-námá, i, 52
 consulted by Farídún, i, 194
 Minúchihr i, 251, 307
 Zál i, 255
 Sám i, 278
 Kai Káús ii, 103, 215, 217
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 273; iv, 158
 Siyáwush, ii, 282
 Rustam, iii, 219
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 158
 Húmán, v, 310
 Astrologer, consulted by Sikandar, vi, 180
 Ardawán, vi, 218
 Yazdagird, son of Shápúr, vi, 375 *seq.*, 390
 Bahram Gúr, vii, 144, 145
 Khán of Chín, vii, 353
 Talhand, vii, 408, 413, 418
 Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 372
 Astyages (Istuvegu), king of the Medes (Manda *q.v.*, B.C. 584-550)
 conquered by Cyrus, i, 18; vi, 194
 identified by Armenian historians with Zahlák, i, 72, 144
 Mandane and, legend of, ii, 190
 Afrásiyáb and, in legend, ii, 191
 Asura. *See* Ahúra.
 Atbara, tributary of the Nile, vi, 65
 Athenaeus, Greek writer (2nd-3rd centuries A.D.), iv, 316
Deipnosophistae of, ii, 10
 quoted, iv, 314
 Athens, schools of, closed by Justinian, vii, 280
 Áthravans, priests of the Cult of Fire, i, 56
 Athwya. *See* Abtíń.
 Atkinson, James, on the Sháh-námá, vi, 250
 Atossa, wife of Cambyses and Darius Hystaspis, v, 11
 = Ilutaosa, wife of Gush-tásp (?), v, 11
 Atropatene (Ázarbáiján *q.v.*), i, 9, 61
 primitive seat of Fire-worship, i, 56
 sub-kingdom in Parthian times, vi, 198
 Attock, town on the Indus in northern India, vi, 52
 Aurand, father of Sháh Luhrásp, v, 205
 Aurvat-aspa (Luhrásp *q.v.*), iv, 316; v, 11

- Autumnal equinox, iv, 313
 Kai Luhrásp crowned at, iv, 313
- Avars, Caucasian tribe, viii, 194
- Avasta. *See* Zandavasta
- Avidius Cassius, Roman general, vi, 291 *note*
- Áwa, fránian hero, iv, 149
- Áwáza, stronghold, 170, viii, 134, 138
- Axumite, Ethiopian, dynasty, viii, 24 *note*
- Áyás, region, v, 61, 74, 107
- Áyín Gashasp (Yazdánbaksh), fránian noble, 171, viii, 75, 150 *note*, 222
 Hurmuzd consults, viii, 174, 177
 and the prisoner, story of, viii, 177 *seq.*
 marches to Hamadán, viii, 178
 consults a seer, viii, 178
 murdered, viii, 181
 avenged by Bahrám Chúbfna, viii, 181
 troops of, disperse, viii, 181
- Ázad Sarv, Firdausi's authority for the Story of Rustam and Shaghád, v, 260 *seq.*
- Ázad Sarv, archmage and agent of Núshírwán, v, 261, vii, 283 and *note*
 goes to Marv, vii, 283
 discovers Búzurjmihr, vii, 283
 returns with Búzurjmihr to court, vii, 283
- Ázáda, Rúman slave-girl, vi, 382
 goes hunting with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 382
 tries to shame Bahrám Gúr in his markmanship, vi, 383
 slain by Bahrám Gúr, vi, 384 and *note*
- Azar (Ázarbáján *q.v.*), ii, 195
- Azar, genius, iii, 287, 328
- Azar (Ádar), month and day, i, 88, 89; vi, 411; viii, 244, 421; ix, 17
- Ázar Ábádagán (Ázarakhsh, Ázargashasp *q.v.*), Fire-temple at Shiz (Takht-i-Sulaimán) near the south-eastern border of Ázarbáján, not at Tabríz with which the place has been wrongly identified (NT, p. 100, *note*), 172, iv, 259; vii, 86, 224, 362; viii, 282; ix, 74
 importance of, i, 61
 visited by Kai Khusráu, iii, 20
- Kai Khusráu and Kai Káús go on a pilgrimage to, iv, 258
- Khátún, wife of Khán, sent to serve at, vii, 5
- Bahrám Gúr visits, vii, 86, 94
- Núshírwán visits, vii, 250, 363
- Azar Afrúz, third son of Asfandiyár, v, 81
- Ázarakhsh (Ázargashasp, Ázar Ábádagán *q.v.*), Fire-temple, i, 61
 importance of, i, 61
- Ázarbáján (Atropatene *q.v.*), province in north-western Persia, i, 9, 61; ii, 336; iv, 136; v, 16; vi, 198, 203; vii, 160, 214
 meaning of, i, 56
- Azargashasp, spirit of the lightning, i, 73, 248, 309, 349; ii, 57, 294, 345; iii, 23, 53, 72, 92, 97, 114, 194, 276, 327; iv, 84, 100, 147, 175, 275, 307, 360; vi, 381; vii, 21, 79, 232; viii, 46, 122, 152, 176, 245, 256, 415
 temple of (Ázar Ábádagán *q.v.*), iv, 136, 258, 259; vii, 89, 250, 317, 365; viii, 68, 184, 210 and *note*
 visited by Kai Khusráu, iii, 20

Ázargashasp, temple of Kai Khusrau and Kai Káús go on a pilgrimage to, iv, 258 referred to, iv, 264 =Gushasp *q.v.*, vi, 212 and note Bahrám Gúr visits, vii, 86, 139 high priest of, converts Sap'núd to Zoroastrianism, vii, 139 Núshírwán visits, vii, 250, 363 Khusrau Parwíz visits, viii, 283, 307, 312 Ázargashasp, Iránian warrior, viii, 296 Ázar Makán, father of Farrukh-zád, viii, 408 Ázarmdukhít, Sháh, 175, v, 294; ix, 56, 59, 69 reproaches Kubád, ix, 7 end of, ix, 59, 60 Ázarnarsí, son of Hurmuzd son of Narsí, vi, 318 Azdites, Arab tribe, i, 11 Azhi, Azi (Daháka, Zahhák *q.v.*), i, 142; ii, 81

B

BÁBAK, Tribal King. *See* Pápak. Bábak, muster-master of Núshírwán wán bidden to enrol the host, 167, vii, 230 insists on Núshírwán's attendance for enrolment, vii, 231 asks pardon of the Sháh, vii, 232 Bábar, founder of the Mogul dynasty in India resolutions of, as to wine-drinking, vii, 75 *note*. Babblestead, nonce name given by Asfandiyár to Zábul-istán, v, 216 Bábil (Babylon *q.v.*), 160

Babr-i-Bayán, a surcoat of leopard or tiger skin worn by Rustam in battle, iii, 184, 186 referred to, iii, 278 Babylon (Bábil, gate of the god), city on the left bank of the Euphrates, now represented by the modern Hillah on the right bank, ii, 80; iii, 286; vi, 17, 31, 81, 83; viii, 194, 249; ix, 65, 92 hanging gardens of, v, 293 Sikandar marches toward, vi, 176, 178 prodigious birth at, vi, 81, 180 Sikandar sickens at, vi, 181 dies at, vi, 81, 183 Zahhák king of, ix, 65 Babylonia, ii, 80, 81 Babylonian, vi, 254 script, vi, 320 Bacchus, Saint and Martyr, viii, 188 Bactria, region between the Hindu Kush and the Oxus, vi, 32, 198 Bactrian plains, iii, 10 camels, viii, 47; ix, 93 Badakshán, region south of the Upper Oxus and east of Balkh, famous for its rubies, iv, 65, 192 signet-ring of, i, 300 gem of, vi, 382 and *note* Bádán-Pírúz (Shahrám - Pírúz, Ardabíl *q.v.*), city built by Sháh Pírúz in Ázarábáiján, 166, vii, 160, 163 Badar, Badr, battle of, ii, 337 *note*, v, 166 Bád Áwar, treasure viii., 406, and *note*, ix., 20. Baeton, Greek writer, *temp.* Alexander the Great, vi, 12 Baghdád, city on the Tigris, founded by the 'Ab-básid Khalifa Al Mansúr

- Baghdád—*cont.*
- as his capital in A.D. 762 on the site of an old Babylonian city (Baghdadú), 161, 165, i, 14, 160; iii, 35; iv, 147, 256; v, 28; vi, 254, 290, 322, 327; vii, 83 and *note*; viii, 109 *note*, 112, 174, 193, 203, 393; ix, 68
 - Ardshír Pápakán enthroned at, vi, 258
 - Yazdagird quits, ix, 88
 - Persian settlement of, ix, 67 raided by Arabs, ix, 67
 - Bágiz, vi, 32
 - Bagoas, vi, 29
 - Bahár, district in Turkistán where Siyáwushgird was built, ii, 286
 - Bahman (Vohu Manau), ame-shaspenta *q.v.*, iii, 286, 327; v, 16; vi, 362 and *note*
 - Yasht, Pahlaví Text, vii, 188 month and day, iv, 81 *note*, v, 310; vii, 31 and *note*
 - Bahman (Ardshír, Artaxerxes), son of Asfandiyár, Sháh, 156, 157, i, 42; ii, 9; v, 81, 166, 251, 254, 293, 297, 303; vi, 20 *note*, 34 and *note*, 49, 200, 213, 270 and *note*; viii, 270 eldest son of Asfandiyár, v, 80
 - Asfandiyár resigns the host to, v, 82
 - hears of Asfandiyár's imprisonment, v, 85 goes with others to solace him, v, 85
 - accompanies Asfandiyár from Gumbadán, v, 103 sent on an embassage, v, 179 *seq.*
 - crosses the Hírmund, v, 182 coming of, reported to Zál, v, 182
 - interview of, with Zál, v, 183
 - Bahman, follows Rustam to the hunting-ground, v, 184 tries to kill Rustam, v, 184
 - interview of, with Rustam, v, 185 *seq.*
 - entertained by Rustam, v, 186
 - astonished at Rustam's appetite, v, 186
 - leaves Rustam, v, 190
 - gives Rustam's answer to Asfandiyár, v, 191
 - Asfandiyár's wrath with, v, 191
 - resigns his seat at the feast to Rustam, v, 200
 - informs Asfandiyár of the slaying of Núsh Ázar and Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 227
 - hears of Asfandiyár's overthrow, v, 244
 - confided to Rustam by Asfandiyár, v, 248
 - Zawára warns Rustam against, v, 250
 - remains with Rustam, v, 252, 256
 - instructed by Rustam and profits thereby, v, 256
 - Gushtásp advised by Jámásp to write to, v, 258
 - Gushtásp's letter of recall to, v, 258
 - equipped by Rustam for his journey, v, 258
 - welcomed and called Ardshír by Gushtásp, v, 259 and *note*
 - long arms of, v, 281
 - appointed by Gushtásp to succeed him, v, 279
 - historical position of, in Persian legend, v, 281
 - ascends the throne and harangues the chiefs on the vengeance due for Asfandiyár, v, 283
 - invades Sístán, v, 284 *seq.*
 - sends a hostile message to Zál, v, 285

- Bahman, rejects Zál's conciliatory overtures, v, 286
 sacks Zál's palace, v, 286
 pillages Zábulistán, v, 287
 fights, defeats, and executes Farámarz, v, 288
 Bishútan intercedes for Zál with, v, 288
 stops the pillage of Zábul and releases Zál, v, 289
 quits Zábul by Bishútan's advice, v, 290
 passes over his son Sásán and nominates Ilumái and her issue as successors to the throne, v, 291
 death of, v, 294
 referred to, v, 310
- Bahman, son of Ardawán, 160, 161, vi, 202, 225, 227, 260
 made ruler of Párs, vi, 218 and *note*
 referred to, vi, 222
 bidden by Ardawán to seek out Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 223
 wounded and put to flight by Ardshír Pápakán and Tabák, vi, 227
 escapes to Hind after the defeat of Ardawán, vi, 228
 urges his sister to poison Ardawán, vi, 259
- Bahman, Iránian magnate, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 312; viii, 22
- Bahman, castle of, in Ázarábáján, 146, ii, 336, 405 *seq.*
- Bahrain, group of islands off the Arabian shore of the Persian Gulf, vi, 330; ix, 68
- Bahrám, genius, iii, 287, 328; vii, 406 and *note*
 day, viii, 279
 fatal to Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 337 and *note*, 339 and *note*
- Bahrám, moralist, quoted by Firdausí, ii, 186
- Bahúám (Vardanes), son of Gúdarz and brother of Gív, Iránian hero and Parthian king, 145, 147, 148; ii, 33, 35, 38, 58, 62, 85, 127, 138, 144, 158, 249, 257, 258, 271, 290, 318, 338, 340; iii, 13, 15, 19, 43, 46 *seq.*, 67, 72, 95 *seq.*, 114, 116, 132, 200, 214, 232; iv, 8, 312; vi, 197
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*
 goes with Siyáwush against Afrásiyáb, ii, 226
 put in command by Siyáwush, ii, 250, 257
 interviews Farúd, iii, 47 *seq.*
 Farúd presents his mace to, iii, 50
 reports his interview with Farúd to Tús, iii, 51
 tries to save Farúd, iii, 52
 reproaches the Iránians, iii, 66
 slays Kabúda, iii, 74
 rescues the crown of Rívníz, iii, 94
 loses his whip, iii, 11, 95
 becomes fey, iii, 95
 succours a wounded brother, iii, 97
 finds his whip, iii, 95
 loses his horse, iii, 95
 set on by Turkmans, iii, 98 Rúín, iii, 99
 wounds Rúín, iii, 99
 interviews Pírá, iii, 99
 attacked by Tazháv, iii, 101
 found by Gív, iii, 102
 death and burial of, iii, 104
- Bahrám, son of Zarasp, Iránian hero, goes with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
 commands the host in Zarír's absence, iv, 360
 hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362

- Bahrám, Iránian warrior or king, iv, 268
- Bahrám=Ardawán, vi, 197, 210
- Bahrám, son of Pírúz, Iránian warrior, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Bahrám, father of Shírwí *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 251, 262
- Bahrám, son of Urmuzd, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran I), 162, vi, 3 receives the throne from, and is counselled by, Urmuzd, vi, 303 *seq.* mourns for Urmuzd, vi, 306 Reign of, vi, 307 *seq.* Note on, vi, 307 appoints his successor and dies, vi, 309 Mání and, vi, 327
- Bahrám, son of Bahrám, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran II), 162, vi, 3, 308 appointed to succeed his father, vi, 309 Reign of, vi, 310 Note on, vi, 310 story told of, vi, 310
- Bahrám, son of Shápur, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran IV), 163, vi, 3, 371 Reign of, vi, 368 Note on, vi, 368 ruler of Kirmán, vi, 368 title of, vi, 313, 368 seal of, vi, 368 Tabari's account of, vi, 368 daughter of, vi, 369 resigns the throne to his brother, vi, 369 dies, vi, 369
- Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, 172, viii, 75, 163, 245 reported slain, viii, 128 returns with captive sorcerer, viii, 128 speech of, viii, 166 related to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 187 wife of viii, 187
- Bahrám, son of Siyáwush, wife of, warns Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 247 pursues Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 233 besieges Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 236 beguiled by Bandwí, viii, 236, 245 returns with Bandwí to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 238 blamed by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 238 given custody of Bandwí, viii, 238 slain by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 247
- Bahrám, Iránian general, left in charge of host by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 296
- Bahrám, father, in Persian Tabarí, of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 77
- Bahrám, name of, inscribed on cup incites Khusrau Parwíz to afflict Rai, viii, 365 and *note*
- Bahrám Ázarmihán, Iránian scribe, 170
- Hurmuzd attempts to suborn, viii, 85 *seq.* reveals state-secret to Hurmuzd, viii, 88 put to death, viii, 89
- Bahrám Bahrámiyán, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran III), 162, vi, 3, 316, 324, 334
- Reign of, vi, 313 Note on, vi, 313 miscalled "Kirmánsháh," vi, 313, 368 appoints his son to succeed him, vi, 314, 315
- Bahrám Chúbína, son of Gas-hasp, marchlord of Rai, Persian warrior and usurper, 170-173, i, 14; vi, 209, 250; viii, 70, 73, 184, 187, 199, 209, 214, 215, 343 *seq.*, 352 *seq.*,

- Bahrám Chúbína—*cont.*
- 356 *seq.*, 360, 383; ix, 6, 15, 16, 22, 91, 105
Romance of, viii, 72 *seq.*, 187, 191, 304 *note*; ix, 5
Nöldeke on, viii, 73
account of, viii, 72
seller of sheep's heads and, viii, 74, 107
dream of, viii, 75
withholding of booty by, viii, 76, 148
insult of Hurmuzd to, viii, 76
defeat of, in Lazic war, viii, 76
sends swords to Hurmuzd, viii, 76
parentage of, viii, 76, 77
malicious speech about, viii, 77, 150
coinage of, viii, 77, 173
brought to notice of Hurmuzd, viii, 98
described, viii, 98, 206
identified by Zád Farrukh, viii, 99
sent for by Hurmuzd, viii, 100
consulted by Hurmuzd, viii, 100
made commander-in-chief, viii, 102
selects his troops, viii, 102
justifies his method in so doing, viii, 104
receives Rustam's banner from Hurmuzd, viii, 105
Mihrán as recorder from Hurmuzd, viii, 106
marches from Taisafún, viii, 106
refuses to be recalled, viii, 108
marches to Khúzistán, viii, 109 and *note*
hay-seller and, viii, 109
marches toward Dámaghán, viii, 109
parley of, with Faghfúr, viii, 112
- Bahrám Chúbína, refuses Sáwa's offers, viii, 113 *seq.*, 117 *seq.*
counselled by Kharrád, viii, 121
arrays his host, viii, 122
prayer of, before battle, viii, 123
encourages the Iránians against Sáwa's sorcery, etc., viii, 124 *seq.*
defeats and slays Sáwa, viii, 126
doings of, after battle with Sáwa, viii, 130
rewarded by Hurmuzd, viii, 133
ordered to attack Parmúda, viii, 133
holds revel in a garden, viii, 135
attacked by and defeats Parmúda, viii, 135 *seq.*
besieges Parmúda in Áwáza, viii, 138
informs Hurmuzd, viii, 138
negotiates for surrender of Áwáza with Parmúda, viii, 138 *seq.*
receives surrender of, and insults, Parmúda, viii, 143
blamed by Kharrád and archscribe, viii, 144
tries to appease Parmúda, viii, 145
has inventory made of the wealth in Áwáza, viii, 147
sends Izid Gashasp with spoil to Irán, viii, 148
Hurmuzd begins to suspect, viii, 151
advances of, to Khán rejected, viii, 153
goes to Balkh, viii, 153
guided by an onager, viii, 156
incited to seek the kingship, viii, 158
change in, viii, 158
questioned by Kharrád, viii, 158

Bahrám Chúbína, sends Valán-sína after Kharrád and archscrise, viii, 159
 pardons archiscrise, viii, 160
 Luck of, viii, 162
 renounces allegiance to Hurmuzd, viii, 162
 intercepts the royal letters, viii, 163
 consults the chiefs, viii, 163
 becomes friends with the Khán, viii, 172
 appoints a prince for Khurásán, *etc.*, viii, 173
 marches to Rai, viii, 173
 avenges murder of Áyín Gashasp, viii, 181
 historical campaign of, against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 189
 carline and, viii, 189, 303
 marches to the Nahrawán, viii, 201
 spies' report of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 201
 Khusrau Parwíz marches to meet, viii, 203
 interview of, with, viii, 204 *seq.*
 tampers with troops of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 225
 combat of, with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 228
 arrives at Taisafún, viii, 231
 sends Bahrám, son of Siyá-wush, in pursuit of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 233
 blames Bahrám, viii, 238
 chides, warns and imprisons Bandwi, viii, 238
 addresses the magnates, viii, 239
 elected Sháh, viii, 243
 gives malcontents three days to quit Irán, viii, 244
 plot against, viii, 245 *seq.*
 warned, viii, 247
 slays Bahrám, son of Siyá-wush, viii, 247
 hears of Bandwi's escape, viii, 248

Bahrám Chúbína, deceived by forged letters, viii, 287, 293, 294
 matches against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 287
 goes to Ázar Ábádagán, viii, 288
 arrays his host, viii, 289
 fights with and slays Kút, viii, 290
 sends back corpse of Kút, viii, 291
 worsts Rúmans, viii, 292
 "Harvest of," viii, 292
 charges and routs Khusrau Parwíz' centre, viii, 294
 fights with Gurdwi, viii, 294
 goes to fight Khusrau Parwíz and his body-guard, viii, 297
 leaves Jánfurúz in charge of host, viii, 297
 puts to flight and pursues Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 298
 Surúsh saves Khusrau Parwíz from, viii, 299
 deserted by his chiefs, viii, 302
 retreats, viii, 302
 releases Nastúh, viii, 306
 goes to Rai, viii, 306
 welcomed by Khán, viii, 316
 asks oath of Khán, viii, 317
 counsels Khán to resist Makátúra, viii, 318
 challenged by Makátúra, viii, 319
 fight of, with Makátúra, viii, 320
 Khán sends gifts to, viii, 321
 asked by Khán's wife to avenge death of her daughter on lion-ape, viii, 324
 battle of, with lion-ape, viii, 325
 extradition of, demanded by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 328
 urges Khán to make war on Irán, viii, 330
 sets forth for Irán, viii, 331

Bahrám Chúbína, Kharrád attempts to prejudice, with Khán, viii, 333 arrives at Marv, viii, 336 fatal day of, viii, 337, 339 Kulún seeks interview with, viii, 339 stabs, viii, 340 sister of, mourns, viii, 340 dying speech of, viii, 341 makes Yalán-sína his mandatory, viii, 342 letter of, to Khán, viii, 343 burial of, viii, 343 name of, on cup, viii, 365 and *note* assassination of, referred to, ix, 4

Bahrám Gúr, Sásánian Sháh (Varahran V), 163-165, i, 42; vi, 3, 250, 325, 329 and *note*, 394 *seq.*; vii, 160, 164, 165, 170 and *note*, 174, 178, 187, 334, 359; viii, 75, 129 and *note*; ix, 26, 77 birth of, vi, 375 Yazdagird advised by magnates to choose governor for, vi, 376 put in Munzir's charge, vi, 372, 378 goes with Munzir to Yaman, vi, 378 nurses of, vi, 378 education of, vi, 378 *seq.* obtains his tutors' dismissal, vi, 380 makes choice of steeds, vi, 380 slave-girls, vi, 381 goes to the chase with a slave-girl, vi, 382 markmanship of, vi, 383 *seq.* slays his slave-girl, vi, 384 and *note* goes hunting with Nu'mán and Munzir, vi, 384 picture of, hunting, sent to Yazdagird, vi, 385

Bahrám Gúr, returns with Nu'mán to Yazdagird, vi, 386 complains of Yazdagírd to Munzir, vi, 387 receives advice and his slave-girl from Munzir, vi, 388 falls into disgrace at court, vi, 389 asks Tainúsh to intercede for him, vi, 389 released and returns to Munzir, vi, 390 welcomed by Munzir, vi, 390 hears of his father's death and of the election of Khusrau, vi, 395, 396 claims the kingship and is supported by Munzir, vi, 396 *seq.* interview of, with Jawánwi, vi, 398 negotiates with the Frániáns, vi, 401 *seq.* Frániáns produce examples of Yazdagírd's cruelty to, vi, 404 addresses the Frániáns, vi, 404 proposes to decide the question of the kingship by ordeal, vi, 405 promises to rule justly, vi, 406 agrees to be the first to face the ordeal, vi, 409 Reign of, 164, vii, 3 *seq.* Note on, vii, 3 *seq.* length of, vii, 3 largely legendary, vii, 3 character of, vii, 3 resembles James V of Scotland, vii, 3 accession of, vii, 7 age of, at, vi, 373 inaugural measures at, vii, 7 *seq.* holds eight days' court, vii, 7 *seq.* appoints ministers, vii, 4, 8, 11

Bahrám Gúr, sends letters to the chiefs, vii, 8
 pardons his enemies, vii, 9
 makes festival for three days, vii, 9
 rewards Nu'mán and Münzir, vii, 10
 honours Khusrau, vii, 10
 remits arrears of taxes, vii, 11
 restores the nobles exiled by Yazdagird to their honours, vii, 11
 proclamations of, vii, 12, 79, 82
 persecutes the Christians, vi, 373; vii, 4
 war of, with Rúm, vii, 4
 adventures of, 164, vii, 4, 12 *seq.*
 forbids wine-drinking, vii, 23
 allows wine-drinking again, vii, 25
 whip of, vii, 47, 54, 63, 64
 equipage of, for the chase, vii, 48, 76
 loses and finds his tughral, vii, 49, 50
 visit of, to Barzín, vii, 49 *seq.*
 marries Barzín's daughters, vii, 53
 hunting-feats of, vi, 383 *seq.*; vii, 54, 55, 77, 80, 81
 visits a jeweller, vii, 56 *seq.*
 course of life of, bewailed by Rúzbih, vii, 56
 many wives of, vii, 56
 asks and obtains Arzú in marriage, vii, 61 *seq.*
 visit of, to Farshídward, vii, 68
 forbids all plundering, vii, 79
 ear-marks and brands onagers, vii, 81
 remits the tribute of Barkúh and Jaz, vii, 82
 visits Baghdád, vii, 83
 holds revel at Baghdád, vii, 83

Bahrám Gúr reproaches Rúzbih for parsimony, vii, 83
 reported to be given up to pleasure, vii, 84
 reproached by his chiefs, vii, 84
 secret preparations of, against the Khán, vii, 85
 summons his chiefs, vii, 85
 levies a host, vii, 86
 makes Narsí viceroy, vii, 86
 goes to Ázar Ábádagán, vii, 86, 94, 139
 march of, to Marv against the Khán, vii, 89
 defeats the Khán at Kashmihán, vii, 4, 5, 90, 170
 note
 marches on Bukhárá, vii, 90
 defeats the Turkmans, vii, 91
 grants peace to the Turkmans, vii, 91
 boundary pillar of, vii, 92, 160, 161, 164
 makes Shahra ruler of Túrán, vii, 92
 goes to Istakhr, vii, 95
 makes gifts of treasure, vii, 95, 96
 deposits the Khán's crown in a Fire-temple, vii, 95
 goes to Taisafún, vii, 95
 welcomed by Narsí and the chiefs, vii, 96
 remits taxes for seven years, vii, 5, 97
 happiness of the world under, vii, 99
 bestows Khurásán on Narsí, vii, 99
 inquires about Cæsar's envoy, vii, 100
 gives audience to Cæsar's envoy, vii, 101
 Cæsar's questions to, vii, 102
 parting gifts of, to Cæsar's envoy, vii, 106
 addresses the archmages, vii, 106

Bahrám Gúr, wazír complains of
Shangul to, vii, 109
writes to Shangul, vii, 110.
visit of, to Hind, vii, 5, 112
seq.
motive of, vii, 5
fabulous, vii, 6
bears his own letter to Hind,
vii, 112
audience of, with Shangul,
vii, 112
entertained by Shangul, vii,
116
wrestles before Shangul, vii,
117
displays his markmanship
before Shangul, vii, 118
calls himself Barzwi, vii,
121
slays monsters, vii, 121 *seq.*
offered a daughter and great
advancement by Shangul,
vii, 127
takes to wife one of Shan-
gul's daughters, vii, 128
receives an invitation from
Faghfúr, vii, 129
reply of, vii, 130
tells Sapínúd of his wish to
quit Hind, vii, 131
meets some Iránian mer-
chants and pledges them
to secrecy, vii, 133
feigns sickness, vii, 134
escapes with Sapínúd, vii,
134
reproached by Shangul, vii,
135
makes a league with Shan-
gul, vii, 137
welcome of, on his return,
vii, 137
addresses the nobles, vii,
138
praised by the nobles, vii,
139
makes a new treaty with
Shangul, vii, 140
entertains Shangul and
seven other kings, vii,
140 *seq.*

Bahrám Gúr, appointed Shan-
gul's heir, vii, 143
parting gifts of, to Shangul,
vii, 144
takes account of his trea-
sures, vii, 144
term of life of, foretold by
the astrologers, vii, 144
resolves to levy no more
taxes, vii, 145
unsuccessful attempts of, to
benefit his subjects, vii,
146 *seq.*
Gipsies introduced into Irán
by, vii, 6, 149
appoints Yazdagird his suc-
cessor, vii, 150
death of, vii, 6, 150
Firdausi's reflections on,
vii, 150, 151
mourning for, vii, 151
Bahrám-Gushnasp, father, in
Arabic Tabarí, of Bahrám
Chúbina, viii, 77
Bahrám Tal, viii, 138 and *note*
Báidá (White), a town in Párs a
few miles north of Shíráz,
not to be confounded
with the stronghold
known as "White Castle"
further north, i, 236; vi,
198 and *note*, 199
Baigand, city and fortress
(Kuhandizh ?) between
Bukhárá and the Oxus,
vii, 176
Afrásiyáb encamps at, iv,
151
marches from, iv, 154
Máhwí encamps at, ix, 118
Baisinghar Khán, grandson of
Tímúr the Lame, life of
Firdausi by, i, 23
edition of Sháhnáma of, i,
23
preface to, i, 67
Baitu'l Mukaddas (Gang-i-Diz-
hukht), Zahhák's capital
(Babylon ?), also an Arab
name for Jerusalem, i,
161

- Baitu'l Harám, the Kaaba *q.v.*, vi, 119, 121
- Báj, Zoroastrian system of praying, i, 80
- Bakhtagán, father of Búzurjmíhr, vii, 279
- Baku, town on the peninsula of Apsheron on the western shores of the Caspian and a chief centre of the petroleum industry, i, 58
note
- Bakyír, mountain where Afrásiyáb had a palace, iv, 136
- Balaam, prophet, v, 15
- Bal'amí, Abú 'Alí Muhammad al-, (died A.D. 996), Sámáníd minister and compiler of the Persian version of Tabarí's Annals, vii, 5
- Balas (Balásh *q.v.*), Sásánian Sháh, vii, 170 *seq.*
- Balásh, king of Kirmán, slain by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 205
- Balásh (Balas), Sásánian Sháh, r66, vi, 3
appointed regent by Pírúz, vii, 164
hears of the overthrow of Pírúz, vii, 169
- Reign of, vii, 170 *seq.*
Note on, vii, 170
character of, vii, 171
introduces public baths, vii, 171
end of, vii, 171
title of, vii, 171
accession of, vii, 171
- Súfarai's letter to, vii, 173
welcomes Súfarai on his return from Túrán, vii, 181
dethroned, vii, 182
- Balkh, city in northern Afghánistán, 154, 155, ii, 101, 228, 231, 242, 246, 249; iii, 153, 192; iv, 19, 20, 65, 156, 157, 255; v, 18, 20, 29, 31, 33, 41, 48, 73, 86, 87, 91, 104, 171, 255;
- Dalkh—*cont*
vii, 94, 331, 359, 384;
viii, 22, 74, 95, 153, 159, 161, 173; ix, 116
ancient seat of Aryan civilization, 1, 7
situated on ancient trade-route, i, 57
seat of the Magi, i, 60 *seq.*
Zoroaster's successful evangel at, i, 61; v, 18
Zoroaster slain at, i, 61 v, 92, 93
rhyme-word, Firðausí's difficulty with, i, 74
Sháhnáma, scene of, shifted to, ii, 9.; iv, 317
Siyáwush defeats Garsíwaz at, and takes, ii, 229
Luhrásp makes, his capital, iv, 713
becomes a devotee at, v, 31
Kuhram sent by Arjásp to attack, v, 90
stormed, v, 92, 93
Luhrásp slain at, v, 91, 93
spoil of, sent away by Arjásp, v, 108
Asfandíyár quits, to invade Túrán, v, 120
aphorist of, viii, 221
bestowed by Máhwí on his son, ix, 115
- Balúch, Balúchistán (Gedrosia, Makrán), country, 167, ii, 80, 226; iii, 34; iv, 136; vi, 12, 70; vii, 340
Ardshír Pápakán's ill success against, vii, 242
Núshírwán conquers, vii, 242
becomes prosperous, vii, 362
- Balúchis, people, vii, 241 *seq.*
ravages of, vii, 217, 241
chastised by Núshírwán, vii, 242
- Bálwí, Iránian noble, 172, viii, 257, *seq.*
deceived by Caesar's talisman, viii, 273

- L'álví, praised by Cæsar, viii, 279
 receives Chách, viii, 314
- Bámdát, father of Mazdak, vii,
 188
- Bámiyán, city in Afghánistán,
 north of the Kuh-i-Baba
 mountains and famous
 for its Buddhist remains,
 iv, 65
- Banák, Iránian chief, *temp.* Ard-
 shír Pápakán, vi, 202
- Bandáwa, Sindian chief, defeated
 by Sikandar, vi, 175
- Band-i-Kaisar, dam at Shúsh-
 tar, vi, 295
- Bandwí, Iránian noble *temp.*
 Kubád, vii, 207
- Bandwí, maternal uncle of
 Khusrau Parwíz, 171-173,
 viii, 200, 202, 204 seq., 224,
 225, 227, 231, 234, 245
 seq., 289, 296, 298, 356,
 357; ix, 4
 imprisonment of, viii, 177,
 176
- Gustaham and, escape and
 revolt, viii, 182
 referred to, viii, 189
 put to death, viii, 191, 355
 accompanies Khusrau Par-
 wíz in his flight, viii, 231
 turns back and murders
 Hurmuzd, viii, 232
 rejoins Khusrau Parwíz, viii,
 233
 promises to save Khusrau
 Parwíz, viii, 234
 disguises himself as Khus-
 rau Parwíz, viii, 235
 beguiles Bahrám, son of
 Siyáwush, viii, 236, 245
 imprisoned by Bahrám
 Chúbina, viii, 238
- Bandwí, Bahrám Chúbina hears
 of escape of, viii, 248
 entertained by Mausl, viii,
 249
 goes with Mausl to meet
 Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 282
 Bahrám Chúbina writes to,
 viii, 285
- Pandwí, causes defection of Bah-
 rám Chúbina's chiefs, viii,
 302
 insults of, to Niyátús, viii,
 309, 310
 reconciled to Niyátús, viii,
 311
 minister of Khusrau Parwíz,
 viii, 313
 adherents of, beheaded, viii,
 370
 execution of, referred to, ix,
 16, 104
- Bani Tayy, Arab tribe, viii,
 188
- Banquets, the Seven, of Núshír-
 wán, 168. *See* Núshír-
 wán.
- Bánúgashasp, daughter of Rus-
 tam and wife of Gív,
 ii, 4
 stays with Rustam while
 Gív seeks Kai Khusrau, ii,
 365
 suitors of, ii, 383, 384
 rejoins Gív, ii, 395
- Bár, mountain-range in Khurá-
 sán, v, 30
- Bár, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*
- Baráhám, a Jew, 164, vii, 13
 entertains Bahrám Gúr
 scurvily, vii, 16 seq.
- goods of, confiscated, vii, 20
- Bárbad, minstrel, 175, viii, 396
 seq., 406, ix, 29 and *note*
- supersedes Sarkash, viii, 399
 visits Khusrau Parwíz in
 prison, ix, 29
 lament of, ix, 30
- Barþar, Barbaristán, town and
 country (British Somaliland), 143, ii, 82 seq., 90,
 93, 98; iii, 207, 269; iv,
 136, 148; vi, 114; vii,
 327; viii, 381
 identification of, ii, 79
 king of, ii, 83, 94, 95
 taken prisoner by Guráza,
 ii, 97
 sends embassy to Gush-
 tásپ, v, 75

- Barda', city in Arrán *q.v.*, now in ruins, on the Tharthúr a tributary of the Kur, iv, 147; vii, 341; viii, 99, 100, 184, 222, 226; ix, 15 Afrásiyáb takes refuge in a cave near, iv, 259
- Bardí. *See* Baidá.
- Barkúh, city between Istakhr and Yazd, vii, 79, 80 tribute of, remitted by Bahram Gúr, vii, 82
- Barmáiún (*Purmáya q.v.*), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91
- Bármán, son of Wísa, Túránián hero, 142, 144, 151, i, 92, 342; ii, 18, 129, 130, 150, 349; iii, 79, 210; iv, 149 spies out the Iránian host, i, 346 challenges the Iránians to single combat and slays Kubád, i, 347 rewarded by Afrásiyáb, i, 348 besieges Gazhdaham in White Castle, i, 354 defeated and slain by Káran, i, 354 revival of, in legend, ii, 119 marches on Irán, ii, 228 defeated by Siyáwush, ii, 229 chosen to fight Ruhhám, iv, 97 slain by Ruhhám, iv, 102
- Barrier, Alexander's (*Sikandar's*), in the Caucasus, 160, i, 16, vi, 189, 249 legend of, vi, 78 site of, vi, 79 described, vi, 164
- Barsaentes, satrap, vi, 32 murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32 executed, vi, 32
- Barsám, general of Bízhan, ix, 97, 117 marches on Marv, ix, 97, 116 Mähwi's conduct to, ix, 117
- Barám, pursues and overtakes Mähwi, ix, 118 captures Mähwi, ix, 119
- Barsam, the sacred twigs, implement in Zoroastrian religious ceremonial, i, 80
- Barsine (Stateira), eldest daughter of Darius Codomanus, vi, 33 marries Alexander the Great, vi, 33
- Barta, Iránian hero, 151, iii, 25, 92; iv, 149 chosen to fight with Kuhram, iv, 97 slays Kuhram, iv, 105
- Bartás, region in Turkistán, ix, 19
- Barzín, sacred Fire and Fire-temple on the Binalúd Kuh, south west of Tús and Mashad in Khurásán, i, 237; ii, 107; vi, 391; viii, 216 Iránians worship at, vi, 400
- Barzín, Fire-temple built by Luhrásp at Balkh, iv, 318
- Barzín, Iránian hero, i, 365; ii, 12, 22, 73; iii, 25, 127, 273
- Barzín, father of Bihzáf, *temp.* Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 395
- Barzín, Iránian noble, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, 164 visited by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 49 entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 50 *seq.* gives his daughters in marriage to Bahrám Gúr, 164, vii, 53
- Barzín, father of Rád and Dád, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 86
- Barzín, father of Ustád, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 251
- Barzín, father of Shádán, vii, 382, 423
- Barzín, bower of, vii, 83
- Barzín, general of Núshírwán, viii, 17

- Barzin, father of Kharrád, 171-173, viii, 74, 76, 190, 205
and *passim*, ix, 4, 9, 12, 27
- Barzín, father of Jahn, viii, 391
- Barzwí, nonce-name assumed by Bahrám Gúr in Hind, vii, 121, 134
- Barzwí, physician and sage, *temp.* Núshírwán, 169, vii, 383
goes on a mission to Hind, vii, 424
consults a sage, vii, 427
hears of the book of Káfla and Dímma (*Fables of Bidpai*), and procures it for Núshírwán, vii, 427, 428
translates the above into Pahlaví, vii, 382, 428
asks boon of Núshírwán, vii, 429
- Basra (Bassora), city on the Shatt-el-Arah, ix, 68, 69 founded by 'Umar, ix, 67
- Bastám, city near Dámaghán on the road to Nishápúr, vii, 357
- Bástán-náma (Khudái - náma), Firdausí's chief authority, v, 24, 27, 261; vi, 17, 84 traditional origin of, i, 67 discussed, i, 68 translated into Arabic by Ibn Mukaffa', vi, 16, 373 modern Persian, i, 67 *seq.*; vii, 382
- Bastavairi, Bastvar (Nastúr *q.v.*), v, 12, 25
- Bátarún (Marcian), Rúman general, viii, 41, 47, 52
- Baths, public, introduction of, by Balásh, vii, 171
- Battle of the Twelve Rukhs, 151, iv, 7 *seq.*, v. 29
- Firdausí's reflections on, iv, 98, 106
- Eleven Rukhs, 151, iv, 88 arranged by Gúdarz and Píráñ, iv, 95 *seq.*
- of the Bridge, ix, 5, 67
- Battlestead= Brazen Hold, v, 121
- Bazánúsh (Valerian, *q.v.*), 161 defeat of, and capture by, Shápúr son of Ardshír, vi, 294, 295 single combat of, with Garshásp, vi, 297 bridge built by, at Shúshtar, vi, 298
- Bazánúsh (Jovian *q.v.*), 162, 163, vi, 324, 326 elected Emperor, vi, 353 sues for peace, vi, 353 accepts Shápúr's terms, vi, 355
- Bazh, suburb of Tús, i, 38
- Bázrangí, dynasty of Tribal kings, vi, 198
- Bázúr, Túránian warlock, iii, 128 uses magic against the Iránians, iii, 128 wounded by Ruhhám, iii, 129
- Beas (Hyphasis), easternmost of the rivers of the Punjáb, vi, 64
- Bedouins, i, 135, 179 desert of the, iv, 148 commanded by Záhir in Kai Khusrau's host, iv, 148
- Bel, Babylonian god, v, 293 temple of, v, 293
- Belisarius, Roman general (A.D. 505-565), vii, 186, 187, 217, 218
- Berber, race in northern Africa, vi, 73
- Berbera, trading-station in the Gulf of Aden, ii, 79
- Berlin, viii, 192
- Berozias, Barzwí *q.v.*, vii, 383
- Bessus, satrap, *temp.* Alexander the Great, vi, 32 assumes royal state in Bactria, vi, 32 executed, vi, 32
- Bhimá, one of the five Pán-davas, iv, 138, 139
- Bhután, Indian kingdom, between Assam and Thibet, vi, 81

- Bibliotheca*, of Diodorus, v, 293
 Bid, a div, ii, 44, 54, 55, 93
 slain, ii, 59, 64; iii, 256;
 iv, 296; v, 204
 Bídád, city of Cannibals in the vicinity of Sughd, iii, 244 seq.
 meaning of, iii, 244 *note*
 stormed by Rustam, iii, 246
 Bídirafsh (Vidrafsh), Túránian hero, 155, v, 24, 25, 41, 51, 52, 62 seq.
 goes as envoy to Gushtásp, v, 37, 40 seq.
 returns with Gushtásp's answer, v, 44
 receives banner from Arjásp, v, 46
 commands one wing, v, 56
 volunteers to fight Zarír, v, 62
 slays Zarír, v, 63
 fights Nastúr, v, 70
 slain by Asfandiyár, v, 70
 head of, presented to Gush-tásp, v, 71
 Bidpai, Indian sage, vii, 383
 Fables of (Book of Kalila and Dimna), brought to Persia, 169, vii, 213, 382
 Bih Áfríd, daughter of Gush-tásp, ii, 3; v, 22
 taken captive by the Turk-mans, v, 93, 94, 100
 goes with Humái to draw water and meets Asfandiyár, v, 147
 escapes from Arjásp's palace, v, 153
 laments over Asfandiyár, v, 252
 reproaches Gushtásp, v, 254
 Bíháfríd, ancestor of Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 200
 Bih Ardshír, Seleucia *q.v.* as rebuilt by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 254, 291 *note*, viii, 194, 196
 Bibbihán, town near the left bank of the Táb river in Párs, vii, 188
 Bihisht (Paradise), name of the country round Gang, iv, 195
 Bihistún. *See* Bístún.
 Bihrúz, a scribe *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 71 seq.
 makes an inventory of the goods of the miser Farshídward, vii, 72
 Bihzáf ("well bred"), the horse of Siyáwush and subsequently of Kai Khusrau, 146, ii, 391; iv, 172, 303
 Siyáwush's last charge to, ii, 312
 Farangís instructs Kai Khusrau how to obtain, ii, 374 seq.
 Bihzáf, Gushtásp's horse, v, 56, 69
 Bihzáf, Iránian chief, *temp.* Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 395; vii, 85 (?)
 Bihzáf, Iránian chief, *temp.* Kubád son of Pírúz, vii, 207
 Binalúd, mountain-range, west of Mashhad, north of Nishápúr, v, 29
 Birds, Sikandar holds converse with, 160, vi, 160
 Birka-i-Ardshír, city in Párs founded by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 290 and *note*
 Birmáya, cow, i, 151
 supplies the infant Farídún with milk, i, 151
 slain by Zahhák, i, 152, 153, 162
 Birthmark, characteristic of Kaian race, ii, 372; iii, 49 and *note*
 described, ii, 372; iii, 49
 Siyáwush's, iii, 49
 Kai Khusrau's, ii, 372; iii, 49 and *note*
 Farúd's, iii, 49
 Bisá (Fasá, Pasá, city south of Lake Bakhtigán in Párs, vii, 89 ?)

- Bishop or prelate *q.v.*, iv, 341, 348
 as militarist, i, 373, 378 ;
 iv, 197 ; v, 30^b, vi, 352
 advises Cæsar, iv, 330
 Núshzad's last requests to,
 vii, 275
- Bishútán (Peshó-tanu), brother
 of Asfandiyár, 156, 157,
 v, 66, 117, 178, 179, 182,
 195, 216, 223, 244 *seq.*,
 249 *seq.*, 261, 288 *seq.*
 an immortal, v, 12, 19
 birth of, v, 32
 commands the host during
 Asfandiyár's absence in
 the Seven Stages, v, 122,
 124, 126, 129, 132, 144,
 150
- Asfandiyár praised by the
 host and, v, 123, 125, 131,
 133
- revives Asfandiyár after his
 encounter with the dragon
 v, 127
- prays for deliverance from
 the snow, v, 138
- Asfandiyár and, consult, v,
 143
- sees Asfandiyár's signal and
 approaches the Brazen
 Hold, v, 150
- passes himself off as Asfan-
 diyár, v, 143, 151, 152
 joined by Asfandiyár, v,
 155
- advises Asfandiyár, v, 179
- Asfandiyár holds talk about
 Rustam with, v, 192
- advises Asfandiyár to main-
 tain friendly relations
 with Rustam, v, 196, 217
- Rustam served with un-
 tempered wine by, v, 211
- despair of, at the situation
 between Rustam and
 Asfandiyár, v, 218
- laments for Núsh Ázar and
 Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 232
- Asfandiyár talks of the
 fight with Rustam to, v,
 240
- Rishútán, hears of Asfandiyár's
 overthrow and laments
 for him, v, 244
- Rustam bewails Asfandiyár
 to, v, 246
- Asfandiyár's last charge to,
 v, 249
- heads Asfandiyár's funeral
 train, v, 251
- displays the corpse of As-
 fandiyár, v, 253
- reproaches Gushtásp, v, 253
 Jámásp, v, 254
- consoles Katáyún, v, 255
- supports Rustum's over-
 tures to Gushtásp, v, 257
 intended by Gushtásp to be
 Bahman's minister, v, 279
- intercedes for Zál, v, 288
- intercession of, accepted, v,
 289
- counsels Bahman to quit
 Zábul, v, 290
- Bistám (Gustaham *q.v.*), viii, 255
 and *note*, 256
- Bistún (Bagistana *i.e.* "Place of
 God," Behistún, Bísi-
 tún), a lofty rock a few
 miles east of Kirmánsháh
 and famous for its in-
 scriptions, i, 379 ; ii, 128 ;
 iii, 12, 184, 350 ; iv, 190 ;
 v, 56, 184 ; vii, 61, 363 ;
 viii, 209
- inscription of Darius Hys-
 taspis at, i, 6 ; v, 11
 Gotarzes at, iii, 9, 11
 =Zál's white elephant, i, 328
 =Rustum, v, 229
- Bíwarasp (Zahhák), i, 72, 144
 meaning of, i, 135
- Bíward, Túránian hero, iii, 161
 comes to aid Píráن, iii, 152
- Bíward, Iránian chief *temp.*
 Yazdagird son of Shápúr,
 vi, 395
- Bízhan, Iránian hero, son of Gív,
 147, 150-152, ii, 4, 366
 and *note* ; ii, 4, 366 and
note ; iii, 20, 45, 67, 76
seq., 81, 92, 101, 115, 121,

Bízhan—*cont.*

129, 130, 133, 139, 141,
157 *seq.*, 211, 234, 247,
248, 253, 259, 264, 271,
284 *seq.*, 289, 330 *seq.*, 337
seq., 349, 350, 352 *seq.*;
iv, 7, 13, 26 *seq.*, 56, 77,
88, 91, 102, 123 *seq.*, 147,
292; vi, 194
favourite with the poet, iv, 8
parentage of, iii, 324
friendship of, with Gusta-
ham the son of Gazhdaham, iii, 15
relations of, with Gív, iii, 15
undertakes to slay Paláshán,
iii, 26
to carry off the crown
and handmaid of Tazháv, iii, 27
swears to avenge Zarásp, iii,
59
borrows a steed from
Gustaham, iii, 59
the mail of Siyáwush,

Bízhan, goes to Irmán with
Gurgín, iii, 292
destroys the wild boars, iii,
293
envied by Gurgín, iii, 294
steed of, iii, 296, 302, 313
interview of, with Manízha's
nurse, iii, 297
visits Manízha, iii, 298
drugged, iii, 299
wakes in Afrásiyáb's palace,
iii, 300
holds revel with Manízha,
iii, 300
discovered by Garsíwaz, iii,
302
taken before Afrásiyáb, iii,
303
sentenced to death, iii, 304
lament of, iii, 305
imprisoned, iii, 309; v, 116
searched for by Gurgín,
iii, 310
receives Rustam's ring, iii,
340
Rustam's conditions of re-
lease for, iii, 345
released, iii, 346
pardons Gurgín, iii, 346
joins in attack on Afrá-
siyáb's palace, iii, 347
presented to Kai Khúsrau
by Rustam, iii, 354
holds converse with Kai
Khúsrau, iii, 356
desires to fight Húmán, iv,
39
asks Gív to lend him the
mail of Siyáwush, iv, 40
seeks Gúdarz' permission to
fight Húmán, iv, 41
receives the mail of Siyá-
wush from Gív, iv, 45
parleys with Húmán, iv,
45
returns after the fight in
Húmán's armour, iv 51,
defeats night-attack and
slays Nasthan, iv, 54
attacks with Gív Píráñ's
centre, iv, 83

- Bízhan, fights with Farshídward, iv, 87
 chosen to fight with Rúín, iv, 97
 slays Rúín, iv, 103
 asks Gúdarz for help for Gustaham, iv, 117
 rescues Gustaham, iv, 124 *seq.*, 132
 brings back the corpses of Láhhák and Farshídward, iv, 126, 132
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275
 Kai Khusrau gives audience to, and other nobles, iv, 283 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's gift to iv, 295
 brings Luhrásp before Kai Khusrau, iv, 300
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
 refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
 Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308
 disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
 end of, iv, 309
 Gúdarz' grief for, iv, 310, 312
 sons of, go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
 hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
 Bízhan, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, 210
 Bízhan, Khán of Turks, 176, ix, 70, 96
 Máhwí writes to, ix, 96
 consults his minister, ix, 97
 sends troops to Marv, ix, 97
 Máhwí makes war on, ix, 115
 marches against Máhwí, ix, 117
 Bízhan, Khán of Turks, lays ambush for Máhwí, ix, 118
 sends Barsám in pursuit of Máhwí, ix, 118
 hears of Máhwí's capture, ix, 119
 puts Máhwí to death, ix, 120
 goes mad and kills himself, ix, 120, 121
 Black Dív. *See* Dív.
 horse, Gushtásp's, v, 18
 cured by Zarduhsh, v, 18
 Stone, meteorite built into the wall of the Kaaba at Mecca, ii, 163 and *note*, vi, 65
 Blest, Country of the, vi, 74, 76
 Boars, wild, devastate Irmán, iii, 290
 slain by Bízhan, iii, 293
Bombyx Mori. *See* Silk.
 Book of Kings, Firdausí's Sháhnáma, i, 43
 Indication and Revision, Mas'údí's, vi, 252
 quoted, vi, 252
 Boot, golden. *See* Golden.
 Borysthenes, river (Dnieper *q.v.*), iii, 191
 Boulder of the Dív Akwán, iii, 271, 343 *seq.*, 347
 Rustam carried off on, iii, 276
 flung into the sea with, iii, 278
 raised from the sea, iii, 309
 used to cover Bízhan's prison, iii, 309
 removed from pit's mouth by Rustam iii, 345
 Boundary-pillar, Bahrám Gúr's, vii, 92, 160, 161, 164
 Bowl, the full, symbolism of, vi, 63
 Brabantio, his warning to Othello, vi, 324
 Brádrók-résh, a Karap, v, 15
 slayer of Zarduhsh, v, 15
 Brahman, Hindu priest, iii, 29; iv, 50; v, 207, vii, 425; ix, 21

- Brahmans (*Gymnosophistæ*), 159
 vi, 64
 Palladius on, vi, 51
 country of, vi, 143, 147
 hear of. Sikandar's coming
 and write to him, vi,
 143
 Sikandar's interview with,
 vi, 67, 143 *seq.*
 described, vi, 144
 reply to Sikandar's ques-
 tions, vi, 144 *seq.*
 Sikandar quits, vi, 147
- Brahmanism supersedes Bud-
 dhism in eastern Irán, i, 16
- Brains, human, prescribed to
 Zahhák by Iblís, i, 139,
 146
- Bramble-grubber, 164. *See*
 Diláfrúz.
- Brand-mark, iii, 291
 of Káús, iii, 291
- Brazen Hold, the, 156, v, 116,
 117, 119 *seq.*, 159, 197,
 206, 255
 route to, v, 120, 135
 described, v, 121, 135, 141
- Asfandiyár's stratagem for
 taking, v, 116, 143
 surprised from within by
 Asfandiyár, v, 152 *seq.*
 left in charge of Sáwa, v,
 154
- Arjásپ's head thrown from
 the ramparts of, v, 157
- Asfandiyár destroys, v, 162
 referred to, viii, 171
- Bride, the, one of the Kai Káús'
 treasures, iv, 295
 given by Kai Khusrau to
 Gív, Zál, and Rustam, iv,
 295
- Brides of the Treasure, Genii
 that watch over secret
 hoards, vi, 250
- Bridge, Battle of the, ix, 5, 67
- Browning, Robert, his poem of
 "The Glove," vi, 384
- Bucephala, city founded by
 Alexander the Great, vi,
 18
- Bucephalus, horse of Alexander
 the Great, vi, 18
 birth of, vi, 26
 a mare (Ethiopic version),
 vi, 18
 offered by Darius to Porus,
 vi, 31
 death of, vi, 18, 64
 city built by Alexander in
 memory of, vi, 18
- Buddha, birth stories of, vii, 383
- Buddhism, in eastern Irán and
 Kábulistán, i, 15
 superseded by Brahman-
 ism, i, 16
 regarded as idolatrous by
 Zoroastrians, i, 16
- Buddhist saints, story of two, vi,
 63
- Budge, Dr. E. A. Wallis, his
 editions of the Syriac
 and Ethiopic versions of
 the Pseudo-Callisthenes,
 vi, 14, 17 *note*
- Budini, race, vi, 73
- Búiti, demon, assails Zarduhsh
 i, 62; v, 17
- Bukhára, city on the Zarafshán
 river in the province of
 Sughd, ii, 241; iv, 65;
 vii, 331, 348, 359, 384;
 ix, 97, 115, 117
- Kurákhán sent to, iv, 154
- Afrásiyáb joins Kurákhán
 at, iv, 186
- Fire-temple built by Túr at,
 iv, 225
- Bahrám Gúr attacks, vii, 90
 receives tribute from, vii,
 94
- Bukhtakán. *See* Bakhtagán.
- Bulghár (Bulgaria), viii, 406
- Bull, mythological, i, 71; ii,
 407; vii, 245
 -fish, ii, 128
- Bundahish, Pahlaví text, i, 91,
 92, 117, 125, 131, 235,
 236, 337 *note*, 338, 369;
 ii, 3 *note*, 11, 26, 81, 118,
 189
- meaning of, i, 70 *note*

- Bu'udah-i-h, account of Creation in, i, 117
- Búráb, court-farrier to Cæsar, iv, 326
- refuses to employ Gushtásp, iv, 327
- Buráza, minister under Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vii, 4
- Burial-place of Rustam's race, the scene of the battle between Bahman and Farámarz, v, 287
- Burjak and Burjátúr, vi, 207.
See Youths, the two.
- Burjásپ, Túránián hero, iv, 26 commands the left wing, iv, 26
- Burns, quoted, viii, 3
- Burrus, Praetorian prefect *temp.* Nero, vii, 279
- Burzmíhr, Iránian warrior, vii, 86 bears Narsi's letter to Bahram Gúr, vii, 94
- Burzmíhr, scribe, viii, 81, 87, 313
=Búzurjmíhr (?) *q.v.*, viii, 71
- Burzúyalá, Túránián hero, iv, 182 fights and flees from Kai Khusráu, iv, 183
- Búsipás, nonce name used by Húmán when parleying with Rustam, iii, 198
- Bust, city in Sístán, situated at the junction of the Kandahár and Helmund rivers, i, 252; iv, 65; v, 173, 277, 287; vi, 175; vii, 173, 395; ix, 89 stream of, i, 252
- Buzgúsh, name of tribe, ii, 55 and *note*, iii, 207
- Búzurjmíhr, chief counsellor of Núshírwán in Iránian tradition and famous for his wisdom, 167-170, i, 27; v, 261; vii, 5; viii, 3 *seq.*, 67 *seq.*
associated with the Persian Wisdom-literature, vii, 278
- Búzurjmíhr, a semi-mythical personage, vii, 280 found by Azád Sarv at Marv, vii, 283 undertakes to interpret Núshírwán's dream vii, 283 goes with Azád Sarv to court, vii, 283 adventure of, with a snake, vii, 284 interprets Núshírwán's dream, vii, 284 rewarded and honoured by Núshírwán, vii, 286, 289, 304, 311, 315, 388 accomplishments of, vii, 286 discourses of, at the Seven Banquets of Núshírwán, vii, 287 *seq.* on fate and fortune, vii, 291 on the attainment of greatness, vii, 291, 296 on what is worthiest, vii, 291 on sages, vii, 288, 291, 292, 294, 296 *seq.*, 309 on fools, vii, 297, 298, 306 on conduct, vii, 288, 291 *seq.*, 299, 309 on kings, vii, 290, 294, 295, 301, 312 on the wise administrator, vii, 294 on sons, vii, 295, 303, 311. on riches and poverty, vii, 295 questioned by Ardshír and Yazdagird, vii, 308 on scribes, i, 27; vii, 311 on loyalty, vii, 312 discourse of, vii, 366 questioned by Núshírwán, vii, 367 *seq.* expounds the game of chess, vii, 380, 388 invents the game of nard, vii, 381, 389 welcomed on his return from Hind by Núshírwán, vii, 393

Búzurjmihr, goes hunting with, and is suspected of theft by, Núshírvan, viii, 4
disgraced by Núshírván, viii, 5
instructs Núshírván's page, viii, 5
refuses to admit himself in the wrong, viii, 6 *seq.*
treated with increasing rigour, viii, 7, 8
released, viii, 9
divination by, viii, 10 *seq.*
advises with Núshírván, viii, 47 *seq.*
instructed by Núshírván to prove Hurmuzd, viii, 56 *seq.*
abolition of Fire-worship foretold by, viii, 68
death of, viii, 69, 71
=Burzmihr (?), viii, 71
Mas'údí on, viii, 71
Byzantine title, vii, 218

C

CÆSAR, the dynastic title of the kings of the West or Rúm who were regarded as being descended from Salm, the son of Farídún, 154, 161, 162, 165, 167, 169, 172-174, i, 262; ii, 383; iii, 9; vi, 112, 297, 353; vii, 163; viii, 8 *seq.*, 19, 43 *seq.*, 51 *seq.*, 230, 232, 245, 252 *seq.*, 257 *seq.*, 299, 306 *seq.*, 334, 373 *seq.*, 408 *seq.*; ix, 10, 23
transliteration of, i, 84 and note
temp. Luhrásp, 154, iv, 339 *seq.*; v, 11, 32, 167
daughter of = Katáyún, iv, 314; v, 167, 205
capital of, founded by Salm, iv, 325

Cæsar, *temp.* Luhrásp, Nastár, master of the herds to, iv, 325
refuses to employ Gush-tásp, iv, 326
Búráb, court-farrier to, iv, 326
refuses to employ Gush-tásp, iv, 327
proposes to give his eldest daughter in marriage, iv, 329
wrath of, at his daughter's choice of Gushtásp, iv, 330
yields to bishop's counsel, iv, 331
refuses to provide for his daughter and Gushtásp, iv, 331
bids Mírín slay the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 333
inspects the slain wolf, iv, 341
marries his second daughter to Mírín, iv, 341
bids Ahran slay the dragon of Mount Sakila, iv, 342
third daughter of, iv, 342 *seq.*
married to Ahran, iv, 348
rejoices in his two sons in law, iv, 348
proclaims the tidings of the slaying of the wolf and the dragon, iv, 349
sons-in-law of, display their accomplishment on the riding-ground, iv, 349
sees Gushtásp's prowess and questions him, iv, 350
learns the truth about the wolf and the dragon and asks pardon of Gushtásp and Katáyún, iv, 351
wrath of, with Mírín and Ahran, iv, 351
seeks to find out through Katáyún who Gushtásp is, iv, 351

- Cæsar, *temp.* Luhrásp, receives Gushtásp with honour at court, iv, 352
 Ilyás refuses to pay tribute to iv, 352
 receives a scornful message from Mírin and Ahran, iv, 353
 takes counsel with Gushtásp, iv, 353
 bids Gushtásp lead forth the host, iv, 354
 arrays the host, iv, 355
 Gushtásp brings the dead body of Ilyás to, iv, 355
 welcomes Gushtásp after his victory, iv, 356
 consults Gushtásp about demanding tribute from Írán, iv, 356
 sends an envoy to Luhrásp, iv, 356
 gives audience to Zarír, iv, 360
 replies to, and dismisses Zarír, iv, 361
 questions Gushtásp, iv, 361
 sends Gushtásp to Zarír's camp, iv, 361
 goes to feast with Gushtásp and discovers who he is, iv, 363
 gives gifts to Katayún, iv, 363
 the Fránian chiefs, iv, 364
 parts in good will from Gushtásp, iv, 364
 sends embassy to Gushtásp on hearing of Arjásp's defeat, v, 75
temp. Humái, sues to Rush-nawád for peace, v, 307
 =Failakús *q.v.*, vi, 24, 26, 27
 =Sikandar *q.v.*, vi, 40, 42, 49
 113, 114, 118, 121, 122,
 124, 128, 129, 142, 158,
 161, 170, 174, 178, 183
 =Valerian (Bazánúsh *q.v.*), vi, 326
 =Jovian (Bazánúsh *q.v.*), vi, 353, 354
 Cæsar, *temp.* Shápúr son of Ardshír, 161
 pays tribute, vi, 208
temp. Shápúr son of Urmuzd, 162, vi, 341 *seq.*, 345 *seq.*
 Shápúr in disguise visits, vi, 330
 entertained by, vi, 337
 discovered by, vi, 337
 arrested by, vi, 337
 sewn up in an ass's skin by, vi, 338
 put in charge of wife of vi, 338
 invades and ravages Frán, vi, 338
 Shápúr prepares to attack, vi, 346
 overthrown by Shápúr at Taisafún, vi, 346 *seq.*
 Shápúr's treatment of, vi, 349, 357
 mother of, vi, 351
 brother of (Yánus *q.v.*), vi, 351
temp. Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 389
 pays tribute, vi, 389
temp. Bahrám Gúr, 165
 embassage of, to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 5, 86, 100
 marches on Írán, vii, 84
 propounds questions to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 102
 envoy of, questioned by the high priest, vii, 104
temp. Núshírwán, 167, 169, 172-174, vii, 244 *seq.*, 269, 273
 replies to Núshírwán concerning Munzir, vii, 245
 treasures of, taken by Núshírwán, vii, 255, 258
 sues to Núshírwán for peace, vii, 261
 sends tribute to Núshírwán, vii, 362
 death of, viii, 43
temp. Núshírwán, Hurmuzd, and Khusrau Parwiz, 172

Cæsar, *temp.* Núshírwán, etc., offends Núshírwán, viii, 44 *seq.* marches against Núshírwán, viii, 46 attacks Hormuzd, viii, 93 retakes cities, viii, 93 makes peace with Hormuzd, viii, 95 welcomes Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 257 offers help to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 261 changes his mind, viii, 262 consults the astrologers, viii, 264 decides to help Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 265 offers daughter to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 266 offers of, accepted by Khusrau Parwíz viii, 269, 270 talisman of, viii, 271, 275 deceives Rúman envoys, viii, 272 mastered by Kharrád, viii, 274 gifts of, to Kharrád, viii, 278 writes to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 279 praises Rúman envoys, viii, 279 counsels Maryam, viii, 279, 280 gives Niyáttús charge of Maryam, viii, 280 corpse of Kút sent to, viii, 291 Khusrau Parwíz announces death of Bahrám Chúbina to, viii, 345 daughter of, gives birth to Shírwi, viii, 371 Khusrau Parwíz' letter to, viii, 373 rejoicing of, at birth of Shírwi, viii, 374 embassy of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 374 gifts of, given by Khusrau Parwíz to Shírwi, viii, 381

Cæsar, *temp.* Núshírwán, etc., invited to seize Irán, viii, 408 tricked by Khusrau Parwíz and retreats, viii, 410 letter of, about the True Cross referred to, ix, 22 Caesarean birth, of Rustam, i, 236, 321 *seq.* Calanus (Sphinés), Indian ascetic, vi, 61 Onesicritus and, vi, 61 Alexander the Great and, vi, 61 death of, vi, 61 derivation of, vi, 61 identical with the sage sent by Kaid to Sikandar (*see Four Wonders*), vi, 62 Calendar, Zoroastrian, i, 88; iii, 286 adopted by Darius Hystaspis, i, 59 Callinicus. *See* Káliniyús. Callisthenes, Greek historian *temp.* Alexander the Great vi, 12, 74 Romance of Alexander fathered on, vi, 13 account of, vi, 13 *Callitris quadrivalvis*, the Arar tree, vi, 19 Cambyses, father of Cyrus the Great, ii, 190 identical with Siyáwush in legend, ii, 191 Cambyses, son of Cyrus the Great and King of Persia (B.C. 528-521), v, 10, 11; vi, 16 Camel, piece in chess, vii, 422 position of, vii, 422 move of, vii, 422 Cancer, constellation, iii, 125, 151, 255; vii, 257 moon in, an evil omen, i, 188; iii, 255 (?) Candace (Kandake, Kaidáfa *q.v.*), dynastic title of the queens of Ethiopia, vi, 13, 72

- Candace Alexander the Great and, vi, 65 *seq.*
- Candahar. *See* Kandahar
- Cannibalism, iii, 191, 244
- Canopus, star, i, 188
of Yaman, i, 266; ii, 203; iii, 297; vi, 382
- Cappadocia (Pálawína), vi, 294
- Captives, mutilation of, vi, 323, 334, 348, 357
settlement of, vi, 327, 357
- Carline and Bahram Chúbína, viii, 180, 303
- Carnelians, ii, 123
of Yaman, ii, 123
- Carrhae, defeat of Crassus at, i, 15
- Carthaginians, the, vi, 30
Alexander the Great's legendary visit to, vi, 30
- Casaubon, Isaac, vi, 13
- Caspian Sea, i, 3, 4, 16, 19, 56, 57, 338; ii, 180, 336; iii, 10, 192; iv, 136; v, 13
- Caspian Gates, iv, 315; vi, 31, 32
- Cassander (B.C. 350-297), eldest son of Antipater and King of Macedonia, vi, 82
- Castellan, bishop as. *See* Bishop.
- Castes, division of Aryans into, i, 7
Írániāns into, i, 130, 132
- Castle, White. *See* White Castle.
- of the Aláns. *See* Alans.
- Bahman. *See* Bahman.
- Oblivion, vii, 184
Kubád son of Pírúz confined in, vii, 184 escapes from, viii, 184
- Catholicus, viii, 195
- Catullus, Roman poet (B.C. 84-54), i, 60
on Persian next of kin marriage, i, 60
- Caucasus, mountain-range running in a south-easterly direction from the Black Sea to the Caspian, i, 16; iv, 316; vi, 15; vii, 214, 217; viii, 72
- Caucasus, passes in, i, 16; vi, 79
fortified, i, 16, vii, 153, 187, 216, 239
Mas'údi's account of, vii, 215
- barrier (mythical) of Alexander the Great (Sikandar) in, i, 16; vi, 78, 189, 249
legend of, in the Kurán, vi, 78
site of, vi, 79
described, vi, 164
- Cave, cavern, in Mázandarán, ii, 28
- White Dív's, ii, 28, 55, 58 *seq.*
- Afrásiyáb's, in Ázarábján, iv, 136 *seq.*, 250 *seq.*
- Central clime. *See* Clime.
- Chách (Shásh, Old Táshkand, now in ruins), city on the right bank of the Jaxartes west of Ferghána, famous for its bows, ii, 241, 258; iv, 19, 187, 188, 255; vii, 167, 329, 334, 340, 343, 348, 358, 359; viii, 314, 377; ix, 115, 116
- bow of, i, 227; iii, 123, 181, 227; v, 244; vi, 384; viii, 125, 126, 294
- government of, given to Tús by Rustam, ii, 358
- thane of, one of Firdausi's authorities, vi, 197, 210 referred to, vi, 229 and *note*
- daughter of governor of, vii, 285
intrigue of, vii, 285
executed, vii, 286
- battle-axes of, ix, 118
- Chaghán, district on the right bank of the Oxus where that river is crossed from Tirmid, and city further north on the upper waters of river of the same name, iii, 152, 177, 228; vii, 94, 157, 359

- Chaghán, ceded by Kubád to the Haitálians, vii, 198
monarch of =Faghánish, vii, 333
- Chaghwán=Chaghán (?), vi, 174
Sikandar visits, vi, 174
quits, vi, 175
- Cháha, hostelry of, i, 45
- Chahár Makála, Persian treatise, i, 23
account of Firdausí in, i, 38, 39, 45
- Chahram (Jahram *q.v.*), city in Párs
- Chalah, viii, 193
- Chálandshán. *See* Chánlandshán.
- Chalcedon, viii, 194, 195
- Chalybon-Beroea (Aleppo), city in northern Syria, vii, 218; viii, 41
held to ransom by Núshírwán, vii, 218
- Champions, the Twelve, vii, 156.
See Rukhs.
- Chamrosh, mythical bird, i, 235
- Chánlandshán (Khálanján). Khánlanján), district and town (Fírúzán) near Ispahán on the Zayinda river (*see* LEC. pp. 206, 207 and *note*), i, 29
Ahmad ibn Muhammad of, patron of Firdausí, i, 29
Firdausí's escape from drowning at, i, 26, 29
- Chao-wou=Sáwa *q.v.*, viii, 72
- Characters, chief, of Sháhnáma, i, 49
- Characteristics, of Irán, i, 3 *seq.*
- Characteristics of a Happy Man, Pahlaví text, vii, 279
- Charám, place in Irán, iii, 40, 41, 52, 68, 85, 86, 111, 112
- Charbar, place on the coast of Balúchistán (Makrán), vi, 70
- Chares of Mytilene, Greek writer and official at the court of Alexander the Great ii 10; vi, 61
- Chares of Mytilene, story by, of Hystaspes and Zariadres quoted, iv, 314
- Charinda, river, iii, 10 *note*
- Charjui (Ámwí *q.v.*), city on the Oxus, vii, 91 *note*
- Charogos. *See* Tainúsh.
- Chase, equipage for, vii, 48, 76; viii, 384
- Chess, game of, 169, vi, 201; vii, 14 and *note*, 280, 385 *seq.*; viii, 371
- Note on, vii, 380
sent by the Rája of Hind to Núshírwán, vii, 5, 380, 384 *seq.*
expounded by Búzurjmíhr, vii, 380, 388
- symbolism of, vii, 381
two forms of, vii, 381, 388, 422
changes in powers of pieces in, vii, 381
- Mas'údí on, vii, 382
invention of, Story of the, 169, vii, 394 *seq.*
- Chess-board, vii, 14, 385, 388
- Chess-men, vii, 14, 380, 388
- Chevy Chase, ii, 82
- Chigil (Naryn ?) district and river, tributary of the Jaxartes, iv, 155
- monarch of, v, 110
commands the left, v, 110
=Arjásپ, v, 54, 86
- Turkman of, =Gúrgsár, v, 130
- Chihrzád (Humái), daughter and wife of Sháh Bahman, ii, 3; v, 290 and *note*
meaning of, v, 290 and *note*
- Chíjast (Khanjast, Urumiah), lake in Ázarbáiján, iv, 136 *note*
- Children, sometimes brought up un-named, i, 8, 179
- Chín, country, China, but generally in the Sháhnáma equivalent to Chinese Tartary and sometimes to Túráń, 160, 165, 173,

Chin, count y, Ch'una—*cont.*
 1, 207, 229, 230, 261, 267,
 351, 371; ii, 77, 82, 111,
 143, 154, 156, 237, 277,
 286, 287, 289, 297, 305,
 307, 357, 359, 383, 394;
 iii, 46, 49, 103, 106 and
passim.
 assigned by Farídún to Túr,
 i, 189
 brocade of, i, 269, 233 and
passim
 coasts of, vi, 173
 cloth of gold from, ii, 275;
 vi, 182, 334
 dínárs of, iv, 241
 Faghfúr of. *See* Faghfúr.
 helm of, i, 132
 images of, v, 35
 implements of, vi, 122
 Khán of. *See* Khán.
 King of =Afrásiyáb, ii, 99;
 iv, 165, 170, 230
 =Khán, iii, 227, 228;
 vii, 87
 =Arjásپ, v, 36, 52, 55,
 69, 86, 108
 =Faghfúr, vii, 131
 lord of =Mahmúd, iv, 142
 =Sikandar, vi, 113
 =Faghfúr, vi, 171
 mace of, iii, 129
 ornaments of, ii, 232; vi,
 102, 139
 paper of, vi, 172
 pen of, vi, 57, 99
 prince of =Khán, iii, 226
 =Afrásiyáb, iv, 194
 =Arjásپ, v, 35
 =Parmúda, viii, 142
 =Sáwa, viii, 222
 rarities of, vi, 171, 173; vii,
 49
 robes of, iii, 329; viii, 205,
 257
 Rose of =daughter of the
 Khán, vii, 363 and *note*
 sea of, i, 113, 140, 252, 349;
 ii, 12, 256, 276, 285, 356,
 357; iii, 151, 252; iv,
 237, 254; v, 109, 203,

Chin, sea of—*cont.*
 233, 239 *note*; vi, 149;
 vii, 343; viii, 377
 shield of, iii, 125, 140, 256;
 ix, 118
 Sikandar goes to, vi, 169
 silk of, i, 157; iii, 104, 165;
 v, 159, 295; vi, 85, 266;
 vii, 73, 92, 347, 364, 418;
 viii, 258, 269, 374
 steel of, iii, 186
 stuffs of, vi, 143, 215
 ware of, vii, 78
 sage of, viii, 235
 sashes from, ix, 12, 53
 gold thread of, ix, 82
 merchantmen of, ix, 89
 China, country, vi, 204
 silk industry of, vi, 204
 Chináb (Akésines), river in the
 Punjáb, vi, 31, 64
 Chinese, viii, 72
 language, vi, 147
 Chingish, Túráñian hero, 149, iii,
 207
 volunteers to avenge Kámús,
 iii, 194
 challenges Rustam, iii, 194
 slain by Rustam, iii, 195
 Chínwí, noble of Chín, viii, 331
 Chionitæ, people, v, 13
 geographical position of, v,
 13
 Chorené, Moses of. *See* Moses.
 Chosrau, Chosroes I (Kisrá),
 Sásánian Sháh, vii, 212,
 281. *See* Níshírwár.
 Chosroes, king of Armenia, vi,
 202
 Christ, 174, vi, 339; vii, 207,
 249, 264, 270, 273, 276;
 ix, 24, 109
 Faith of, vi, 133, 339; vii,
 274; viii, 43, 191, 272,
 310, 380
 account of, viii, 276
 father of, viii, 276
 mother of, viii, 276
 Cross of, viii, 377, 380; ix,
 23
 daughter of, viii, 191, 380

- Christian, Christians, 167, vi, 342; vii, 171, 254, 270; viii, 21, 67, 195, 196, 256, 272, 308, 310, 381; ix, 23
rites of marriage, vi, 104
Faith, vi, 356
persecution of, vii, 153
Firdausi's view of, vii, 219
wife of Núshírwán, vii, 263, 274
mother of Núshzád, vii, 263
helps Núshzád in his revolt, vii, 266
laments for Núshzád, vii, 276
support Núshzád, vii, 266, 272
shut gates of Kársán against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 252
Christianity, vi, 138
polemics against, vii, 219, 270, 273
Chúbín (Júbín), father, according to Mas'údí, of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 77
Chúbína, viii, 215, 222
meaning of, viii, 98 *note*
Cilicia (Kaidáfa), most south-easterly province of Asia Minor, vi, 294
Circesium, viii, 188
City of Women, 160. *See* Harúm.
Claudius, Roman emperor (A.D. 41-54), iii, 10
Cleophas, Indian queen, vi, 65
Alexander the Great and, vi, 65
Climate, of Írán, i, 4, 5
Mázandarán, ii, 27
Clime, Climes, the seven, i, 40, 71, 122, 123, 238; ii, 15
note, 372; iii, 290, 317; vi, 179, 262, 266, 273, 280, 376, 377; viii, 395
Kai Khusrau surveys, in his divining-cup, iii, 318
Central, i, 71, 122; ii, 27
Cloud, emblem of prosperity, i, 73, 113, 114; ii, 263 and *note*; iv, 141; vi, 96
Cloud, thunder-, as water-stealing demon, i, 7
of bale=Afrásiyáb, ii, 13
name given by Rustam to himself, ii, 53
Clough, quoted, viii, 187
Cocks and hens, taught to crow daybreak, i, 126
Colchians, people of the south-eastern shores of the Euxine, vi, 72
Colic, cure of, vii, 39
Commander of the Faithful, ix, 72
'Umar, the first, ix, 72 and *note*
Commons, king of the, vii, 3
Communists (Mazdakites, *q.v.*), vii, 185
Companions of the Prophet (Muhammad), 139
praise of, 139, i, 106
Constantinople, vii, 316; viii, 194
conspirator against Núshírwán escapes to, vii, 316
Contents, General Table of, ix, 139
Cook, chief, of Núshírwán, grievance of, viii, 18
Cordwainer. *See* Shoemaker.
Corn-land, taxes on, vii, 215
Corpse, 160
Cos, island in the Ægean sea, vi, 204
silk industry of, vi, 204
Cosmogony, ancient Iránian, i, 5, 71
Firdausi's, 102, iv, 136
Country of the Blest. *See* Blst.
Courses, the Seven, of Rustam, 143, ii, 29, 44 *seq.*
Crassus, the triumvir (B.C. 115-53), i, 15
defeat of, at Carrhæ, i, 15
Creation, Zoroastrian account of, i, 5, 117
Firdausi's account of, i, 102 *seq.*
Crete, island, south of Greece, vi, 323 *note*.

- Crete, Minos king of, legend of, vi, 323 *note*
- Crocodile, iii, 278
=assassin, i, 111
=Kámús, iii, 192
- Cross, the, 174, vi, 351, 352; vii, 249, 270, 276; viii, 308, 309, 374
captured by Dáráb, vi, 306 and *note*
religion of, vi, 138
Passion of, vi, 339
the true, viii, 191, 196, 253, 377, 378, 380; ix, 4, 5, 10, 24
restoration of, ix, 7, 56
of Christ, ix, 23
Elevation of, ix, 43
- Crows and Owls, story of, viii, 263 and *note*
- Crystal, House of, ix, 25 and *note*
- Ctesias. *See* Ktesias.
- Ctesiphon (*Taisafún q.v.*), city on the left bank of the Tigris some 25 miles below Baghdád, originally an extension of Seleucia on the right bank of that river, ii, 80; vi, 321, 322, 325, 372; viii, 42, 188, 189, 193, 194, 196; ix, 65 *seq.* taken by Shahrbaráz, ix, 43, 44
Sa'ad, ix, 67
booty found at, ix, 68
- Culture-heroes. *See* Gaiúmart, Húshang, Talmúras, and Jamshíd, i, 118 *seq.*
- Cup, divining-, of Kai Khusrau, iii, 317, 318, 323
inexhaustible, of Kaid, 159, vi, 94, 100, 109
poisoned, proffered to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 259
crystal, to detect poison (?), vii, 51
- Cybele, Greek goddess, vi, 71
=Hittite Ma, vi, 71
- Cymbals, of the Brides of the Treasure, vi, 250; vii, 35 and *note*
- Cypress, of Kishmar. *See* Kishmar.
- Cyrus the Great (B.C. 558-528), son of Cambyses and founder of the Persian empire
- legend of, in Herodotus identical with that of Kai Khusrau, ii, 9, 190
in Ctesias transferred to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 195
rise of, i, 18
compared to that of Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 194
historical parallel with Kai Khusrau, v, 10
- D
- DABISTÁN, 17th century Persian treatise, v, 28
- Cypress of Kishmar, account of, in, v, 28
- Dád, Iránian warrior, vii, 86
- Dádáfríd, melody, viii, 398 and *note*
- Daévas. *See* Dív.
- Daghwi, desert in Turkistán, ii, 193; iv, 117
- Dahac *i.e.*, "foes" or "robbers," a name given by the Iránians to the nomad tribes dwelling east of the Caspian and north of the Atrak in the region now occupied by the Yamut Turkmans, i, 19; iii, 10
- Daháka (Azhi, Azi, Zahhák *q.v.*), evil spirit, i, 7, 142, 172
- Dahistán, stead or home of the Dahae *q.v.* and town between Harát and Marv, i, 280, 344 *seq.*, 349, 363, iv, 61, 72, 79, 148, 157; ix, 95
- Naudar beleaguered in, by Afrásiyáb, i, 353

- Dai, genius, i, 88, 89; iii, 287, 328
 month or day, i, 88, 89; v, 43; vi, 306; viii, 173, 421; ix, 17
 pa Mihr, day, i, 88; v, 16
- Dái Marj, place where Bahrám Gúr is said to have been drowned, vii, 6
- Dáitya, river, v, 13
- Daizan (Táír *q.v.*), vi, 322
 legend of, vi, 322
 daughter of, legend of, vi, 323
- Dakhma, "Tower of Silence," i, 81 and *note*
- Dakíkí, Persian poet, 139, 154, 155, ii, 3 *note*, 8; v, 10, 13; vi, 196; viii, 190
 account of, i, 28, 67, 69, 109; v, 20
 Firdausí and, v, 21 *seq.*, 30, 87, 88
 work of, compared with the Yátkári-i-Zarífrán, v, 24 *seq.*
- Dámaghán, city on the road from Tíhrán to Nishápúr and the capital of the province of Kúmis, ii, 15; iv, 255; viii, 109, 189
- Dáman-i-Kuh, the northern "mountain-skirt" of modern Persia, iii, 15
- Damascus, chief city in Syria, vi, 195
 Nicolaus of, Greek historian, *temp.* Augustus, vi, 195
- Damáwand, volcano nearly 20,000 feet high and the culminating peak of the mountain-range south of the Caspian, i, 143, 144, 148; vi, 202; viii, 391
 Zahhák fettered on, i, 169, 173
 Arish's arrow-shot from, v, 12
- Dambar, city in Kábulistán (?) which was regarded as Indian, i, 252, 256; iv, 278, 283, 284; vii, 396, 399, 421
- Dámdád, Nask, i, 70 *note*
- Damúr, Túránian hero, ii, 296, 319; iv, 156
 overthrown by Siyáwush, ii, 295
 advocates execution of Siyáwush, ii, 317
- Danbar. *See* Dambar.
- Dandamis. *See* Mandanes.
- Dáng, coin, ix, 94 and *note*
- Dánishwar, the díhkán, supposed compiler of the Bástán-náma, *temp.* Yazdagird III, i, 67, 68
- Danube, river, v, 11
 Darius' expedition to, v, 11.
- Dárá, son of Dáráb, Sháh (Darius Codomanus *q.v.*) 158, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; v, 281; vi, 83 *seq.*, 112, 113, 123, 124, 132, 137, 170, 172, 188, 325, 353; viii, 220, 242, 387
 first historic Sháh in the Sháhnáma, i, 49
 origin of name, v, 297 *note*
 legendary son of Dáráb, vi, 17, 27
 appointed by Dáráb to succeed him, vi, 27
 Reign of, 158, vi, 29 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 29 *seq.*
 historical account of, vi, 29 movements of, after his final defeat by Alexander (Sikandar), vi, 31
 Sikandar's correspondence with the wife and daughter of, vi, 33
 accession of, vi, 34
 letter of, to the kings, vi, 34
 pays his troops, vi, 35
 ambassadors come to, vi, 35
 demands tribute from Sikandar, vi, 36

- Dárá, marches against Sikandar, vi, 37
 Sikandar's visit to the camp of, vi, 38
 invites Sikandar to a banquet, vi, 40
 ambassador of, recognises Sikandar, vi, 40
 sends horsemen in pursuit of Sikandar vi, 41
 defeated by Sikandar, vi, 43
 collects another army, vi, 43
 defeat of vi, 44
 goes to Chahram vi, 44
 Istakhr vi, 44
 takes counsel with his chiefs vi, 45
 collects a new host vi, 46
 marches from Istakhr, vi, 46
 defeat of, vi, 46
 withdraws to Kirmán, vi, 46
 bewails himself, vi, 47
 letter of, to Sikandar, vi, 49
 Fúr, vi, 50
 marches against Sikandar, vi, 51
 abandoned by his troops and flees, vi, 51
 murdered by his ministers, vi, 52
 murderers of, arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53
 dying interview of, with Sikandar, vi, 53
 vengeance promised to, by Sikandar, vi, 53
 tells his last wishes to Sikandar, vi, 54
 bestows Rúshanak upon Sikandar, vi, 55, 86
 dies, vi, 55
 burial of, vi, 56
 Sásán, son of, vi, 211
 kindred of, support Ardshír Pápákán, vi, 223
 Dárá (Darás), city, viii, 41, 194
 taken by Núshírwán, viii, 41
 ceded by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 188
- Dárá Panáh, viii, 189, 284
 goes disguised to Khusrau Parwíz' camp, viii, 286
 betrays Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 286
 returns to Bahrám Chúbína, with forged letter, viii, 287
- Dáráb, Sháh, son of Bahman and Humái, 158, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; v, 281, 292, 297 seq.; vi, 11, 34 and note, 49, 83, 84, 86, 132, 137, 172, 188; vii, 215; viii, 191
 foundling legend of, ii, 11; v, 293 seq.
 Tabari's version of, v, 297 note
 birth of, v, 294
 referred to, v, 294 seq.
 exposed on the Farát, v, 295
 found and adopted by a launderer, v, 296 seq.
 royal birth of, asserts itself, v, 298
 youthful escapades of, v, 298
 brought up as a cavalier, v, 299
 feels lack of natural affection for the launderer, v, 300
 hears of his case from the launderer's wife, v, 300
 enlists, v, 301
 seen by Humái, v, 302
 and the adventure of the ruined vault, v, 303
 receives gifts from Rashnawád, v, 304
 questioned by Rashnawád, v, 304
 prowess of, against the Rúmans, v, 305, 306
 praised and rewarded by Rashnawád, v, 305, 306
 captures the Cross, v, 306 and note
 takes of the spoil one spear, v, 307
 returns to Irán, v, 307

GENERAL INDEX

- Dáráb, Rashnawád hears from the launderer and his wife of the case of, v, 308
 Rashnawád writes to Humái about, v, 308
 recognised by Humái as being her son, v, 308
 appears with Rashnawád before Humái, v, 309 *seq.*
 crowned by Humái and accepts her excuses, v, 310
 Humái proclaims the accession of, v, 311
 visited by, and rewards, the launderer and his wife, v, 311, 312
 Reign of, 158, vi, 11 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 11 *seq.*
 father of Sikandar in Persian legend, vi, 16
 legendary iather of Dárá, vi, 17
 harangues the chiefs, vi, 20
 ambassadors come to, vi, 21
 employs Rúman artificers, vi, 21
 wars with the Arabs, vi, 21
 defeats and demands tribute from Arabs, vi, 22
 wars with Rúm, vi, 22
 defeats Failakús, vi, 23
 grants terms of peace to Failakús, vi, 24
 marries the daughter of Failakús, vi, 25
 returns to Párs, vi, 25
 becomes disaffected towards his wife (Náhíd), vi, 25
 marries again, vi, 27
 Dárá is born to him, vi, 27
 fails in health, vi, 27
 appoints Dárá to succeed him, vi, 27
 dies, vi, 28
 Dáráb, Dárágírd, city in Párs, 158, vi, 17, 198, 199; viii, 313
 Darband, town and pass between the Caucasus *q.v.*, and the Caspian, ii, 336; viii, 369 *note*
- Darband, Pass of, described, i, 16
 fortification of, i, 16, 17
 and *note*, vii, 213, 239
 Mas'údi's accounts of, vii, 215
 Darí, vii, 430 and *note*
 Dariel, Pass of, in the Caucasus, vi, 79
 Darius, Hystaspis, Sháh, i, 9, 65; v, 10; viii, 187
 trilingual inscription of, at Bihistún, i, 6
 Zoroastrian calendar adopted by, i, 59
 reign of, and Gushtásp's compared, v, 11
 conversion of, v, 11
 Darius, Codomanus (Dárá *q.v.*)
 Sháh, i, 49; vi, 16, 17, 29
 defeated at Issus, vi, 30
 Alexander escapes from the banquet of, vi, 30
 defeated at Gaugamela, vi, 31
 asks that his family may be restored to him, vi, 31
 writes to Porus, *vi, 31
 historical account of the death of, vi, 31
 daughter of, marries Alexander, vi, 33
 corpse of, sent to Párs, vi, 33
 assassins of, punished, vi, 33
 Dareja, river in Ázrbáiján, v, 14
 Darkness, Land of. *See* Gloom.
 House of, ix, 7;
 Dármán, viii, 202
 Darmesteter, Professor, on Firðausí's geography, ii, 79, 80
 on Afrásiyáb's capture by Húm, iv, 136
 Story of the Worm, vi, 203
 Haftwád, vi, 206
 Darán, Zoroastrian religious rite, v, 19
 Daryai Rúd, river in Ázrbáiján, vi, 14

- Dastagird, city, viii, 193, 196; ix, 7
taken by Heraclius, viii, 194
- Dashma, Iráman hero, iv, 148
- Dástán (Zál *q.v.*), i, 84, 248, 264
- Dástán-i-Sám (Zál *q.v.*), i, 84
- Dástán-i-Zand (Zál *q.v.*), i, 245
and *note*, 248
- Date-palm, i, 4
taxes on, vii, 215, 225
- Daughter of Kaid. *See* Kaid,
Four Wonders of.
- Daulat Sháh, author of "Lives
of the Poets," i, 24
- Death, early, Firdausí's justifi-
cation of, ii, 119
- Dead Sea, viii, 192
- Deinon. *See* Dinon.
- Deipnosophistæ*, of Athenæus, ii,
10
quoted, iv, 314
- Derketo, goddess, v, 292
legend of, v, 292
- Destiny, Muhammadan and Zor-
oastrian conceptions of, i,
52
- Déwasárín, king of Hind, vii, 381
sends the game of chess to
Núshírwán, vii, 380
- Dharma, Indian god of righteou-
ness, iv, 138
follows in the form of a dog
the Pándavas in their pil-
grimage, iv, 139
- Dhoulkarnain. *See* Zu'l-kar-
nain.
- Dhú Kár, battle of, viii, 188, ix,
4, 5, 66
historical account of, viii,
190
date of, viii, 191
- Diagram to illustrate reign of
Cushtásp, v, 27
Persian Romance of Alex-
ander the Great, vi, 84
- Díba-i-Khusraú, treasure, viii,
406 and *note*
- Dice, vii, 381
used in the game of nard,
vii, 381, 389
symbolism of, vii, 381, 382
- Dihkán, Persian generic title, i,
56, 81
Faith of, vi, 95
- Dijla (Arwand, Tigris *q.v.*), river,
i, 160
Farídún's crossing of, i, 160
- Diláfrúz, Iránian hero, iv, 147
- Dilátrúz, a bramble-grubber,
Bahrám Gúr and, vii, 70
seq.
- Diláfrúz-i-Farrukhái, Iránian
slave-girl, 162, vi, 3
slave to Cæsar's wife, vi,
338
pities Shápúr, vi, 339
discovers who Shápúr is, vi,
339
frees Shápúr from the ass's
skin, vi, 340
escapes with Shápúr from
Rúm, vi, 340 *seq.*
entertained by a gardener,
vi, 342
praised by Shápúr, vi, 346
named and honoured by
Shápúr, vi, 356
meaning of, vi, 356 *note*
- Dílam, Dílamán, district on the
Caspian now represented
by Talish and part of
Gilán, vi, 202, 227; vii,
243, 244, 362
- Dílamids (Buyids), dynasty rul-
ing in south-western Irán
in the 10th century A.D.,
i, 14, 21, 45
- Dílamite, 'Alí the, friend and
helper of Firdausí, i, 35;
ix, 121
- Dilánjám, Cæsar's (*temp.* Luh-
rásp) second daughter, iv,
333
asked in marriage by Mírín,
iv, 333
married to Mírín, iv, 341
- Dilárái, wife to Dárá and mother
of Rúshanak, 158, 159, vi,
87 *seq.*
visited by Náhid, vi, 89
- Dimna, Kalfia and, 169. *See*
Fables of Bídpai.

- Dína-i Maínog-i Khirad, Pahlaví text, ii, 189
quoted, vii, 279
- Dínár, gold coin, i, 81, 231, 303 and *passim*
- Dínawári, Arabic historian (ninth century), vi, 16, 64, 80, 81, 256, 323; vii, 6, 156, 186, 214
- Dínkard, Pahlaví text, i, 70 *note*, 373; ii, 26, 81; vi, 252
- Diodorus, Greek historian, *temp.* Julius Cæsar and Augustus, v, 293
Bibliotheca of, v, 293
- Diogenetus, Greek writer, *temp.* Alexander the Great, vi, 12
- Dionysus, Greek god, vi, 71 temple of, visited by Sí-kandar, vi, 71
- Diram. *See* Drachm.
- Dirázdast (Longimanus), title, v, 281; vi, 324 and *note*
- Dív, dívs (Daévas), demons or "foreign devils," 140, 143, 150, i, 42, 82, 130, 131, 134, 148, 227, 290; ii, 27, 33, 34, 38, 41 *seq.*, 57 *seq.*, 68, 73, 101, 102, 144; iii, 70, 74, 200, 232, 244, 255, 257 *seq.*, 261, 268, 273 *seq.*, 320, 330, iv, 86, 87, 177, 288, 296, v, 32, 58, 66, 71, 108, 174; 201, 202, 213, 220, 230; 245; vi, 135, 146, 150, 241; vii, 115, 154, 174, 368 *seq.*; viii, 159, 161, 206, 209, 211, 217, 218, 290, 341, 342, 399 and *note*, 418; ix, 18, 25 rebel against Tahmúras, i, 127 overthrown by Tahmúras, i, 127 teach Tahmúras the art of writing, i, 127 build edifices for Jamshid, i, 133
- Dív, dívs, carry Jamshíd on his throne up to the sky, i, 133 title of honour, ii, 29 song of a, ii, 31 Arjásپ informed by a, of Gushtásp's resolve not to pay tribute, v, 36
- Mazdak's five, vii, 205 Búzurjmíhr's ten, vii, 368 Akwán. *See* Akwán.
- =Áhriaman, 139, i, 82, 126, 156, 195, 260; ii, 46, 324, 342, 370, 386, 400; iii, 189, 293, 333; iv, 63, 84, 201, 206, 278, 282, 286, 289 *seq.*, 301, 322, 341; v, 35, 81, 180, 188, 189, 194 *seq.*, 218, 228, 242; vi, 349; vii, 93, 107, 109, 117, 143, 154, 206, 227, 268, 289, 303, 304, 323, 332, 368 *seq.*, 376, 390; viii, 27, 50, 87, 123, 215, 222, 304, 341, 346, 411, ix, 47, 102, 104
- =Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 153, 219, 293, 298
- =witch, viii, 161
- =Zahhák, viii, 242
- =Kulún, viii, 342
- Binder of the =Tahmúras, i, 42, 125, 126, 214
=Gúdarz, iv, 35
=Rustum, iii, 253, 262
- Black, son of Áhriaman, 139, i, 82, 117; ii, 53; v, 199; viii, 171
- White, 143, i, 82; ii, 27, 39 *seq.*, 43, 44, 54, 55, 58 *seq.*, 66, 93, 163, 373; iii, 143, 256, 314; iv, 136, 296; v, 117, 176, 203, 207, 234 defeats Káús, ii, 40 blood of, cures blindness, ii, 58, 62 slain by Rustam, ii, 60
- Divining-cup. *See* Cup.
- Dneiper (Borysthenes), river in southern European Russia, flowing into the Black Sea, iii, 191

- Don (Tanais), river in southern European Russia, flowing into the Sea of Azov, iv, 315 *note*, 316
- Doni, The Morall Philosophie of*, vii, 383
- Drachm (diram), silver coin, i, 81
- Dragon, 143, 154, 156, 160, 164, 165, i, 42, 123; vi, 132, 146
Farídún takes the form of, i, 186
of the Kashaf, i, 235
Sám and the, i, 296 *seq.*, v, 202
slain by Rustam and Rakhsh, ii, 48 *seq.*
- of Mount Sakíla, iv, 342 *seq.*
Gushtásp and, iv, 343 *seq.*
teeth of, produced by Híshwí to Cæsar, iv, 351
referred to, iv, 358
- Sikandar's adventure with, vi, 71, 151
slain by Bahram Gúr, vii, 42, 123 *seq.*
described, i, 123, 296; iv, 345; v, 202. vi, 151; vii, 43, 123
- Dragon == Afrásiyáb, iii, 22, 46, 211, 219, 222, 248, 319, 343; iv, 270
== Áhriman, i, 195; iii, 330
== Ardalawán, vi, 222
== Fúr, vi, 113
== Gív, iii, 58
== Híumán, iv, 43, 52
== Paláshán, iii, 26
== Púlädwand, iii, 264
== Rakhsh's dam, i, 379
== Rakhsh, i, 380
== Rustam, iii, 222
== Záhhák, i, 155, 158, 161, 163, 168, 169, 275, 288, 292
- Dragon's child == Rúdába, i, 304
- Drangiána (Sistán), province in eastern Irán, i, 4; vi, 32
- Dream, dreams, veridical, i, 51
- Firdausí on, vii, 281
- Dream, Abúl Kásim of Gurgán's, iii, 190
Afrásiyáb's, ii, 232 *seq.*
referred to, ii, 243, 297, iv, 170, 267
- Firdausí's, of Mahmúd, i, 112
Dakíkí, v, 23, 30
- Gúdarz's, ii, 363, 404
- Gushtásp's, v, 19
- Kaid's, v, 62, 91
- Katáyún's, iv, 316, 329, 330
- Núshírwán's, vii, 282 *seq.*; ix, 92
- Odatis', iv, 315
- Pápak's, vi, 200, 212
- Píráن's, ii, 325
- Sám's, i, 243, 244
- Siyáwush's, ii, 309
- Tús', iii, 149
- Zariadres', iv, 315
- Draupadi, joint wife of the five Pándavas, iv, 138 and *note*, 139
- Drought and famine in Irán, i, 3, 5, 370, 371; ii, 363; vii, 159, 162
- Píráz's measures to alleviate, vii, 159, 162
breaking up of, described, vii, 163
- Mazdak's parable concerning, vii, 201
- Drváspa, genius of cattle, iv, 137
- Dualism, i, 5, 49, 50, 52, 56, 58
taught by Urmuzd to Zar-duhsh, v, 16
- Dughdhová, v, 14, 15
account of, v, 14
- Dúk, plain, viii, 282, 284
mountain, viii, 289
- Dukhtnúsh. *See* Núsha.
- Dunbar. *See* Dambar.
- Duncker, Professor, ii, 9
on date of Zandavasta, ii, 9
- Dúrásróbó, a Karap *q.v.*, v, 15
- Dust, prevalence of, in Irán, i, 3 as a metaphor, i, 73 and *passim*
- Dynasty, dynasties, Iránian, i, 49
Pishdádian *q.v.*
- Kaiánian *q.v.*

Dynasty, Ashkánian *q.v.*
Sásánian *q.v.*

E

ECLIPSE of sun, total, *temp.*
Pírúz, vii, 159
Edessa, S. James of, i, 374
Eggs, golden, as tribute, vi, 24,
36, 160, 169
Egypt (Misr, *q.v.*), ii, 80; vi, 12,
16, 17, 72, 81, 82; viii,
187, 193
Pseudo-Callisthenes written
in, vi, 13
invaded by Alexander the
Great, vi, 30
Egyptian Egyptians, vi, 16;
viii, 193; ix, 110
falsification of history by,
vi, 16
thorn, viii, 210
linen, ix, 110
Ekbatana (Hamadán), the capi-
tal of Media, i, 17; ii,
191; vi, 31, 32
capital of the Manda, *q.v.*,
i, 17
Elam (Susiana, Khúzistán),
ancient kingdom and Per-
sian province at the head
of the Persian Gulf, i, 9;
vi, 194, 198
Elburz. *See* Alburz.
Elements, the four, i, 102, 286
Elephant, elephants, i, 112 and
passim
towers on, iv, 179
Fúr's, vi, 115, 116
Sikandar's device to over-
come, vi, 115, 116
=Rustum, iii, 221, 253
=Rakhsh, iii, 257
=Fúr, vi, 117
piece in chess, vii, 285,
423
position of, vii, 388, 422
move of, vii, 422
White, Zál's, 141, i, 328
referred to, i, 377

Elephantine, the =Rustum, ii,
65, 67
Eleven Rukhs, Battle of the, iv,
88
arranged by Gúdaiz and
Píráñ, iv, 95 *seq.*
Firdausí's reflections on, iv,
7, 98, 106
Ellipi, kingdom of, i, 9, 17
Elixir, 144, ii, 177, 178
Elymais (Elam, *q.v.*), kingdom,
vi, 198
Endless peace, the, vii, 217
Enótokoitai, the, vi, 80
Epirus, ancient kingdom in
northern Greece, vi, 12
Alexander I of, vi, 12
his expedition to Italy,
vi, 12
Equinox, autumnal, iv, 313
Erinde, river, iii, 10 and *note*, 11
Esdras (Ezra), Jewish priest and
scribe, supposed by the
Muhammadans to have
restored from memory the
law lost during the cap-
tivity, vii, 207, 264
Ether, viii, 275
Ethics, Muhammadan, respected,
viii, 74
Ethiop, Ethiopian, Ethiopic, i,
44; iii, 226; vi, 43, 71,
80
=Indian, vi, 13, 68
western and eastern, vi, 13,
68, 71
version of the Pseudo-Callis-
thenes, *q.v.*, vi, 17 and
note, 18, 30, 33, 66, 67,
71, 74, 82, 83
Ethiopia, vi, 72
flight of Nectanebus to, vi,
18 *note*
western and eastern, vi, 68
=India, vi, 68
Eumenes, Greek ephemerist,
temp. Alexander the
Great, vi, 12
Euphrates (Farát, *q.v.*), river, ii,
80; v, 292; vi, 31, 327;
vii, 217; viii, 188, 190

Euxine, sea, i, 16; ii, 191, 336; vi, 72
 Eye, metaphor for child, i, 178, 180, 181, 185, 194; ii, 297, 328; v, 272; vii, 276, 356
 evil, ii, 204, 252; iii, 141, 157, 337; iv, 144, 282; v, 194, 245, 251, 290; vi, 266, 402; viii, 78, 81, 172; viii, 16, 417
 turns milk to bane, vii, 320 seq., 324, 325

F

FABLES OF BIDPAI (Book of Kalíla and Dimna), vii, 213, 427 seq.; viii, 202 note, 390
 introduction of, into Persia, vii, 213
 translation of, vii, 382, 383
 Fírdausí's account of, vii, 430
 vogue of, vii, 383
 origin of, vii, 383
 Núshírwán's acquisition of, vii, 423 seq.
 Faghánish, temp. Pírúz, king of the Haitálians, 168, vii, 157
 helps Pírúz for a consideration, vii, 157
 temp. Núshírwán, 168
 made king instead of Ghátkar, vii, 333
 Núshírwán takes counsel about, vii, 333
 descent of, from Bahrám Gúr, vii, 334
 Núshírwán writes to, vii, 337
 makes submission to Núshírwán, vii, 360
 Faghfúr, dynastic title of the rulers of Chín and Máchín, 152, 153, 160; i, 262; ii, 383; iv, 11, 135, 196, 238 seq.; v, 221; vi, 35,

Faghfúr—cont. 80, 113, 169 seq., 325; vii, 310, 343, 408; viii, 74; ix, 87, 97, 102
 temp. Kai Khusrau, helps Afrásiyáb, iv, 219
 Khán and, sue to Kai Khusrau for peace, iv, 229
 orders Afrásiyáb to quit Khutan and Chín, iv, 230
 grants facilities to Kai Khusrau for his march through Chín, iv, 239
 Khán of Chín and, welcome Kai Khusrau, iv, 240
 confirmed in the possession of Chín and Máchín, iv, 252
 temp. Sikandar, ambassadors from, come to Dárá, vi, 35
 Sikandar visits as his own ambassador, vi, 170
 gives audience to Sikandar, vi, 170
 entertains Sikandar, vi, 171
 answers Sikandar, vi, 172
 gifts of, to Sikandar, vi, 173
 sends envoy with Sikandar, vi, 173
 temp. Bahrám Gúr, 165
 daughter of, the wife of Shangul, vii, 115
 hears of Bahrám Gúr's exploits in Hind, vii, 129
 invites Bahrám Gúr to visit him, vii, 129
 Bahrám Gúr's reply to, vii, 130
 temp. Núshírwán, viii, 97
 Faghfúr, son of Sáwa, viii, 74, 75, 120
 confused with Faghfúr of Chín, viii, 74
 parley of, with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 112
 head of, on spear, viii, 132

Failakús (Philip II of Macedon), grandfather in Iránian legend of Sikandar (Alexander the Great), 158, vi, 57, 102, 112, 125, 130, 131, 151, 182; vii, 215; viii, 387
 wars with Dáráb, vi, 22
 allied with the king of Rús, vi, 22
 marches from 'Ammúriya to encounter Dáráb, vi, 23
 defeated and returns to 'Ammúriya, vi, 23
 sues for peace, vi, 23
 agrees to send tribute, and give his daughter in marriage, to Dáráb, 158, vi, 24, 25
 adopts Sikandar as his heir, vi, 27
Faith, Faiths, the four, vi, 92, 95
 of Christ, Christian, vi, 133, 352, 356
 of Áhraman, ii, 358; vi, 281, 290
Faithful, Commander of the, ix, 72
 'Umar, the first, ix, 72 and *note*
Fakírs, the, vi, 61
 Alexander the Great and, vi, 61
 Onesicritus and, vi, 61
Fakká', a kind of drink, i, 43 *note*
Falátún (Plato), vii, 100; viii, 264
Falconry, ii, 108, 196; vi, 176; vii, 42, 48 *seq.*, 54, 55, 76 and *note*
 origin of, i, 126
Famine, *See Drought*.
Farab (Fáriyáb? *q.v.*), iv, 185
Farab (Firabr), desert and town on the right bank of the Oxus opposite to Ámwi, *q.v.*, vii, 91, 92
 desert of, ix, 115, 118
Fará'in, Iránian chief, vii, 207

Farámarz, son of Rustam, 146, 157, ii, 4, 310, 341 *seq.*, 349, 351, 351; iii, 18, 30^o, 35, 36, 202, 323, 335, 320^o, 328; iv, 14, v, 173, 174, 182, 183, 198, 231, 260, 261, 272, 274, 281, 283, 284
 parentage of, iii, 323
 appointed to expel the Turkmans from Zábulistán, iii, 31
 referred to, v, 184
Zawára and, sent by Rustam to bid Zál and Rúdába prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190
 slays Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 227
 goes to Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 247
 marches against Kábul, v, 274, 276
 takes the corpses of Rustam, Zawára, and Rakhsá from the pits, and conveys them to Zábul for burial, v, 274 *seq.*
 fights with the king of Kábul and puts him and his kin to death, v, 276, 277
 makes a Zábulí king of Kábul, v, 277
 returns to Zábul, v, 277
 hears of Bahman's invasion and marches against him, v, 287
 defeated and put to death, v, 288
Farának, wife of Abtí and mother of Farídún, i, 90, 145, 157
Farídún brought up by, on Birmaya's milk, i, 151 taken by, to Mount Alburz, i, 152
 told by, about his origin, i, 153
 prays for Farídún's safety, i, 158

- Farának, rejoices over Farídún's success, i, 175
gifts of, to Farílún, i, 176
- Farának, daughter of Bartzín, vii, 53
married to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 53
- Farangís, daughter of Afrásiyáb, wife of Siyáwush, and mother of Kai Khusrau, 145, 146, 148, ii, 270 *seq.*, 288 *seq.*, 299, 306, 373, 381, 386 *seq.*; iii, 96, 117, 203, 211
- Mandane and, identical in legend, ii, 191
- Siyáwush marries, ii, 270
- Afrásiyáb summons, to court, ii, 300 *seq.*
- Siyáwush confides in, ii, 307 *seq.*
- Afrásiyáb appealed to by, ii, 317 *seq.*
- imprisoned, ii, 320
- sentenced, ii, 322
- Píráن saves and takes charge of, ii, 324 *seq.*
- Kai Khusrau born of, ii, 326
- dwells at Siyáwushgírd, ii, 333
- instructs Kai Khusrau how to find Bihzál, ii, 374
- gives Gív the mail of Siyáwush, ii, 376
- crosses the Jíhún, ii, 392
- provided for by Kai Káús, ii, 399
- Faríburz marries, iii, 148
- referred to, iii, 146 *seq.*, 202; iv, 205, 213, 216
- death of referred to, iv, 304
- Farát (Euphrates), river, 158, v, 294, 309; vi, 37, 42, 43, 290; viii, 93, 250
- Dáráb cast away upon, v, 295
- Farayín (Guráz, Shahrbaráz *q.v.*), Sháh, 175, ix, 50, 53, 105
- accession-speech of, ix, 52
- counselled by his eldest son, ix, 52
- Farayín, counselled by his youngest son, ix, 53
- misrule of, ix, 53
- plot against, ix, 54
- Fatíriyús (Porphyrogenitus?), Rúman general, 167, vii, 218
- defeated by Núshírwán, vii, 256
- makes report to Cæsar, vii, 260
- Farghán, Rúman architect, and Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 401 *seq.*
- Farghlána, region south of the Jaxartes, east of Sughd, iii, 109
- Farghár, Tíráanian hero, iii, 250
- goes to spy on Rustam, iii, 250
- reports to Afrásiyáb, iii, 253
- Farhád, Íráanian hero, ii, 73, 85, 138, 316, 338, 340; iii, 11, 20, 25, 34, 45, 48, 127, 268, 289, 313, 327, 331, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 25, 42, 147, 292
- Parthian origin of, iii, 11
- goes as envoy to the king of Mázandarán, ii, 63
- takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 111
- steed of, iii, 313
- goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
- left in command by Gív, iv, 83
- put in command of the left wing, iv, 92
- left at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219
- Farhád, Íráanian general, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 251
- commands left wing, vii, 251
- Farhád, lover of Shírfín, viii, 192
- Faríburz, son of Kai Káús, 148, 151, ii, 3, 62, 199, 316, 335, 336, 340, 358, 405 *seq.*, 409; iv, 14, 24, 32, 45, 50, 145 *seq.*, 164, 166, 167, 174, 177, 182, 187,

Fariburz—*cont.*

211, 213, 215, 238, 239,
253, 258, 268, 289, 331;
iv, 13, 34, 37, 91
encampment of, described,
ii, 155
claims of, to the throne sup-
ported by Tús, ii, 401,
iii, 13
recognises Kai Khusrau as
Sháh, ii, 410
Kai Khusrau's letter to,
iii, 84
reads to the chiefs Kai
Khusrau's letter, and
supersedes Tús, iii, 86
sends Ruhhám to Píráñ, iii,
87
obtains an armistice and
prepares to renew the
campaign, iii, 89
fights and is defeated, iii, 90
returns to Íráñ, iii, 111
asks Rustam to support his
suit to Farangís, iii, 146
marries Farangís, iii, 148
leads the van of Rustam's
expedition to succour Tús,
iii, 148
meets Gúdarz, iii, 163
joins forces with Tús, iii,
169
goes to Kai Khusrau with
tidings of victory, iii, 236
seq.
returns to the host, iii, 241,
243
commands the right wing,
iv, 24
superseded *pro tem.* by
Katmára, iv, 92
chosen to fight with Kulbád,
iv, 97
slays Kulbád, iv, 99
commands with Tukhár the
troops from Kháwar, iv,
148
slays Fartús, iv, 181
commands the right, iv, 191
takes part in the siege of
Gang-bihisht, iv, 199

Fariburz, Kai Khusrau remon-
strated with by, and
other nobles for refusing
audience, iv, 275
Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv,
295
sets out with Kai Khusrau
on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
refuses to turn back when
bidden by Kai Khusrau,
iv, 307
Kai Khusrau farewells and
warns, and his comrades,
iv, 308
disappears and is sought
in vain by, and his com-
rades, iv, 308
vainly reminds his com-
rades of Kai Khusrau's
warning, iv, 309
end of, iv, 309
Farídún (Thráétaona), Sháh, son
of Abtí and Farának, 140,
141, 153, i, 30, 42, 54, 55,
90 *seq.*, 142, 286, 336, 341,
349, 351, 364, 370, 382,
384, 385; ii, 11, 17, 19,
21, 29, 33, 36, 37, 99, 193,
195, 204, 237, 274, 318,
327, 392, 400, 404; iii,
21, 37, 245, 257; iv, 17,
66, 69, 89, 91, 142, 149,
151, 153, 168, 174, 203,
204, 221, 222, 255, 259,
260, 262, 266, 269, 286,
289, 299, 313, 328; v, 32,
34, 160, 180, 196, 204
seq., 245, 260, 261, 271,
283; vi, 73, 172, 209,
406; vii, 37, 38, 60, 62,
73, 79, 101, 120, 199, 207;
viii, 129, 205, 218, 231,
242, 260, 300, 376 *seq.*,
391, 392; ix, 25, 39, 53,
71, 86, 103
mythological origin of, i, 171
seq.
Zahhák's dream of, i, 147
seq.
advent of, prophesied, i,
149

Farídún, birth of, i, 150
 father of, slain by Zahhák, i, 151
 brought up on the milk of the cow Birmáya, i, 151
 taken by his mother to Mount Alburz, i, 152
 palace of, burned by Zahhák, i, 152, 153
 questions his mother about his origin, i, 152
 contemplates revenge on Zahhák, i, 154
 dissuaded by his mother, i, 154
 Káwa revolts to, i, 157
 resolves to war with Zahhák, i, 157
 brothers of, i, 158
 ox-head mace invented by, i, 158
 rewards the smiths, i, 158
 goes to fight Zahhák, i, 159
 seq.
 visited and instructed by Surúsh, i, 159
 life of, attempted by his brothers, i, 160
 saves himself by his magic power, i, 160
 van of, led by Káwa, i, 160
 crosses the Arwand (Dijla, Tigris), i, 160
 enters Zahhák's capital, i, 161
 overthrows Zahhák's talisman, i, 161
 seeks in vain for Zahhák, i, 162
 finds the sisters of Jamshíd, i, 162
 hears where Zahhák is, i, 163
 Story of, and Zahhák's minister (Kundráv), i, 164
 doings of, reported to Zahhák by Kundráv, i, 165
 attacked by, and overthrows, Zahhák, i, 168, 288
 counselled by Surúsh about Zahhák, i, 168, 169

Farídún, becomes Sháh, i, 168
 fetters Zahhák upon Mount Damáwand, i, 169
 Reign of, i, 170, i, 171 seq.
 Note on, i, 171 seq.
 three sons of, i, 174, 177
 ethnical significance of, i, 54
 accession of, i, 174
 holds a feast, i, 175
 makes a progress through the world, i, 176
 builds himself a seat, i, 177
 sends Jandal on a mission, i, 177
 receives Jandal's report, i, 182
 instructs his sons how to deal with Sarv, i, 182
 sons of, outwit Sarv, i, 184
 receive Sarv's daughters in marriage, i, 185
 return home, i, 186
 proved by Farídún, i, 186
 named by Farídún, i, 187
 wives of, named by Farídún, i, 188
 horoscopes of, taken by Farídún, i, 188
 divides the world among his sons, i, 189
 grows old, i, 189
 Salm and Túr write to, to demand the abdication of Íraj, i, 191
 makes answer to his sons, i, 193
 holds converse with Íraj, i, 195
 writes to Salm and Túr, i, 197
 Íraj's head sent to, i, 202
 mourning of, for Íraj, i, 203
 seq.
 sight of, injured by mourning for Íraj, i, 204
 hopes for issue from Íraj, i, 205
 recovers his sight, i, 206
 gifts of, to Minúchihr, i, 207
 gives a feast to the nobles, i, 207

- Farídún, receives an embassage
from his sons, i, 209
makes answer to his sons,
i, 211
sends Minúchihr to fight
with Salm and Túr i, 215
hears of Minúchihr's vic-
tory, i, 222
Minúchihr sends the heads
of Salm and Túr to, i, 222,
229
welcomes Minúchihr on his
return in triumph, i, 230
confides Minúchihr to Salm,
i, 231
gives thanks to God and
prays for death, i, 232
distributes the spoil to the
troops, i, 232
enthrones Minúchihr, i, 232
passes his last days in
austerities, i, 232
dies, i, 232
burial of, i, 233
mourning for, i, 233, 237
Firdausí's reflections on, i,
170, 232
final warfare of Zahhák
with, i, 278, *cf.* 173
Mount Sipand besieged by
order of, i, 329
Grace of, i, 335
saying of, ii, 219 and *note*
flag of=flag of Káwa, vi, 59
capital of, vii, 215, 238
Fárikín (Maiyafárikín, Martyr-
opolis), city in Roman
Armenia, vii, 200
taken by Kubád, vii, 200
Fáriyáb, city half way between
the town of Marvrúd and
Balkh, iv, 65
Farr, i, 82. *See* Grace.
Farruhán (Farrukhán). *See*
Faráyín.
Farrukh, ruler of Nímráz, viii,
375
Farrukhán (Farruhán). *See*
Faráyín.
Farrukhánzád (Farrukhzád *q.v.*),
viii, 195
- Farrukh-Hurmuzd (Hurmuzd
q.v.), father of Rustam,
ix, 69
Farrukhzád (of glorious birth),
name assumed by Gush-
tásپ in Rúm, iv, 351 *seq.*,
357, 360
Farrukhzád, Sháh, 175, ix, 61
seq., 70
Siyah Chashm and, ix, 62
poisons, ix, 63
Farrukhzád (Farrukhánzád *q.v.*),
son of Hurmuzd, brother
of Rustam, and favourite
of Khusráu Parwíz, ix, 23,
87, 92, 95
conspires with Guráz, viii,
408, 412
goes to the host, viii, 412
rebels in favour of Shírwí,
viii, 413
brother of, viii, 413 and
note
conspires with Tukhár, viii,
414
proclaims Shírwí Sháh, viii,
416
hears where Khusráu Par-
wíz is hiding, viii, 419
holds talk with Khusráu
Parwíz, viii, 420
bribes Mihr Hurmuzd to
murder Khusráu Parwíz,
ix, 33
defeats the Arabs, ix, 85
counsels Yazdagird, ix, 86,
87
leads the host to Khurásán,
ix, 89
entrusts Yazdagird to
Máhwí, ix, 95
goes to Rai, ix, 96
Farrukhzád, Iránian warrior,
viii, 241, 296
speech of, viii, 240
Farsang (parasang), measure of
length, about 3.88 miles,
i, 82
Farshídward, son of Wísa and
brother of Píráن, Túrán-
ian hero, 152, i, 92; iii,

- Farshídward—*cont.*
- 90, 166, 198, 205, 252 ; iv, 7, 10, 119, 122, 125, 133, 153, 160, 162
 - summons Píráن to save Farangís, ii, 322
 - commands with Lahhák the right wing, iv, 26
 - attacks the Iránians in flank, iv, 82
 - opposed by Zanga, iv, 83
 - goes to help Píráن and attacks Gív, iv, 85
 - prowess of, iv, 86
 - fights with Guráza, iv, 87
 - Bízhan, iv, 87
 - Lahhák and, put in joint command, iv, 84
 - Pírán's instructions to, iv, 95
 - hear of the death of Pírán and the coming of Kai Khusrau, iv, 112
 - lament for Pírán, iv, 112
 - take counsel with the host, iv, 113
 - fight and escape Iránian outpost, iv, 116
 - referred to, iv, 118, 120, 126
 - repose themselves, iv, 121
 - corpses of, brought back by Bízhan, iv, 126, 132
 - deaths of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 152
- Farshídward, brother of Asfandiyár, 155, v, 20, 22, 110, 114, 141, 171
- governor of Khurásán, v, 77
 - stationed on the Iránian right, v, 94
 - mortally wounded by Kuhram, v, 95, 101, 104
 - Asfandiyár laments for, v, 101, 104
 - resolves to avenge, v, 104
 - dies, v, 104
 - shrouded by Asfandiyár, v, 105
- Farshídward, a miser, 164, vii, 67 *seq.*
- Farshídward, a miser, Bahrám Gúr visits, vii, 68 *seq.*
- pretended destitution of, vii, 68 *seq.*
 - wealth of, described, vii, 70, 72, 73
- Fartús, Túránian hero, iii, 182, 213, 231, 251
- comes to aid Pírán, iii, 152
 - hears of the coming of Rustam, iii, 175
 - slain by Fariburz, iv, 181
- Farúd, son of Siyáwush and Jaríra daughter of Pírán, and half brother of Kai Khusrau, 145, 147, i, 92, 370 ; ii, 3, 291 ; iii, 8, 14, 42 *seq.*, 72, 85, 87, 93, 107, 111 *seq.* ; iv, 42, 135 ; v, 30
- birth of, ii, 291
 - hostility of Tús to, iii, 13
 - Story of, 147, iii, 37 *seq.*
 - referred to, iii, 39
 - advised by Tukhár, iii, 47, 52 *seq.*
 - interview of, with Bahrám, iii, 47 *seq.*
 - birth-mark of, iii, 49
 - gives his mace to Bahrám, iii, 50
 - eighty slaves of, the, iii, 55
 - their mockery of Tús, iii, 56
 - their mockery of Gív, iii, 58
 - slays the steed of Tús, iii, 56
 - wounds the steed of Gív, iii, 58
 - slays the steed of Bízhan, iii, 61
 - worsted by Bízhan, iii, 62
 - attacks the Iránians, iii, 63
 - prowess of, iii, 64
 - mortally wounded, iii, 64
 - dies, iii, 65
 - mother and slaves of, destroy themselves, iii, 66
 - burial of, iii, 68
 - Kai Khusrau's grief for, iii, 84 *seq.*, 112

- Farúd, son of Shírín and Khusrau
 Parwíz, ix, 39
- Farukhzád. *See* Farrukhzád.
- Farwardín, genius, i, 88; iii, 287, 328
 name of month and day, i, 88, 133, 263; iii, 230, 286, 317, 323; vi, 375; vii, 363; viii, 367, 371
 origin of, iii, 286
- Faryán, king, father-in-law of
 Kaidrúsh, 159, vi, 66, 67, 124 *seq.*, 171, 172
 city of, taken by Sikandar, vi, 124
 slain, vi, 125
 daughter and son-in-law of, taken prisoners, vi, 125
 brought before Naítkún, vi, 126
 sentenced to death, vi, 126
 pardoned, vi, 126
- Fáskún, forest in Rúm, iv, 333, 335 *seq.*
- Wolf of, 154
 described, iv, 333, 336
 Mírín bidden by Cæsar to slay, iv, 333
 Gushtásp undertakes to slay, iv, 336
 keeps tusks of, iv, 338
 tusks of, produced before Cæsar by Híshwí, iv, 351
 referred to, iv, 359
- Fátima, daughter of Muhammad and wife of 'Alí, i, 12
- Fazl. *See* Abú'l 'Abbás Fazl.
- Feast. *See* Mihrgán, Naurúz, New Year's Day, Sada. Ferghána. *See* Farghána.
- Fight of the Seven Warriors, 143, ii, 82, 107 *seq.*
- Firdausí, Persian poet and author of the Sháhnáma, 146, 154, 155, 160, 173, i, 3, 22 *seq.*; ii, 9, 10, 82, 119; iii, 11, 108, 271, 272; iv, 136, 138, 314, 316; v, 10, 20 *seq.*, 29, 282; vi, 16, 17, 64 *seq.*, 72, 78, 80 *seq.*, 197, 198, 202, 250, 254, 294, 313, 315, 321 *seq.*, 326, 328, 368; vii 3, 4, 6, 153, 156, 159, 185, 186, 188, 213, 214, 217 *seq.*, 317; viii, 71, 73, 74, 187, 190, 192, 193, ix, 69
 materials for the life of, i, 23 *seq.*
 personal references of, in the Sháhnáma, i, 24 *seq.*
 conclusions from, i, 35
 date of birth of, i, 24
 Muhammadan of the Shí'ite sect, i, 24, 106, 107
 fond of wine, i, 25; iv, 313; v, 164, vi, 291, 306, 309, 314, 362, 369; vii, 277
 owned or occupied land, i, 25; vi, 411; ix 112
 escape of, from drowning, i, 26, 29
 son of, i, 26; viii, 190
 referred to (?), i, 27;
 vii, 277, 311
 death of, 173, i, 26; viii, 190
 complains of old age, 160,
 i, 26; ii, 336; iv, 141;
 v, 262; vii, 220
 patrons, friends and helpers of, i, 29 *seq.*, 35, 39, 110; ix, 121
 exempted from taxation, i, 35, 39; ix, 121
 Nizámí's account of, i, 38 *seq.*, 45
 later legends of, iii, 15, 109, 191; iv, 8
 Dakíkf. and. *See* Dakíkf.
 Mahmúd and, *See* Mahmúd.
 Satire of. *See* Mahmúd.
 Sháhnáma of. *See* Sháhnáma.
 Yúsuf and Zulíkhá of, i, 45
 admits Muhammadan traditions into Sháhnáma, viii, 42

- Firdausí, and rhyme-word, viii, 397, *note*
 account of Arab conquest by, supplemented, ix, 65
 Yazdagird's death, ix, 70, 107
 reflections on, ix, 108, 111
 on completion of Sháhnáma, ix, 121
 time spent on Sháhnáma, ix, 122
 praise of Sultán Mahmúd.
See Mahnúd
- Fire, ancient cult of the Aryans, i, 7, 49, 56
 priests of. *See* Magi.
 region of, ii, 56
 Húshang's discovery of, i, 123
 institution of the Cult of, i, 116, 123
 Feast of Sada, i, 124
 ordeal by, 144, ii, 218 *seq.*
 sacred, vi, 21, 201, 212
- Fire—fane or temple, 154. *See* Ázar Abádagán, Ázar-gashasp, Barzín.
 —worship, abolition of, prophesied, viii, 68
- Fírúz, Iránian king, iv, 149
- Fírúzábád. *See* Gúr.
- Firúzi Kuh, pass in the Alburz range, ii, 28
- Fish, mythological, i, 71, 72, 148, 252; ii, 15, 299; iv, 279; vii, 341 and *note*, 406; viii, 212 and *note*
 salt, the, legend of, vi, 76 *seq.*
 —eaters. *See* Ichthyo-phagi.
- Fleeces, Golden. *See* Golden.
- Flesh-meats, introduction of, attributed to Áhriman, i, 138
- Flight, of Muhammad, referred to, ix, 122
- Flying-machine, of Kai Káús, ii, 103
- Fo-lin, vi, 73 and *note*
- Footman (pawn), piece in chess, vii, 385
 position of, vii, 388
 move of, vii, 422
 promotion of, vii, 422
- Ford and toll-house of Zark, ix, 100 and *note*, 116
- Fort, hill, Malcolm's description of a, i, 236
- Fortifications vitrified vi, 79, 165
- Fount of Life, the, vi, 74 *seq.*, 158 *seq.*
- Sikandar's expedition to, vi, 158 *seq.*
 account of, in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 74 *seq.*
- Sikandar fails to find, vi, 160
- Founts, the Seven, viii, 392
- Four, Wonders of Kaid. *See* Kaid.
- Faiths, vi, 91, 95
- Frangrasyan (Afrásiyáb, *q.v.*), i, 338; ii, 81, 189; iv, 137, 138
- Frashókart, son of Gushtasp, v, 26
- Frásiyáv (Afrásiyáb, *q.v.*), i, 338; ii, 81
- Fravashí, i, 369; ii, 82; iii, 286
- Frazdánava, lake or river, v, 13
- Frúbá, sacred Fire, vi, 201, 255
- Funj, leader of Khán's host, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 330
- Fúr (Porus, *q.v.*), dynastic title and Indian king, *temp.*
- Sikandar, 159, vi, 31, 51, 62, 64, 110, *seq.* 123, 132, 135, 137, 170, 172, 175; vii, 395
- Dárá's letter to, vi, 50
- Sikandar's war with, vi, 67, 112 *seq.*
- routed by Sikandar's iron steeds, vi, 116
- single combat of, with Sikandar, vi, 117
- slain, vi, 117
- troops of, submit to Sikandar, vi, 118

Furúhil, Iránian hero, 151, iv, 24, 33
chosen to fight with Zangula, iv, 97
slays Zangula, iv, 101

G

GABRIEL, angel, i, 114; iv, 140; vi, 138 *note*
Gahán (Kahan, town above Juwayn on the Farah river which flows into the northern end of the Lake of Zirih in Sístán?) 149, iii, 152, 177, 224, 225
Gahár, Túrárian hero, 149, iii, 216, 224, 251
comes to aid Pírán, iii, 152
slain by Rustam, iii, 225
Gaiúmart, the first Sháh and culture-hero, and the first man in Zoroastrian tradition, 139, i, 90, 91, 116, 123; vi, 208; viii, 24, 55, 260, 269, 310, 376
Reign of, i, 117 *seq.*
Note on, i, 117
greatness of, i, 118
culture-hero, i, 118
son of, i, 119
slain by Black Dív, i, 120
envied by Áhriaman, i, 119
warned by Surúsh, i, 119
grief of, for the death of Siyámak, i, 120
bidden by Surúsh to avenge Siyámak, i, 120
goes with Húshang to fight Black Dív, i, 121
death of, i, 121
Firdausí's reflections on, i, 121
rites of, vii, 53
Faith of, vii, 273; vii, 277
Galbwí, Iránian chief, ix, 74
Galínúsh, put in charge of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 421; ix, 5, 11, 12
parley of, with Kharrád and Ashtád, ix, 12 *seq.*

Gandarep, monster, i, 143
slain by Keresáspa, i, 172, 173
Gang, mountain, iv, 162; v, 216
Gang, sea of, ii, 362
Gang, stronghold in Túrán and seat of Afrásiyáb, ii, 241, 261, 309, 344, 357, 369; iii, 236, 253; iv, 258
king of = Afrásiyáb, iv, 134
two places known as, iv, 136
= Gang-bihisht *q.v.*, iv, 190, 195, 197, 198, 202, 208, 218, 220, 221, 229, 232
= Gang-dizh *q.v.*, iv, 247
Gang-bihisht, north of the Jaxartes, stronghold and seat of Afrásiyáb, 152, iv, 135, 136, 207 *seq.*, 228
Afrásiyáb at, iv, 187
marches from, iv, 190
returns to, iv, 196
described, iv, 195
prepared for a siege by Afrásiyáb, iv, 197
besieged by Kai Khusrau, iv, 198, 208 *seq.*
taken by storm, iv, 209 *seq.*
occupied by Kai Khusrau for a while, iv, 218
Gúdarz left in command of, iv, 219
Gustaham, son of Naudar, left in command of, iv, 238,
Kai Khusrau dwells for a year in, iv, 254
Gang-dizh (Gang-i-Siyáwush), stronghold, 145, 153, iv, 135, 136, 186 *note*, 203, 257, 264; ix, 25
possible identification of, ii, 189
meaning of, ii, 19
building and description of, ii, 279 *seq.*
Afrásiyáb takes refuge at, iv, 230
Kai Khusrau resolves to pursue Afrásiyáb to, iv, 231
marches to, iv, 247

- Gangdizh, Kai Khusrau, forbids his troops to injure, iv, 247
 enters, iv, 248
 remains a year at, iv, 249
 advised by his paladins to leave, iv, 249
 appoints a governor for, iv, 249
 distributes treasure at, iv, 250
- Gang-i-Dizhukht (Baitu'l Mukaddas *q.v.*), i, 161, 226
- Gang-i-Siyáwush. *See* Gangdizh.
- Ganges, Indian river, vi, 64
- Garámík-kart. *See* Girámí.
- Garcha, Túráñian hero, iii, 152
 comes to aid Pífrán, iii, 152
- Garden of the Hesperides, vi, 74
- Indians, viii, 196
- Gardener, a, vi, 341
 entertains Shápúr son of Urmuzd, vi, 341 *seq.*
 sent by Shápúr to the high priest, vi, 344
 describes Shápúr, vi, 344
 rewarded by Shápúr, vi, 357
- Gargví, Íránian hero, v, 109
 commands the left, v, 109
- Garíb, surface-measure, vii, 215 and *note*
- Garshásp. *See* Keresáspa.
- Garshásp, son of Zav, Sháh, 142, i, 90, 91, 174; ii, 336
 Reign of, i, 373 *seq.*
 Note on, i, 373
 relation of, to Keresáspa, i, 174
 accession of, i, 374
 death of, i, 375
- Garshásp, Íránian hero, i, 42, 144, 207, 212, 214, 239, 345; ii, 4; iii, 260, 273; v, 202
 relation of, to Keresáspa, i, 174
- Garshásp, Íránian chief, *temp.* Shápúr son of Ardshír, vi, 297
 single combat of, with Bazánúsh, vi, 297
- Garshasp, Íránian noble, *temp.* Núshírwán, viii, 18
- Garsíwaz, brother of Afrásiyáb, i 45, 150, 153, i, 92, 342, 349; ii, 3, 188, 189, 193, 195, 228, 231 *seq.*, 249, 253, 264, 268, 269, 286, 289 *seq.*, 313 *seq.*; iii, 197, 208, 306, 310, 350, 352; iv, 10, 135 *seq.*, 209 *seq.*, 252, 268; vi, 325; ix, 103
 defeated by Siyáwush, ii, 229 *seq.*
 sues for peace to Siyáwush, ii, 237 *seq.*
 fails to string the bow of Siyáwush, ii, 266
 visits Siyáwush, ii, 289 *seq.*
 envies Siyáwush, ii, 292 *seq.*
 challenges Siyáwush, ii, 294
 slanders Siyáwush, ii, 296 *seq.*
 betrays Siyáwush, ii, 301 *seq.*
 compasses the death of Siyáwush, ii, 315 *seq.*
 charged with the execution of Farangís, ii, 322
 goes to Manízha's palace, iii, 301
 finds Bízhan, iii, 302
 takes Bízhan before Afrásiyáb, iii, 303
 ordered to execute Bízhan, iii, 304
 imprison Bízhan, iii, 309
 disgrace Manízha, iii, 309
 put in charge of the elephants, iv, 156
 reinforces Afrásiyáb, iv, 181
 Jahn and, compel Afrásiyáb to quit the field, iv, 182
 commands the rear, iv, 191
 taken prisoner by Rustam at the storming of Gangbihisht, iv, 210
 referred to, iv, 211
 sent to Kai Káús, iv, 233
 imprisoned, iv, 235

Garsíwáz, sent for by Kai Káús and Kai Khusrau, and put to the torture, iv, 265
 voice of, attracts Afrá-siyáb from lake, iv, 265
 holds converse with Afrá-siyáb, iv, 266
 slain by Kai Khusrau, iv, 269

Garsiyún, Iránian chief, ix, 115
 Gashan, as rhyme-word, viii, 397 *note*

Gashasp, Iránian chief, vi, 394
 addresses the nobles on the succession to the throne, vi, 394

Gashasp, Iránian general, *temp.* Núshírwán, vii, 251
 put in charge of baggage-train, vii, 251

Gashasp, Iránian noble, viii, 17, 18

Gashasp, father in Sháhnáma of Bahram Chúbína, viii, 76, 99, 162, 169, 304

Gashasp, father of Ashtád *q.v.*, ix, 11

Gáthas, ii, 8; v, 11, 12, 17

Gaugamela, village near Nineveh, vi, 31, 32 *note*
 battle of, vi, 31

Gaumata (the false Smerdis), Magus, vi, 207
 usurpation, and death of, i, 58
 overthrow of, celebrated at the Magophonia, i, 59

Gav, king of Hind, 169, vii, 395 *seq.*

mother of, vii, 395 *seq.*
 two marriages of, vii, 395, 396
 two sons of, vii, 395, 396
 becomes queen, vii, 397
 tries to keep peace between her sons, vii, 397 *seq.*
 hears of the death of Talhand, vii, 419
 reproaches Gav, vii, 420

Gav, mother of, chess invented to appease, vii, 421
 death of, vii, 423
 birth of, vii, 395
 tutor of, vii, 397, 398, 401, 402, 407, 408, 410, 413, 417, 421
 rivalry between Talhand and, vii, 397 *seq.*
 war between Talhand and, vii, 404 *seq.*
 attempts of, at accommodation with Talhand, vii, 405, 408, 413
 defeats Talhand, vii, 412
 proposes a decisive battle to Talhand, vii, 414
 victory of, vii, 416
 invents chess to console his mother for the death of Talhand, vii, 421

Gaza, city in south-western Palestine, vi, 30
 siege of, by Alexander the Great, vi, 30

Gazhdaham, Iránian hero and castellan of White Castle, 144, i, 369; ii, 131, 132, 134, 138, 139, 145, 146; iii, 15, 25, 33, 40, 45, 294; iv, 13, 24, 149
 besieged by Bármán, i, 354
 relieved by Káran, i, 354
 Suhráb described by, ii, 136
 evacuates White Castle, ii, 137

Gedrosia (Makrán, Balúchistán), vi, 69

Gelani. *See* Gílán.

Gemini, constellation, vi, 155; viii, 86, 203; ix, 73

Genealogical tables

Pishdádian dynasty, i, 90, 91

Kaiánian dynasty, ii, 3

Sásánian dynasty, vi, 3

Kings and heroes of Túrán, i, 92

Iránian heroes, ii, 4

Genealogies, fictitious, v, 282, 290, 293; vi, 199, 211

- Genealogies, of Pápak in Tabarí, vi, 200
 Mas'údī, vi, 200
- Geography, Firðausi's, ii, 28
 Darmesteter on, ii, 79, 80
- Geometrician, vi, 377
- Geopothros (Gotarzes *q.v.*), iii, 9
- George, Armenian general, viii, 195
- Germanus, vii, 218
- Germany, vi, 73
- Gharcha (Georgia), country between the Caucasus and the Aras, iv, 14, 65
 king of, iv, 149
- Gharchís (Georgians), vii, 94
- Ghátkar, ruler of the Haitálans, *q.v.*, 168; vii, 334, 335
 hears of, and destroys, the Khán's embassy to Núshírwán, vii, 330
 prepares to oppose the Khán vii, 330
 defeated, vii, 332
- Ghaznín, city in Afghánistán, the capital of Sultán Mahmúd, i, 20, 257; iv, 14; v, 173; vii, 173
- Ghec, clarified butter, vi, 105
- Ghúl, a sorceress, i, 42; v, 117, 128
 referred to, v, 121
 described, v, 130
 slain by Asfandiyár, v, 131
- Ghundi, a dív, ii, 44, 54, 55, 93; iii, 256; iv, 296; v, 204
- Ghúr, district in Afghánistán between Harát and Ghaznín, ii, 101.
- Ghuz, a Turkish tribe and desert east of Gurgán, iv, 60
- Gíl, Gilán, district on the southwest coast of the Caspian, 167, i, 230, 231; ii, 226, 293; iv, 148, 265; v, 13; vi, 227; vii, 224, 340, 362, ix, 93
 river of = Kizil Uzun, also called Saffid Rúd, iv, 154
 waters of = Caspian, i, 230
- Gíl, Afrásiyáb's camp in, iv, 155
 Núshírwán's dealings with, vii, 216, 242 *seq.*
 captives from, settled at Súrsán, vii, 328
- Gimirrá. *See* Kimmerians.
- Gipsies, the, 165, vii, 6
 Noldeke on, vii, 6
 language of, vii, 6
 brought into Irán by Bahram Gúr, vii, 149
- Girámí (Garámik-kart), son of Jámásp, 155, v, 24 *seq.*, 58
 death of, foretold by Jámásp, v, 50
 worsts Námkhást, v, 59
 rescues Káwa's flag, v, 59
 slain, v, 59
- Giravgard, Túránián stronghold on the Oxus, iii, 73, 80
 occupied by the Iránians, iii, 78
- Girduni, Sirdarra, pass in the Alburz range, ii, 28; vi, 32
- Sawachi, pass in the Alburz range, ii, 28
- Girdkuh, fortress, v, 30
- Girih (Jirrah), place south of Shíráz, vi, 199
- Gív, Iránian hero, son of Gúdarz, and father of Bízhan, 146-151, 154, ii, 4, 25, 33, 35, 38, 62, 70, 73, 85, 91, 127, 138 *seq.*, 148, 151, 158, 160, 188, 193, 197, 271, 318, 319, 338, 340, 349, 351, 362, 388 *seq.*; iii, 11, 13, 18, 19, 27, 33, 45, 48, *seq.* 57, 67, 75, 76, 81, 85, 86, 89 *seq.*, 96, 101 *seq.*, 108, 111, 114 *seq.*, 121 *seq.*, 127, 129, 130, 133, 139 *seq.*, 143, 154, 155, 157, 159, 161, 169, 170, 182, 183, 187, 206, 211, 227, 231, 238, 244, 245, 247, 248, 253, 255, 259, 264, 268, 273, 289, 291, 292, 294, 296 *seq.*, 302, 305,

Gív—*cont.*

307 *seq.*, 311 *seq.*, 330 *seq.*,
 337 *seq.*, 350, 353 *seq.*;
 iv, 7, 8, 11, 13, 15, 16, 19
seq., 26 *seq.*, 39 *seq.*, 52,
 54, 56, 59, 69, 82 *seq.*, 90,
 99, 102, 136, 147, 157, 223,
 226, 227, 233 *seq.*, 292,
 296, 306 *seq.*; v, 207,
 208; vi, 194; viii, 168
 meaning of, ii, 335
 historical character, iii, 9
 relationship of, to Rustam,
 ii, 155, 365, 384; iii, 323
 son of Gúdarz, ii, 158
 wife of, ii, 365, 384; iii, 323
 sister of, ii, 384; iii, 323
 father of Bízhan, ii, 366
 and *note*
 solicitude of, for Bízhan,
 iii, 15
 harries Mázandarán, ii, 39
 taken prisoner in Mázan-
 darán, ii, 40
 released by Rustam, ii, 58
 taken prisoner in Hámá-
 varán, ii, 90
 released by Rustam, ii, 97
 goes in search of Kai Káús,
 ii, 104
 takes part in the Fight of
 the Seven Warriors, ii,
 107 *seq.*
 bears letter from Káús to
 Rustam, ii, 139
 encampment of, described,
 ii, 155
 helps to saddle Rakhsh for
 the fight with Suhráb, ii,
 160
 Suhráb described by, ii, 166
 quarrels with Tús over the
 future mother of Siyá-
 wush, iii, 194
 sent by Gúdarz to seek Kai
 Khusrau, ii, 364 *seq.*
 finds Kai Khusrau, ii, 370
 receives the mail of Siyá-
 wush, ii, 377
 exploits of, in defence of
 Kai Khusrau, ii, 378 *seq.*

Gív, tells how he captured
 Píráñ's wife and sister, ii,
 383
 overthrows Píráñ and his
 host, ii, 385
 releases Píráñ, ii, 387
 at the Jíhún, ii, 391 *seq.*
 announces Kai Khusrau's
 arrival in Írán, ii, 394
 accompanies Kai Khusrau
 to Ispahán, ii, 396
 rewarded by Kai Káús, ii,
 399
 goes on an embassy to Tús, ii
 400
 bears Kai Khusrau's letter
 to the castle of Bahman,
 ii, 408
 undertakes to slay Tazháv,
 iii, 28
 burn the barricade at the
 Kásá rúd, iii, 29
 horse of, wounded by Farúd,
 iii, 58
 lends Bízhan the mail of
 Siyáwush, iii, 60, 69
 sees Paláshán approaching,
 iii, 69
 burns the barricade at the
 Kásá rúd, iii, 73
 parleys with Tazháv, iii, 75
 rouses the Írániens, iii, 81
 rallies the host, iii, 91
 many kindred of, slain, iii, 94
 urges Bahrám not to return
 to the battlefield, iii, 96
 goes in quest of Bahrám, iii,
 102
 takes Tazháv captive, iii,
 102
 buries Bahrám, iii, 104
 made adviser to Tús, iii, 116
 interrupts Tús' parley with
 Húmán, iii, 122
 raids Khutan, iii, 247
 steed of, iii, 257
 worsted by Púládwand, iii,
 258
 interferes in the fight
 between Rustam and
 Púládwand, iii, 263

- Gív, opposes Bízhan's expedition to Irmán, iii, 291
 questions Gurgín about Bízhan, iii, 311
 wroth with Gurgín, ii, 314
 appeals to Kai Khusrau, iii,
 315
 comforted by Kai Khusrau,
 iii, 315, 318
 sent to summon Rustam,
 iii, 319
 met by Zál, iii, 321
 tells Bízhan's case to Rustam, iii, 322
 announces Rustam's approach to Kai Khusrau,
 iii, 326
 goes to welcome Rustam,
 iii, 353
 holds parley with Píránn,
 iv, 20
 overtures of, rejected and returns to Gúdarz, iv, 21
 commands the rear, iv, 24
 referred to, iv, 39
 tries to stop Bízhan from fighting Húmán, iv, 40, 43
 over-ruled by Gúdarz, iv,
 43
 refuses to lend Bízhan the mail of Siyáwush, iv,
 43
 repents of his refusal, iv,
 44
 son of = Bízhan, iv, 76
 ordered to dispatch troops to oppose Láhhák and Farshídward, iv, 82
 sends Zanga and Gurgín, iv,
 83
 leaves Farhád in command and attacks with Bízhan Píránn's centre, iv, 83
 defeats Rúín, iv, 84
 fights with Píránn, iv, 84
 attacked by Láhhák and Farshídward, iv, 85
 superseded *pro tem.* by Shídúsh, iv, 92
 chosen to fight with Gurwi,
 iv, 97
- Gív, takes Gurwi prisoner, iv, 100
 opposes Bízhan's going to help Gustaham, iv, 119
 consents to Bízhan's going to help Gustaham, iv, 120
 brings Gurwi before Kai Khusrau, iv, 127
 given a command, iv, 149
 commands the rear, iv, 191
 takes part in the siege of Gang-bihisht, iv, 199
 goes with the captives to Kai Káús, iv, 233
 gives Kai Káús tidings of Kai Khusrau, iv, 234
 rewarded by Kai Káús, iv,
 236
 returns to Gang-bihisht with letter for Kai Khusrau, iv, 238
 made governor of the country between the sea and Gang-dízh, iv, 246
 welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dízh, iv, 250
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iv, 252
 Gúdarz and, meet Húm, iv, 263
 hear of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 263
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
 sent by Gúdarz to summon Zál and Rustam, iv, 278
 bidden with other chiefs by Kai Khusrau to make an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv, 295
 receives grant of Kum and Ispahán, iv, 298
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
 refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307

- Gív, Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308
 disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
 end of, iv, 309
 grief of Gúdarz for, iv, 310,
 312
 Gívgán, Iránian hero, ii, 109,
 155; iii, 34; iv, 24
 Gloom, the (Land of Darkness),
 160, v, 30; vi, 79
 conception of, vi, 73
 visited by Asfandiyár, v, 76
 Sikandar's expedition to, vi, 74 *seq.*
 account of, in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 74 *seq.*
 Sikandar hears of, vi, 158
 enters, vi, 159 *seq.*
 emerges from, vi, 162
 jewels of, vi, 162
 Glory, the divine. *See* Grace.
 Glove, The, Browning's poem of, referred to, vi, 384 *note*
 Go-between, old woman as, i, 280 *seq.*
 Gog and Magog (Yájúj and Májúj, *q.v.*), the barbarous nomads of northern Asia, i, 16; vi, 78
 Golden, Age, i, 129, 134
 boot, iv, 34, 180, 243, 282,
 300, 359
 Fleece, land of the, i, 57
 Gomer. *See* Kimmerians.
 Good Thoughts, Words, and Deeds, Zoroastrian formula, 169, vii, 317, 318
 symbolised in the game of nard, vii, 381
 Gordyene, kingdom, south of Armenia, vi, 198
 Gotarzes, Parthian king and Iránian hero (Gúdarz, *q.v.*), iii 109
 memorial tablet of, iii, 9
 Geopothros, iii, 9
 coin of, iii, 9
 Gotarzes, war of, with Váldanes, iii, 10, 11
 Meherdates, iii, 10 *seq.*
 character of, in history, iii, 10
 Grace or Glory, the divine, i, 113, 114, 116, 123, 130 *seq.*, and *passim*
 account of, i, 82
 visible appearances of, i, 82,
 130, 374, 385; vi, 221 *seq.*
 Granicus, river in Asia Minor flowing into the Propontis (Sea of Marmara), vi, 30
 battle of the, vi, 30, 31
 Grapes, bunch of, Kubád and the, vii, 183 *note*
 Greece, vi, 30
 Greed and Need, personification of, vi, 146; vii, 71, 205,
 206, 368, 369
 Greek, Greeks, i, 10; v, 282;
 vi, 82
 relations of, with the Iránians, i, 14
 history and legend in relation to Persian dto, ii, 9
 conception of India, vi, 68
 captives, mutilation of, by the Persians, vi, 373
 philosophers entertained by Núshírwán, vii, 280
 Green, Prophet, the, *See* Al Khídr.
 sea, the, vi, 174 *note*, viii,
 46 and *note*
 Gretna Green, vi, 323 *note*
 Griffon, fabulous bird, i, 235 and *note*
 Gúdarz, son of Kishwád, Iránian hero, and father of Gív, a reminiscence of the Parthian king Gotarzes, *q.v.*, 146, 148, 151-153, i, 42; ii, 4, 33, 35, 38, 62, 70, 73, 83, 91, 127, 138, 142, 157, 177, 178, 193, 250, 286, 290, 316, 318, 335, 338, 340, 349, 371 *seq.*, 384,

Gudarz--*cont.*

388, 394, 406; iii, 8, 11, 15, 18, 19, 24, 28, 33, 38, 40, 45 *seq.*, 50, 51, 67, 81 *seq.*, 85, 88 *seq.*, 100, 111, 112, 115, 117, 118, 120, 123, 126, 127, 129 *seq.*, 134, 136, 137, 139, 143, 145, 149 *seq.*, 154 *seq.*, 164, 169, 172, 177, 187, 205, 206, 211 *seq.*, 220, 225, 232, 236, 246, 253, 254, 255, 258, 264, 268, 273, 277, 289, 298, 302, 305, 308, 322, 327, 329 *seq.*, 337 *seq.*, 354, 357 iv, 7, 13, 79, 80, 85, 88 *seq.*, 102, 103, 106 *seq.*, 113 *seq.*, 136, 145 *seq.*, 149, 157, 162, 171, 180, 191, 206, 226, 227, 292, 299; v, 207, 208; vi, 194; viii, 104, 168; ix, 23
taken prisoner in Mázan-darán, ii, 40
released by Rustam, ii, 58
receives Ispahán from Kai Káús, ii, 78
taken prisoner in Hámavarán, ii, 90
released by Rustam, ii, 97
censures Kai Káús, ii, 105
takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107
mediates between Kai Káús and Rustam, ii, 144 *seq.*
encampment of, described, ii, 153
sons and grandsons of, ii, 158; iii, 33; ix, 25
loss of, iii, 83 *note*, 94, 131; iv, 310, 312
survivors of, iv, 298
 consoles Siyáwush for his mother's death, ii, 199
appointed ruler of Sughd and Sipanjáb, ii, 358
returns to Irán, ii, 362
sees Surúsh in a dream, ii, 363

Gúdarz, sends Gív to seek for Kai Khusrau, ii, 364
hears of Kai Khusrau's arrival in Irán, ii, 395
welcomes Kai Khusrau and Gív, ii, 396
accompanies them to Is-takhr, ii, 399
dispute of, with Tús, ii, 400 *seq.*
goes with Kai Khusrau to the castle of Bahman, ii, 407
advises Tús to avoid Kalát, iii, 41
supersedes Tús, iii, 83
informs Kai Khusrau about Farúd and the defeat of the Iránians, iii, 83
sends Bízhan for Káwa's standard, iii, 92
Iránian watchman and, iii, 156 *seq.*
meets Faríburz, iii, 163
Rustum, iii, 171
warns Rustam not to trust Pírán, iii, 212
sends Ruhhám to help Rustam, iii, 227
praises Rustam, iii, 248
steed of, iii, 313
goes to welcome Rustam, iii, 353
sent to invade Túrán by Kai Khusrau, iv, 15
ordered to negotiate with Pírán, iv, 15
negotiations failing, marches from Raibad to meet Pírán, iv, 22
arrays his host, iv, 24
gives the right wing to Faríburz, iv, 24
baggage to Hajír, iv, 24
left wing to Ruhhám, iv, 24
rear to Gív, iv, 24
posts a watchman on the mountain-top, iv, 25
takes his station at the centre, iv, 24

- Gúdarz, counsels Bízhan as to his fight with Húmán, iv, 41
 over-rules Gív's objections, iv, 43
 rewards Bízhan, iv, 52
 prepares to resist a night-attack, iv, 53
 gives a force to Bízhan, iv, 54
 joins battle with Pírán, iv, 55
 writes to Kai Khusrau, iv, 56
 sends Hajír with the letter, iv, 57
 receives Kai Khusrau's reply, iv, 62
 prepares to renew the fight, iv, 63
 receives Rúín with a letter from Pírán, iv, 67
 entertains Rúín, iv, 68
 dismisses Rúín with presents and the reply to Pírán's letter, iv, 74
 prepares for the flank-attack of Lahhák and Farshíd-ward, iv, 82
 sends Hajír with orders to Gív, iv, 82
 harangues the host, iv, 89
 resolves to fight in person, iv, 90, 92, 96
 gives the left wing to Farhád, iv, 92
 right wing to Katmára, iv, 92
 rear to Shídúsh, iv, 92
 chief command to Gustaham, iv, 92
 instructs Gustaham, iv, 92
 holds a parley with Pírán and arranges with him the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs, iv, 95 *seq.*
 slays Pírán's steed, iv, 107
 pursues Pírán, iv, 108
 calls on Pírán to surrender, iv, 108
 Pírán wounds, iv, 108
- Gúdarz, slays Pírán, iv, 109
 drinks Pírán's blood, iv, 109
 sends Rulhám to fetch Pírán's corpse, iv, 110
 harangues the host, iv, 110
 resumes his command, iv, 111
 calls for volunteers to pursue Lahhák and Farshíd-ward iv, 116
 sends Gustaham, iv, 117
 Bízhan to help Gustaham, iv, 119
 comes before Kai Khusrau with the other champions, iv, 126
 receives Ispahán, iv, 129
 commands the left wing, iv, 147
 takes part in the assault on Gang-bihisht, iv, 208
 left in command at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219
 Gív and, meet Húm, iv, 263
 hear of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 263
 gives Kai Khusrau and Kai Káús tidings of Afrásiyáb, iv, 264
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
 takes counsel with other nobles, iv, 277
 sends Gív to summon Zál and Rustam, iv, 278
 goes with other chiefs to meet Zál and Rustam, iv, 282
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*
 holds, with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's charge to, iv, 294
 gift to, iv, 295
 asks Kai Khusrau for a patent for Gív, iv, 298

Gúdarz, goes with Kai Khusrau
on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
turns back at the bidding
of Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
laments the loss of the pala-
dins, iv, 310, 312
returns to Irán, iv, 310
promises fealty to Luhrásp,
iv, 312
grandsons of, go with Zarír
to Rúm, iv, 360
hail Gushtásp as Sháh, iv,
362
Gúdarz, Ashkánian king, vi, 197,
210
Gúdarzians, descendants of
Gúdarz son of Kishwád,
iii, 108, 115, 200, 214
Gulár, place, vi, 206
Gulgún (bright-bay), steed of
Gúdarz, iii, 366
steed of Luhrásp, v, 64
steed of Bahrám Gúr, vii, 57
Gulshahr, wife of Píráن, ii, 260,
276, 288, 387, 390
prepares Jaríra's wedding
outfit, ii, 270
presents gifts to Farangís,
ii, 275
announces the birth of Kai
Khusrau to Píráن, ii, 326
referred to, ii, 383
Gulzaryún, river in Turkistán
(Jaxartes), ii, 358, 381;
iv, 187, 189, 190, 218, 219;
vii, 329, 340, 360
Gulnár, slave-girl of Ardawán,
vi, 217
meaning of, vi, 217 *note*
intrigue of, with Ardshír
Pápakán, vi, 217 *seq.*
reports the presage of the
astrologers to Ardshír
Pápakán, vi, 219
flees with Ardshír Pápakán
to Párs, vi, 220
Gumbadán, mount and strong-
hold, v, 29, 86, 152, 171,
177, 206; ix, 93
situation of, v, 30
Asfandiyár warded at, v, 84

Gund-i-Shápúr (Shápúr Gird, Rás
Shápúr, Kand-i-Shápúr,
Jund-i-Shápúr), city in
Khúzistán, north-west of
Shúshtar and now repre-
sented by the ruins of
Sháhábád, vi, 295; vii,
219, 276
built for Roman captives,
vi, 295
Máni-gate of, vi, 327
Núshzáf imprisoned at,
vii, 264 and *note*
Gúr (Júr, Zúr, Firuzábád), city
in Párs, south of Shíráz,
vi, 199, 205, 229 *note*, 230,
245
Gúr, nickname of Bahrám son of
Yazdagírd, vii, 6
Nöldeke on, vii, 6
Gúrán, king of Kirmán, iv,
146
Guráz (Shahrbaráz, Faráyín
q.v.), general of Khusrau
Parwíz and Sháh, 174,
175, viii, 194, 408, 409
seq.; ix, 44
conspires with Farrukhzáf,
viii, 408
invites Cæsar to take Irán,
viii, 408
rebels, viii, 411; ix, 45
letters of, ix, 45, 46
letter of Píráz to, ix, 47
account of, ix, 50
meaning of, ix, 50
dual personality of, ix,
50
marches on Taisafún, ix,
51
confers with Iránian mag-
nates, ix, 51
misrule of, ix, 53
conspiracy against, ix, 54
goes hunting, ix, 55
end of, ix, 55
Guráz, son of Mähví,
referred to, ix, 107, 115
governor of Marv, ix, 120
put to death with his sons,
ix, 120

- Guráza, fránian hero, 151, ii, 73, 340; iii, 20, 25, 34, 45, 48, 92, 129, 141, 253; iv, 15, 24, 34
 takes king of Barbar prisoner, ii, 97
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*
 encampment of, described, ii, 155
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
 fights with Farshídward, iv, 87
 chosen to fight with Siyámak, iv, 97
 slays Siyámak, iv, 100
- Gurazm (Kavárazem), a relative of Gushtásپ, 155, v, 12, 22, 53, 99, 101, 102, 104 *seq.*, 171, 205, 261
 envies Asfandiyár, v, 78
 death of, referred to, v, 97
 Asfandiyár addresses the corpse of, v, 105
- Gurdáfríd, daughter of Gazhdaham, 144, ii, 119, 138
 referred to, ii, 131
 encounter of, with Suhráb, ii, 132 *seq.*
 beguiles Suhráb, ii, 133 *seq.*
- Gurdgír, son of Afrásiyáb, ii, 92
 commands the troops from Tartary, Khallukh, and Balkh, iv, 156
- Gurdwí, brother of Bahrám Chúbína, 173, 174, viii, 74, 202, 205, 206, 231, 293, 295, 296, 298, 342, 349, 354, 358; ix, 6
 a legitimist, viii, 74
 Gustaham and, persuade Khusrau Parwíz not to make a night-attack, viii, 224
 takes charge of baggage, viii, 228
 Bahrám Chúbína writes to, viii, 285
- Gurdwí, fights with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 294
 receives province, viii, 313
 informs Khusrau Parwíz of Gurdya's doings, viii, 356
 writes to, and sends Khusrau Parwíz' letter to, Gurdya, viii, 360
 wife of, goes with letters to Gurdya, viii, 360
 hears of the plight of Rai and informs Gurdya, viii, 367
- Gurdya, sister of Bahrám Chúbína, 171, 173, 174, ii, 119; viii, 74, 104 *note*, 187, 191, 347, *seq.*, 358, 365; ix, 6
 a legitimist, viii, 74
 present at council, viii, 164
 speech of, viii, 165, 167, 171
 referred to, viii, 221
 counsels Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 221
 laments Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 340
 resident at Marv, viii, 346 *seq.*
 informs her followers of the Khán's offer of marriage, viii, 349
 starts for Frán, viii, 351
 parleys with Tuwurg, viii, 352
 arrives at Ámwí, viii, 354
 doings of reported to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 356, 358
 met by Gustaham, viii, 356
 asked in marriage by Gustaham, viii, 357
 receives letters from Khusrau Parwíz and Gurdwí, viii, 360
 plots murder of Gustaham, viii, 360
 justifies murder of Gustaham, viii, 361
 reports death of Gustaham to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 361

Gurdyá, dresses up as a warrior to please Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 363

prowess of, in drinking, viii, 364

appointed overseer of royal bower, viii, 364

diverts Khusráu Parwíz and saves Rai, viii, 368

Gurgán (Hyrcania), province watered by the Atrak and Gurgán rivers on the south-eastern shores of the Caspian, 168, iv, 61; vi, 373; vii, 89, 237, 337, 338, 357, 358, 361; viii, 15, 355; ix, 89

Abú'l Kásim of. *See* Abú'l Kásim.

Gurganj, one of the two capitals of Khárazm (Kát (Káth) being the other), situated on the Persian side of the Oxus, iv, 60

Gurgín, son of Milád, Iránian hero, 150, 151, ii, 33, 35, 62, 70, 73, 85, 90, 127, 138, 144, 316, 340, 394; iii, 11, 12, 19, 20, 25, 48, 108, 115, 126, 145, 182, 211, 253, 264, 268, 273, 285, 289, 292, 294 *seq.*, 300, 305, 310 *seq.*, 322, 323, 331 *seq.*, 345, 346, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 24, 147, 191, 292; viii, 72, 211, 216 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.*

undertakes embassage to Afrásiyáb, iii, 29 goes with letter from Kai Khusrau to Rustam, iii, 274

accompanies Bízhan to Irán, iii, 292

refuses to help Bízhan against the wild boars, iii, 293

envies and boguiles Bízhan, iii, 294

Gurgín, goes with Bízhan in quest of Manízhá, iii, 296 searches for Bízhan, iii, 310 finds Bízhan's steed, iii, 311 questioned by Gív about Bízhan, iii, 312

false account of, about Bízhan's disappearance, iii, 313

Gív's wrath with, iii, 314 appears before Kai Khusrau, iii, 316

imprisoned, iii, 317

appeals to Rustam, iii, 331

released, iii, 333

goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334

pardoned by Bízhan, iii, 346 opposes Láhhák, iv, 83

chosen to fight Andarímán, iv, 97

slays Andarímán, iv, 104

Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 283 *seq.*

audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*

Gurgsár, tribe, v, 43 and *note*
Gurgsár, Túránián hero, 156, v, 117, 131 *seq.*, 146, 233
note

made captain of the host by Arjásp, v, 46

given command of one wing, v, 56

persuades Arjásp to remain and fight Asfandiyár, v, 108, 109

made leader of the host, v, 109

taken prisoner by Asfandiyár, v, 111

offers to guide Asfandiyár to the Brazen Hold, v, 113

goes as guide with Asfandiyár to Túrán, v, 120

offered the kingdom of the Turkmans by Asfandiyár in return for faithful service, v, 129

- Gurgsár, describes the route to the Brazen Hold, and the Seven Stages, v, 120 *seq.*, 124 *seq.*, 128, 132, 134 chagrin of, at Asfandiyár's successes, v, 124, 128, 131, 133 reproached by Asfandiyár for giving false information, v, 139, 140 offered the captainship of the Brazen Hold by Asfandiyár in return for trusty guidance, v, 140 shows the Iránians a ford, v, 140 questioned by Asfandiyár for the last time, v, 141 curses Asfandiyár, v, 141 slain by Asfandiyár, v, 141 Gúrkán (Júzján), city and district between Marvrúd and Balkh, iv, 65 Gurkíls, tribe (?), viii, 15 Gurúkhán, Iránian hero, iv, 149 Gurwí, Túráñian hero, 145, 151, 152, ii, 296, 314, 319, 338, 340; iii, 197, 199, 237; iv, 7, 99, III, 252; v, 272 challenges and is overthrown by Siyáwush, ii, 295 advocates the execution of Siyáwush, ii, 317 carries out the execution of Siyáwush, ii, 320 chosen to fight with Gív, iv, 97 taken prisoner by Gív, iv, 100 brought by Gív before Kai Khusráu, iv, 127 executed, iv, 129 Gurzbán, vi, 394. *See* Gúrkán. Gushasp, sacred Fire, vi, 201 Gushasp, chief scribe, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 11 bidden to remit the arrears of taxes, vii, 11 Gushasp, nonce-name assumed by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 59 *seq.* Gushasp, nonce-name assumed by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 59 *seq.* Gúsh-bistár, a savage, vi, 80, 177 meaning of, vi, 177 *note* interview of, with Sikandar, vi, 177 Gushtásp (Vistáspa, Vishtásp, Hystaspes'), son of Luhrásp, father of Asfandiyár, and Shál, 154-157, i, 42, 61; ii, 3, 9; iii, 109; iv, 314 *seq.*, 334 *seq.*, v, 24 *seq.*, 61, 68, 90, 92 *seq.*, 103 *seq.*, 119, 130, 148, 154, 155, 159, 166 *seq.*, 180, 181, 183, 205, 206, 208 *seq.*, 213, 216, 220, 221, 233 *note*, 243, 248 *seq.*, 281, 289, 293; vi, 20, 49, 55, 200, 213, 251, 252, 258; vii, 359; viii, 41, 68, 95, 148, 213, 270, 392, 393; ix, 25 son of Luhrásp, iv, 318 jealousy of, respecting the grandsons of Kai Káús, iv, 318 asks Luhrásp to appoint him heir to the crown, iv, 318 departs in wrath for Hind, iv, 319 arrives at Kábúl, iv, 320 overtaken by Zarí, iv, 320 takes counsel with the chiefs, iv, 321 returns to Luhrásp, iv, 322 pardoned by Luhrásp, iv, 322 determines to quit Irán, iv, 323 takes a steed of Luhrásp's, iv, 323 story of, in Rúm, ii, 10; iii, 285; iv, 324 *seq.* interview of with Híshwí, iv, 324

¹ The Hystaspes of legend not necessarily the father of Darius I, *See* Vol. iv, p 314 *seq.*

Gushtásp, vainly seeks work in Rúm as a scribe, iv, 325
 herdsman, iv, 326
 camel-driver, iv, 326
 blacksmith, iv, 327
 dreamed of by Katáyún, iv, 329
 goes to Cæsar's palace, iv, 330
 chosen for her husband by Katáyún, iv, 330
 marries Katáyún, iv, 331
 spends his time in the chase, iv, 332
 makes friends with Híshwí, iv, 332 and *note*
 asked by Híshwí to undertake the adventure of the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 335
 undertakes to slay the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 336
 provided with steed and arms by Mírfín, iv, 336
 goes with Mírfín and Híshwí to the forest of Fáskún, iv, 337
 prays for help, iv, 337
 gives thanks for his victory, iv, 338
 takes the wolf's tusks, iv, 338
 welcomed by Híshwí and Mírfín on his return, iv, 339
 discovers to Katáyún his royal race, iv, 340
 referred to, iv, 343 *seq.*
 asked by Híshwí to undertake the adventure of the dragon of Mount Sakila, iv, 345
 bids Ahran provide a steed, sword, and other arms, iv, 345
 goes with Ahran and Híshwí to Mount Sakila, iv, 346
 takes two of the dragon's teeth, iv, 346
 gives thanks for his victory, iv, 347

Gushtásp, welcomed by Híshwí and Ahran on his return, iv, 347
 accepts gifts from Ahran and bestows part upon Híshwí, iv, 347
 returns to Katáyún, iv, 348
 goes to the sports on Cæsar's riding-ground, iv, 349
 prowess of, at polo and archery, iv, 350
 questioned by Cæsar, iv, 350
 reproaches Cæsar for his treatment of Katáyún, iv, 350
 claim of, to have slain the wolf and the dragon, iv, 351
 confirmed by Híshwí, iv, 351
 reconciled to Cæsar, iv, 351
 goes to court and is received with honour by Cæsar, iv, 351
 consulted about Ilyás by Cæsar, iv, 353
 leads forth the host, iv, 354
 refuses the overtures of Ilyás, iv, 354
 brings the body of Ilyás to Cæsar; iv, 356
 routs the host of Ilyás, iv, 356
 returns in triumph to Cæsar, iv, 356
 recognised by Zarír, iv, 360
 goes to Zarír's camp, iv, 361
 hears of Luhrásp's abdication in his favour, iv, 362
 saluted as Sháh by the chiefs, iv, 362
 invites Cæsar to a feast, iv, 362
 sets out for Irán with Katáyún, iv, 364
 parts in good will from Cæsar, iv, 364
 welcomed and crowned by Luhrásp, iv, 364

GENERAL INDEX

Gushtasp, Reign of, 154, v, 9 *seq.*
 Notes on, v, 9 *seq.*, 116 *seq.*,
 166 *seq.*, 260 *seq.*
 division of, v, 9
 points of interest in, v, 9
 compared with that of
 Darius Hystaspis, v, 10
 diagram to illustrate, v, 27
 legend of Zarduhsh and, v,
 18
 black horse of, v, 18, 28
 sees his place in Paradise, v,
 19
 Rudge of, v, 29
 succeeds Luhrasp as Sháh,
 v, 31
 sons of, v, 32
 pays yearly tribute to Ar-
 jásp, v, 32
 converted by Zarduhsh, v,
 33
 helps to spread the Faith,
 v, 34
 establishes Mihr Barzín and
 other Fire-fanes, v, 34
 conversion of, recorded on
 Cypress of Kishmar, v, 34
 advised by Zarduhsh not
 to pay tribute to Arjásp,
 v, 35
 receives embassage from
 Arjásp and takes counsel
 with his chiefs, v, 41
 sends answer to Arjásp, v, 43
 summons the host, v, 47
 marches against Arjásp, v,
 48
 bids Jámásp foretell the
 issue of the fight, v, 48
 distress of, at Jámásp's
 prophecy, v, 53
 encouraged to fight by
 Jámásp, v, 54
 gives Zarír the standard and
 the command of the cen-
 tre, v, 55
 one wing to Asfandiyár,
 v, 55
 other wing to Shídasپ, v,
 55
 the rear to Nastúr, v, 55

Gushtasp, takes up his position
 on a height, v, 55, 56, 63
 referred to, v, 60, 64 *seq.*,
 89
 hears of the death of Zarír,
 v, 64
 wishes to avenge Zarír, v,
 64, 68
 dissuaded by Jámásp, v, 64,
 69
 offers his daughter Humái
 to the avenger of Zarír,
 v, 64
 crown and throne to the
 avenger of Zarír, v, 66
 gives his steed and arms to
 Nastúr, v, 69
 sees and laments over Zarír's
 corpse, v, 73
 bids Nastúr lead the host
 home, v, 74
 marries Humái to Asfandi-
 yár, v, 74
 gives Nastúr a command
 and bids him invade
 Túrán, v, 74
 rewards the host, v, 75
 builds a Fire-fane and makes
 Jámásp its archmage, v,
 75
 Mansion of, v, 75
 writes to his governors to
 announce the defeat of
 Arjásp, v, 75
 receives embassies and tri-
 bute from Cæsar and from
 the kings of Barbaristán,
 Hind, and Sind, v, 75
 makes Asfandiyár chief
 ruler of Irán and sends
 him to convert the world,
 v, 76
 sends the Zandavasta to
 each clime, v, 77
 Gurazm slanders Asfandiyár
 to, v, 78
 sends Jámásp to recall As-
 fandiyár to court, v, 80
 convokes an assembly and
 arraigns Asfandiyár, v,
 82 *seq.*

Gushtásp, puts Asfandiyár in bonds, v, 84
 sends Asfandiyár to Guimbádán, v, 84
 takes the Zandavasta to Sístán, v, 85
 welcomed by Rustam and Zál, v, 85
 kings revolt from, v, 85
 while in Sístán hears from his wife of the sack of Balkh and the captivity of his daughters, v, 93
 calls together his chiefs and summons the host, v, 94
 marches from Sístán toward Balkh, v, 94
 takes command of the centre, v, 94
 thirty-eight sons of, slain, and defeat of, in fight with Arjásp, v, 95, 96
 takes refuge on a mountain, v, 96, 100
 consults Jámásp, v, 96
 sends Jámásp to Asfandiyár with the offer of the crown in return for help, v, 97
 interview of, with, and promise to resign the crown to, Asfandiyár, v, 106
 commands the centre, v, 109
 makes thanksgiving for victory, v, 113
 promises to resign the crown to Asfandiyár when he has delivered his sisters from captivity, v, 114
 summons troops, rewards Asfandiyár, and sends him to invade Túrán, v, 115
 hears of Asfandiyár's success and writes to him, v, 160
 gives a banquet on Asfandiyár's return, v, 164
 consults Jámásp and the astrologers on Asfandiyár's future, v, 168

Gushtásp, Asfandiyár recounts his deeds to, v, 170 *seq.*
 promises to resign the throne to Asfandiyár when he has brought Rustam and his kin in bonds to court, v, 173, 174
 Asfandiyár sends the corpses of Núsh Ázar and Mihr-i-Núsh, and a message to, v, 232
 Asfandiyár's last message to, v, 249
 hears of Asfandiyár's death and laments for him, v, 252
 wrath of the nobles with, v, 252
 reproached by Bishútán, v, 253
 Humái and Bih Áfríd, v, 254
 Rustam's overtures to, v, 256
 Bishútán testifies in Rustam's favour to, v, 257
 reconciled, and writes to Rustam, v, 257
 advised by Jámásp to write to Bahman, v, 258
 writes to Rustam and Bahman to recall the latter, v, 258
 welcomes and gives Bahman the name Ardshír, v, 259
 tells Jámásp of his wishes as to the succession, v, 279
 dies, v, 280
 Gustaham, son of Naudar and brother of Tús, i, 90; ii, 127, 336; iv, 194
 Tús and, sent by Naudar to conduct the Persian women to Alburz, i, 351, 353
 hear of Naudar's death, i, 364
 passed over in the succession, i, 369, 370
 Kai Khusrau sends troops to succour, iv, 157

Gustaham, son of Naudar, attacks the Túrániens, iv, 178
sent to Chách with troops, iv, 188
reports his defeat of Khurákhan, iv, 193
takes part in the assault on Gang-bihisht, iv, 208
left in command of Gang-bihisht, iv, 238
goes to welcome Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dizh, iv, 252
left behind as viceroy on Kai Khusrau's return to Irán, iv, 254

Gustaham, son of Gazhdaham,¹ Iránian hero, 152, i, 369; ii, 12, 58, 107; iii, 19, 25, 33, 45, 48, 59, 92, 93, 127, 129, 139, 141, 211, 247, 248, 253, 273, 289, 294, 322, 350; iv, 7, 13, 15, 24, 33, 93, 132 seq., 149, 191, 292
takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 seq.
friendship of, for Bízhan, iii, 15
lends Bízhan a steed, iii, 60
mounts behind Bízhan, iii, 95
attacks Bídád, iii, 244
sends Bízhan to summon Rustam, iii, 245
goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
fights with Andarímán, iv, 87
made commander in chief *pro tem. vice* Gúdarz, iv, 92
Gúdarz instructs, iv, 92
resigns his command to Gúdarz, iv, 111
volunteers to pursue Láhhák and Farshídward, iv, 116
wounded, iv, 123

Gustaham, son of Gazhdaham, rescued by Bízhan, iv, 124 seq.
healed by Kai Khusrau, iv, 133
Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 seq.
Kai Khusrau's gifts to, iv, 295
sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
Kai Khusrau farewells and warns, and his comrades, iv, 308
disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
end of, iv, 309

Gustaham, Iránian warrior, *temp.* Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 394
lions of, slain by Bahrám Gúr, vi, 410
Bahrám Gúr's commander-in-chief, vii, 85

Gustaham (Bistám *g.v.*), maternal uncle of Khusrau Parwíz, 171-174, viii, 199, 200, 202, 204 seq., 227, 228, 231, 255, 257, 259, 269, 282, 289, 293, 295, 298; ix, 4, 6
imprisonment of, viii, 77, 176
Bandví and, escape and revolt, viii, 182
informs Khusrau Parwíz of the blinding of Hurmuzd, viii, 184
referred to, viii, 189
revolt of, viii, 191, 355
saves Khusrau Parwíz from Turk, viii, 220

¹This is assumed in all cases where it is doubtful which Gustaham is meant.
Cf. Vol. i, p. 369.

Gustaham (Bistám), Gurdwí and, dissuade Khusrau Parwíz from making a night-attack, viii, 224
 treasurer, viii, 229 and *note*
 accompanies Khusrau Parwíz in his flight, viii, 231
 turns back and murders Hurmiuzd, viii, 232
 rejoins Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 233
 Khusrau Parwíz warned against, viii, 255, 256
 deceived by Caesar's talisman, viii, 272
 praised by Caesar, viii, 279
 Bahram Chúbína writes to, viii, 285
 chooses comrades for Khusrau Parwíz in battle, viii, 296
 receives Khurásán viii, 313
 summoned to court, viii, 355
 hears of execution of Bandwí, viii, 355
 hears of Gurdya's doings, viii, 356
 goes to meet Gurdya, viii, 356
 asks Gurdya in marriage, viii, 357
 Gurdya plots murder of, viii, 360
 intimates of, beheaded, viii, 370
 assassination of, referred to, ix, 16, 104
 Gutschmid, Alfred von, on the Cyrus legend in Ctesias, vi, 195
 Gúzihr, Tribal King, vi, 198, 199

H

HABASH (Ethiopia), 160, vi, 149
 people of, encountered by Sikandar, vi, 149
 Haftánbúkht. *See* Haftwád.
 Haft Khán, ii, 29

Haft Khwán, ii, 29; v, 117 and *note*
 of Rustam and Asfandiýár compared, v, 117
 Mán, ii, 29
 Haftwád (Haftánbúkht, Astawadhl), Tribal King, 161, vi, 199
 account of, in Tabarí, vi, 205
 daughter of, vi, 205, 206, 233, 234
 becomes guardian of the Worm, vi, 236
 Nöldeke and Darmesteter on, vi, 206
 son of, vi, 206
 helps his father against Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 236
 Story of, 161, vi, 232 *seq.*
 seven sons of, vi, 233, 235
 rise to power of, vi, 235
 builds, and migrates to, a stronghold, vi, 235
 Ardshír Pápakán and, vi, 236 *seq.*
 slain by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 245
 Haitál, Haitálians, country and people (White Huns), dwelling north of the Oxus, 166, 168, vii, 6, 153, 161, 164, 171, 174, 181, 187, 197, 340, 342, 390; viii, 45, 242, 329, 370, 377
 origin and seat of, i, 19, 20
 confused with the Turks, vii, 4
 Bahram Gúr's defeat of, vii, 4
 help Píruz, vii, 156, 157
 Píruz's expedition against, vii, 159, 164 *seq.*
 tradition of, vii, 160
 king of, vii, 160, 184
 helps Kubád, vii, 198
 Kubád's flight to, vii, 170, 184, 198

- Haitál Haitálians, Núshírwán's alliance with the Khán against, vii, 317
 Khán's war with, vii, 328 *seq.*
 Khán's embassy to Núshírwán destroyed by, vii, 330
 host of, levied to oppose the Khán, vii, 331
 defeated, vii, 332
 Núshírwán's help sought by, vii, 332
 Faghánish made king by, vii, 333
 Núshírwán takes counsel concerning, vii, 333 334, make submission to Núshírwán, vii, 360
 Ha'iy, son of Kutiba, governor of Tús and a patron of Firdausí, i, 35, 39
 Hajír, fránian hero, 144, 151, ii, 134, 136, 140, 349; iv, 103, 147, 191
 taken prisoner by Suhráb, ii, 131
 misleads Suhráb, ii, 152 *seq.*
 life of, attempted by Rustam, ii, 176
 attacks Bídád, iii, 244
 put in charge of the baggage, iv, 24
 bears letters from Gúdarz to Kai Khusrau, , iv, 57
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iv, 58
 bears Kai Khusrau's reply to Gúdarz, iv, 61, 62
 goes with orders to Gív, iv, 82, 83
 slays Andarímán's horse, iv, 87
 chosen to fight with Sipahram, iv, 97
 slays Sipahram, iv, 104
 Halab (Chalybon - Beroea, Aleppo), city in northern Syria, iv, 359, 360; viii, 41, 46, 47
 Halai (Olympia (?), Náhíd), daughter, in legend, of Philip II of Macedon, vi, 19
 Halai, reason for her repudiation by Dáráb and her naming her son Iskandar (Sikandar), vi, 19
 Halai-Sandarús. *See* Halai.
 Hamadán (Ekbatana), city in 'Irak-i-'Ajamí, vi, 31; vii, 6; viii, 178, 189; ix, 68
 Hámávarán (Yaman), south-western Arabia, 143, ii, 25, 78 *seq.*, 94, 96 *seq.*, 139, 143 *seq.*, 213, 215, 218, 250; iv, 296, 299; v, 174, 207, 208, 220; viii, 104, 168
 king of, 143, i, 338; ii, 85 *seq.*, 93, 207 and *note*; v, 176
 asks quarter of Rustam, ii, 97
 releases Kai Káús, ii, 97
 Hamáwan, mountain, 148, iii, 135, 137, 138, 142, 144, 153, 154, 158, 161, 164, 167, 169, 172, 177; iv, 299; v, 116
 occupied by the Frániens, iii, 132
 Hamdán Gashasp, Fránian chief, viii, 122, 163, 204
 speech of, viii, 166
 Hainza, of Ispahán, tenth century Arabic historian, vi, 257
 Handgrip, as test of strength, ii, 64, 66, 67; v, 208
 Hlání bin Mas'íd, Arab chief, viii, 190
 Haoma. *See* Homa.
 =Húm, *q.v.*
 Haraiti Bareza (Alburz, *q.v.*), mountain, iv, 137
 Harám, the environs of Mecca, vi, 65, 120 and *note*, 121
 Haram, of Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 4, 5
 Harát, city in north-western Afghánistán, ii, 101; iii, 222; viii, 71, 92, 110, 116, 117, 130, 173

- Hárát, early seat of Aryan civilization, i, 7
 battle of, i, 21
 Firdausí flees to, from Mahmúd, i, 39
 desert of, ii, 228; viii, 114
 marchlord of. *See* Mákh.
 bestowed by Máhwí on his son, ix, 115
- Háris, father of Kais, viii, 250
- Hárih, father of Nadr, *q.v.*, v, 166
- Hárih bin Jabala, prince of the Ghassánians, vii, 217
 protected by Justinian, vii, 217
 war of, with Munzir, vii, 217
- Harpagus, Persian noble, *temp.* Astyages, ii, 190
 = Píráñ in legend, ii, 191
- Hárúm (City of Women), 160, vi, 73, 153 *seq.*
 visited by Sikandar, vi, 153 *seq.*
 Sikandar's correspondence with the ruler of, vi, 153 *seq.*
- Hárunu'r-Rashíd, Khalifa (A.D. 786-809), i, 14
- Hárút, angel, iii, 286, 288
 'Harvest of Bahrám,' viii, 292
- Hasan Sabbáh (The Old Man of the Mountain), v, 30
- Háshim, Arab general, ix, 68
 sent by 'Umar in pursuit of Yazdagird, ix, 68
 wins battle of Jalúlá, ix, 68
 takes Hulwán, ix, 68
- Háshímí, a descendant of Háshim the great grandfather of Muhammad, i, 25; vi, 362 and *note*
- Háshimite=Muhammad, ix, 81 and *note*
- Háshish, murderer of Darius Codomanus, vi, 32
- Hatra (Al Hadr), city, vi, 321 *seq.*
 account of, vi, 322
 besieged, vi, 322
 fall of, legend of, vi, 322
- Hatra, king of, vi, 323
- Haug, his theory of the origin of Zoroastrianism, ii, 8
- Hauz, tank or pool, i, 203 and *note*, vii, 50 and *note*
- Hawk, hawks, domestication of, by Tahmúras, i, 126
 two white, Kai Kubád's dream of, i, 385
- Hawking. *See* Falconry.
- Hay, sack of, Bahrám Chúbína and the, viii, 100
- Hazár, Hazárán, Túráanian hero, v, 24, 56, 59
- Hazára, father of Kút, viii, 291
- Hecataeus, Greek historian (6th-5th centuries B.C.), vi, 13
- Helenopolis, city in Bithynia, vi, 61
- Heraclius, Eastern Roman Emperor (A.D. 610-642), v, 306 *note*; viii, 187, 191; ix, 5, 7
 attempts of, for peace with Khusrau Parwiz, viii, 194, 195
 takes Dastagird, viii, 194
 retreat of, viii, 195, 196
 Shírwí's letter to, ix, 7
 alliance of, with Shahrbaráz, ix, 43, 44
- Hermit, Khusrau Parwíz and the, 172, viii, 254
- Herodotus, Greek historian (B.C. 484-425), ii, 9; iii, 191; vi, 13, 16, 68, 72, 73; viii, 193
 legend of Cyrus the Great in, ii, 190; vi, 195
- Heroes, chief, of mixed descent, i, 55
 Vale of, vii, 6
- Hesperides, Garden of the, vi, 74
- Hierapolis. *See* Árayish-i-Rúm.
- High priest, *temp.* Shápúr son of Urmuzd, vi, 343 *seq.*
 hears of Shápúr's return, vi, 344
 informs the captain of the host, vi, 345

- Hijáz, north-western Arabia, viii, 24 and *note*, 66, 67
- Hilál, Arab, ix, 69
slayer of Rustam son of Farrukh-Hurmuzd, ix, 70
- Himálaya (Himavat), mountain-range dividing India from Thibet, vi, 74, 81
- Himavat. *See above.*
- Himyar—Hámávarán (Yaman), ii, 79
- Hind, Hindústán, 147, 159, 161, 165, 169, i, 231, 261; ii, 92, 228, 287, 289; iii, 30, 152, 164, 165, 177, 204, 221, 222, 235, 237, 238, 242; iv, 14, 60, 65, 133, 196, 208, 272, 317, 320; v, 76, 188, 257, 262, 265, 277; vi, 80, 81, 91, 98 and *passim*
land of sorcerers, i, 163
- Mai of, i, 252
king of (Shangul) *temp.* Kai Khusrau, iii, 162, 210, 218, 251
temp. Bahrám Gúr, vii, 113, 119, 126, 128
temp. Núshírwán, viii, 52
- lord of = Shangul, iii, 187
man of = Shangul, iii, 216
prince of, iv, 71
lord of = Mahmúd, iv, 142
monarch of, iv, 319, 321
kings of, send tribute to Gushtásp, iv, 75
ambassadors from, come to Dáráb, vi, 21
Dárá, vi, 35
ruler of = Fúr, vi, 51
- Sikandar invades, vi, 98
silk of, vi, 99
king of = Kaid, vi, 103
Sikandar becomes king of, vi, 118
people of, help the Sindians against Sikandar, vi, 175
- Rája of, 169. *See Rájá.*
Bahrám Gúr's visit to, vii, 5, 110 *seq.*
motive of, vii, 5
- Hind, Bahrám Gúr's visit to, fabulous, vii, 6
king of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
- Núshírwán goes to, vii, 241
- Hindíyá (Amida?), city in Roman Armenia, vii, 200 taken by Kubád, vii, 200
- Hindu Kush, mountain-range in Afghánistán, ii, 80
- Hindústání, vii, 6
Gipsy language a debased form of, vii, 6
- Hiong-Nu, probably the Huns, v, 13
- Híra, city west of the Euphrates near Mashad 'Alí (Nedje), vi, 372; vii, 217; viii, 188, 191; ix, 5, 66
seat of the dynasty of Al Munzir, i, 55
- kingdom of, ix, 65
abolished by Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 66
- attacked by Persians, ix, 67
- Hirá (Jebel Núr), mountain north of Mecca, viii, 42
- Hírbad, keeper of the women's house of Kai Káús, ii, 202, 206
- Hírmund (Helmund), river in Sístán in eastern Irán, i, 358, 359; iii, 321; v, 178, 182, 186, 191, 196, 219, 285
referred to, v, 198, 231
- Hishám ibn Muhammad ibn Al-Kalbí, Arabic historian (8th–9th centuries A.D.), vi, 30; viii, 73
- Híshwí, Rúman toll-collector, iv, 334 *seq.*
interview of, with Gushtásp, iv, 324
becomes friends with Gushtásp, iv, 332
- asks Gushtásp, on behalf of Mírfín, to undertake the adventure of the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 335

- Hishwí, goes with Gushtásp and Mírín to the forest of Fáskún, iv, 337
- Mírín and, welcome Gushtásp on his return, iv, 339
- asks Gushtásp, on behalf of Ahran, to undertake the adventure of the dragon of Mount Sakila, iv, 344
- goes with Gushtásp and Ahran to Mount Sakila, iv, 346
- Ahran and, welcome Gushtásp on his return, iv, 347
- receives gifts from Gushtásp, iv, 348
- confirms Gushtásp's claim to have slain the wolf and dragon, and produces their teeth to Cæsar, iv, 351
- Hittite, Hittites, vi, 71
empire, vi, 71
- Hiuen Tsiang, Chinese traveller (A.D. 603-668), vi, 63
quoted, vi, 63, 73
- Hoibaras, Persian slave, *temp.* Astyages, vi, 195
- Hold, The Brazen. *See* Brazen Hold.
- Holy Ghost, the, vi, 138 and *note*
- Holy Questions, Mountain of the, i, 62
- Homa (Soma), a plant held sacred by the Zoroastrians, i, 8 and *note*, ii, 8
juice of, ii, 8
referred to, iv, 138
- Homer, vi, 13, 72
epic method of, contrasted with Firdausi's, i, 47
quoted, vi, 68, 73
- Hormisdas I. *See* Urmuzd son of Shápúr.
- Hormisdas II. *See* Urmuzd son of Narsí.
- Hormisdas (Urmuzd son of Urmuzd son of Narsí), Persian prince, takes refuge with the Romans, vi, 318, 325
- Hormisdas, goes with Julian to the East, vi, 325
- Horoscope, i, 152
- of the sons of Farídún, i, 188
Zál, i, 251, 278
Rustam, i, 278, 307
Siyáwush, ii, 196, 205, 234
Mírín, iv, 334
Shaghád, v, 264
Ardawán, vi, 218
Bahrám Gúr, vi, 376
Yazdagird son of Shápúr, vi, 390
Shírwí, vi i, 372; ix, 16, 17
- Horse, of Persian royalty, how distinguished, ii, 410 *note*
- Gushtásp's black. *See* Black horse.
(steed, knight), piece in chess, vii, 285, 423
position of, vii, 388, 422
move of, vii, 422
- Hourí, maid of Paradise, i, 272; ix, 81
- House of Darkness, ix, 7
Crystal, ix, 25 and *note*
- Houses, the Twelve, of the sky, i, 103, 188
good influence of, i, 52
- Hrazdán, river in Armenia, v, 13
- Húlwán (Arash), town, vii, 187, 201
situation of, vii, 187
- Yazdagird retires to, ix, 67
taken by Háshim, ix, 68
- Húm (Haoma, *q.v.*), hermit, i 53, iv, 135 *seq.*, 259 *seq.*
hears Afrásiyáb lamenting in the cave, iv, 260
capture of Afrásiyáb by, iv, 261
Darmesteter on, iv, 136
- pities and unbinds Afrásiyáb, iv, 262
tells his adventure with Afrásiyáb to Gúdarz and Gív, iv, 363
Kai Káús and Kai Khusrau, iv, 264
suggests how Afrásiyáb may be recaptured, iv, 265

- Hlúm, recaptures Afrásiyáb, iv, 266
- Huma. See below.
- Humái (Huma), daughter, of Gushtásپ, ii, 3; v, 12, 25
marriage of, with Asfandi-yár, v, 22, 74
ignored by Firdausí, v, 22
offered in marriage to the avenger of Zarír, v, 64
taken captive by the Turk-mans, v, 93, 100
goes with Bíh Áfríd to draw water and meets Asfandi-yár, v, 147
escapes from Arjásپ's palace, v, 153
bewails Asfandi-yár, v, 252
reproaches Gushtásپ, v, 254
- Humái (Chihrzád, *q.v.*), daughter and wife of Bahman, and mother of Dáráb, Sháh, 157, 158, ii, 3, 9, 10; v, 281, 290 *seq.*; vi, 20, 22, 199
married to Bahman, v, 290
Bahman appoints, and her issue, to succeed him, v, 291
- Semiramis (?), v 293
genealogies of, v, 293
Reign of, 158, v, 292 *seq.*
Note on, v, 292 *seq.*
- accession of, v, 294
- Dáráb born of, v, 294
referred to, v, 296
hears of Rúman invasion and bids Rashnawád lead forth the host, v, 301
reviews the host, v, 302
affected on seeing Dáráb, v, 302
hears from Rashnawád about Dáráb, v, 308
recognises that Dáráb is her son, v, 308
thanksgiving largess of, v, 309
- Rashnawád and Dáráb appear before, v, 309 *seq.*
- Humái, crowns, and excuses herself to, Dáráb, v, 310
proclaims Dáráb, v, 311
- Humái, Iránian chieftain, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 88
goes as envoy to the Khán, vii, 87
- Húmán, son of Wísa and brother of Píráن, Túránián hero, 144, 148, 149, 157, i, 92; ii, 129, 130, 132, 148, 150, 264, 390; iii, 90, 91, 93, 108, 120 *seq.*, 133 *seq.*, 142, 149, 152, 153, 158, 166, 169, 177, 182, 192, 202, 205, 210, 217, 227, 232, 234, 252, 259, 350; iv, 7, 8, 10, 29 *seq.*, 44, 55, 56, 61, 75, 76, 91, 118, 152
- Bármán and, join Suhráb with troops, ii, 129
- Afrásiyáb's instructions to, ii, 129
- misleads Suhráb as to Rustam, ii, 165, 169
- reproaches Suhráb for sparing Rustam, ii, 171
- throws the blame for Suhráb's death on Hajír, ii, 176
- withdraws from Irán under safe conduct, ii, 176, 181, 182, 184
- rescues Afrásiyáb from Rustam, ii, 354, 355
- persuades Afrásiyáb to abandon the pursuit of Kai Khusrau, ii, 394
- parleys with Tús, iii, 121
- leads the host against Tús, iii, 127
- counsels Píráن, iii, 134
- pursues the Iránians to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 135
- rallies the Túránián, iii, 139
- reconnoitres the Iránians, iii, 174
- informs Píráن of the arrival of Rustam, iii, 174

- Hlúmán, parleys disguised with
Rustam, iii, 196
commands the centre, iv, 25
dissuaded from fighting by
Píráñ, iv, 30
parleys with Bízhan, iv, 45
armour of, donned by Bí-
zhan, iv, 51
Túrániáns' grief at death of,
iv, 51
Hluns, the, i, 10; v, 13; vi, 15;
vii, 153
settlement of, at Samar-
kand, i, 19
White. *See* Haitál.
Húr, father of Bihrúz, vii, 72
Hurmuz (Úrmuzd), Ashkánian
king, vi, 197
Hurmuz (Ormus), city and island
on the south-eastern shore
of the Persian Gulf, vi,
204
Hurmuz (Hormisdas III), Sháh,
166, vii, 153, 186
appointed by Yazdagird to
succeed him, vii, 155
Reign of, vii, 156
Note on, vii, 156
defeated by Píráz, vii, 157
pardoned by Píráz, vii, 156,
158
leads the van in the war
with the Turkmans (Hai-
tálians), vii, 164
perishes in battle, vii, 168
Hurmuz, minister of Bahrám
Gúr, vii, 26
Hurmuzd (Hormisdas IV), son
of Núshírwán, Sháh, 169-
172, vii, 279; viii, 56
seq., 69 *seq.*, 74 *seq.*, 78,
87, 147, 169, 170, 174,
198, 209, 212, 213, 222,
232, 265, 270, 304, 312,
333, 355, 370, 376; ix, 4,
15, 104
son of the Khán's daughter,
vii, 317
sent against the Turks, vii
317
examination of, viii, 3, 57
Hurmuzd (Sháh), counselled by
Núshírwán, viii, 25 *seq.*
Núshírwán's testament in
favour of, and last coun-
sels to, viii, 61 *seq.*
Reign of, 170, viii, 70
Note on, viii, 70
character of, viii, 70
system of administration of,
viii, 71
justice of, viii, 71
instances of, viii, 90 *seq.*
scribes executed by, viii, 71
insult of, to Bahrám Chú-
bína, viii, 76
Iazic war renewed by, viii,
76
Bahrám Chúbína's gift of
swords to, viii, 76
accession of, viii, 78
turns to evil courses, viii,
81
puts to death Izid Gas-
hasp, viii, 83
poisons Zarduhisht, viii, 83
seq.
schemes against and puts
to death Símáh Parzín,
viii, 85 *seq.*
attempts to suborn Bahrám
Ázarmihán, viii, 85 *seq.*,
gives audience, viii, 86
hears state-secret from Bah-
rám Ázarmihán, viii, 88
puts to death Bahrám Ázar-
mihán, viii, 89
repentance of, viii, 90, 93.
places of residence of, viii,
90
wars of, viii, 92
attacked by Sáwa, viii, 92
Sáwa's letter to, viii, 93
attacked by Cæsar, viii, 93
Khazars, viii, 93
Arabs, viii, 93
consults the Iránians, viii,
94
counselled by his wazír, viii,
94
makes peace with Cæsar,
viii, 95

Hurmuzd (Sháh), attacks and defeats the Khazár, viii, 95
sends for Mihrán Sitád, viii, 97
hears prophecy about Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 98
orders search to be made for Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 99
discovers and sends for Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 100
consults Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 100
gives chief command to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 102
questions Bahiám Chúbína, viii, 103
gives Rustam's banner to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 105
sends Mihrán with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 106
intelligencer after Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 107
to recall Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 108
Kharrád, son of Barzín, as envoy to Sáwa, viii, 110
hears of Bahrám Chúbína's victory, viii, 132
makes thanksgiving, viii, 132
rewards Bahrám Chúbína and the troops, viii, 133
surveys spoils sent by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 150
grows suspicious of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 151
dismisses the Khán with gifts, viii, 152
hears from Kharrád of Bahrám Chúbína's disaffection, viii, 160
consults with high priest, viii, 161
Áyín Gashasp, viii, 174, 177
plans to make away with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 174
hears of Khusrau Parwíz' flight, viii, 176
imprisons Bandví and Gustaham, viii, 176

Hurmuzd (Sháh), hears of the murder of Áyín Gashasp, viii, 182
dethroned and blinded, viii, 183, 200
visited in prison by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 185, 198, 230
requests of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 199
referred to, viii, 211
counsels Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 230
murdered, viii, 232
Hurmuzd Garázín or Galábzín (Kharrád son of Barzín q.v.), viii, 190
Hurmuzd, priest, vii, 188
assists Núshírwán in his disputation with Mazdak, vii, 188, 206
Hurmuzd, fránian general, vii, 251
commands the outposts in Núshírwán's army, vii, 251
Hurmuzd (Hurmuzdsháh, Farrukhs-Hurmuzd q.v.), father of Rustam, ix, 72, 78, 85, 89, 96
Hurmuzd Shalránguráz (Shahránguráz q.v.), ix, 54
Hurmuzd, devotee, ix, 102
pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, ix, 102
Hurmuzdagán, vi, 193, 199
battle of, vi, 193, 199, 202, 256
Husain, friend of Firdausí, ix, 121
Húshang, son of Siyámak, minister of Gaiúmart, and Sháh, i, 139, 140, ii, 204; iv, 133, 286, 292, 302; v, 180, 245; vii, 37, 273; viii, 376; ix, 25, 41
Firdausí's etymology of, i, 121
goes with Gaiúmart to fight the Black Dív, i, 121
slays the Black Dív, i, 121
Reign of, i, 140, ii, 122

Húshang, Reign of, Note on, i, 122
 succeeds Gaiúmart, i, 122
 culture hero, i, 123
 discovers fire, i, 123
 institutes Fire-worship, i, 123
 founds the Feast of Sada, i, 124
 domesticates animals, i, 124
 dies, i, 124
 Firdausí's reflections on, i, 124
 rites of, vii, 53
 Faith of, viii, 380
 Húshdív, Túráñian hero, v, 46
 put in charge of the rear, v, 46
 Húshyár, astrologer, vi 372, 375
 takes Bahram Gúr's horoscope vi, 176
 Hushravah (Kai Khusrav, *q.v.*), iv, 137, 138
 Hutaosa, wife of Gushtásp, v, 11
 =Atossa (?), v, 11
 Huyaonas (Khyons, Chionitae ?), people, v, 13
 Hyapates, son of Semiramis, v, 292
 Hydaspes, *id.*
 Hydaspes (Jhílam), river in the Punjáb, vi, 18, 31, 62, 63
 Hydraotes (Rávi), river in the Punjáb, vi, 64
 Hyperboreans, the, vi, 74
 Elysium of, vi, 74
 Hyphasis (Beas), river in the Punjáb, vi, 64
 Hyrcania (Gurgán, *q.v.*), ii, 27; iii, 10; vi, 373
 Gív, prince of, iii, 9
 Hystaspes (Gushtásp, *q.v.*), iv, 314 *seq.*
 Hystaspes, father of Darius I, v, 10
 governor of Parthia, v, 10

I

IBLÍS, the Muhammadan Devil, 140, 143, iv, 206, 282; v, 174, 218

Iblís, occasional substitution of for Áhri man in the Sháhnáma, i, 50, 70; ii, 82, 110 tempts Zahhák, i, 136 *seq.* turns cook, i, 137 *seq.* causes serpents to grow out of Zahhák's shoulders, i, 139 counsels, garbed as a leech, Zahhák, i, 139
 Ibn Mukaffa', Persian scholar and Arabic writer, vi, 373; vii, 161 account of, vi, 17 translator of the Bástán-náma into Arabic, vi, 17 Fables of Bidpai (the Book of Kalfila and Dimna) into Arabic, vii, 383
 Ibráhím, Abraham the patriarch, vi, 119, 120 house of =the Kaaba, vi, 119 Ichthyophagi, vi, 81 Sikandar and, vi, 69, 147 Arrian on, vi, 69 modern accounts of, vi, 70 city of, described, vi, 177 go to meet, and are visited by, Sikandar, vi, 178 hand over the treasures of Kai Khusrav to Sikandar, vi, 178
 Id-i-Kurdí, Feast of, i, 143
 Ighrífás (Aghraérratha, Aghrérad, Aghríras), brother of Afrásiyáb and Túráñian hero, 142, i, 92, 337, 342 *seq.*; ii, 18, 20, 303, 304; iii, 8; iv, 136, 206, 262 characterised, i, 55, 338 opposes war with Irán, i, 343
 Bármán's single combat, i, 347 over-ruled by Pashang, i, 344
 Afrásiyáb, i, 347
 Iránian captives saved by, i, 363 released by, i, 365 *seq.*

GENERAL INDEX

- Ighríás, upbraided and slain by Alrásiyáb, i, 367
 Pashang's grief for, i, 371
 revival of, in legend, iv, 135
 given a command, iv 156
 head of, sent by Kai Khusrau to Kai Káús, iv, 185
 referred to, iv, 267
 Ijás bin Kabísa, viii, 188
 governor of Híra, viii, 190
 Ilá, Túránian king, iv, 182
 fights with Kai Khusrau, iv, 182
 Ilyás, ruler of Khazar *q.v.*, 154,
 iv, 361
 tribute demanded of, by Cæsar, iv, 352
 refuses tribute and declares war, iv, 352
 makes overtures to Gush-tásp, iv, 354
 corpse of, brought by Gush-tásp to Cæsar, iv, 355
- Imagery, of Sháhnáma. *See* Sháhnáma.
- Imaus, Greek form of Himálaya *q.v.*, vi, 12
 'Inánian, 'Inánians, Arab tribe, vi, 324, 330, 331, 333
- Ind. *See* Hind.
- India, iv, 316; vi, 17, 64, 81, 83, 204
 Iránians and Aryans of, i, 15
 Palladius on, vi, 61
Ancient, M'Crindle's, quoted, vi, 68
 =Ethiopia, vi, 68
- Indian, Indians, 172, vi, 81, 375, 397; vii, 135, 146; viii, 377
 =Ethiopians, vi, 13, 68
 sages, vi, 61, 83, 91 *seq.*, 143 *seq.*, 266
 bells and gongs, vi, 175; viii, 46, 120
 bane, vi, 259
 king of=Shangul, vii, 118
 tongue, vii, 117, 143
 sword, falchion, scimitar, viii, 127, 145, 417; ix, 17
 Garden of the, viii, 196
- Indian, Indians, Faith of, 172,
 viii, 275
 script, ix, 17
 scribe, ix, 17
 Indies, Greek idea of two, vi, 13
 duplicate races in, vi, 68
 Indo-European race, i, 7
 Asiatic branch of, i, 7
 Aryans, i, 7
 early seats of, i, 7
 religion of, i, 7
 Indra, Indian god, ii, 25; vi, 203
 Víitra and, ii, 25; vi, 203
 Indus, river, i, 71, 252; ii, 21;
 iii, 177, 204, 237, 251; v,
 293; vi, 62, 67, 70; vii,
 241
 mistaken for the Nile, vi, 68
- Introduction, to Sháhnáma, i, 3 *seq.*
- Iollas, Alexander the Great's cup-bearer, vi, 82
- Íraj, youngest son of Farídún *q.v.* and the protagonist of the Iránian race, 140, 54, 90, 91, 211; ii, 8, 16, 19, 20, 237, 297, 302; iii, 8; iv, 146; v, 42, 44, 261; vi, 353; vii, 73; viii, 266, 376 and *note*, 392; ix, 103
- etymology of, i, 174
 naming of, i, 188
 horoscope of, i, 188
 receives Irán and Arabia as his portion, i, 189
 abdication of, demanded by Salm and Túr, i, 192
 offers to go to his brothers, i, 196
 visits Salm and Túr, i, 198
 reception of, by Salm and Túr, i, 198
 offers to resign his kingship to his brothers, i, 200
 slain by Túr and Salm, i, 201
 head of, sent to Farídún, i, 202
 mourning for, i, 203 *seq.*
 daughter of, 140, i, 205
 married to Pashang, i, 205

- Íraj, daughter of, gives birth to
 Minúchihr, i, 206
vengeance for, i, 215 *seq.*
 referred to, i, 335, 349
- Íraj, king of Kábul, iv, 146
- 'Irák, ix, 66
 = 'frák 'Arabi (Babylonia),
 vii, 214, 224
- Iram, gardens of, i, 100, 113;
 ii, 78; vii, 235 and
 note
- Irán, 142-144, 146, 148, 150, 152-
 155, 157, 158, 162, 163,
 165, 167, 172, 173, 175,
 176, i, 3, 113, 152, 153
 and *passim*
boundaries of, i, 3
physical features of, i, 3
gradual desiccation of, i, 3
 and see Drought.
climate of, i, 4
flora of, i, 4
fauna of, i, 5
land of contrasts, i, 5, 58,
 60
cosmogony of, i, 5
people of, i, 6
-vej, region, i, 9
 situation of, i, 9
 Zoroaster's (Zarduhsh't's)
 birth-place, i, 62
Arab conquest of, i, 12
Arabia and, Íraj's portion,
 i, 189
-Shahr, ii, 81
fought for by Afrásiyáb and
the Arabs, ii, 92
invaded by Suhráb, ii, 130
lord of =Mahmúd, iv, 142
monarch of =Dáráb, vi, 21,
 26
and Sháhnáma compared,
 vi, 193
invaded by Munzir and
Nu'mán, vi, 397
Rúm's tribute to explaine.l,
 vii, 187
- Íránián, Írániáns, 144, 147-151,
 153, 155, 163-167, 171,
 176, i, 9 and *passim*
neighbours of, i, 9
- Írániáns, historical relations of,
with Semites, i, 10
Assyrians, i, 10
Arabs, i, 11; vi, 17; ix,
 65 *seq.*
Greeks and Romans, i, 14
Aryans of India, i, 15
Túrániáns, i, 16 *seq.*
Kimmerians, i, 17
Scythians, i, 17
Parthians, i, 18
Alani, i, 19
Huns, i, 19
Turks, i, 20
traditional relations of, with
other Indo - Europeans,
Semites, and Túrániáns, i,
 54, 55, 56
revolt against Jamshíd and
summon Zahhák to Írána,
i, 139
chiefs of, imprisoned at
Sári, i, 363
plot for release with Igh-
riras, i, 363
inform Zál, i, 366
released by Kishwád, i,
 367
provided for by Zál, i,
 367
bewail Naudar, i, 364
wish to withdraw from the
Seven Stages, v, 135
encouraged to persevere by
Asfandiyár, v, 136
provoked to combat by
Zawára, v, 225
Sikandar's proclamation to,
 vi, 44
bewail themselves, vi, 48
counsel Dárá to come to
terms with Sikandar, vi,
 48
ask quarter of Sikandar, vi,
 51
hail Sikandar as ruler, vi, 56
after Yazdagird son of
 Shápúr's death meet for
counsel in Párs, vi, 394
Jawanví sent by, to Mun-
zir, vi, 397

- Iránians, offer prayer at the Fire-fane of Barzín, vi, 400
 loyal, support Bahrám Gúr, vi, 402
 procedure of, to elect a Sháh, vi, 403
 decide to reject Bahrám Gúr, vi, 403
 remonstrated with by Munzir, vi, 403
 object-lesson of, to Munzir, vi, 404
 accept Bahrám Gúr's proposal for settling the question of kingship by ordeal, vi, 406
 ask Munzir to intercede with Bahrám Gúr for them, vii, 9
 arrears of taxes of, cancelled, vii, 11
 levied by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 86
 resolve to submit to the Khán, vii, 87
 send Humái as envoy to the Khán, vii, 87
 letter of, to the Khán, vii, 87
 ask for Narsi's good offices with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 93
 lament for the death of Pírúz, vii, 169
 revolt against Kubád, vii, 195
 put Kubád in fetters, vii, 195
 ask pardon of Kubád, vii, 200
 pardoned by Kubád, vii, 200
 take Sakila, viii, 47
 chiefs received in audience by Hurmuzd, viii, 86
 consulted by Hurmuzd, viii, 94
 defeat the Khazars, viii, 96
 advise Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 102, 121, 239 *seq.*, 287
 Sáwa employs sorcery against, viii, 123
 encouraged by Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 124
- Iránian, Iránians, defeat the Turks, viii, 126
 revolt against Hurmuzd, viii, 156
 elect Bahrám Chúbina Sháh, viii, 243
 homage Shírwí, ix, 8
 choose two chiefs to visit Khusrau Parwíz in prison, ix, 9
 plot against Guráz, ix, 54
 go hunting with Guráz, ix, 55
 race, ix, 65
 enmity of, with Semite, i, 54; ix, 65
 announces arrival of Shu'ba Mughíra to Rustam, ix, 82
 defeat of, at Kádisíya, ix, 84
 retreat to Yazdagird, ix, 85
 -born, ix, 99
 defeat of, at Marv, ix, 116
 ambushed, ix, 118
- Irmá'il and Karmá'il, Zahhák's cooks, 140, i, 146
- Irmán, (Arman *q.v.*), i, 345, 358; iii, 12, 285, 292, 296, 311
 devastated by wild boars, iii, 290
- Irmánians (Armenians *q.v.*), 150, iii, 286
 complain to Kai Khusrau of the wild boars, iii, 290
- Iron steeds, Sikandar's, vi, 115
- Ísá (Jesus), viii, 276 *note*
- Ísdigird I (Yazdagird son of Shápúr), Sásánian king, vi, 371
- Ísdigird II (Yazdagird son of Bahrám Gúr), Sásánian king, vii, 153
- Ishmael, vi, 65, 120, 121
- Iskandar. *See* Sikandar.
- Iskandar, herb, vi, 26
- Iskandariya (Alexandria), 160, vi, 185
 Sikandar buried at, vi, 185
- Island, the=Meröe, vi, 65
- Islands, Male and Female, vi, 72
 origin of legend of, vi, 72

- Ismá'il. *See* Ishmael.
- Ismá'il, brother of Sultán Málí-múd, i, 21
- Isnapwí. *See* Ispanwí.
- Ispahán, city in 'Irak-i-'Ajamí, 146, i, 351; ii, 304, 399; iii, 109; vi, 57, 86, 87, 199, 201, 202, 210; vii, 6, 84, 214, 224; viii, 90 given to Gúdarz, ii, 78; iv, 129 arrival of Kai Khusráu at, ii, 396 bestowed on Gív by Kai Khusráu, iv, 298
- Ispanwí, slave-girl of Tazháv, iii, 14, 27, 77 taken captive by Bázhan, iii, 78
- Ispurúz, mountain in the neighbourhood of Mázandarán, ii, 38, 56, 57, iv, 136, 230
- Israffl, archangel, 160, vi, 78 Sikandar's interview with, vi, 83, 161
- Issedones, tribe situated on the Tarim basin in eastern Turkistán, iii, 192
- Issus, town, plain, and gulf in Cilicia, vi, 30 battle of, vi, 30, 31 Dárius' family taken prisoners at, vi, 31
- Istakhr (Persepolis), city in Párs, 142, 165, ii, 11, 22, 28, 339; vi, 57, 198, 199, 202, 211, 223, 225, 231, 326, 356, 386; vii, 83, 95, 188; viii, 90, 313; ix, 50, 54 buildings at, attributed to Humái, v, 293
- Dárá marches from, to encounter Sikandar, vi, 37, 46 returns to, vi, 44
- Sikandar crowned Sháh at, vi, 59 taken by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 227
- Istakhr, Ardshír Pápakán marches from, against the Kurds, vi, 230 returns victorious to, vi, 232 Yazdagird taken to, ix, 64 made Sháh at, ix, 65
- Istuvegu. *See* Astyages.
- Italy, vii, 218 Alexander of Epirus' expedition to, vi, 12 Alexander the Great's legendary expedition to, vi, 12, 30
- Iwán-i-Kerkh, vi, 327
- Izads (Yazatas), the, iii, 286
- Izid, viii, 75 Izid Gashasp, archscribe, 170, viii, 74 confusion in name of, viii, 75, 76 put to death by Hurmuzd, viii, 75, 83 malicious speech of, viii, 77 and *note*, 150 and *note* imprisoned, viii, 81 sends for high priest, viii, 81
- Izid Gashasp, Iránian warrior, viii, 103, 122, 136, 138, 149, 350, 353, 356 conducts spoil to Irán, viii, 148 goes hunting with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 156 speech of, viii, 165
- J
- JABALA BIN SÁLIM, viii, 73 Jacob of Sarúg, Syriac poet. Syriac Christian Legend of Alexander the Great versified by, vi, 15, 74, 78, 84
- Jádústán, vi, 109 and *note*
- Jagatai, mountain-range in Khurásán, v, 29
- Jahn, son of Afrásiyáb, Túránián hero, 152, i, 92; ii, 264, 268; iv, 156, 162, 200 *seq.*, 214

Jahn, son of Afrásiyáb, sent to guard Shída's rear, iv, 155 advances to the attack and is defeated by Kárán, iv, 178 stationed at the centre with Afrásiyáb, iv, 179 sent to the left with troops, iv, 180 Garsíwaz and, compel Afrásiyáb to quit the field, iv, 182 commands the right, iv, 190 helps to defend Gangbihisht, iv, 209 taken prisoner by Rustam, iv, 210 sent to Kai Káús, iv, 233 interned by Kai Káús, iv, 235 spurious passage about, iv, 272 *note*

Jahn, architect of throne of Tákhdís, viii, 391

Jahram (Chahram), 161, 163, city in Párs, vi, 44, 119, 202, 225, 237, 241, 268, 400; vii, 185; ix, 29, 61 Dárá goes to, vi, 44 desert of, vi, 401

Jáj (? Chách *q.v.*), iv, 150

Jalálpúr, city in the northern Punjáb, vi, 18

Jalulá, town north-east of Baghdád, i, 12, ix, 68 battle of, i, 12, ix, 68

Jam, son of Kubád and brother of Núshírwán, vii, 316 conspires against Núshírwán, vii, 316

Jámásp, chief minister of Sháh Gushtásp, 155, i, 42; ii, 9; v, 12, 22, 24 *seq.*, 58, 206, 216, 248; viii, 171, 393; ix, 26 omniscience of, v, 19, 48 answers, in conjunction with Zarír and Asfandiyár, Arjásp's letter, v, 42

Jámásp, foretells the death in battle of Ardshír, v, 49 Shídasp, v, 50 Girámi, v, 50 exploits of Nastúr, v, 50 death of Nívzár, v, 51 Zarír, v, 52, 70 *note* triumph of Asfandiyár, v, 52 defeat of Arjásp, v, 52 encourages Gushtásp to fight, v, 54 referred to, v, 59, 102 dissuades Gushtásp from avenging Zarír, v, 64, 68 made archmage of Fire-temple built by Gush-tásp, v, 75 sent to recall Asfandiyár to court, v, 80 *seq.* advises Gushtásp, when beleaguered by Arjásp, to release Asfandiyár, v, 97 volunteers to go to Asfandiyár, v, 97 reaches Gumbadán in disguise, v, 98 interview of, with Asfandiyár, v, 99 *seq.* sends for blacksmiths to unchain Asfandiyár, v, 101 sets off with Asfandiyár, Bahman, and Núsh Ázar, v, 103 foretells Asfandiyár's fate, v, 169 reproached by Bishútán, v, 254 advises Gushtásp to write to Bahman, v, 257 writes by Gushtásp's orders to recall Bahman, v, 258 Gushtásp tells his intention as to the succession to, v, 279 prophecy of, viii, 68 additions of, to throne of Tákhdís, viii, 392

Jámásp, son of Pírúz, 166, vi, 3 supersedes Kubád temporarily, vii, 184, 195

Jámászp, son of Pírúz, title of, vii, 186
 fate of, vii, 186, 200
 James, St., bishop of Edessa, i, 374
 James V of Scotland, vii, 3
 Bahrám Gúr's resemblance to, vii, 3
 Jamhúr, king of Hind, vii, 395, 396, 398, 399, 401, 403
 Jamshíd, son of Tahmúras, Sháh and culture-hero, 140, 164, i, 42, 90, 91; ii, 4, 33, 37, 168, 204, 358, 399; iii, 7, 57, 257, 273; iv, 63, 133, 149, 203, 206, 272, 274, 290; v, 32, 34, 38, 47, 180, 202, 215, 216, 245, 271, 284; vi, 45 and note, 172, 209; vii, 36 seq., 107, 162, 173, 211; viii, 22, 242, 269, 310, 332, 341, 387; ix, 25, 39, 103
 Reign of, 140, i, 129 seq.
 Note on, i, 129 seq.
 the Iránian Noah, i, 129
 meaning of, i, 130
 ascends the throne, i, 131
 greatness of, i, 131
 culture-hero, i, 132
 makes armour, i, 132
 raiment, i, 132
 institutes castes, i, 132
 great builder, i, 133
 introduces jewelry and perfumes, i, 133
 leechcraft, i, 133
 ship-building, i, 133
 carried by the dívs into the air, i, 133
 feast held in memorial of, i, 134
 fall of, i, 130, 134, 139
 Iránians revolt against, i, 139
 flight and death of, i, 139
 sisters of, married to Zahálák, i, 146
 found by Farídún, 140, i, 162
 referred to, iv, 304

Jamshíd, treasure of, found by Bahrám Gúr, 164, vii, 36 described, vii, 36
 Jandal, envoy of Farídún, 140, i, 177
 asks Sarv's daughters in marriage for Farídún's sons, i, 178
 informs Farídún of the outcome of his mission, i, 182
 Jandal, city in Hind, vii, 140
 monarch of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 seq.
 Jánfurúz, Iránian general, viii, 297
 Jánúsiyár, minister of Dárá, vi, 52, 88
 murders Dárá, vi, 52
 informs Sikandar of Dárá's murder, vi, 52
 arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53
 executed, vi, 56, 88
 Jaranjás, Túránian hero, iv, 156
 Jaríra, daughter of Pírán, wife of Siyáwush, and mother of Farúd, 147, i, 92; ii, 3; iii, 43
 married to Siyáwush, ii, 268 seq.
 birth of her son Farúd, ii, 291
 referred to, iii, 39
 advises Farúd, iii, 42
 dream of, iii, 63
 kills herself, iii, 66
 Jarmana, place, ix, 93
 Jasha, king, i, 67, 68
 Játakas, vii, 383
 Jats, people of north-western India, vii, 6
 fabulous origin of, vii, 6
 Jawánví, Iránian magnate, vi, 373; vii, 8, 10
 goes as ambassador to Munzir, vi, 398
 interview of, with Munzir, vi, 398 seq.
 recognises the divine Grace in Bahrám Gúr, vi, 398 seq.

- Jawánwi, suggests a course of action to Munzir, vi, 400
 returns to Frán, vi, 400
 bidden by Bahrám Gúr to remit the arrears of taxes, vii, 11
- Jaz (Gaz), town north-west of Ispahán, vi, 337; vii, 76, 79, 80
 tribute of, remitted, vii, 82
- Jerusalem, v, 306 *note*, vi, 81; viii, 191, 196
 Elevation of the True Cross at, ix, 43
- Jesus, i, 42; viii, 191; ix, 10
 sayings of, viii, 276 and *note*
 Cross of, viii, 380
 laughter of, viii, 191, 380
- Jew, Jews, 168, vi, 356; vii, 13, 273; viii, 21, 67, 276
 Faith of, vi, 95
 Bahrám Gúr's adventure with a, vii, 16 *seq.*
 persecution of, vii, 153
 Zúrán's plot with a, against Mahbúd, vii, 320 *seq.*
 bewitches Núshírwán's food, vii, 321
 makes confession to Núshírwán, vii, 325
 Fables of Bidpai, vogue of largely due to, vii, 383
- Jewelled tree, Kai Khusrau's, iii, 329
- Jeweller, a, 164. *See* Máhiyár.
 daughter of, 164
- Jewels, discovery of, i, 133
 Palace of, 160
- Jhilam (Hydaspes), river in the Punjáb, vi, 18, 31, 63
- Jihún (Oxus *q.v.*) river, 146, 152, i, 215, 219, 345, 375; ii, 15, 19 *seq.*, 99, 229, 237, 248, 258, 311, 340, 390, 394, 399, 404; iii, 58, 159; iv, 10, 12, 20, 53, 60, 79, 153, 154, 157, 181, 184, 187, 194, 255, 304; v, 12, 29, 40, 45, 48, 203; vii, 92, 165, 166, 180, 329, 338, 340; viii, 94, 99,
- Jihún—*cont.*
 134, 174, 332; ix, 77, 115, 118
 boundary between Frán and Túráñ i, 71, 370, 371
 confused with the Aras, i, 370
 fords of, viii, 331
- Jins, ix, 81
 Johari Das, Babu, quoted, vi, 81
 Joktan, vi, 65
 = Kahtán, vi, 65
- Joshua, vi, 77
 Moses and, Muhammadan legend of, vi, 77
- Jovian (Bazánísh), Roman Emperor (A.D. 363-4), vi, 324 *seq.*; viii, 41
 confused with Valerian, vi, 324
- Judaism, vi, 327
- Judda, the port of Mecca, 159, vi, 121
- Sikandar arrives at, vi, 121
- Julian (Yánús), Roman Emperor (A.D. 361-363), i, 12; vi, 325
 confused with Valerian, vi, 324
 not an emperor in the Sháhnáma, vi, 324, 326
- expedition of, against Persia, vi, 324 *seq.*
- Julius Valerius, early Latin translator of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 61, 66 *seq.*, 71, 74, 78, 79, 81
- Jund-i-Shápúr (Gund-i-Shápúr *q.v.*), city, vi, 256
 = Rás-Shápúr, vi, 256
 foundation of attributed to Ardshír Pápákán, vi, 266
- Jupiter, planet, i, 72, 161, 188, 281; ii, 115; iii, 318; iv, 143, 295; v, 256; vi, 138, 172, 292; vii, 49, 248, 357; viii, 28, 152, 157, 395
- Justin I, Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 316

Justin II, Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 212; viii, 41
 Justinian, Eastern Roman Emperor, i, 16; vii, 212, 219, 317; viii, 41
 silkworm introduced into the West during reign of, vi, 204
 bargains of, with Núshírwán, vii, 214, 216 *seq.*
 protection of Hárith bin Jabala by, leads to war with Núshírwán, vii, 217
 successes of, in the West, vii, 217
 closes the schools of Athens, vii, 280
 Juyá, a div, ii, 71
 slain by Rustam, ii, 72

K

KAABA, the, 159, vi, 65
 account of, vi, 65
 Sikandar's expedition to, vi, 67, 83, 119
 Kabáb, small pieces of meat skewered together for roasting, ii, 103; iii, 69; iv, 121; v, 152; viii, 250
 Kabísa, viii, 188
 Kabdún, king of Misr and the progenitor of the Copts, vi, 121
 welcomes Sikandar, vi, 121
 praises Kaidáfa to Sikandar, vi, 122
 Kabúda, 147, one of Afrásiyáb's herdsmen, iii, 73
 slain by Bahrám, iii, 74
 Kából, Kábulistán (Afghánistán), city and country, 141, 157, i, 57, 252, 264, 268, 277, 282, 283, 286, 294, 298, 299 *note*, 300, 302 *seq.*, 316, 357, 378; ii, 12, 18, 21, 92, 228, 260, 271, 341; iii, 17, 35, 145, 153, 165, 174, 186, 190, 202, 206, 321; iv, 14, 65,

Kából—*cont.*

146, 278, 283, 292; v, 126, 170, 173, 224, 242, 251, 260, 263 *seq.*, 271, 273 *seq.*, 284, 287; vi, 207; vii, 173
 Buddhism in, i, 15
 superseded by Brahmanism, i, 16
 dagger of, i, 219; vi, 320
 Zál visits, i, 256
 Beauty of = Rúdába, i, 262, 316
 monarch of = Mihráb, i, 294, 365
 rejoicings at, over Zál's successful embassy to Minúchihr, i, 314
 preparations at, to welcome Sám and Zál, i, 315
 falchion of, i, 376; ix, 98
 Shaghád sent to be brought up at, v, 264
 king of, 157, v, 264, 271
 daughter of, marries Shaghád, v, 264
 Shaghád and, plot against Rustam, v, 265 *seq.*
 gives a feast, v, 266
 pretends to quarrel with Shaghád, v, 266
 treachery of, v, 268 *seq.*
 abases himself before Rustam, v, 269
 entertains Rustam and invites him to hunt, v, 269
 hypocrisy of, v, 271
 Farámarz sent against, v, 274, 276
 defeated and put to death with all his kin, v, 277
 tribute of, question about, v, 265
 Farámarz makes a Zábulí king of, v, 277
 monarch of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
 Káchár Báshí, city in Túrán, ii, 258, 360, 361; vii, 330, 358; ix, 117

- Kádisí, Kádisíya, town on one of the canals west of the Euphrates and south of Mashad 'Alí (Nedjef), vi, 119, 330; ix, 5, 73, 74, 77, 78
 battle of, i, 12, 143; ix, 5, 67, 69
 date of, ix, 67
 canal of, ix, 69
 Rustam advances to, ix, 73
 Kaékasta (Urumiah *q.v.*), lake, iv, 137
 Káf, mythical Mount Alburz (*q.v.*), ii, 83, 404; iv, 65, 149; viii, 66 and *note*
 Kásfur, king of Bídád, 149, iii, 191
 worsts the Iránians, iii, 244
 slain by Rustam, iii, 245
 Kahtán, desert of, i, 287
 Kahtán, the Arabic form of Joktan, the progenitor of the southern Arabs, vi, 65, 120
 Kai, meaning of, ii, 8
 Kaián, Kaiánian (*see* Kai), ii, 8, 9, 22, 404; iii, 5 *seq.*, 9, 14, 43, 67, 112, 147, 307, 318, 320, 328, 342; iv, 5 *seq.*, 24, 33, 35, 65, 110, 127, 150, 166, 175, 234, 260, 262, 269, 273, 279, 285, 286, 289, 293, 308, 319, 324; v, 7 *seq.*, 10, 47, 49, 52, 54, 57, 59, 60, 67 *seq.*, 73 *seq.*, 79, 86, 91, 97, 122, 168, 203, 210, 223, 253, 254, 282, 288, 289, 291, 311; vi, 9 *seq.*, 17, 34, 48, 55, 57, 59, 81, 112, 125, 141, 179, 180, 194, 199, 200, 202, 210, 223, 237 *note*; viii, 65, 216
 dynasty, i, 49, 373; ii, 7 *seq.*; iii, 5 *seq.*; iv, 5 *seq.*; v, 7 *seq.*; vi, 9 *seq.*
 genealogical table, ii, 3
 birth-mark, ii, 372
 stature, ii, 375
 saying, iv, 33
- Kaián, throne, viii, 214
 race, viii, 217
 crown, ix, 11, 105
 Kaiánúsh (Katáiún), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91, 158, v, 261
 referred to, i, 147, 165
 Purmáya and, summon the smiths to Farídún, i, 158
 go with Farídún against Zahhák, i, 159
 attempt to kill Farídún, i, 160
 Kai Árash, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 3, 23, 204, 205; vi, 197, 210, 228; viii, 216
 Kai Armín, son of Kai Kubád, ii, 3, 23
 Kaid, Indian king, 159, 161, i, 55; vi, 61, 83, 91 *seq.*, 112
 identical with Mandanes (Dandamis), vi, 62
 consults Mihrán about his dreams, vi, 92 *seq.*
 dreams of, interpreted by Mihrán, vi, 94, *seq.*
 Four Wonders of, 159, vi, 94, 97 and *note*, 99 *seq.*
 daughter, 159, vi, 94, 100, 102, 104
 described, vi, 100, 102, 104
 married to Sikandar, vi, 104
 reference in Sikandar's Will to, vi, 182
 cup, described, vi, 94, 100
 principle of, explained, vi, 109
 leech, vi, 94, 101
 prescribes for Sikandar, vi, 107
 sage, vi, 94, 101
 =Calanus, vi, 62
 Sikandar's encounter of wits with, vi, 62, 104 *seq.*
 explains the principle of the cup, vi, 109

Kaid, sends his Four Wonders and other gifts to Sikandar, vi, 103
 revival of, in legend, vi, 256, 266
 prophecy of, vi, 256, 257, 267
 consulted by Ardshír Pápa-kán, vi, 266
 advice of, to Ardshír Pápa-kán, vi, 267, 273
 Kaidáfa (Cilicia), vi, 294, 297
 Kaidáfa (Kandake, Candace *q.v.*), 159, vi, 83, 121 *seq.*, 325
 obtains Sikandar's portrait, vi, 122
 praised by Kabtún to Sikandar, vi, 122
 receives a letter from Sikandar, vi, 123
 answers Sikandar's letter, vi, 123
 welcomes Kaidrúsh on his return from captivity, vi, 127
 receives Naitkún (Sikandar) graciously, vi, 128
 state of, described, vi, 128, 130, 133
 gives audiences to Naitkún (Sikandar), vi, 128 *seq.*
 recognises Sikandar, vi, 129 *seq.*
 hears Sikandar's embassage, vi, 129
 covenants of, with Sikandar, vi, 132, 138
 warns Sikandar against Tainúsh, vi, 133
 chides Tainúsh, vi, 135
 takes counsel with Sikandar about Tainúsh, vi, 135
 approves of Sikandar's scheme, vi, 137
 takes counsel with her nobles, vi, 139
 gifts of, to Sikandar, vi, 140
 Sikandar's final message to, vi, 143
 Kaidrúsh (Kandaros, Candaules), son of Kaidáfa (Candace), vi, 134, 135

Kaidrúsh, wife of, vi, 66
 taken with his wife, by Sikandar, vi, 125
 brought with his wife before Naitkún, vi, 126
 sentenced with his wife to death, vi, 126
 pardoned with his wife, vi, 126
 gratitude of, vi, 127
 returns to Kaidáfa, vi, 127
 presents Nautkún (Sikandar) to Kaidáfa, vi, 127
 Kaihan. *See* Kaid.
 Kai Káús, son of Kai Kubád and Sháh, 143-147, 152, 153, i, 42, 338; ii, 3, 8 *seq.*, 23 *seq.*, 33 *seq.*, 54 *seq.*, 61 *seq.*, 109, 110, 127, 130, 233, 243 *seq.*, 264, 269 *seq.*, 273, 284, 286, 290, 296, 301, 316, 318, 319, 335, 347, 361, 364, 371, 372, 383, 401, iii, 7, 9, 13, 14, 20 *seq.*, 24, 30, 45, 51, 84, 85, 88, 90, 93, 96, 113, 145, 147, 166, 174, 236, 238, 239, 289, 307, 327; iv, 13, 61, 129, 135, 136, 162, 167 *seq.*, 185, 191, 199, 201, 203, 217, 218, 232 *seq.*, 254, 256 *seq.*, 269 *seq.*, 278, 287, 289, 290, 292, 295 *seq.*, 306, 310, 314, 321 *seq.*; v, 29, 30, 116, 173, 174, 190, 203, 207, 208, 210, 215, 216; vii, 74, 107, 115; viii, 22, 104, 168, 270, 341; ix, 25
 Reign of, 143, ii, 25 *seq.*
 Notes on, ii, 25 *seq.*, 79 *seq.*, 118, 188 *seq.*, 335
 visits Rustam, ii, 83
 tempted by dívs, ii, 30 *seq.*, 82, 102 *seq.*
 goes to Mount Káf, ii, 83
 defeats Afrásiyáb and regains Írán, ii, 100
 makes Rustam paladin of paladins, ii, 101

- Kai Káús, buildings of, on Mount Alburz, ii, 81, 101
flying-machine of, ii, 103
fall of, from the sky, ii, 104 : v, 174
repentance of, ii, 105
hears of Suhráb and summons his chiefs, ii, 136 seq.
bids Tús hang Rustam and Gív, ii, 143
apology of, to Rustam, ii, 147
encampment of, described, ii, 153
overthrown by Suhráb, ii, 160
refuses to cure Suhráb, ii, 178
attempts to console Rustam, ii, 181
marries the future mother of Siyáwush, ii, 194
receives Siyáwush at court, ii, 198
bestows Kuhistán upon Siyáwush, ii, 199
conduct of, in the case of Siyáwush and Súdába, ii, 200 seq.
sends Siyáwush to fight Afrásiyáb, ii, 225
rejects terms of peace and quarrels with Rustam, ii, 244 seq.
hears of the defection of Siyáwush, ii, 258
grief of, at the death of Siyáwush, ii, 337
hears of Kai Khusrau's arrival in Írán, ii, 395
receives Kai Khusrau, ii, 397
rewards Gív, ii, 399
provides for Farangís, ii, 399
arbitrates between Tús and Gúdarz, ii, 403 seq.
welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from the castle of Bahman, ii, 410
- Kai Káús, requires Kai Khusrau to swear vengeance on Afrásiyáb, iii, 21
welcomes Gív and hears his tidings of Kai Khusrau, iv, 234
gives a feast, iv, 234
deals with the captives, iv, 235
proclaims the conquest of Túrán and Chín, iv, 236
rewards Gív, iv, 236
sends Gív back with letter to Kai Khusrau, iv, 238
hears that Kai Khusrau is returning and goes with the nobles to welcome him, iv, 256
receives gifts from, and hears the adventures of, Kai Khusrau, iv, 257
gives a feast in honour of Kai Khusrau, iv, 257
counsels a pilgrimage to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 258
Kai Khusrau and, hear from Gúdarz of Húm's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 264
send for Garsíwaz and put him to the torture, iv, 265
make thanksgiving before Ázargashasp, iv, 269
go in state to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 270
prays that he may die, iv, 270
obsequies of, iv, 271
treasure of, called "The Bride" bestowed by Kai Khusrau on Gív, Zál, and Rustam, iv, 295
favour shown by Luhrásپ to the grandsons of, iv, 318, 321 seq.
grandsons of, go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360
hail Gushtásپ as Sháh, iv, 362

Kai Káús, Rustam's patent from, v, 203
 Kai Khusráu, son of Siyáwush and Farangís, Sháh, 146-154, 160, i, 42, 369; ii, 3, 9, 25, 104, 189, 190, 334 seq., 386 seq.; iii, 13 seq., 47, 55, 57, 66, 106, 108, 111 seq., 132, 134, 166, 173, 175, 186, 191, 197, 198, 202, 205, 211, 226, 228, 238 seq., 249, 250, 271, 277, 285, 286, 289, 294 seq., 326 seq., 338, 353 seq.; iv, 7 seq., 19, 21, 30, 31, 36, 56 seq., 65, 66, 71, 72, 76 seq., 90, 99, 115, 144 seq., 152, 153, 237 seq., 262, 267 seq., 317 seq., 319, 321; v, 10, 12, 21, 39, 173, 188, 203, 204, 208, 215, 284, 289; vi, 79, 177; vii, 120, 173, 359; viii, 148, 219, 270, 332, 392; ix, 25, 103
 fravashi of, ii, 82
 identical with Cyrus the Great in legend, ii, 9, 190 prophesies respecting, ii, 310, 372, 390
 birth of, ii, 325 seq.
 account of youth of, ii, 328 seq.
 questioned by Afrásiyáb, ii, 332
 dwells at Siyáwushgird, ii, 333
 sent to Khután, ii, 356
 Máchín, ii, 357 note
 described by Surúsh, ii, 363
 Gúdarz sends Gív to seek, ii, 364 seq.
 recalled, ii, 370
 found by Gív, ii, 370
 birth-mark of, ii, 372, iii, 49 note
 saves Píráñ's life, ii, 387
 at the Jihán, ii, 391 seq.
 arrives at Zam, ii, 394
 visits Gúdarz at Ispahán, ii, 396

Kai Khusráu, tells his story to Kai Káús, ii, 397
 praises Gív to Kai Káús, ii, 398
 goes to Istakhr, ii, 399 enthroned as Sháh, ii, 400, 411 supported by Gúdarz and opposed by Tús, ii, 400 seq.
 letter of, to the defenders of the castle of Bahman, ii, 407 establishes Fire-worship at the castle of Bahman, ii, 409 pardons Tús, ii, 410 Reign of, 147, iii, 7 seq.
 Notes on, iii, 7 seq., 108, 191, 271, 285 seq.; iv, 7, 135 seq.
 last link with the Vedas, iii, 7 longest in respect of subject matter in the poem, iii, 7 divisions of, iii, 7 episodes of, iii, 7 warlike character of, iii, 8 subject-matter of, iii, 8 accession of, iii, 17 goes on a hunting expedition, iii, 19 to the temple of Ázár-gashasp, iii, 20 swears to take vengeance on Afrásiyáb, iii, 21 prepares for war, iii, 23 seq.
 offers reward for the head of Paláshán, iii, 26 crown of Tazháv, iii, 27 slave of Tazháv, iii, 27 head of Tazháv, iii, 28 burning the barricade at the Kásá rúd, iii, 28 going on an embassage to Afrásiyáb, iii, 29 warns Tús to avoid Kalát, iii, 39

Kai Khusrau, hears of the death of Farúl and of the defeat of the Iránians, iii, 84
wrath of, with Tús, iii, 84 *seq.*, 111
writes to Faríburz, iii, 84
disgraces Tús, iii, 86
imprisons Tús, iii, 87
pardons Tús and the fráni-
ans, iii, 114
hears of the peril of the Iránians on Mount Hamá-
wan and summons Rustam, iii, 142 *seg.*
sends Rustam to succour the fráni-
ans, iii, 145
furthers the suit of Farí-
burz to Farangís, iii,
147
hears of Rustam's victory, iii, 239
disposes of the captives and spoil, iii, 240
sends gifts to Rustam and the host, iii, 241
goes to meet Rustam on his return in triumph, iii, 267
gives a feast to the chiefs, iii, 268
rewards Rustam, iii, 269
holds a court and hears of the doings of the dív Akwán, iii, 273
writes to summon Rustam, iii, 274
goes to welcome Rustam on his return from slaying the dív Akwán, iii, 282
rewards Rustam, iii, 283
hears at a feast of the case of the Irmánians, iii, 289
calls for volunteers, iii, 291
sends Bízhan and Gurgín to Irmán, iii, 292
comforts Gív for the loss of Bízhan, iii, 315, 318
imprisons Gurgín, iii, 317
promises Gív to consult the divining-cup about Bízhan, iii, 317

Kai Khusrau sends Gív to summon Rustam, iii, 319
sends the host to meet Rustam, iii, 327
welcomes Rustam, iii, 328
jewelled tree of, iii, 329
requests Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 330
releases Gurgín at Rustam's request, iii, 333
equips Rustam for his quest of Bízhan, iii, 333
welcomes Rustam on his return, iii, 354
rewards Rustam and his comrades, iii, 356
holds converse with Bízhan, iii, 356
gives gifts to Manízha, iii, 356
hears that the Túráni-
ans are invading frán, iv, 12
summons his paladins, iv, 13
host, iv, 14
sends Rustam to Hindústán, iv, 14
Luhrásپ to the Aláns, iv, 14
Ashkash to Khárazm, iv, 15
Gúdarz to Túrán, iv, 15
orders Gúdarz to negotiate with Pírán, iv, 15
receives letter from Gúdarz, iv, 58
rewards Hajír, the bearer, iv, 58
prays for victory, iv, 58
sends Hajír with answer, iv, 61
leads a host to aid Gúdarz, iv, 62
referred to, iv, 85
presage of, that Pírán would be slain by Gúdarz, iv, 85, 88
reaches Gúdarz, iv, 111, 126
receives Gúdarz and the other champions, iv, 126
Gurwí brought by Gív before, iv, 127

- Kai Khusrav, laments over Píráñ, iv, 127
 buries Píráñ and the Túránnian champions, iv, 128
 puts Gurví to death, iv, 129
 rewards the host, iv, 129
 gives Ispahán to Gúdarz, iv, 129
 pardons the Túránnian host, iv, 131
 amulet of, iv, 133
 heals Gustaham, iv, 133
 summons reinforcements, iv, 134, 145
 Great War of, with Afrásiyáb, i52, iv, 135 *seq.*
 exemption of, from death, iv, 138
 recalls the troops under Luhrásp, Rustam, and Ashkash, iv, 145
 stations Tús on his right with Káwa's standard, iv, 146
 gives the right wing to Rustam, iv, 147
 left wing to Gúdarz, iv, 147
 commands to various chiefs, iv, 148, 149
 hears of Afrásiyáb's passage of the Jihún, iv, 157
 sends troops to the aid of Gustaham, son of Naudar, at Balkh, iv, 157
 Ashkash with a host to Zam, iv, 157
 marches to Khárazm, iv, 157
 surveys the seat of war and entrenches the host, iv, 157
 Shída's embassage to, iv, 161
 sends Káran to welcome Shída, iv, 165
 proposes to fight in single combat, iv, 166
 rejects the Iránians' suggestions of a peace, iv, 167
 accepts Shída's challenge, iv, 168, 169
 Kai Khusrav, sends Káran with a reply to Shída, iv, 168
 arms to fight with Shída, iv, 171
 makes Ruhhám his standard-bearer, iv, 171
 sends instructions to the host, iv, 171
 parley of, with Shída, iv, 172
 accepts Shída's challenge to a wrestling-bout, iv, 175
 gives Ruhhám charge of his steed, iv, 175
 wrestles and overthrows Shída, iv, 175
 instructs Ruhhám to bury Shída, iv, 176
 spares the life of Shída's interpreter and bids him return to Afrásiyáb with tidings, iv, 176
 prays for vengeance on, and attacks, Afrásiyáb, iv, 178
 bids Shammákh attack, iv, 180
 attacks with Rustam from the centre, iv, 180
 fights with Ustuklá, Flá and Burzúyalá, iv, 182
 returns to camp, iv, 183
 hears of Afrásiyáb's retreat, iv, 184
 offers praise to God, iv, 184
 pursues Afrásiyáb, iv, 185 *seq.*
 marches to Sughd, iv, 188
 hears tidings of Afrásiyáb, iv, 188
 sends Gustaham, son of Naudar, to Chách, iv, 188
 Rustam to encounter Tawurg, iv, 188
 marches from Sughd and reduces the Turkman strongholds, iv, 189
 to the Gulgaryún, iv, 189
 commands the centre, iv, 191
 prays for victory, iv, 191

- Kai Khusrau, hears of the defeat of Kurákhán by Gustaham, son of Naudar, iv, 193
 hears of Rustam's defeat of Tawurg, iv, 193
 warns Rustam to beware of Afrásiyáb, iv, 194
 plunders the camp of, and pursues, Afrásiyáb, iv, 195
 besieges Gang-bihisht, iv, 198, 208 *seq.*
 converses with Rustam, iv, 198, 199, 222
 receives Jahn in audience, iv, 200
 declines Afrásiyáb's proposals for peace, iv, 207
 with Rustam, Gustaham, son of Naudar, and Gúdarz, assails Gang-bihisht on all sides, iv, 208 *seq.*
 prays for victory, iv, 208
 takes Gang-bihisht by storm, iv, 209 *seq.*
 searches vainly for Afrásiyáb, iv, 212
 gives the spoil of Gang-bihisht to the troops, iv, 217
 grants quarter to the Turk-mans and assumes the government of Túrán, iv, 217
 dwells for a while at Gang-bihisht, iv, 218
 leaves Gúdarz and Farhád at Gang-bihisht, iv, 219
 marches against Afrásiyáb, iv, 220
 rejects Afrásiyáb's overtures, iv, 223
 fight a general engagement against Afrásiyáb, iv, 223, 226
 entrenches his troops and prepares with Tús and Rustam for a night-attack from Afrásiyáb, iv, 224
- Kai Khusrau, repulses Afrásiyáb's night-attack, iv, 225
 defeats Afrásiyáb, iv, 227
 receives the submission of Afrásiyáb's army, iv, 228
 gives a feast, iv, 228
 offers praise to God, iv, 228
 returns to Gang-bihisht, iv, 228
 accepts the submission of the Khán and Faghfúr, iv, 229
 resolves to pursue Afrásiyáb to Gang-dízh, iv, 231
 plan of, opposed by the host, iv, 231
 supported by Rustam, iv, 231
 agreed to by the host, iv, 232
 sends Gív with Afrásiyáb's captive kindred to Kai Káús, iv, 232 *seq.*
 leaves Gustaham, son of Naudar, in command at Gang-bihisht and marches to Chín, iv, 238
 demands facilities from the Khán, the Faghfúr, and the king of Makrán, iv, 238
 marches through Khutan, iv, 240
 welcomed by the Faghfúr and the Khán of Chín, iv, 240
 stays three months in Chín, iv, 241
 leaves Rustam in Chín and marches to Makrán, iv, 241
 sends an embassy to the king of Makrán, iv, 241
 gives honourable burial to the king of Makrán, iv, 243
 stops the pillage of Makrán, iv, 243
 stays a year in Makrán, iv, 244
 makes ready a fleet, iv, 244

Kai Khusrav, leaves Ashkash as governor and marches to the desert, iv, 244
 voyage of, iv, 245
 wonders of, iv, 245
 lands, iv, 246
 appoints Gív governor, iv, 246
 receives the submission of the chiefs, iv, 247
 seeks for tidings of Gang-dizh and of Afrásiyáb, iv, 247
 marches to Gang-dizh, iv, 247
 forbids his troops to injure Gang-dizh, iv, 247
 enters Gang-dizh, iv, 248
 searches for Afrásiyáb, iv, 248
 remains a year at Gang-dizh, iv, 249
 urged by his paladins to return to Frán, iv, 249
 appoints a governor for Gang-dizh, iv, 249
 distributes treasures at Gang-dizh, iv, 250
 marches seaward from Gang-dizh, iv, 250
 welcomed by Gív, iv, 250
 crosses the sea to Makrán, iv, 251
 welcomed in Makrán by Ashkash and the chiefs, iv, 251
 appoints a governor for Makrán, iv, 251
 marches to Chín, iv, 251
 welcomed by Rustam, iv, 251
 confirms the Faghfúr and Khán in the possession of Máchín and Chín, iv, 252
 goes with Rustam to Siyáwushgird, iv, 252
 rewards Rustam and Gív, iv, 252
 welcomed by Gustaham, son of Naudar, iv, 252
 goes to Gang-bihisht, iv, 253

Kai Khusrav, prays for satisfaction on Afrásiyáb, iv, 253
 dwells for a year in Gang-bihisht, iv, 254
 desires to return to Kai Káús, iv, 254
 leaves Gustaham, son of Naudar, as viceroy, iv, 254
 carries off treasure from Chín and Makrán, iv, 254
 arrives at Chách, iv, 255
 Sughd, iv, 255
 met by Khúzán and Tálímán, iv, 255
 makes offerings to the Fire-temple at Bukhárá, iv, 255
 crosses the Jíhún, iv, 255
 arrives at Balkh, iv, 255
 welcomed everywhere by the people, iv, 255
 goes by Tálíkán, the Marvrúd, Níshápúr, and Dámaghán to Rai, iv, 255
 stays two weeks at Rai, iv, 256
 announces his approach to Kai Káús, iv, 256
 goes to Baghdád and thence to Párs, iv, 256
 reception of, by Kai Káús, iv, 256
 presents gifts, and tells his adventures, to Kai Káús, iv, 257
 has a feast given in his honour by Kai Káús, iv, 257
 rewards the troops, iv, 258
 takes counsel with Kai Káús concerning Afrásiyáb, iv, 258
 goes with Kai Káús on a pilgrimage to the temple of Azargashasp, iv, 258
 Kai Káús and, hear from Gúdarz of Hún's adventure with Afrásiyáb, iv, 264

- Kai Khusrau, and Kai Káús, send
for Garsíwaz, and put him
to the torture, iv, 265
slays Afrásiyáb, iv, 268
Garstwaz, iv, 269
Kai Káús and, make thanks-
giving before Ázargash-
asp, iv, 269
treasurer of, makes gifts to
Ázargashasp, iv, 269
sends letters announcing
his triumph to all the
chiefs, iv, 270
holds festival and bestows
treasure, iv, 270
goes with Kai Káús in state
to the temple of Ázar-
gashasp, iv, 270
performs the obsequies of
Kai Káús, iv, 271
assumes the crown as sole
Sháh, iv, 272
becomes world-weary, iv,
272
closes his court and with-
draws to his oratory, iv
274
prays that he may be taken
from the world, iv, 274
passes a week in prayer, iv,
274, 279
remonstrated with by the
nobles, iv, 275, 279
replies to the nobles, iv, 276
279
passes five weeks in prayer,
iv, 280
hears from Surúsh that his
prayer is granted, iv,
280
bidden to appoint Luhrásp
as his successor, iv, 281
puts off his royal robes, iv,
281
receives Zál, Rustam, and
others in audience, iv, 283
seq.
pardons Zál, iv, 291
orders an assembly to be
held on the plain, iv,
291
- Kai Khusrau, treasure of, dis-
posal of, iv, 294
found by Sikandar, 160,
vi, 176
charge of, to Gúdarz, iv, 294
gifts of, to Gív, Zál, and
Rustam, iv, 295
Gustaham, iv, 295
Gúdarz, iv, 295
Fariburz, iv, 295
Bízhan, iv, 295
Zál's companions, iv, 297
confirms Rustam in pos-
session of Nímrúz, iv, 297;
v, 203
bestows Kum and Ispahán
on Gív, iv, 298
confirms the charge of
Káwa's flag, and gives
Khurásán, to Tús, iv, 300
summons and crowns Luh-
rásp, iv, 300
Zál's protest to, against
Luhrásp's succession to,
iv, 301
justifies his choice of Luh-
rásp, iv, 301
takes leave of the Iránians,
iv, 303
women of, lament for him,
iv, 304
commends his women to the
honour of Luhrásp, iv, 305
dismisses the Iránians, iv,
305
counsels Luhrásp, iv, 305
bids Luhrásp farewell, iv,
306
sets forth on his pilgrimage
with some of his chiefs,
iv, 306
Indian parallel, iv, 138
again appealed to by the
Iránians, iv, 306
reply of, iv, 307
bids his chiefs return, iv, 307
rests with his remaining
chiefs by a spring, iv, 307
prepares for his passing, iv,
308
farewells his chiefs, iv, 308

- Kai Khusrau, warns his chiefs
of the coming of the snow,
iv, 308
 disappears, iv, 308
- Kai Kubád, Sháh and founder
of the Kaiánian dynasty,
142, i, 42, 373, 374; ii, 3,
8, 12, 14, 16, 18 *seq.*, 26,
33, 34, 36, 37, 87, 143,
144, 249, 260, 270, 274,
327, 336, 363, 390, 394;
iii, 34, 49, 51, 57, 144;
iv, 35, 70, 149, 168, 201,
283, 298, 302; v, 174,
180, 188, 189, 202, 205,
210, 221, 272; vi, 197,
210; vii, 37, 74, 115, 120,
173; viii, 89, 170, 260,
270, 310, 332; ix, 25
brought by Rustam from
Mount Alburz, i, 382 *seq.*
tells his dream to Rustam,
i, 385
accepted by Zál and the
other chiefs as Sháh, i, 387
Reign of, 142, ii, 11
 Note on, ii, 11
origin of, ii, 11 and *note*
makes peace with Afrá-
siyáb, ii, 20
gifts of, to Zál and Rustam,
ii, 21
descendants of, commanded
by Diláfrúz, stationed on
Kai Khusrau's left hand,
iv, 147
- Kai Manush, vi, 200
- Kai Pashín, son of Kai Kubád,
ii, 3, 23, 204, 205; iv,
302
- Kais, Arab chief, entertains
Khusrau Parwíz, viii,
250
- Kaiser Friedrich Museum, viii,
192
- Kait. *See* Kaid.
- Kai Ugt, vi, 200
- Kaiwán, Iránian statistician, vii,
11
- Kaiwán, calculates the arrears of
taxes, vii, 11
- Kákula, Túránián hero, iv, 188
 reinforces Afrásiyáb, iv, 188
- Kákwi (*cf.* Karkwi), grandson of
Zahhák, 141, i, 226
 attacks the Iránians, i, 225
 defeated and slain by Minú-
chihr, i, 227
- Kaláhúr, warrior of Mázandarán,
ii, 67
 tries a handgrip with Rus-
tam, ii, 67
- Kalát, stronghold, iii, 39; ix, 91
home of Farúd, iii, 39
- Kai Khusrau bids Tús to
avoid, iii, 39
- Tús marches to, iii, 40
captured by the Iránians,
iii, 66
- Kalát-i-Nádirí, stronghold, ii,
189; iii, 14
described, iii, 14
- Kalú (Nereis), daughter of Alex-
ander in the Pseudo-Cal-
listhenes, vi, 77
- Andreas, the cook, and,
legend of, vi, 77
- Kalíla and Dimna, Book of, 169.
See Fables of Bidpai.
- Kálfniyús (Nicephorium, Callini-
cus, Warígh *q.v.*, Rakka),
city situated at the junc-
tion of the Belikh and the
Euphrates, 167, viii, 188
taken by Núshírwán, vii,
218, 257
- Kalú, mountain in Túrán, ii, 328.
Pírán sends Kai Khusrau
to be brought up on, ii,
328
goes to see Kai Khusrau
at, ii, 329
- Kálús, Rúman chief, iv, 356
sent as envoy to Ilyás, iv,
352, 358
 Luhrásp, iv, 357
entertained by Luhrásp, iv,
357

- Kálús, describes Gushtásp to Luhrásپ, iv, 358
dismissed with honour, iv, 359
- Kámús, Túráńian hero, 148, 149, iii, 107, 151, 152, 161, 162, 164 seq., 168 seq., 172, 176, 178, 181 seq., 200, 207, 209, 213, 216, 224, 229, 232, 235, 241, 242, 251, 252, 256, 268, 269; iv, 297; v, 167, 199, 220
- Story of, of Kashán, 148, iii, 108 seq.
- Firdausí on, iii, 269
comes to the aid of Píráń, iii, 151
plan of campaign of, adopted, iii, 162
leads the attack, iii, 168
hears of the coming of Rustam, iii, 175
Rustum described by Píráń to, iii, 183
challenges Rustam, iii, 187
parleys with Rustam, iii, 188
fights, and is taken prisoner by, Rustam, iii, 189
end of, iii, 190
- Kanábad, mountain, part of the Binalúd range north of Nishápúr in Khurásán. The name may be preserved in the modern Gunabad, a village to the north of that range, iv, 23, 37, 47, 48, 51, 55, 56, 76, 88, 112 occupied by Píráń, iv, 22
- Kand. See Kaid.
- Kandá Gashasp, Iránian warrior, viii, 103, 122, 163
speech of, viii, 166
- Kandahár, city in southern Afghánistán, i, 286; iv, 65; v, 233 note
- Kandake (Candace *q.v.*, Kaidáfa *q.v.*), vi, 66
- Kandaros. See Kaidrúsh.
- Kandaules. See Kaidrúsh.
- Kand-i-Shápúr. See Gund-i-Shápúr.
- Kangha (Khárazm *q.v.*), country, ii, 189, 190
- Kangdes (Gang-dizh *q.v.*), stronghold, ii, 189, 190
- Kanír. See Tainúsh.
- Kannáj (Kanauj), city near the west bank of the Ganges in the division of Agra in the United Provinces of British India, i, 261, 357; iii, 35; iv, 278, 283, 284; v, 257; vi, 64, 207, 352; vii, 115, 119, 123, 128, 129, 134, 137, 385, 386, 390, 393, 425
conquest of, by Mahmúd, i, 99, 100 and *note*, 113
- Sikandar reaches, vi, 110
river of, vii, 112 and *note*, 390
monarch of=Shangul, vii, 140
- Bahrám Gúr appointed heir to, vii, 143
- Karabagh (Arrán), district north of the Aras, i, 9
seat of primitive Fire-worship, i, 56
- Karakh-Maíshán, town built on the lower Tigris by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 199, 291 *note*
- Káran, son of Káwa, Iránian hero and the mythical progenitor of a family famous in Ashkánian times, 141, i, 207, 211, 214 seq., 344, 345, 365; ii, 11 seq., 18, 22, 119; iii, 9; iv, 146; vi, 194; viii, 168; ix, 85
takes the Castle of the Aláns, i, 223 seq.
reports his success to Minú-chihr, i, 225
commands Naudar's host, i, 345
tells of his encounter with Afrásiyáb, i, 350
counsels Naudar, i, 353

- Káran, son of Káwa, with Shídúsh and Kishwád, pursues Kurákhán, i, 354; defeats and slays Bármán, i, 354; defeats Wísa, i, 357; meets and defeats Shamás, i, 361; bears to Zav the news of his election as Sháh, i, 370; re-appearance of, in legend, iv, 135, 146; made champion of the host, iv 149; sent by Kai Khusrau to welcome Shída, iv, 165; bears Kai Khusrau's answer to Shída, iv, 168; opposes and defeats Jahn, iv, 178; family, of, vii, 171; glorification of, vii, 170; origin of, vii, 185; rivalry of, with Mihrán, vii, 185.
- Káran, mountain, the name given from the above hero to part of the Alburz range which lies between Mount Dam-i-wand and Ámul and formed his principality, and that of his descendants as late as and after the Muhammadan conquest, v, 112.
- Káran, Iránian chief, *temp. Yazdagird*, son of Shápúr and Bahrám Gúr, vi, 394; vii, 86, 90.
- Káran, mountain-chief, viii, 189.
- Karap (Karpan), v, 17; meaning of, v, 14.
- Kara su, river, v, 14.
- Káraz, viii, 252 and note.
- Kargasárs, a wild tribe, i, 253 and note, 277, 279, 286, 290, 294, 298, 319, 340; ii, 98; iii, 318.
- Karímán, Iránian hero and great-great-grandfather of Rustam, ii, 4, 125 and note, v, 202.
- Káristán, viii, 188.
- Karkh, suburb of Baghdád, iv, 147, ix, 85; Arab defeat at, ix, 85.
- Karkh = Khurram Ábád (?), vi, 327.
- Karkwí (*cf. Kákwi*), a descendant of Zahhák, i, 290; attacks Sám, i, 290; slain by Sám, i, 291.
- Karmá'il and Irmá'il, Zahhák's cooks, 140; device of, i, 146.
- Kárnámak - i - Ardshír - i - Pápkán, Pahlaví text, vi, 14 note, 61, 198, 301, 325; vii, 380; account of, vi, 195; resembles Yátkár-i-Zarí-rán, vi, 196; purport of, vi, 196; portion of Sháhnáma corresponding with, vi, 196; compared with, vi, 200 seq., 205 seq., 255 seq.
- Firdausí and, vi, 196; polo episode in, vi, 196.
- Karnapriyaram is*, vi, 80.
- Karpan (Karap *q.v.*), v, 14.
- Kársán, viii, 188, 252; gates of, shut against Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 252; walls of, fall down, viii, 253; Khusrau Parwíz stays at, viii, 253.
- Karshipta, mythical bird, i, 235.
- Karsiyún, Túránián hero, iv, 10.
- Kárun, mountain. See Káran.
- Kárún, river joining the Shat al Arab at its delta, vi, 199 note; dam on, vi, 295.
- Kásá rúd (Kashaf *q.v.*), river, 147, iii, 28, 68, 69, 71, 72, 82, 105; iv, 90; barricade at the, iii, 29; burnt by Gív, iii, 73.

- Kashaf (Kásá rúd *q.v.*), river in north-eastern Khurásán, i, 235, 296
story of the dragon of, i, 296 *seq.*
- Kashán (Kásán), town in Farghána, north of the Jaxartes?), iii, 108, 151, 170, 177, 180, 181, 188, 192, 204, 207, 224, 237, 242; iv, 189; v, 39; vii, 331, 334
Kámús of, Story of, 148, iii 108 *seq.*
in Túrán, iii, 108
in Irán, iii, 109
man of = Kámús, iii, 189
- Kashán, city between Ispahán and Kum, iii, 109
- Kashmar. *See* Kishmar.
- Kashmigán, son of Farrukhzád, ix, 92
- Kashmíhan, place north-east of Marv, vii, 89
Bahrám Gúr's victory at, vii, 90
Súfarai's victory at, vii, 170
note, 176
- Kashmír, country, i, 113; ii, 271, 338; iii, 35, 152, 237, 251; iv, 14, 60, 65; v, 263; vii, 395, 396, 421
king of, vi, 31
monarch of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
- Kastantaniya (Constantinople), viii, 265
- Kastarit. *See* Kyaxares.
- Kaswín. *See* Kazwín.
- Kát (Káth), one of the two capitals of Khárazm (Gúrganj being the other) situated on the right bank of the Oxus, iii, 152
- Katáyún (Náhíd), daughter of Cæsar, wife of Gushtásp, and mother of Asfandiyár, 154, 156, ii, 3; iv, 348; v, 11, 253
referred to, i, 55; v, 205, 249, 252
- Katáyún, eldest daughter of Cæsar, iv, 348
Story of, 154, iv, 329. *seq.*
marriage of, iv, 329 *seq.*
dreams of Gushtásp, iv, 329
sees and chooses Gushtásp for her husband, iv, 330
marries Gushtásp, iv, 331
sells a jewel, iv, 332
discovers that Gushtásp is of royal race, iv, 340
persuades Gushtásp to go to the Sports on Cæsar's riding-ground, iv, 349
- Cæsar reproached by Gushtásp for his unkindness to, iv, 350
reconciled to Cæsar, iv, 351
referred to, iv, 358
receives gifts from Cæsar, iv, 363
goes to Irán with Gushtásp, iv, 364
sons of, v, 32
counsels Asfandiyár, v, 168, 175
ancestry of, v, 205
Asfandiyár's last message to, v, 249
laments over Asfandiyár, v, 252
consoled by Bishútán, v, 255
- Katíb, Arab chief, vi, 21, 65, 120
- Katmára, Iránian hero, iv, 92
put in command of the right wing, iv, 92
- Káús, Sháh. *See* Kai Káús.
brand-mark of, iii, 291
- Káús, son of Sháh Kubád, vii, 316
- Kavárazem (Gurazm *q.v.*), v, 12
- Kavi (Kai), ii, 8
Usa, ii, 25
- Kavi (Kavíg), v, 14
- Kavíg (Kavi), v, 17
meaning of, v, 14
- Kavi Husrávah (Kai Khusrau *q.v.*), iv, 137, 138
- Kávya Ushaná (Kai Káús, *q.v.*) ii, 25
- Kávyan (Kaian), ii, 8

- Káwa, the smith, i, 155 seq., 207, 214; iv, 165, 178; vii, 185; viii, 72; ix, 30
- Zahhák and, Story of, i, 154 seq.
- revolts and goes to Farídún, i, 157
- leads Farídún's van, i, 160
- flag of, i, 143, 160, 211, 217, 218, 237, 332; ii, 12, 227, 341, 349, 354, 400, 402, 405, 406, 410; iii, 25, 38, 39, 48, 84, 85, 116, 121, 126, 129, 135 seq., 149, 161; iv, 24, 25, 34, 55, 59, 92, 112, 146, 180, 226, 243, 282, 292, 359; vi, 347; vii, 250; viii, 385; ix, 30, 67
- origin of, i, 157
- Bízhan's prowess with, iii, 93
- half of, taken by Píránn, iii, 94
- staff of, cloven by Púládwand, iii, 258
- Tús confirmed in charge of, by Kai Khusrau, iv, 300
- rescued by Girámí, v, 59, 69
- Káwian, standard, i, 211
- Kázirún, town west of Shíráz, vi, 190
- Kazwín, city north-west of Tíhrán, v, 30
- Kerátor. *See* Tainúsh.
- Keresásp, Keresáspa, Fráanian hero, i, 234, 235, 373; ii, 4 account of, in the Zanda-vasta, i, 172
- later development of, i, 174
- Keresavasda (Garsíwaz *q.v.*), ii, 189; iv, 137
- Khalaj (Kharlífkh), a Turkish tribe dwelling north of the Jaxartes and east of Táshkand, vii, 92
- Khálid, famous Arab general
- temp.* Muhammad, v, 12 begins hostilities against Persian Empire, ix, 66
- Khálid, recalled to lead Syrian campaign, iv, 66
- Khallukh (*cf.* Khalaj), iv, 156, 156; v, 42, 44, 55, 61, 74, 90, 107, 112, 157, 242, 255
- Khán of Chín, the, *temp.* Kai Káus, ii, 383
- temp.* Kai Khusrau, 148, 149, iii, 108, 160 seq., 164 seq., 172, 175 seq., 181, 184, 187, 190 seq., 196, 198 seq., 205, 207 seq., 215, 217, 221, 222, 226 seq., 235, 241, 242, 251, 252, 256, 268, 320; iv, 60, 135, 238 seq.; v, 199, 220
- Khán of Chín=Arjásp, v, 47, 51, 72
- temp.* Sikandar, ambassadors from, come to Dárá, vi, 35
- temp.* Bahrám Gúr, 165, vii, 49, 91, 93, 97, 101, 111 invades Frán, vii, 84 responds graciously to the Frániens' embassage, vii, 88 gives himself up to pleasure at Marv, vii, 88 fate of, in war with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 5, 90 crown of, placed in a Fire-temple, vii, 95
- Khúshnawáz, son of, vii, 165
- temp.* Núshírwán, 168, vii, 186, 328 seq.; viii, 43, 52, 87, 89, 97 seq.
- daughter of, married to Núshírwán, 168, vii, 213, 357 historically ruler of the Turks, vii, 317 relations of, with Núshírwán, vii, 88 the Haitálians, vii, 317, 328 seq.
- embassy of, to Núshírwán, vii, 329
- hears of the destruction of his embassy by the Haitálians, vii, 330

Khán of Chín, leads forth his troops, vii, 330
 defeats the Haitálians, vii, 332
 Núshírwán takes counsel about, vii, 333, 334
 descent of, from Afrásiyáb and Arjásp, vii, 334.
 Núshírwán writes to, vii, 337
 purposes to invade Írán, vii, 337
 hears of Núshírwán's advance, vii, 338
 takes counsel, vii, 338
 sends embassy to Núshírwán, vii, 339
 hears his envoy's account of Núshírwán, vii, 344
 offers to make affinity with Núshírwán, vii, 345
 attempts to outwit Núshírwán, vii, 351
 gives audience to Mihrán Sitád, vii, 351
 invites Mihrán Sitád to choose a wife for Núshírwán, vii, 352
 consults the astrologers, vii, 354
 entrusts his daughter to Mihrán Sitád, vii, 354
 gives presents to Mihrán Sitád, vii, 356
 parts with his daughter at the Jjhún, vii, 356
 daughter of, 168
 described, vii, 352, 357
 evacuates territory, vii, 358
 Khán of Chín (*see also* Parmúda), temp., Hurmuzd, Khusrau Parwiz, and Yazdagird, 171, 173, viii, 141 seq., 190, 191, 204, 215, 220, 263 seq., 306, 316 seq., 342 seq., 346 seq., 351, 352, 356, 357, 363; ix, 87, 102
 supposed war of, with Hurmuzd, viii, 72

Khán of Chín, marriage of daughter of, with Núshírwán referred to, viii, 72
 letter of, viii, 77
 dismissed by Hurmuzd with gifts, viii, 152
 refuses advances of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 153
 becomes friends with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 172
 brother of, 173, viii, 190, 191
 reports flight of Gurdya, viii, 351
 ordered to go in pursuit, viii, 351
 parley of, with Gurdya, viii, 352
 daughter of, viii, 190
 killed by lion-ape, 173, 322, 324
 queen of, viii, 190
 asks Bahrám Chúbína to avenge her daughter, viii, 324
 disgraced, viii, 344
 welcomes Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 316
 swears friendship with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 317
 dominated by Makátúra, viii, 317
 advised by Bahrám Chúbína to slight Makátúra, viii, 318
 views fight between Bahrám Chúbína and Makátúra, viii, 320
 sends gifts to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 321
 refuses to give up Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 329
 distrust Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 334
 impress of seal of, obtained by Kharrád, viii, 338
 burns Kulún's kindred, viii, 334
 seeks in vain for Kharrád, viii, 344
 mourns for Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 344

- Khán of Chín, brother of, 173
 =Bízhan, ix, 97
 Khánagí, Rúman noble, viii, 375,
 378
 leads Cæsar's embassy to
 Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 374
 Khusráu Parwíz' gifts to,
 viii, 382
 returns to Rúm, viii, 382
 Khán-i-Irmán (Arman *q.v.*), iii,
 290
 Khanjast (Chíjast, Urumiah),
 lake in Ázarbáján, iv,
 136, 264; viii, 282
 Khár (Khuvár) of Rai, district
 and town (now Aradún),
 so called to distinguish
 it from a town of the same
 name in Párs, situated
 south-east of Tíhrán, i,
 368, 374, 381
 Khárazm (Khiva), country, ii,
 189, 190; iv, 11, 12, 15,
 60, 61, 72, 157, 173, 186,
 287; vi, 72; vii, 238,
 359
 Kharazmians, people, ii, 190;
 vi, 72
 Kharíjites, Muhammadan sect, i,
 13
 Kharrád, fránian hero, i, 365;
 ii, 11, 22, 33, 73, 340;
 iii, 115, 127, 139, 211,
 273, 289; iv, 15
 Kharrád, nonce name assumed
 by Asfandiyár, v, 146,
 149
 Kharrád, *temp.* Ardshír Pápa-
 kán, fránian warrior, 161,
 vi, 284
 takes Ardawán prisoner, vi,
 228
 temp. Bahrám Gúr, fránian
 chief, vii, 85
 temp. Kubád son of Pírúz,
 archimage, vii, 207
 temp. Núshírwán=(?) the
 above, vii, 251
 Kharrád, sacred Fire, vi, 212
 and *note*, 226, 391
 Kharrád, bower of, vii, 83
 Kharrád, son of Barzín (Hur-
 muzd Garábzín or Galáb-
 zín), 171-173, viii, 74, 76,
 158 *seq.*, 205, 225, 257 *seq.*,
 269, 270, 331 *seq.*, 381;
 ix, 4, 11, 12, 24
 sent by Hurmuzd as envoy
 to Sáwa, viii, 110
 beguiles Sáwa and flees, viii,
 111
 flight of, reported to Sáwa,
 viii, 112
 counsels Bahrám Chúbína,
 viii, 121
 seeks, refuge, viii, 123
 counts fránian slain, viii,
 127
 blames and counsels Bahrám
 Chúbína for his behaviour
 to Parmúda, viii, 144,
 146
 questions Bahrám Chúbína
 on his adventure with the
 onager, viii, 158
 flees from Balkh with arch-
 scribe, viii, 159
 makes report of Bahrám
 Chúbína to Hurmuzd, viii,
 160
 real name of, viii, 190
 waits on Khusráu Parwíz,
 viii, 252
 speech of, to Cæsar, viii, 259,
 275
 masters Cæsar's talismans,
 viii, 274, 275
 Cæsar's gift to, viii, 278
 praised by Cæsar, viii, 279
 made chief minister, viii, 314
 speech of, to Khán, viii, 332
 attempts to prejudice Bah-
 rám Chúbína to the Khán,
 viii, 333
 intrigues against Bahrám
 Chúbína, viii, 334 *seq.*
 cures daughter of queen of
 Chín, viii, 336
 incites Kulún to kill Bahrám
 Chúbína, viii, 337
 asks boon of queen of Chín,
 viii, 338

- Kharrád, returns to Írán and is rewarded, viii, 345
 reads out Cæsar's letter to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 376
 end of, ix, 4
 chosen to visit Khusrau Parwíz at Taisafún, ix, 9
 Ashtád and, parley with Galínúsh, ix, 11
 visit Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 12
 report to Shírwí, ix, 27
 Kharrád, Iránian general, defeats Khazars, viii, 96
 Kharrád, father of Hurmuzd, ix, 102
 Khashásh, Túránian hero, v, 47
 made leader of the van, v, 46
 Khatá (Cathay), northern China, ii, 357
 Khatlán (Khuttal), a general name for the non-Muhammadan regions to the north and east of Khurásán (=Haitál), more specifically a district on the right bank of the upper Oxus west of, or forming part of, Badakhshán, iii, 218, 228; iv, 65; vii, 94, 331, 359
 Khátún, consort of the Khán of Chín, vii, 5
 fate of, in war with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 5
 Kháwar, the West or Khurásán (?), perhaps=Khár q.v., iv, 147, 148. Cf. Káran (mountain).
 Khazar, Khazars, region and people north of the Caucasus, i, 17; ii, 285; iv, 71, 316, 352 seq., 358, 361; vii, 83, 214, 224; viii, 94, 377, 379
 invasion of, viii, 72, 93
 defeated, viii, 96
 Khazarwán, Túránian hero, 142
 Shamásás and, invade Zábulistán, i, 345, 358
- Khazarwán parleyed with by Mihráb to gain time, i, 358
 slain by Zál, i, 360; ii, 18
 Khazarwán, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, king of Gilán, vii, 85
 takes the Khán prisoner, vii, 90
 Khazarwán, Iránian noble, *temp.* Khusrau Parwíz, speech of, viii, 241
 Khazrá, treasure, viii, 406 and note
 Khiláfat, the, i, 12 *seq.*
 Khil'at, robe of honour, i, 82
 Khír, place on the south-western shore of Lake Niris in Párs, vi, 198
 Khísir (Al Khidr, *q.v.*), chief and prophet, vi, 159
 goes with Sikandar to the Gloom, vi, 159
 parts company with Sikandar, vi, 160
 finds the Fount of Life, vi, 160
 Khiva (Kharazm), country, ii, 190
 Khorasan. *See* Khurásán.
 Khshathró-saoka (Gang-dizh ?), stronghold, ii, 189, 190
 Khudai-náma (Bástán-Náma), i, 66; v, 24
 Khurásán, province in north-eastern Irán, 176, ii, 399; iv, 148, 203; v, 28, 77; vi, 242, 301; vii, 100, 214, 224, 237, 335; viii, 78, 94, 241, 313, 355, 369; ix, 59, 69, 87, 88, 92
 Narsi made ruler of, vii, 99
 governor of, viii, 75
 prince of, viii, 173
 Máhwí becomes master of, ix, 114
 Khurásán, chieftain, viii, 241
 speech of, viii, 240
 Khurásáni. *See* Mákh.
 Khurdád, ameshaspenta, i, 88; iii, 287, 328

- Khurdád, month and day, i, 88, 159; vii, 112, 225, 351; viii, 25, 173
 Khurm, seat of an oracle, vi, 82
 meaning of, vi, 82
 oracle of, consulted, vi, 184
 Khurra-i-Ardshír. *See* Ardshír
 Khurra.
 Khurram Ábád (Karkh ?), city, vi, 327, 357 and *note*
 Khurshíd, genius and day, i, 88; v, 92 *note*
 Khurshíd, Iránian chief, viii, 270, 296
 Khúshnawáz, ruler of the Haitálians, 166, vii, 194, 198, 359; viii, 75, 168, 242, 245, 267
 Pírúz advances against, vii, 164
 writes to Pírúz, vii, 165
 appeals to Bahrám Gúr's treaty, vii, 166
 prayer of, to God, vii, 167
 digs a trench, vii, 67
 defeats Pírúz by a feint, vii, 168
 correspondence of, with Súfarai, vii, 174 *seq.*
 defeated by Súfarai, vii, 177
 takes refuge in Kuhandizh, vii, 177
 sues for peace, vii, 178
 releases Kubád, Ardshír, and other captives, and gives up the spoil, vii, 180
 Khusrau, Sháh. *See* Kai Khusrau.
 Khusrau, Iránian noble, 163, 164, vi, 408
 elected Sháh in succession to Yazdagird son of Sháhpúr, vi, 395; vii, 11
 proposes that Bahrám Gúr shall begin the ordeal, vi, 409
 does homage to Bahrám Gúr, vi, 410
 honoured by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 10
 Khusrau, father of Khazarwán, viii, 241, 296 (?)
 Khusrau Parwíz, son of Hurmuzd, Sháh, 171-175, v, 294, 306 *note*; vi, 3; viii, 71, 74, 170, 173, 174, 181, 182, 191 *seq.*, 216, 304, 306, 316, 334, 335, 342, 358, 367 *seq.*, 395 *note*, 413 *note*; ix, 4 *seq.*, 11, 12, 25, 26 *note*, 30, 31, 33 *seq.*, 38 *seq.*, 45 *seq.*
 horse of, story of, viii, 91
 Hurmuzd plots to kill, viii, 174
 flees, viii, 175
 adherents gather round, viii, 175
 swear fealty to, viii, 176
 goes to Baghdád, viii, 184
 visits Hurmuzd in prison, viii, 185, 198, 230
 extensive historical conquests of, viii, 187
 materials for reign of, in Sháhnáma, viii, 187
 flight of, historical, from Ctesiphon, viii, 188
 affects Christianity in exile, viii, 188
 helped on terms by Emperor Maurice, viii, 188
 historical campaign of, against Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 189
 visits of, to Fire-temple at Shíz, viii, 190, 283, 307, 312
 Nu'man bin Munzír executed by, viii, 190
 triumphal arch of, viii, 192
 Assurbanipal and, reigns of, compared, viii, 193
 fall of, historical account of, viii, 193 *seq.*
 attempts of Heraclius to make peace with, viii, 194, 195
 treatment of defeated generals by, viii, 194

Khusrau Parwíz, prediction concerning, viii, 194
 Reign of, 196, viii, 186 seq.
 Note on, viii, 186 seq.
 Hurmuzd's requests to, viii,
 190
 spies' report of Bahrám Chúbína to, viii, 201
 takes counsel, viii, 202
 marches to meet Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 203
 interview of, with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 204 seq.
 attacked by Turk and saved by Gustaham, viii, 220
 dissuaded from making a night-attack, viii, 224
 troops of, tampered with by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 226
 sends away his baggage, viii, 228
 combat of, with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 228, 229
 retreats to, and holds, the bridge of Nahrawán, viii, 228
 worsts Yalán-sína, viii, 229
 flees to Taisafún, viii, 229
 counselled by Hurmuzd, viii, 230
 prepares to flee, viii, 231
 takes refuge in a shrine, viii, 233
 arrives at Bábil, viii, 249
 entertained by Kais, viii, 250
 Míhrán Sitád, viii, 251
 town of Kársán and, viii, 252
 interview of, with Hermit, viii, 254
 warned against Gustaham, viii, 255, 256
 welcomed by Cæsar, viii, 257
 takes up his abode at Warígh, viii, 257
 instructs his embassy to Cæsar, viii, 257
 Cæsar offers daughter to, viii, 266

Khusrau Parwíz, accepts Cæsar's offer, viii, 269, 270
 welcomes Niyátús and Maryam, viii, 280
 marches to Dúk, viii, 282
 Mausil and, viii, 283
 returns to Dúk, viii, 284
 Dárá Panáh goes over to, viii, 286
 forges letter to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 286
 sends corpse of Kút to Cæsar, viii, 291
 decides to fight without Rúman help, viii, 292, 293
 arrays his host, viii, 293
 resolves to fight in person, viii, 295
 bodyguard of, viii, 296
 leaves Bahrám in charge of host, viii, 296
 flees from Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 298
 saved by Surúsh, viii, 299
 returns to Niyátús and Maryam, viii, 299
 suspected of Christian tendencies, viii, 308
 gives banquet to Niyátús and Rúmans, viii, 309
 restores captured cities to Rúm, viii, 312
 makes Kharrád, son of Barzín, chief minister, viii, 314
 proclamation of, viii, 314
 demands extradition of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 328
 advised to send envoy to Khán, viii, 329
 resolves to put Bandví to death, viii, 354
 summons Gustaham, viii, 355
 hears of Gurdyá's doings, viii, 356, 358
 writes to Gurdyá viii, 359
 hears of the death of Gustaham, viii, 362
 welcomes Gurdyá to court, viii, 362

Khusrau Parwíz, Gurdya dresses up to please, viii, 363
warned by Shírín against Gurdya, viii, 364
makes Gurdya overseer of royal bower, viii, 364
oppresses Rai, viii, 365
relieves Rai, viii, 368
organizes the realm, viii, 369
seq.
puts to death adherents of Bandví and Gustaham, viii, 370
consults astrologers on birth of Shírwi, viii, 372
grieved at Shírwi's horoscope, viii, 372
consults the high priest, viii, 372
writes to Cæsar, viii, 373
Cæsar's embassy to, viii, 374
gives Cæsar's gifts to Shírwi, viii, 381
presents to Khánagí, viii, 382
and Shírín, ix, 7
Story of, 174, viii, 382 *seq.*
equipage of, for the chase, viii, 384
married to Shírín, viii, 386
justifies his marriage, viii, 388
gives gilded chamber to Shírín, viii, 389
displeased with Shírwi, viii, 390
and throne of Tákdís, viii, 391 *seq.*
palace of, story of, viii, 400 *seq.*
Farghán and, viii, 401 *seq.*
imprisons Rúman artificers, viii, 402
releases Rúman artificers, viii, 403
treasures of, viii, 406
Guráz intrigues against, viii, 408
device of, against Guráz and Cæsar, viii, 409

Khusrau Parwíz, sends Farrukh-zád to the host, viii, 412
hears Kubád proclaimed Sháh, viii, 416
arms and hides in garden, viii, 417
palace of, plundered, viii, 418
discovered, viii, 419
holds talk with Farrukhzád, viii, 420
recalls former presage, viii, 420
imprisoned, viii, 421
duration of reign of, viii, 421
charges against, ix, 4, 5, 9,
10
reply of, to charges, ix, 5,
14 *seq.*
Híram of, ix, 4, 5
last days of, Theophanes' account of, ix, 6
Shírwi's treatment of, ix, 7
sons of, executed, ix, 7, 35
imprisoned at Taisafún, ix,
9
companionship by Shírín, ix,
29
Bárbad visits, ix, 29
laments over, ix, 30
steed of, ix, 30
son of, ix, 31
referred to, ix, 33 and *note*
kingdom of Híra abolished by, ix, 66
Muhammad's letter to, ix, 66
Khusrau and Shírín, Persian poem, viii, 192
Khusrau, father of Píruz, 175, vii, 44, 46, 48, 49, 51, 57
Khusrau, a miller, 176, ix, 99.
See Miller.
Khutan, town and district in eastern Turkistán, 146, 150, ii, 277, 288, 325, 357, 383; iii, 107, 242, 247; iv, 26, 219; vii, 84, 115, 330, 334, 359

- Khutan, raided by Gív, iii, 247
 monarch of, iv, 11
 Afrásiyáb, iv, 230
 Kai Khusrau marches through, iv, 240
 people of, make submission to Núshírwán, vii, 360
 Khuzá' Arab tribe, vi, 65
 rule of, ended by Sikandar, vi, 120
 Khúzán, a king of Párs, iv, 146, 191
 meets Kai Khusrau in Sughd, iv, 255
 Khúzians, people of Khúzistán, q.v., iv, 146
 Khúzistán (Susiana, 'Arabistán), province at the head of the Persian Gulf, vi, 290 and note, 298, 327, 357; viii, 109 and note, 193 annexed by Arabs, ix, 68
 Khuzrá, treasure, ix, 20
 Khvaitúk-das, i, 60
 Catullus on, i, 60
 Khyóns (Hvyaonas), v, 13, 25
 Kibchák, region east of the Jaxates and north of Táshkand, iv, 254; ix, 93
 Kibtí, vi, 397 and note
 Kímák, a river in Kibchák, iv, 203, 231
 Kimmerians, the, i, 17
 Kinám-i-Asírán, near to, or identical with, the ruins of Shús (Sús, Susa), vi, 327, 357 and note
 King, the ideal, iii, 16
 of kings, title of, vi, 193, 197
 meaning of, in Achæmenian and Parthian times, vi, 198
 assumed by Ardshír Pápakan, vi, 193, 199, 254, 258, 273
 of the Commons, vii, 3
 piece in chess, vii, 382, 385
 position of, vii, 388, 422
 check to, vii, 422
 mate to, vii, 423
 piece in nard, vii, 382, 389
- Kings, Book of, Firdausí's, i, 43
 Persian, viii, 73
 Tribal *See* Tribal.
 Kirmán, region in southern Irán, 158, iv, 146; vi, 31, 47, 57, 59, 199, 202, 205, 245, 252; vii, 214; viii, 313
 Dárá retires to, vi, 46
 etymology of, vi, 204, 236
 Ardshír Pápakan's invasion of, vi, 205, 245
 Kirmánsháh, title, vi, 313, 368
 Kirmánsháh, city between Baghdád and Hamadán, vii, 187; viii, 192
 Kirmánsháhán, city in Kirmán, south of Yazd, vi, 368
 Kírwán (Karwán, district north of Jaxartes ?), ix, 93
 Kírwi, Iránian noble, vii, 23
 story of, vii, 22
 Kishmar, place south of Nishápúr in the Kuhistán district of Khurásán, v, 35
 Cypress of, v, 27
 account of, v, 28, 34
 Gushtásp and, v, 34
 Kishwád, Iránian hero, father of Gúdarz, 151, i, 207, 344, 365; ii, 4, 11, 12, 18, 22, 33, 70, 73, 107, 112, 138, 318, 384, 399, 404, 409; iii, 19, 24, 33, 45, 100, 121, 123, 126, 143, 154, 187, 215, 289, 302, 305, 308, 311, 327, 339; iv, 20, 32, 35, 63, 147, 174, 180, 263, 294, 310, 360, viii, 104
 Káran, Shídúsh, and, pursue Kurúkhán, i, 354
 sent by Zál to release the Iránian captives, i, 367
 Kishwaristán, Iránian hero, iv, 148
 commands the troops from Barbaristán and Rúm, iv, 148
 Kisrá, Sháh, 166. *See* Núshírwán.
 Kitradád, Nask, i, 373

Knathaiti, Pairika, female personification of idolatry, i, 172
 Kobad, Shláh. *See* Kubád.
 Ktesias, Greek historian (5th century B.C.), vi, 13, 68
 legend of Cyrus in, ii, 9; vi, 195
 Gutschmid on, vi, 195
 account of Semiramis in, v, 293
Persica of, v, 293
 Kubád, Iránian hero, brother of Káran, 142, i, 207
 acts as Minúchíhr's scout, i, 217
 parleys with Túr, i, 217
 accepts Bárman's challenge to single combat, i, 347
 dissuaded by Káran, i, 347
 reply of, i, 347
 fights and is slain, i, 348
 Kubád, Sháh. *See* Kai Kubád.
 Kubád, son of Píruz and father of Núshírwán, Sháh (Kobad), 166, vi, 3, 208; vii, 179 seq. and note, 226, 247; viii, 25, 46, 72, 168, 169, 245, 265, 285, 312, 369; ix, 22, 25
 captivity of, among the Haitálians, vii, 160
 leads the rearguard in the war with the Turkmans (Haitálians), vii, 164
 taken prisoner, vii, 168
 released, vii, 180
 made Sháh instead of Balásh, vii, 182, 188
 Reign of, 166, vii, 183 seq.
 Note on, vii, 183 seq.
 historical sketch of, vii, 183
 title of, viii, 183 and note
 reform of taxation by, vii, 183 note, 215
 with the help of Shápúr of Rai overthrows and puts Súfarai to death, vii, 191 seq.
 dethroned, vii, 184, 195

Kubád, imprisoned, vii, 184
 escapes, vii, 184, 197
 marriage of, vii, 184, 186, 198
 gives his wife a signet-ring, vii, 198
 cedes Chaghán to the Haitálians in return for their help, vii, 198
 goes to Ahwáz, vii, 198
 hears of the birth of Núshírwán, vii, 199
 marches on Taisafún, vii, 199
 pardons the Iránians and Jámásپ, vii, 200
 makes Rizmihr chief minister, vii, 200
 wars of, with Rúm, vii, 187, 200
 takes cities from Rúm, vii, 200
 makes his capital at Mada'in, vii, 201
 builds a city and hospital, vii, 201
 drought in reign of, vii, 201
 Mazdak and, vii, 184, 201 seq.
 Mazdak's parable to, vii, 201
 converted by Mazdak, vii, 184, 204
 presides over the disputation between Núshírwán and Mazdak, vii, 207
 gives judgment against Mazdak, vii, 208
 hands over Mazdak and his followers to Núshírwán, vii, 208
 repentance of, vii, 209
 testament of, vii, 210, 316
 age of, vii, 210
 death of, vii, 210
 sons of, vii, 316
 Kubád (Shírwí q.v.), son of Khusrau Parwíz and Maryam, Sháh, 175, viii, 190, 196; ix, 3 seq., 9, 11, 12, 14, 24, 32, 47, 64

GENERAL INDEX

- Kubád (*Shírwí*), secret and public names of, viii, 371, 416
proclaimed Sháh, viii, 416
imprisons Khusráu Parwíz, viii, 421
accedes to throne, viii, 421
Reign of, 175, ix, 3
 Note on, ix, 3
 tragic, ix, 3
 pestilence during, ix, 3
boorishness of, ix, 3
difficult situation of, ix, 3
reproached by his sisters, ix, 7
Kubád, son of Jamson of Kubád, vii, 316
plot to make, Sháh, vii, 316
Kubard, Túránián hero, iv, 190
 commands the left, iv, 190
Kúch, tribe or town (*Kúk?*) in Kirmán, ii, 226
Kúfa, city west of the Euphrates and in the neighbourhood of Mashad 'Alí (*Nedjef*), viii, 190; ix, 68, 69
 wood of, vi, 381
 founded by Sa'ad, ix, 67
Kúh, nonco name assumed by Húmán, iii, 198
Kuhandízh (*Baigand* *q.v.*), vii, 177
 Khúshnawáz takes refuge in, vii, 177
Kuhíla, Túránián hero, iv, 181
 slain by Minúchihr, iv, 181
Kuhistán, generally a mountainous region, particularly that of northern Irán, Parthia, or of the high ranges further south, but in the Sháhnáma= Máwará'u'n-Nahr (Transoxania), ii, 199
Kuhram, Túránián hero, 151, ii, 349
 chosen to fight with Barta, iv, 97; v, 29
 slain by Barta, iv, 105
Kuhram, brother or son of Arjásپ, 156, v, 29, 58, 89 seq., 106 seq., 112, 141, 159
Kuhram, commands one wing of the host, v, 46
 in chief, v, 56
sent by Arjásپ to attack Balkh, v, 90
troops of, storm Balkh, burn the Fire-temple, and slay Zarduhsh and the priests, v, 92
stationed on the left, v, 95
mortally wounds Farshíd-ward, v, 95
appointed by Arjásپ to send away the spoil of Balkh in the charge of his younger brothers, v, 108
commands the right, v, 110
defeated by Astandiyár, v, 110
bidden to prepare for war, v, 151
retreats to the Brazen Hold, v, 152
mistakes Bishútan for Asfandyár, v, 152
hears the cries of the Iránian watch from the Brazen Hold and takes counsel with Andarímán, v, 155
makes for the Brazen Hold with his troops, v, 156
pursued by Asfandyár, v, 156
encountered and taken prisoner by Asfandyár, v, 157
executed, v, 158 and *note*
Kujárán, city and province on the Persian Gulf, vi, 205, 206, 232
Haftwád migrates from, to stronghold, vi, 235
Kulbád, Túránián hero, brother of Pírán, 146, 151, i, 92, 342; ii, 18, 264, 388; iii, 166, 177, 198, 199, 205, 210, 222, 231, 234, 252; iv, 10, 26
wounded by Zál, i, 361
death and revival of, in legend, ii, 119.

- Kulbád, pursues Kai Khusrau, ii, 377 *seq.*
 chosen to fight with Faríburz, iv, 97
 slain by Faríburz, iv, 99
- Kulún, Túránian hero, i, 382, 387
 sent by Afrásiyáb to intercept Rustam, i, 383
 slain by Rustam, i, 386
- Kulún, Turk in league with Kharrád against Bahrám Chúbina, 173, viii, 335
 incited by Kharrád to kill Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 337
 arrives at Marv by help of Khán's seal, viii, 339
 seeks interview with Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 339
 stabs Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 340
 maltreated, viii, 340
 kindred of, burnt, viii, 344
- Kum, city in 'Irák 'Ajamí, between Tihrán and Ka-shán, ii, 390
 bestowed on Gív by Kai Káús, ii, 390
 Kai Khusrau, iv, 298
- Kumár, city or cape in India, ii, 103 and *note*
- Kundrav, minister of Zahhák, 140
 mythological origin of, i, 143
 Farídún and, Story of, 140, i, 164
 goes to Zahhák with tidings of Farídún, i, 165
- Kundur, Túránian hero, iii, 152, 185, 210, 215, 251; v, 112,
 worsted by Rustam, iii, 224
 stationed on the right, v, 94
- Kunduz (Kuhandizh, Baigand *q.v.*), iv, 151
 Afrásiyáb encamps at, iv, 151
 marches from, iv, 154
- Kur (Cyrus), river in Transcaucasia flowing into the Caspian sea, v, 13
- Kuraish, Arab tribe, vi, 65
- Kurákhán, son of Afrásiyáb, i, 92; iv, 10
 counsels Afrásiyáb, iii, 301
 summoned and sent with troops to Bukhárá by Afrásiyáb, iv, 154
 joined by Afrásiyáb, iv, 186
 defeated by Gustaham son of Naudar, iv, 193
 defeat of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 194
- Kurákhán, governor of Balkh, viii, 22
- Kurán, vi, 65; viii, 277 *note*; ix, 81 and *note*
 quoted, i, 99; v, 166; viii, 42, 192; ix, 81 and *note*
 references to Alexander the Great in, vi, 15, 78, 84
 legend of Moses and the salt fish in, vi, 77
 Gog and Magog in, vi, 78
- Kurd, Kurds, the people of Kurdistán *q.v.*, 161, i, 9; vi, 193, 203, 257
 language, i, 64
 legend of the origin of the, i, 146
 Ardshír Pápakán's war with, in Kárnámak, vi, 196, 206, 256
 Sháhnáma, vi, 230 *seq.*
- Kurdistán, mountainous region north of Mesopotamia, vi, 330
- Kurdzáf, daughter of Mihrak *q.v.*
- Kuria Muria Islands, off the southern coast of Arabia, vi, 72
- Kurúkhán, Túránian warrior, i, 353
 sent by Afrásiyáb to attack Párs, i, 353
- Kurus, Indian tribal race, iv, 388
- Kús, i, 177. *See* Tammísha.
- Kút, Rúman warrior, 172, viii, 281, 289, 291
 slain by Bahrám Chúbina viii, 290

Kút, corpse of, sent back to Rúmans, viii, 291
 Kutch (*read* Kúch *q.v.*), iii, 34
 Kutíb, father of Husain (or Ha'íy) one of Firdausi's patrons, i, 35; ix, 121
 Kyaxares (Kastarit), king or chief and leader in the confederacy that overthrew Nineveh, i, 18

L

Labarum, the, v, 306 *note*
 Ládan (Pashan), battle of, iii, 13 *seq.*, 80 *seq.*, 89 *seq.*, 123; iv, 27, 37, 90, 120, 299
 Lagus, Ptolemy son of. *See* Ptolemy.
 Lahhák, Túránian hero, brother of Pírán, 152, i, 92; ii, 323 *note*; iii, 90, 166, 198; iv, 7, 71, 122, 125, 133, 160, 162
 summons Pírán to save Farangs, ii, 322
 pursues the Iránians to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 135
 commands with Farshídward the right wing, iv, 26
 attacks the Iránians in flank, iv, 82
 opposed by Gurgín, iv, 83
 goes to help Pírán and attacks Gív, iv, 85
 prowess of, iv, 86
 put in chief command with Farshídward, iv, 94
 Pírán's instructions to, iv, 95
 Farshídward and, hear of the death of Pírán and the coming of Kai Khusrau, iv, 112
 lament for Pírán, iv, 112
 take counsel with the host, iv, 113
 fight, and escape from Iránian outpost, iv, 116

Lahhák, Farshídward and, referred to, iv, 118, 120, 126
 repose themselves, iv, 121
 corpses of, brought back by Bízhan, iv, 126, 132
 deaths of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 152
 Lambak, a water-carrier, 164
 entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 13 *seq.*
 rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 20
 Land of Darkness. *See* Gloom.
 Land-tax, Mahmúd's remission of, vi, 196, 208
 Núshírwán's reform of, vii, 215, 225
 Latin version, early, of Pseudo-Callisthenes. *See* Julius Valerius.
 Launderer, a, foster-father of Dáráb, 158, v, 292
 finds Dáráb in the Farát, v, 296
 Dáráb adopted by, and his wife, v, 297
 quits his home with wife and Dáráb and settles elsewhere, v, 298
 becomes wealthy but sticks to trade, v, 298
 perturbed at Dáráb's youthful escapades, v, 298
 brings up Dáráb to be a cavalier, v, 299
 Dáráb's lack of natural affection for, v, 300
 wife of, informs Dáráb of his case, v, 300
 Rashnawád sends for, and his wife, v, 304
 informed by, of the case of Dáráb, v, 308
 visits, with his wife, Dáráb at his accession, v, 311
 dismissed with gifts, v, 312
 Lázhawardí, fort, ix, 93
 Lazica, region on the eastern shore of the Black Sea, vii, 215; viii, 194

- Lazic war, renewed by Hurmuzd, viii, 76
 Bahram Chubina defeated in, viii, 76
 Leech of Kaid, 159. *See* Kaid.
 Legend, Syriac Christian, of Alexander. *See* Syriac.
 Leo, constellation, ii, 405; iii, 81, 318; vi, 172, 180; vii, 410; viii, 122, 394
 Libra, constellation, i, 310; vi, 97
 Life, Fount of. *See* Fount.
 Water of, 160. *Id.*
 Plutarch's, of Alexander the Great, vi, 67
 Lion, lions, slain by Rakhsh, 143, ii, 45
 Asfandiyár, 156, v, 125
 Bahram Gúr, 163-165, vii, 55, 77
 -ape, 173, viii, 322 seq.
 Lion's House, constellation of Leo, i, 188
 Lion's Mouth, the, place, iv, 245
 Loadstone, chamber of, viii, 275 suspended cavalier in, viii, 275
 Longimanus (Dirázdast), title of Artaxerxes I, son of Xerxes, v, 281
 Lucerne (*Medicago sativa*), tax on, vii, 215
 Lúch, perhaps = Kúch *q.v.*, vii, 362 captives from, settled at Súrsán, vii, 328
 Luhrásp, Sháh, 154, 155, i, 42; ii, 3, 9; iv, 57, 65, 135, 337, 347, 356 seq.; v, 10, 20, 21 and *note*, 26, 29, 36, 38, 64, 68, 80, 86, 87, 90 seq., 98 seq., 104, 114, 141, 154, 155, 157, 159, 160, 167, 171, 180, 183, 205, 208, 243, 255, 281, 284; vi, 55, 200; viii, 95, 148, 213, 270, 392; ix, 104 sent to the Aláns by Kai Khusrau, iv, 14
 Luhrásp, successes of, iv, 60, 71
 troops of, recalled, iv, 145 nominated by Surúsh to be Kai Khusrau's successor, iv, 281
 crowned by Kai Khusrau, iv, 300
 Zal's protest against the succession of, iv, 301 succession of, justified by Kai Khusrau, iv, 301 acknowledged by Zal, iv, 302 the chiefs, iv, 303 undertakes to respect Kai Khusraú's wives, iv, 305 counselled and farewelled by Kai Khusrau, iv, 306 addresses the chiefs, iv, 311 receives the fealty of Zal and other chiefs, iv, 312 praises and rewards Zal, iv, 312 coronation of, iv, 312 Reign of, 154, iv, 314 seq. Note on, iv, 314 seq. harangues the chiefs, iv, 316 makes Balkh his capital, iv, 317 builds the Fire-temple of Barzín, iv, 318 shows favour to the grandsons of Kai Káús, iv, 318, 321 seq. refuses to appoint Gush-tásp his heir, iv, 319 sends Zarír in pursuit of Gush-tásp, iv, 320 pardons Gush-tásp, iv, 322 hears of Gush-tásp's flight, iv, 323 consults Zarír and the sages, iv, 323 searches in vain for Gush-tásp, iv, 324 receives Kálús, Cæsar's envoy, in audience, iv, 357 entertains Kálús, iv, 357 consults Zarír, iv, 358 questions Kálús, iv, 358

Luhrásp, dismisses Kálús with honour, iv, 359
sends Zarír with other chiefs on a mission to Rúm, iv, 359
message of, to Cæsar, iv, 361, welcomes and crowns Gush-tásp on his return to Irán, iv, 364
resigns the throne to Gush-tásp and becomes a devotee, v, 31
converted by Zarduhsh, v, 33
advises Gushtásp to resign the kingship to Asfandiyár, v, 66
opposes Kuhrám, v, 91
slain, v, 91, 93, 99
Asfandiyár's vow to avenge, v, 103
Lumsden, his edition of the Sháhnáma, i, 76
Luna. *See Moon.*

M

MA, Hittite goddess, vi, 71
=Cybele, vi, 71
priestesses of=Amazons, vi, 71
Macan, his edition of the Sháhnáma, i, 76; vi, 60
Mace, Farídún's, i, 161, 163, 165, 168
the making of, i, 158
Macedonia, vi, 81, 82
Macedonian invasion of the East, vi, 68, 69
Máchín (China), ii, 357 *note*, 370, 394; iii, 46, 253, 265; iv, 151, 203, 229, 231, 234, 252; v, 142, 145; viii, 417; ix, 107
Machine, flying, of Kai Káüs, ii, 103
Macrianius, Prætorian prefect, vi, 294
treachery of, to Valerian, vi, 294

M'Crindle, *Ancient India* of, quoted, vi, 68, 80
Madá. *See Medes.*
Madá'in, Ctesiphon (Taisafún), and the neighbouring cities, 167, 174, vii, 201, 244, 266, 272, 337, 363; viii, 4, 46, 192, 193
Núshírwán sends his Rúman captives to, vii, 259
palace of Khusrau Parwíz at, story of, viii, 400
Mádik, king of the Kurds, meaning of, vi, 203, 256
Madófrayat, mountain, part of the Alburz range, south-east of the Caspian, v, 30
Magi, priests of the Medes (Madá), i, 9; ii, 190; vi, 372, 373; vii, 171, 184
preservers of tradition, i, 56, 60
meaning of name, i, 56 and *note*
rise to power of, i, 58
influence of, declines after the Greek conquest, i, 59
principal seats of, i, 60
literature of, i, 61
language of, i, 64
compile the prose Sháhnáma for Abú Mansúr, i, 69
advocates of next-of-kin marriage, ii, 189
Magian, Magians, vii, 60
chant, vii, 60
fire, vii, 409
Magic, i, 51
derivation of, i, 56
sympathetic, i, 8
Magism, v, 11
Magog. *See Gog.*
Magophonia, import of, i, 59
Magus. *See Magi.*
Mahábhárata, Indian Epic, iii, 8; iv, 316; vi, 31, 80
the passing of the five Pán-davas in, compared with that of Kai Khusrau, iv, 138

Máh Áfríd, grandmother of
Minúchihr, i, 205
Máh Áfríd, daughter of Túr, iv,
304
Máh Áfríd, daughter of Barzín,
vii, 53
 married to Bahrám Gúr,
 vii, 53
Máh Ázar, scribe, viii, 81
Máhán, Iránian noble, v, 260, 263
Mahbúd (Mebodes), minister of
Kubál and Núshírwán,
168; vii, 213
instrumental in making
Núshírwán Sháh, vii, 316
Núshírwán's treasurer, vii,
319
sons of, vii, 319
 serve Núshírwán's meals,
vii, 319, 321
wife of, prepares Núshírwán's food, vii, 321, 322
envied by Zúrán, vii, 319
fall of, vii, 317, 322
Núshírwán's repentance
with regard to, vii, 317,
325
Máh-i-Ázáda Khú, wife of Túr, i,
188
 meaning of, i, 188 *note*
Máhiyár, minister of Dárá,
murders Dárá, vi, 52
tells Sikandar of the mur-
der, vi, 52
arrested by Sikandar, vi, 53
executed, vi, 56, 88
Máhiyár, Iránian noble, vii, 38
 praises Bahrám Gúr, vii, 38
Máhiyár, a jeweller, 164, vii, 55
seq.
 daughter of. *See* Árzú.
entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii,
59 *seq.*
Mahmúd, Sultán (A.D. 999-
1030), i, 100; iii, 15;
viii, 24
 account of, i, 21
 brothers of, i, 21, 114
Firdausí's praise of, 139,
152, 155, 156, 160, 161;
i, 29 *seq.*, 112 *seq.*; iv,

Mahmúd—*cont.*
135 *seq.*, 139; v, 30, 89,
118, 262; vi, 20, 107, 279,
292, 370; vii, 277; ix,
122
Firdausí's feeling against,
i, 33; vi, 62, 92 *seq.* and *note*
Satire on, i, 23, 40 *seq.*
 alleged ill treatment by,
 i, 33, 36 *seq.*, vii, 431
alleged repentance of, i, 45;
iv, 8
 occasion of, iv, 8
approves of Firdausí's ver-
sion of the fight between
Rustam and Ashkabús,
iii, 109
remission of the land-tax by,
vi, 186, 208
Mahraspand, father of Ádarbád,
v, 16 *note*
Mahrwí, viii, 248
Máhwí (=Sháhwí ?), one of
Firdausí's authorities, i,
67; vii, 382
Máhwí, Persian chief, 176, ix,
70, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100 *seq.*,
118
 described, ix, 87
Farrukhzád entrusts Yaz-
dagird to, ix, 95
accepts charge of Yaz-
dagird, ix, 96
becomes disaffected to Yaz-
dagird, ix, 96
writes to Bízhan, ix, 96, 116
betrays Yazdagird, ix, 97,
98, 116, 117
quest of, for Yazdagird, ix,
100
has tidings of Yazdagird, ix,
101
consults his warriors, ix, 106
son of, counsels, ix, 107
 receives Balkh and Harát,
 ix, 115
governor of Marv, ix, 120
put to death with his
sons, ix, 120
sends miller to slay Yaz-
dagird, ix, 107, 116

- Máhwí, sends troops after miller with instructions, ix, 107
 troops of, strip corpse of Yazdagird, ix, 108
 hears of death of Yazdagird, ix, 108
 bids miller throw corpse of Yazdagird into stream, ix, 108
 slays monks, ix, 113
 consults his intimates and minister, ix, 113
 advised by his minister, ix, 113
 claims the throne on false pretences, ix, 114
 becomes master of Khurásán, ix, 114
 evil rule of, ix, 114
 makes war on Bízhan, ix, 115
 conduct of, to Barsám, ix, 117
 crosses Oxus and camps at Baigand, ix, 118
 flees, ix, 118
 overtaken by Barsám, ix, 118
 captured by Barsám, ix, 119
 put to death by Bízhan, ix, 120
- Mai, city in Turkistán, i, 252, 256, 261; iv, 278, 284; vii, 91, 331, 385, 421
- Mai, king of Hind, vii, 395, 396, 399, 401, 403, 404
- Maidán, riding-ground, i, 83
- Maidhyó-máungha, cousin and first convert to Zarduhشت, v, 17
- Mail of Siyáwush, iii, 58, 60, 61, 69, 81; iv, 40, 41, 44, 45, 51
 referred to, iv, 42, 43
- Maishán (Mesene), a small state on the lower Tigris, vi, 199
- Májútíj (Magog), 160. *See* Yájúj.
- Makátúra, Turkman chief, 173, viii, 317
 dominates the Khán, viii, 318
- Makátúra, slighted by the Khán, viii, 318
 challenges Bahrám Chú-bína, viii, 319
 fight of, with Bahrám Chú-bína, viii, 320
- Mákh, viii, 71, 78
- Makhzúm, place, 93
- Makná Bád, city, iii, 109
- Makrán (Gedrosia, Balúchistán), country on the shore of the Arabian Sea, ii, 80, 82; iv, 136, 203, 231, 234, 237 *seq.*, 254; vi, 182, 202, 397; vii, 390; viii, 393, 417
 king of, 153, iv, 238 *seq.*
 refuses facilities to Kai Khusrau, iv, 239, 242
 buried by Kai Khusrau, iv, 243
- Kai Khusrau marches upon, iv, 241
 stops pillage of, iv, 243, 244
 prepares a fleet in, iv, 244
 sails for Gang-dizh from, iv, 245
 returns to, iv, 251
 goes to Chín from, iv, 251
 Alexander the Great's return by, productive of marvels, vi, 69
 etymology of, vi, 69
- Malcolm, Sir John, identification and description of Mount Sipand by, i, 236; v, 30
 version of Suhráb by, ii, 118
 on the scene of the death of Bahrám Gúr, vii, 6
- Málíka, daughter of Táfr, vi, 3, 324
 legend of, vi, 323, 330 *seq.*
 offers to betray her father's stronghold to Shápúr, vi, 331
 makes the garrison drunk, vi, 333
 opens the gate to Shápúr, vi, 333

- Málíka, goes to Shápúr's camp, vi, 333
 Mamigonian, Armenian family, viii, 188
 Mámún, Khalifa, i, 14; vii, 382, 430
 Man, the First (Gaiúmart *q.v.*), i, 5
 on the nature of, 139, i, 104
 of Sigz (Rustam), ii, 100 and *note*
 Man, weight, i, 290 and *note*; viii, 148 and *note*, 314, 399
 Manáchihr, i, 206 *note*
 Manda, nomads, i, 18
 confused with the Madá (Medes), i, 18; vi, 194
 empire of the=empire of the Medes, ii, 191
 Mandane, daughter of Astyages, ii, 190
 =Farángí in legend, ii, 191
 Mandanes (Dandamis, Kait, Kaihan, Kand, Kaid *q.v.*), vi, 61
 Onesicritus and, vi, 61
 identical with Kaid, vi, 62
 Mání, heresiarch, 163, ii, 19 *note*;
 v, 118 and *note*; vi, 307;
 vii, 188
 account of, vi, 327
 -gate, vi, 327, 359
 teaching of, vi, 328
 disputation of, with the high priest, vi, 358
 executed, vi, 359
 Manicheism, ii, 19 *note*
 Manízha, daughter of Afrásiyáb, 150, iii, 285, 295 *seq.*, 304, 308 *seq.*, 348, 349
 Bízhan and, Story of, 150, iii, 7, 12
 historical basis of, iii, 11
 Mohl on, iii, 285
 Firdausí on, iii, 287
 referred to, viii, 72
 sends her nurse to Bízhan, iii, 297
 invites Bízhan to visit her, iii, 298
 drugs Bízhan, iii, 299
 Manízha, wakes Bízhan in Afrásiyáb's palace, iii, 300
 holds revel with Bízhan, iii, 300
 disgraced, iii, 309
 made Bízhan's attendant, iii, 310
 referred to, iii, 318, 319
 hears of the arrival of Rustam's caravan, iii, 337
 interviews of, with Rustam, iii, 337, 342
 bears Rustam's ring to Bízhan, iii, 340
 kindles signal fire for Rustam, iii, 344
 receives gifts from Kai Khusráu, iii, 356
 Manshúr, Túránián hero, iii, 161, 165, 172, 182, 185, 199, 205, 210, 213, 226, 231, 241, 251, 256
 comes to the aid of Píráñ, iii, 151
 hears of the coming of Rustam, iii, 175
 Mansion of Gushtásp, Fire-temple, v, 75
 Mansúr bin Núh, Sámáníd prince (A.D. 961—976), i, 20, 21, v, 21; vii, 5
 Manúshán, a king in Párs, iv, 146, 180, 191
 Mánúshíhar (Minúchihr), i, 338
 Mánwí, viii, 253
 Marathi, Scythian people, iv, 315
 Marchlord, ill-disposed, oppresses Rai, 174, viii, 366
 destroys gutters and cats, viii, 366
 recalled, viii, 368
 Marcian (Bátarún *q.v.*), viii, 41
 Marco Polo, Venetian traveller (A.D. 1254-1324), vi, 74
 Mardánsháh, (Yalán-sína *q.v.*), viii, 74, 76; ix, 5, 6
 son of, ix, 5, 6
 conspires against Khusráu Parwíz, ix, 6
 mutilation and execution of, ix, 6

- Mardánsháh (Mardásas), son of Shírín, viii, 189, 191, 193, 196; ix, 39
execution of, ix, 7
- Mardás, father of Zahhák, Story of, i, 40, 1, 135 *seq.*
murdered by Zahhák, i, 137
- Mardásas. *See* Mardánsháh.
- Mardwí, Túránian hero, iii, 77
- Mardwí, Persian official, viii, 21
- Mardwí, gardener, viii, 397
- Margh, city in Turkistán, i, 256; iv, 278, 284; vii, 91, 331, 412, 421
- Mark, birth. *See* Birthmark.
- Marriage, next of kin (Khvaitúk-das), i, 60; ii, 189; v, 17
- Mars, planet, i, 72, 276, 332, 339; ii, 247, 407; iii, 110, 159, 178, 318, 332; vii, 92, 252, 418; viii, 395; ix, 73, 89
- Martyropolis, ceded by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 188
- Márusípand, palace, ix, 11
- Márút, angel, iii, 286
- Marv, oasis and city in ancient northern Khurásán, now in Turkistán, i, 45; ii, 101; v, 29, 260, 261, 263; vii, 174, 357; viii, 20, 93, 173, 336, 337, 346 *seq.*, 352, 356; ix, 70, 89, 116, 117
early seat of Aryan civilization, i, 7
as rhyme-word, vii, 88 *note*
- Khán reaches, vii, 88
- Bahrám Gúr marches on, vii, 89
- Azáf Sarv finds Búzurj-míhr at, vii, 283
- traditional scene of Yazdagird's death, ix, 70
- Yazdagird at, ix, 97, 116
- sage of, ix, 110
apothegm of, ix, 110
- conduct of Máhwí to Bar-sám at, ix, 117
- Guráz, son of Máhwí, governor of, ix, 120
- Marvell, quoted, viii, 399 *note*
- Marvrád (Murgháb), river in Khurásán flowing into and forming the Marv oasis, ii, 228; iv, 255; viii, 92
- Mary, Maryam, mother of Jesus, viii, 276 *note*, 277 *note*
- Maryam, daughter of Cæsar, i, 73, 174, viii, 188, 192, 276 *note*, 278, 279, 373, 374, 380, murder of, viii, 193, 389
referred to, viii, 255, 266, 269, 270, 371, 381, 389
counselled by Cæsar, viii, 279, 280
- Niyátús put in charge of, viii, 280
as peace-maker, viii, 310
- Mashad, city in Khurásán, ii, 189
- Máshya and Máshyói, the offspring of Gaiúmart, the first man, i, 117, 131
- Masius, Mount, viii, 41
- Massagetae, tribe, iii, 192
- Mas'údí, Arabic historian (died A.D. 956), v, 293; vi, 62, 63, 82, 193, 257, 313, 315; vii, 3, 4, 6, 153, 280
version of the death of Rustam by, v, 261
genealogies of Pápák according to, vi, 200
'Book of Indication and Revision' by, vi, 252
apologue of the owls by, vi, 310
parentage of Yazdagird son of Shápur according to, vi, 371
account of the fortifications at Darband by, vii, 215
origin of the game of nard according to, vii, 382
origin of the game of chess according to, vii, 382
on Búzurjmihr, viii, 71
- Maundeville, Sir John, vi, 13, 72
- Maurice, Eastern Roman Emperor, viii, 187, 188

- Maurice, helps Khusrau Parwíz
on terms, viii, 188
murder of, viii, 193
- Mausil, Armenian prince, viii,
188, 189, 248, 282, 295
entertains Bandví, viii, 249
Khusrau Parwíz and, viii, 283
referred to, viii, 293 and
note
- Má wara 'u'n-Nahr (Kuhistán
q.v., Transoxania), ii, 19,
199; iii, 151
- Maximian, Roman Emperor, viii,
188
- Mayam, place, iii, 40, 41, 53, 111
- Mayors of the palace, Oriental, i,
14
- Mazaga, Indian city, vi, 65
taken by Alexander the
Great, vi, 65
- Mázana (Mázandarán, *q.v.*), ii, 28
- Mázandarán, region lying be-
tween the Alburz range
and the Caspian, 143, i,
4, 5, 12, 253, 279, 290,
294, 296, 298, 319, 323,
339, 378; ii, 25 *seq.*, 33,
34, 36 *seq.*, 45, 55, 60 *seq.*,
66 *seq.*, 75, 76, 78, 81, 93,
105, 139, 143 *seq.*, 293,
iii, 144, 167, 207, 215;
232, 243, 256, 260, 324,
330; iv, 86, 136, 296,
299; v, 116, 117, 203,
207, 220; vi, 373; vii,
215; viii, 48; ix, 74
approach to, from Irán, ii
28
description of, ii, 27
king of, 143, ii, 39, 43, 54,
62 *seq.*
interview of, with Rus-
tam, ii, 67
fight of, with Rustam, ii,
73
transforms himself into a
rock, ii, 74
death of, ii, 75
- Mázandaránian, a native of, or
pertaining to, Mázan-
darán, iii, 320
- Mazda, Ahura. *See* Ahura.
- Mazdak, heresiarch, 166, i, 63;
vii, 184, 185
disputation of, with Núshír-
wán, vii, 188, 206 *seq.*
account of, vii, 188, 201
becomes chief minister to
Kubád, vii, 201
influence of, over Kubád,
vii, 201
parable of, to Kubád in time
of drought, vii, 201
practical application of
Kubád's reply by, vii,
202
converts Kubád, vii, 204
preaching and practice of,
vii, 204
attempt of, to convert Núshí-
rwán, vii, 205
Kubád decides against, vii,
208
executed with his followers
by Núshírwán, vii, 208
- Mazdakism, vii, 184
- Mazdakites, vii, 184
great assembly of, vii, 205
massacre of, vii, 185, 208
- Mebodes. *See* Mahbúd.
- Mecca, city, v, 31, 166; vi, 120;
ix, 69
Sikandar's visit to, vi, 64,
119 *seq.*
account of, vi, 64
- Medea, land of, i, 57
- Mede, Medes (Madá), Aryan
people, i, 7, 10, 17, 56, 58,
72; vi, 194, 203
account of, i, 9
confused with the Manda
(nomads), i, 18; vi, 194
empire of the=empire of
the Manda, i, 17; ii, 191
- Media, iv, 315; vi, 31; vii, 6;
Magna, vi, 201, 203, 256
vii, 214
- Median, vi, 195
- Median, language (*Zend*), i, 64
seq.
empire, ii, 9; vi, 194
- Mediterranean, the, vi, 294

- Megara, city in Greece, vi, 323
nole
 legend concerning, vi, 323
note
- Megasthenes, Greek writer,
temp. Alexander the Great, vi, 68
- Meherdates (Mīlād), Parthian prince, iii, 10 *seq.*
- Memphis, Egyptian city, vi, 82
 corpse of Alexander the Great taken to, vi, 82
- Merchant, a, 164
 entertains and displeases Bahrám Gúr, vii, 39
 made the slave of his own apprentice, vii, 42
- Merchants, Iránian, made accessories to Bahrám Gúr's flight from Ilind, vii, 133, 134
- Mercury, planet, i, 72; iii, 159, 318; v, 243; vi, 171, 224; viii, 299, 395; ix, 73
- Meroe, island and city of, vi, 13, 65
- Meru, mythical mountain, iv, 139
- Mesopotamia, vi, 30, 294, 321
 Arab invasions of, iii, 14
 annexed by Arabs, ix, 68
- Mesopotamian desert, vi, 322
- Messiah, the, viii, 267
- Mih-Ázar-Gushnasp, minister of Ardashír, son of Shírwí, in Arabic Tabarí, ix, 43
 put to death, ix, 43
- Mihr, month and day, i, 88, 89, 174, 175, 232; vi, 24, 33, 55
- Mihr, feast, ix, 40
- Mihr, sacred Fire. *See* Mihr Barzín.
- Mihr Ázar, priest, vii, 188, 206
 assists Núshírwán in his disputation with Mazdak, vii, 206
- Mihr Barzín, sacred Fire and Fire-temple, vi, 201, 212 and *note*
 established by Gushtásp, v, 34
- Mihr Barzín, Iránian warrior, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Mihr Bídád, Iránian magnate, vii, 21
 entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 22
- Mihr 'Hasís, minister of Ardashír, son of Shírwí, in Persian Tabarí, ix, 43
 put to death, ix, 43
- Mihr Hormuzd, Iránian noble, 175, viii, 196; ix, 34
 account of, ix, 5
 referred to, ix, 6, 33
 conspires against Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 6
 put to death, ix, 7
 described, ix, 33
- Mihr-i-Núsh, second son of Astandiyár, ii, 3; v, 80, 283
 slain by Farámarz, v, 227
 death of, reported to Asfandiyár by Bahman, v, 227
 corpse of, sent to Gush-tásp, v, 232
- Mihr-i-Núsh, Persian sage, vii, 270
 quoted, vii, 270
- Mihr-i-Núsh, ix, 103
 pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, ix, 103
- Mihr Narsí, chief minister of Bahrám Gúr and of his son Yazdagird, vii, 4, 153 sons of, vii, 4
- Mihr Pírúz, Iránian warrior, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
- Mihráb, king of Kábul, 141, 142, i, 234, 361; ii, 12, 14, 18, 21
 visited by Zál, i, 256
 tributary to Sám, i, 256
 daughter of (Rúdába), i, 257, v, 203
 praises Zál to Síndukht, i, 260
 hears from Síndukht of the loves of Zál and Rúdába, i, 284
 reproaches Rúdába, i, 289
 Sám sent against, i, 292

- Mihráb, hears of Sám's coming, i, 292, 299
 Minúchihrl's assent to Zál's marriage, i, 314
 felicitates Síndukht, i, 315
 Síndukht and, prepares to welcome Sám and Zál, i, 314
 entertains Sám and Zál, i, 317
 visit Sám, i, 319
 hears of the birth of Rustam, i, 323
 goes with Zál and Rustam to meet Sám, i, 324
 parleys with Shamásás and Khazarwán to gain time, i, 358
 writes to summon Zál, i, 359
- Mihrak, Tribal King, 161, vi, 3, 199, 237, 238, 257, 267, 268, 270, 272, 273; vii, 185, 192
 =Mithrak, vi, 206
 slain by Ardshír Pápákán, vi, 241
 daughter of, 161, vi, 3, 241, 256, 257, 268 *seq.*, 272
 escapes, vi, 241, 256, 268 referred to in Kaid's prophecy, vi, 267
 discovered by Shápur, vi, 268 *seq.*
 informs Shápur of her birth, vi, 270
 marries Shápur, vi, 270
 birth of her son Urmuzd, vi, 271
 =Mithrak =Mádik =Arda-wán (?), vi, 256
 importance of, in legend, vi, 257, 267; viii, 72, 73
- Mihrak, servant of Núshírwán, viii, 18 19
- Mihrán, Indian sage, 159, vi, 91, 97
 consulted by Kaid about his dreams, vi, 92 *seq.*
 interprets Kaid's dreams, vi, 94 *seq.*
- Mihrán, family, vii, 156
 importance of, viii, 72, 73
 proverb on, vii, 185
 account of, vii, 185
 rivalry of, with family of Káran, vii, 185
 men of mark among the, vii, 186, 187; viii, 74
- Mihrán, treasurer to Yazdagird son of Shápur, vi, 387
- Mihrán, Iránian general, vii, 251 commands the centre of Núshírwán's host, vii, 251
- Mihrán, archscribe, viii, 76 sent with Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 106
 counsels Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 122 and *note*
 seeks refuge, viii, 123 congratulates Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 129
 takes counsel with Kharrád, viii, 159
 flees from Balkh and is retaken, vii, 159
 pardoned by Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 160
 referred to, viii, 163 speech of, viii, 166
- Mihrán Sitád, Iránian high priest and envoy, *temp.* Núshírwán, 168, vii, 186, 350, 361, 363; viii, 96, 100 attempt of the Khán to outwit, vii, 352
 takes charge of the Khán's daughter, vii, 354 receives gifts from the Khán, vii, 356 welcomed on his return, vii, 357
 embassage of, referred to, viii, 72, 97 sent for by Hurmuzd, viii, 97 tells of prophecy about Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 98, 216 death of, viii, 99
- Mihrán Sitád, merchant, entertains Klusráu Parwiz, viii, 251

- Mihrás, father of Ilyás ruler of Khazar, iv, 352
- Mihrás, Cæsar's envoy, vii, 261
negotiates peace with Núshír-wán, vii, 261
- Mihrdát. *See* Meherdates.
- Mihrgán, feast, i, 175 and *note*, iv, 313; vi, 230 and *note*, 245
- Mihrmas, vi, 200
- Mil as rhyme word, i, 75
- Milád, fránian hero, iii, 11, 12, 25, 29, 145, 274, 289, 293, 345; iv, 83, 147, 191; vi, 394; viii, 72, 211
import of word, viii, 73
customs of, viii, 216
- Milád (Taxila), Indian city, vi, 102, 109, 110
situation of, vi, 62
- Sikandar approaches, vi, 98
- Military obsequies, *temp.* Núshír-wán, vii, 252
- Milk, bane of, vii, 125 and *note*, 324
easily "turned," vii, 317
poisoned by the Evil Eye, vii, 320 seq., 324, 325
- Mill, 176, ix, 89, 116
- Miller, a, daughters of, 164
becomes Bahrám Gúr's father-in-law, vii, 34
dignified by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 34
- Miller, a, 176, ix, 70
Yazdagird and, ix, 99
informs chief of Zark about Yazdagird, ix, 100
informs Máhwí about Yazdagird, ix, 101
bidden to slay Yazdagird, ix, 107
fling corpse into stream, ix, 108
- Mingrelia, province on the eastern shore of the Black Sea, vii, 215
- Minister, piece in chess. *See* Wazir.
- Minos, king of Crete, vi, 323 *note*
legend of, vi, 323 *note*
- Mínú, viii, 253 and *note*
- Minúchihr, Sháh, 140-142, i, 42, 90, 91, 209 seq., 274, 275, 319, 337, 339 seq., 348, 363; ii, 19, 29, 33, 36, 37, 302, 318, 400; iii, 9, 30, 87, 115; iv, 10, 65, 69, 70, 76, 136, 206, 283, 285, 298; v, 12, 174, 252, 284; vi, 200, 353; viii, 219, 223, 392; ix, 103
birth of, i, 206
etymology of, i, 206 and *note*, 234 and *note*
- Farídún's gifts to, i, 207
goes to fight Salm and Túr, i, 216
makes proclamation to the host, i, 218
contends against Salm and Túr, i, 219
prepares for a night-surprise, i, 220
sends Túr's head to Farídún, i, 222
sends Káran to take the Castle of the Aláns, i, 223 seq.
hears of Káran's success, i, 225
defeats and slays Karkwí, i, 225 seq.
pursues and slays Salm, i, 227
pardons Salm's troops, i, 229
sends Salm's head and a letter to Farídún, i, 229
return of, in triumph, i, 230
welcomed by Farídún, i, 230
confided to Sám by Farídún, i, 231
enthroned by Farídún, i, 232
mourning of, for, and burial of, Farídún, i, 233
Reign of, 141, i, 234 seq.
Note on, i, 234 seq.
accession and inaugural address of, i, 237
Sám's address to, i, 238

Minúchihr, hears of Sám's finding of Zál, i, 248
 sons of, 248
 sends Naudar to congratulate Sám, i, 248
 summons Sám and Zál to court, i, 249
 Sám tells the story of his quest to, i, 250
 Zál's horoscope taken by order of, i, 251
 gifts of, to Sám, i, 251
 hears of the case of Zál and Rúdába, i, 288
 advises with the archimates, i, 288
 welcomes Sám, i, 289
 hears of Sám's campaign, i, 290
 bids Sám destroy Mihráb and his belongings, i, 292
 receives Zál well, i, 306
 consults the astrologers as to Zál, i, 307
 Zál proved by hard questions by order of, i, 308
 Zál displays his accomplishment before, i, 311
 gracious reply of, to Sám, i, 314
 warned of his death by the astrologers, i, 335
 counsels, and gives the throne to, Naudar, i, 335
 dies, i, 336

Minúchihr, son of Árash, iv, 149
 commands the troops from Khurásán, iv, 148
 slays Kuhílá, iv, 181
 commands the left, iv, 191

Mírín, Rúman chief, 154
 asks Cæsar's second daughter, Dilánjám, in marriage, iv, 333
 bidden by Cæsar to slay the wolf of Fáskún, iv, 333
 casts a horoscope, iv, 334
 asks Híshwi to interest Gushtásp in his behalf, iv, 334

Mírín, provides Gushtásp with a steed and arms, iv, 336
 goes with Gushtásp and Híshwi to the forest of Fáskún, iv, 337
 Híshwi and, welcome Gushtásp on his return, iv, 339
 informs Cæsar that he has slain the wolf, iv, 341
 marries Cæsar's daughter, iv, 341
 consulted by Ahran, iv, 342
 refers Ahran to Híshwi, iv, 344
 letter of, to Híshwi, iv, 344
 Ahran and, display their accomplishment on the riding-ground, iv, 349
 Cæsar's wrath with, iv, 351
 sends a scornful message to Cæsar, iv, 353
 set to guard the baggage, iv, 355

Mír Khánd (Mirkhond), Persian historian (A.D 1433-1498), v, 30; vi, 62, 315; vii, 3, 4, 6, 156, 159, 171, 183, 186; viii, 192
 distich of, quoted, ix, 56

Miskál, measure of weight, vi, 24 and note, viii, 394

Misr (Egypt), 159, ii, 79, 80, 84, 94, 96, 143, 286; vi, 114, 115, 122, 181; viii, 381
 king of temp. Kai Káús, ii, 94, 95, 98
 king of, defeated by Sikandar, vi, 37
 welcomes Sikandar, vi, 121
 invaded by Sikandar, vi, 37, 121
 sea of, vi, 120
 Sikandar stays a year in, vi, 121

Mithra, Mitra, god, i, 7

Mithradát. See Meherdates.

Mithrak, vi, 206
 =Mihráb, vi, 206
 =Mihráb=Mádik=Arda-wán (?), vi, 256

- Mithrates. *See* Mcherdates.
- Mithradates I, Parthian king, ii, 80
- Modes of speech, viii, 30
- Mohl, Jules, his edition and translation of the Sháhnáma, i, 76, 77; vi, 60
on the Story of Bízhan and Manízha, iii, 285, 286
the Worm, vi, 203
- Wisdom-literature, vii, 280
- Mong, Indian city, vi, 18
- Monks, ix, 109
find and recover corpse of Yazdagird, ix, 109
lament over and entomb Yazdagird, ix, 109 *seq.*
sentences of, over Yazdagird, ix, 109 *seq.*
slain by Máhwí, ix, 113
- Monophysite, viii, 195
- Moola Firooz, i, 201 *note*
- Moon, one of the seven planets, i, 72, viii, 395
on the nature of the, 139, i, 205
=Túr, i, 223
divided by Muhammad, viii, 42, 67
- Moses, Hebrew law-giver, v, 294
- Salt Fish and, legend of, vi, 77
Faith of, vi, 95
- Moses of Chorené, Armenian historian (5th century A.D.), i, 72
account of Zahhák by, i, 144
Rustum by, i, 236
- Mosul, city in Mesopotamia, vi, 322
- Mountain, mountains, sanctity of, i, 118
of the Holy Questions, i, 62
—skirt (Dáman-i-Kuh), iii, 15, 91, 95
=Rakhsh, iii, 221, 251
- Old man of the, v, 30
- sheep, personification of the divine Grace, vi, 201, 221. *See* Ram.
- Mu'áwiya, Khalifa (A.D. 661-679), i, 12, 13
- Múbid, i, 83
- Mughíra, son of Shu'ba. *See* Shu'ba Mughíra, ix, 69
- Muhammad, the Prophet (about A.D. 571-632), i, 13, 40, 41; ii, 337 *note*; vi, 65, 190, 292; viii, 42, 191; ix, 69, 81 *seq.*
- on 'Alí, i, 12, 106
praise of, i, 106
quoted, i, 106, v, 166
reference of, to Alexander the Great in the Kurán, vi, 15, 77
- Muhammad, birth of, vii, 213
Núshírwán and, 170, viii, 68
divides the Moon, viii, 42, 67
letter of, to Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 66
Flight of, referred to, ix, 122
- Muhammad Kásim, Arab general, vi, 325
- Muhammad Laskarí, friend of Firðausí, i, 99; iii, 286
- Muhammad Mahdí, his edition of the Sháhnáma, i, 76
- Muhammad, son of Abdú'r-Razzak, i, 68, 99
- Muhammadan, Muhammadans, vi, 78; viii, 73
elements in Sháhnáma, viii, 42
ethics respected, viii, 74
- Mukaffa'. *See* Ibn Mukaffa'.
- Múltán, city in the Punjáb, vii, 140
monarch of, entertained by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140
- Mumascuni, tribe, i, 237
- Munzir, al, dynasty of, i, 55
- Munzir, prince of Híra, *temp.* Yazdagird son of Shápur and Bahrám Gúr, 163, 164, vi, 372, 394, 406, 408; vii, 9
- visits Yazdagird, vi, 377
- monarch of Yaman, vi, 378

Munzir, returns to Yaman with Bahrám, vi, 378
 chooses nurses for Bahrám, vi, 378
 dismisses Bahrám's tutors, vi, 380
 provides Bahrám Gúr with steeds, vi, 380
 provides Bahrám Gúr with slave-girls, vi, 381
 goes to the chase with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 384
 sends a picture of Bahrám Gúr shooting to Yazdagird, vi, 385
 sends Bahrám Gúr with Nu'mán to Yazdagird, vi, 386
 receives a letter from Yazdagird, vi, 387
 counsels and sends Bahrám Gúr a slave-girl and presents, vi, 388
 welcomes Bahrám Gúr on his return, vi, 390
 supports Bahrám Gúr's claim to the throne, vi, 396 *seq.*
 invades Irán, vi, 397
 interview of, with Jawáñwí, vi, 398 *seq.*
 refers Jawáñwí to Bahrám Gúr, vi, 398
 advises Bahrám Gúr to negotiate with the Iránians, vi, 401, 404
 intercedes with Bahrám Gúr for the Iránians, vii, 10
 rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 10
 Munzir, son of Nu'mán, prince of Híra, *temp.* Núshírwán, 167, vii, 244 *seq.*
 protected by Núshírwán, vii, 217
 war of, with Hárith bin Jabala, vii, 217
 sent by Núshírwán to invade Rúm, vii, 246
 Murdád, ameshaspenta, i, 88; iii, 287, 328

Músh, town west of Lake Ván, viii, 188
 Mushkinál, a miller's daughter, vii, 32 and *note*
 taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
 Mushkinak, a miller's daughter, vii, 32 and *note*
 taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
 Muslim, ix, 85
 Mutawakkil, Khalifa (A.D. 847-861), i, 14
 Cypress of Kishmar destroyed by, v, 28
 Mutilation, instances of, vi, 261, 323, 334, 348, 357, 404
 Mytilene, Chares of, Greek writer, *temp.* Alexander the Great, ii, 10; vi, 61
 quoted, iv, 314

N

NABARZANES, Persian general, vi, 32
 pardoned by Alexander the Great, vi, 32
 Nádir, Sháh, iii, 14
 Nadr son of Hárith, v, 166
 recites the story of Rustam and Asfandíyár, v, 166
 fate of, v, 166
 Nahávand, city, south of Hamadán, i, 12; ix, 68, 69
 Yazdagird concentrates his forces at, ix, 68
 Battle of, i, 12; ix, 69
 Náhíd (Katáyún, *q.v.*)
 Náhíd (Halai, Olympias?), daughter of Failakús and mother of Sikandar, 159, vi, 24 *seq.*, and *note*
 married to Dáráb, vi, 25
 troubled by offensive breath, vi, 26
 cured, but repudiated by Dáráb, vi, 26
 returns to Failakús and gives birth to Sikandar, vi, 26

- Náhid, visits Dilárái and Rúshának, vi, 89
 referred to, vi, 187
- Náhid, the planet Venus, vi, 214
- Nahrawán, city near Baghdád, east of the Tigris; also a canal on the eastern bank of that river, quitting it about 100 miles above, and rejoining it about 100 miles below, Baghdád, vii, 141; viii, 187, 204, 206, 231
 bridge of, viii, 223, 228 *seq.*
 broken down by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 229
- Naishapur. *See* Nishápúr.
- Naitkún (Antigonus), minister of Sikandar, name of, assumed by Sikandar, vi, 66, 125 *seq.*
 personates Sikandar, vi, 125 *seq.*
- Kaidrúsh and his wife brought before, vi, 126 sentenced to death by, vi, 126
 pardoned by, vi, 126
 =Sikandar, vi, 131, 133, 134, 141
- Nakula, one of the five Pán-davas, iv, 138
 referred to, iv, 139
- Names, use of, in sympathetic magic, i, 8, 177, 179
 secret and public, viii, 372 and *note*
- Námkhást, Túránian hero, v, 24, 26
 goes as envoy to Gushtásp, v, 37, 40
 returns with Gushtásp's answer, v, 44
 given command of the centre, v, 56
 worsted by Girámí, v, 59
- Napata, city in Nubia, vi, 65
- Naphtha, 159, i, 56
 black, iv, 208, 209
 use of, in sieges, iv, 208, 209
- Naphtha, Sikandar's iron steeds filled with, 159, vi, 115
 Fúr's elephants and troops routed by the use of, vi, 116
 used to vitrify Sikandar's barrier, vi, 165
- Nard, game of, 169, viii, 371
 invention of, vii, 280, 381, 382, 389
 sent by Núshírwán to the Rája of Hind, vii, 5, 381
 meaning of, vii, 381
 symbolism of, vii, 381
 Mas'údí on, vii, 382
 described, vii, 389
- Narfínán, Iránian hero, father of Sám and great-grandfather of Rustam, i, 42, 174, 207, 212, 239, 299, 333, 344; ii, 4, 49, 115, 119, 125, 126, 162, 354; iii, 17, 35; v, 196, 199, 202, 242, 262, 264, 266, 289
 death of, described, i, 329
- Narimanau, epithet of Keresáspa, i, 172, 174
- Narmpái, name of a tribe, 160, ii, 55 and *note*, 63, 64; vi, 71 and *note*
- Sikandar and, vi, 150
- Narses (Narsí, son of Bahrám, *q.v.*), Sásánian king
- Narses, Exarch, treatment of, by Empress Sophia, viii, 76
- Narses, general, viii, 189
- Narsí, Ashkánian king, vi, 197, 210
- Narsí, son of Bahrám, Sháh (Narses), 162, vi, 3, 313, 316, 325, 330, 331, 337; vii, 359
 Reign of, vi, 315 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 315
 title of, vi, 315
 inaugural address of, vi, 315
 daughter of, 162. *See* Núsha.
- Narsí, brother of Bahrám Gúr, 165, vi, 3; vii, 4, 95, 100

- Narsí, made captain of the host, vii, 11
regent, vii, 86
fails to persuade the Iránians to resist the Khán, vii, 87
Bahrám Gúr's letter to, vii, 92
writes to Bahrám Gúr on behalf of the Iránians, vii, 94
goes with the chiefs to welcome Bahrám Gúr, vii, 96
made ruler of Khurásán, vii, 99
welcomes his brother on his return from Hind, vii, 137
Nárwan, forest of, near Tánníshá *q.v.* i, 217, 218; ii, 341; viii, 356, 360, 377; ix, 86
Nasíbín (Nisibis, *q.v.*), vi, 326
cession of, vi, 355
inhabitants of, refuse to submit to Shápúr, vi, 356
taken by Shápúr, vi, 356
Násirú'd-Dín, title of Subuktigín, *q.v.*, i, 21, 100, 114
Nasr, Amír, brother of Sultán Mahmúd, i, 21; vi, 196
account of, i, 100
referred to, i, 114
praise of, i, 114; vi, 207
Nasr, Arab chief, vi, 65
appeals to Sikandar for help, vi, 120
made ruler of Mecca, vi, 121
Nasr, son of Ahmad, Sámáníd, vii, 340
patron of Rúdagí, vii, 383
Nastár, Cæsar's master of the herds, iv, 325
refuses to employ Gushtásp, iv, 326
Nastíhan, Túránian hero, son of Wísa and brother of Píráñ, 146, 151, i, 92; ii, 264; iii, 79, 198, 210, 231, 252; iv, 53 *seq.*, 61, 75, 77
pursues Kai Khusrau, ii, 377 *seq.*
- Nastíhan, slain by Bízhan, iv, 54
Nastúh, Iránian hero, ii, 4; iii, 46; iv, 148
Nastúh, Túránian hero, iv, 156
Nastúh, son of Míhrán Sitád, 173, viii, 225, 303
advises Húrmuzd, viii, 96
released by Bahrám Chú-bína, viii, 306
Nastúr (Basta-vairi, Bastvár), son of Zarír, 155, v, 12, 25
exploits of, foretold by Jámásp, v, 50
given command of the rear, v, 55
fights victoriously, v, 60
goes in search of Zarír, v, 67
finds Zarír's corpse and laments over it, v, 67
exhorts Gushtásp to avenge Zarír, v, 68
goes forth with Gushtásp's steed and armour, v, 69
challenges Bídirafsh, v, 69
fights with Bídirafsh, v, 70
attacks, with Asfandiyár and Núsh Ázar, the Túránians, v, 71
leads the host home, is given a command, and invades Túrán, v, 74
stationed on the Iránian left, v, 94
commands the right, v, 109
Nastúr, son of Shírin and Khusrau Parwíz, ix, 39
Nature-worship, of the Aryans, i, 7, 51
Nau-Ardshír=Nard, vii, 381
Naubahár, Fire-temple at Balkh, 31
Luhrásp retires to, v, 31
Naudar, Sháh, 142, i, 90, 91, 369; ii, 20, 36, 70, 153, 336, 400, 404; iii, 8, 24, 39, 50, 57, 67, 86, 112, 123, 132, 177, 187, 215, 257, 289, 294, 327; iv, 13, 61, 70, 157, 167, 178,

Nandar—*cont.*

191, 193, 206, 237, 254,
262, 267; vii, 37, 171;
viii, 223, 242
embassies of, to Sám, i, 248,
288
returns with Sám to court, i,
289
counselled by Minúchihr and
appointed his successor, i,
335
laments for Minúchihr, i,
336
Reign of, 142, i, 337 *seq.*
 Note on, i, 337
accession of, i, 339
evil rule of, i, 339
revolts against, i, 339
appeals to Sám, i, 339
the chiefs reconciled to,
 by Sám, i, 341
rewards Sám, i, 342
marches against Afrásiyáb
 to Dahistán, i, 345
battles of, with Afrásiyáb,
 i, 348 *seq.*
takes counsel with Káran,
 i, 349
defeated, i, 350, 353
sends Tús and Gustaham
 to conduct the Persian
 women to Alburz, i, 351
beleaguered in Dahistán, i,
 353
escapes from Dahistán, i,
 355
pursued and taken by Afrá-
 siyáb, i, 355
slain, i, 363
the Iránians bewail, i, 364
Naurúz, Persian New-year's day
 when the sun enters Aries,
 vi, 33, 55, 273, 389; viii,
 216
Nawand, place in Khurásán on
 the Binalúd Kuh (?), ii,
 107
Náztáb, a miller's daughter, vii,
 32 and *note*
 taken to wife by Bahrám
 Gúr, vii, 33

Nearchus, admiral of Alexander
the Great, vi, 12, 61, 70
Ichthyophagi, account of
by, quoted by Arrian, vi,
69, 70
Nectanebus II (Nekht-neb-f),
the last Pharaoh
personates Amen-Ra and
becomes the legendary
father of Alexander the
Great, vi, 16
 story of, vi, 18 and *note*
Need, personification of. See
Greed.
Negroes, the, described, vi, 73,
157
cause frost and snow to
harm Síkandar, vi, 156,
157
Nekht-neb-f. See Nectanebus.
Nercis. See Kalé.
Nero, Roman emperor (A.D. 54–
68), vii, 279
Néryósang, ii, 82
Nestorian, Nestorians, viii, 195
 Metropolitan, vii, 219
 Patriarch, vii, 219
New Year, Persian, beginning of,
 i, 74, 88
 Feast of (Naurúz, New
 Year's Day), i, 74, 274;
 vii, 94, 200
 origin of, i, 133
Nicaea, Indian city, vi, 18
Nicephorium (Callinicus, Kálíni-
 yús *q.v.*, Warígh, Rakka),
 viii, 188
Nicolaus of Damascus, Greek
historian *temp.* Augustus,
vi, 195
Nil, as rhyme-word, i, 75
Nile, i, 40, 71, 114, 297; ii, 96,
153, 217, 310, 402; iii,
38, 41, 58, 208, 224, 225;
iv, 145 *seq.*, 180, 333; v,
176, 188, 191, 245; vi, 42,
169, 171, 269; vii, 48,
250, 344, 416; viii, 126,
284, 293, 294; ix, 98
Blue, vi, 65
mistaken for Indus, vi, 68

Númrúz—Sístán=Zábulistán,¹ i, 252, 264, 346, 357; ii, 21, 34, 69, 77, 80, 84, 338, 395; iii, 17, 35, 319; iv, 156, 188; v, 85, 248, 288; vii, 327; viii, 196, 284; ix, 5, 6
 confirmed to Rustam by Kai Khusrau, iv, 297
 Zál by Luhrásp, iv, 312
 Sikandar marches to, vi, 175
 satrapy of, ix, 69
 Nineveh, viii, 193
 fall of, i, 10
 kings of, that attacked Irán, i, 10
 battle near, viii, 194
 Ninus, mythical founder of Nineveh, v, 202, 293
 Ninyas, son of Ninus, v, 293
 Niris, salt lake in Párs, vi, 17 referred to, vi, 21
 Nisá, city (Muhammadábád ?) in Khurásán or town in Kirmán, vii, 89; viii, 19
 Nishápúr, city in Khurásán,² i, 36, 45; ii, 101; iv, 255; v, 28 *seq.*, 291; vi, 298; viii, 173; ix, 95
 Nisibis (Násibín q.v.), city in northern Mesopotamia, i, 374
 sieges of, i, 374, viii, 41
 peace of, vi, 254
 cession of, by Jóvian, vi, 326 by Khusrau Parwíz (?), viii, 188
 Nisus and Scylla, story of, vi, 323 *note*
 Nitetis, vi, 16
 Nívzár, son of Gushtásp, 155, v, 26
 death of, foretold by Jámíasp, v, 50
 slain, v, 60

Niyátús (Theodosius, son of Maurice), 173, viii, 189, 281, 289; ix, 23
 brother of Cæsar, viii, 280, 310
 put in charge of Maryam, viii, 280
 welcomed by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 280
 writh with Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 290
 watches fight between Khusrau Parwíz and Bahrám Chúbfá, viii, 297
 entertained at banquet by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 309
 quarrel of, with Bandwí, viii, 309
 threat of, to Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 310
 reconciled to Bandwí, viii, 311
 returns to Rúm, viii, 312
 Nizámí, Persian poet, viii, 192
 Nizámí-i-'Arúdí, Persian writer (12th century A.D.), i, 23
 account of Firdausí by, i, 38 *seq.*, 45, 46
 Nöldeke, Professor, v, 20, 21, 282; vi, 198 *note*, 199 and *note*, 253, 313, 372; viii, 71, 188
 on the dív Akwán, iii, 271
 quoted, v, 118
 treatise of, on the Alexander Romance, *etc.*, vi, 14 and *note*
 on the Story of the Worm, vi, 203, 205, 206
 on Haftwád, vi, 206
 on the Gípsics, vii, 6
 on Súfarai, vii, 171, 185
 on Wisdom-literature, vii, 281

¹ Properly speaking, Zábulistán is the name of the hilly country about the upper waters of the Helmund, while Númrúz and Sístán are synonymous names for the low lying lands into which its waters descend, but Firdausí does not seem to make any such distinction.

² The city has suffered much in the past from the ravages of war and earthquake and has been rebuilt several times on slightly varying sites.

- Nöldeke, on Romance of Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 73
- North, Sir Thomas (A.D. 1535-1603 ?), vii, 383
version of the Fables of Bidpai by, vii, 383
- Northman, the, vi, 19
found the Russian empire, vi, 19
- Note on Pronunciation, preceding text in each volume
- Nubia, vi, 65
- Núh bin Nasr, Sámánid prince (A.D. 942-954), vii, 5
- Núh II. bin Mansúr, Sámánid prince (A.D. 976-997), i, 21, 36; v, 21
- Nu'mán, prince of Híra, 163, 164, vi, 372, 396, 404
visits Yazdagird, vi, 377
goes to the chase with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 384
goes to the Persian court with Bahrám Gúr, vi, 386
returns to Yaman with letters and presents, vi, 387
welcomes Bahrám Gúr on his revisiting Yaman, vi, 390
invades Frán, vi, 397
rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 10
- Nu'mán bin Munzír, prince of Híra, viii, 188; ix, 5
put to death, viii, 190
- Nu'mán, Arab general, ix, 68
sent by 'Umar to fight Yazdagird, ix, 68
defeats Pírúzán at Nahávand, ix, 68
slain, ix, 69
- Nurse, Manízha's, iii, 297
interview of, with Bízhan, iii, 297
- Núsha (Dukhtnúsh), daughter of Narsí, 162, vi, 3, 324, 331
carried off by the Arabs, vi, 323, 330
- Núsh Ázar, Fire-temple at Balkh, v, 92 *note*, 173, 241, 255
burnt by the Turkmans, v, 93
- Núsh Ázar, youngest son of Asfandiyár, ii, 3, v, 166, 283, 285
attacks, with Nastúr and Asfandiyár, the Túránian host, v, 71
builder of a Fire-temple, v, 81
with Asfandiyár at Gumbadán, v, 98
informs Asfandiyár of Jámásp's arrival, v, 98, 99
accompanies Asfandiyár from Gumbadán, v, 103
slays Turkhán, v, 151
wrangles with Zawára, v, 226
slays Alwá, v, 226
slain by Zawára, v, 227
death of, reported to Asfandiyár by Bahman, v, 227
corpse of, sent to Gushtásp, v, 232
- Núshírwán (Kisrá, Chosroes I), Sháh, 166-170, i, 27, 42; v, 260; vi, 3, 201; vii, 4, 199, 220, 273 *seq.*, 279 *seq.*, 320; viii, 3 *seq.*; 71, 72, 86 *seq.*, 98, 129, 169, 198, 200, 205, 209, 300, 312, 313, 377; ix, 22, 26, 71, 80, 92, 105, 109, 110, 119
collector of Iránian tradition, i, 67
quoted, vi, 208, 209 and *note*
origin of name, vii, 185, 211 and *note*
birth of, stories of, vii, 186, 197 *seq.*
assistants of, against Mazdak, vii, 188, 206
upbringing of, vii, 200
Mazdak's attempt to convert, vii, 205
disputation of, with Mazdak, vii, 206 *seq.*

Núshírwán, Kubád decides in favour of, vii, 208
 executes Mazdak and his followers, vii, 208
 Kubád's testament in favour of vii, 210, 316
 Reign of, 167, vii, 212 *seq.*
 Notes on, vii, 212 *seq.*, 279
seq., 316 *seq.*, 380 *seq.*, viii, 3 *seq.*, 41 *seq.*
 Roman Emperors contemporary with, vii, 212
 historical events of reign of, in the Sháhráma, vii, 213
 marriage of, with the daughter of the Khán vii, 347,
seq.
 referred to, viii, 72, 97 *seq.*
 wars of, with Rúm, vii, 213,
 217
 first campaign of, vii, 218,
 249
 conspiracy against, vii, 214,
 316
 division of empire by, vii,
 214, 224; ix, 69
 bargains of, with Justinian, vii, 214, 216 *seq.*
 taxation reformed by, vii,
 215, 224
 wall of, in the Caucasus, 167,
 i, 16; vii, 215, 239
 Mas'údi's account of, vii,
 215
 dealings of, with the Aláns, vii, 216
 Gflán, vii, 216
 Balúchís, vii, 217
 Munzir supported by, vii,
 217, 244
 and consequent war with Rúm, vii, 217, 244
 jealous of Justinian's successes in the West, vii,
 217
 promises to rule justly, vii,
 221 *seq.*
 attends muster at the insistence of Bábak, vii, 231
 approves of Bábak's conduct, vii, 232

Núshírwán, method of, in levying troops, vii, 233
 writes to Caesar on Munzir's behalf, vii, 245
 supplies Munzir with troops for the invasion of Rúm, vii, 246
 goes to Ázar Ábadagán, vii,
 250
 disposition of host by, vii,
 251
 addresses his troops, vii, 251
 proclamations of, vii, 252,
 365
 burial of dead soldiers by, vii, 252
 policy of, with enemies, vii,
 253
 takes Shúráb, vii, 254
 Áráyish-i-Rúm, vii, 255
 Caesar's treasures, vii,
 255, 258
 defeats Farfúriús, vii, 256
 takes Antákiya, vii, 258
 disposes of the Rúman captives, vii, 259, 327
 Rúman cordwainer and, vii,
 260
 envoy from Caesar comes to, vii, 261
 grants peace to Caesar, vii,
 262
 appoints Shírwí to receive the Rúman tribute, vii,
 262
 Christian wife of, vii, 263
 mother of Núshzáf, vii,
 263, 274 *seq.*
 helps Núshzáf, vii, 266
 laments for Núshzáf, vii,
 276
 imprisons Núshzáf, vii, 264
 illness and reported death of, vii, 264, 265
 hears of Núshzáf's revolt, vii, 266
 instructs Rám Barzín how to act, vii, 267 *seq.*
 Seven Banquets of 168, vii,
 280, 287 *seq.*
 possible origin of, vii, 280

- Núshírwán, Seven Banquets of, Búzurjmihr's discourses at, vii, 287 *seq.*
 dream of, vii, 282
 consults the archimages, vii, 282
 seeks for a dream-interpreter, vii, 282
 dream of, interpreted by Búzurjmihr, vii, 284
 rewards and honours Búzurjmihr, vii, 286, 289, 304, 311, 315
 relations of, with Singibú, vii, 317
 the Haitálians, vii, 317
 with Mahbúd and his sons, vii, 319 *seq.*
 suspects Zúrán, vii, 324
 greatness of, vii, 327
 buildings of, vii, 327
 embassy of Khán to, vii, 329
 consults the chiefs as to Faghánish, the Khán, and the Haitálians, vii, 333
 reply of chiefs to, vii, 334
 rejoinder of, to chiefs, vii, 336
 prepares for war with the Khán, vii, 337
 writes to his chiefs, the Khán, and Faghánish, vii, 337
 marches from Madá'in, vii, 337
 goes to Gurgán, vii, 337
 receives embassy from the Khán, vii, 339
 holds a court, vii, 340
 displays his prowess before the assembly, vii, 341
 dismisses the Khán's envoy with a letter, vii, 344
 Khán's offer of affinity to, vii, 347
 reply of, vii, 349
 occupies territory evacuated by the Khán, vii, 358
 Haitálians and others bring gifts to, vii, 360, 362
 gives praise to God, vii, 361
 Núshírwán, receives the tribute from Rúm, vii, 362
 goes to the temple of Ázargashasp, vii, 363
 greatness of, vii, 364
 questions Búzurjmihr, vii, 367 *seq.*
 receives the game of chess from Hind, vii, 380, 385
 Rája of Hind's embassy to, vii, 384
 rewards Búzurjmihr for discovering how to play chess, vii, 388
 sends Búzurjmihr with presents and the game of nard to Hind, vii, 390
 proposes wager with the Rája, vii, 391
 welcomes Búzurjmihr on his return from Hind, vii, 393
 acquires the Book of Kalfá and Dimna, vii, 423 *seq.*
 sends gifts to the Rája, vii, 425
 rewards Barzwí, vii, 429
 precautions of, as to successor, viii, 3
 goes hunting with Búzurjmihr, viii, 4
 suspects and disgraces Búzurjmihr, viii, 5
 treats Búzurjmihr with increasing rigour, viii, 7, 8
 reconciled to Búzurjmihr, viii, 9
 questioned by archimages, viii, 14 *seq.*, 28 *seq.*
 gives judgment against his own son, viii, 16
 chief cook of, aggrieved, viii, 18
 counsels Hurmuzd, viii, 25 *seq.*
 writes to console Caesar's son and successor, viii, 43
 wroth at answer received, viii, 45
 invades Rúm, viii, 46

Núshírwán, success of, viii, 47
 checked, viii, 47
 in want of money, viii, 47
 takes counsel with Búzurj-mihr, viii, 47
 refuses advances from a shoemaker, viii, 50, 71
 high esteem of, for scribes, viii, 50
 grants peace to, and takes tribute from, the Rúmans, viii, 52
 returns to Taisafún, viii, 53
 sons of, viii, 56, 63
 instructs Búzurjmihr to prove Hurmuzd, viii, 56 *seq.*
 testament of, in favour of, and last counsels to, Hurmuzd, viii, 61 *seq.*; ix, 22
 directions of, as to interment, viii, 65
 hall of, shattered, viii, 68
 death of, viii, 69, 71
 system of administration of, viii, 71
 ministers of, put to death by Hurmuzd, viii, 81 *seq.*
 choice of Hurmuzd by, story of, viii, 87
 palace of, viii, 193
 dream of, ix, 92
 Núsh Zád=Mihr-i-Núsh, *q.v.*, v. 285 and *note*

Núshzád, father of Mihrak, vi, 237, 241, 267, 270, 273
 Núshzád, son of Núshírwán, 167, vii, 213, 265, *seq.*
 historical account of, vii, 219
 Firdausi's account of, vii, 263 *seq.*
 education of, vii, 263
 imprisonment of, vii, 264
 hears report of Núshírwán's death, vii, 265
 revolts, vii, 266
 helped by his mother, vii, 266
 writes to Caesar, vii, 266

Núshzád, goes to fight with Rám Baizín, vii, 272
 exhorted to yield by Pírúz, vii, 273
 reply of, to Pírúz, vii, 274
 wounded, vii, 275
 repents, vii, 275
 sends message to his mother, vii, 275
 dies, vii, 275
 lamentation for, vii, 276
 Firdausi's reflections on, vii, 276

O

OASIS OF AMMON, vi, 65
 Alexander the Great's visit to, vi, 65
 Oblivion, Castle of, vii, 184
 Obsequies, military, in the time of Núshírwán, vii, 252
 Oceanus, Homeric and Oriental, i, 71
 Odatis, Scythian princess, iv, 315
 legend of, iv, 315
 Odenathus, Arab chief, vi, 222
 Shápúr son of Ardashír and, vi, 294, 325
 confused with Valerian, vi, 324 *seq.*
 Odorico, Minorite Friar and traveller (A.D. 1286-1331), vi, 13
 Old Man of the Mountain, the, v, 30
 Olives, taxes on, vii, 215, 225
 Olympias (Náhid, Halai ?), wife of Philip of Macedon and mother of Alexander the Great
 legendary relations of, with Nectanebus, vi, 16, 18
 choice by, of name for her son, vi, 19
 intrigues of, vi, 82
 Omartes, Scythian chief, iv, 315
 legend of, iv, 315
 Omen, ii, 192, v, 177
 of the quince, ix, 13, 14

GENERAL INDEX

338

- Omphis, Indian king, vi, 62
 Onager, the div Akwán as, iii, 273 *seq.*
 Bahrám Chúbína guided by, viii, 156, 158
 Onesicritus, chief pilot of Alexander the Great and writer, vi, 67
 untrustworthy, vi, 12, 61, 67
 Fakírs and, vi, 61
 Calanus and, vi, 61
 Mandanes and, vi, 61
 Onnes, minister of Ninus, v, 292, 293
 Ordeal by fire, ii, 218 *seq.*
 Ormus (Hurmuz), city on the Persian Gulf, vi, 204
 Osrhoene, kingdom in northern Mesopotamia, vi, 198
 Othello, play of, quoted, vi, 324
 Owls, Mas'údi's apologue of the, vi, 310
 and Crows, story of, viii, 263 and *note*
 Ox, the first, i, 5
 legend of the, i, 117, 236
 Ox of Kai Káús, ii, 26
 Ox-hide, or skin, filled with gold as tribute, v, 265 and *note*; vii, 262, 363; viii, 46, 52, 53
 Oxus (Jíhún, *q.v.*), river, i, 57; ii, 190; v, 12, 29; vii, 156, 317; viii, 72
 ancient trade-route, i, 57
 confused with Aras, i, 71, 370
 change in course of, i, 57 *note*, iii, 10
 referred to, ix, 117 and *note*, 118
 Oxyartes, father of Roxana (Rúshanak), wife of Alexander the Great, vi, 32
- P
- Padashkívár, a mountain or section of the Alburz range, i, 338
- Page, of Núshírwán, viii, 5 *seq.*
 relative of Búzurjmihr, viii, 5
 instructed by Búzurjmihr, viii, 6
 takes messages between Núshírwán and Búzurjmihr, viii, 6 *seq.*
 Pahlav, region, ii, 77, 102; iii, 222
 Pahlaván, i, 83; vi, 194
 Pahlaví, middle Persian language of Ashkánian (Parthian) and Sásánian times, vii, 6, 113, 188, 380 *seq.*; viii, 73, 74; ix, 50
 meaning of, i, 64, 83
 Firdausí's use of the word, i, 69
 Fables of Bidpai translated into, vii, 382
 language (middle Persian), v, 24, 26, vi, 194
 texts, ii, 27; v, 13, 14, 24, 30; vi, 195, 196, 257
 version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 16, 84
 writing and reading, confusion in, vi, 14, 62, 205, 206
- Paidáwasí, Persian coin=five dinárs, vii, 95 and *note*, viii, 381 and *note*; ix, 19
 Paighú=Túránian, v, 13, 21 *note*, 38 *note*, 41 *note*, 44 *note*; viii, 190
 Paikár-i-Gurd, melody, viii, 398 and *note*
- Pairika. See Parí.
 Palace of Jewels, 160
 Paladins, 154
 Paláshán, Túránian hero, 147, iii, 26, 79
 surveys the Iránian host, iii, 69
 slain by Bízhan, iii, 70
 Pálawína (Cappadocia), vi, 294, 297, 298
 Palestine, vi, 30

- Palladius, bishop, vi, 61, 62
 treatise of, on the Brahmins, vi, 61
 interpolated into the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 61
- Palmyra, city in Syrian desert, vi, 294, 322, 324; vii, 217
- Palus Macotis (Sea of Azoff), vi, 73
- Pándavas, the five, iv, 138, 139
 pilgrimage of, compared with that of Kai Khusrau and his paladins, iv, 138
- Pand Námah, of Moola Firooz, i, 201 *note*
- Pandnámak-i Vadshórg-Mitró-i Búkhtakán, Pahlaví text, vii, 279
- Pándu, Indian king, iv, 316
- Pápak, Tribal King, 160, vi, 3, 194, 195, 198 *seq.*, 211 *note* and *seq.*, 227, 252, 254, 256; viii, 214, 219 and *note*, 285
 Sásán and, vi, 212
 daughter of, marries Sásán, 160, vi, 213
 mother of Ardshír Pápakan, viii, 214
 Ardalawán's letter to, vi, 214
 dies, vi, 218
 kindred of, support Ardshír Pápakan, vi, 223 *seq.*
- Pápakan Ardshír. *See* Ardshír Pápakan.
- Parable, Mazdak's, vii, 201
- Paradise Lost* referred to, vi, 71
- Parí, i, 83, 172
- Paris, city, MSS. of the Pseudo-Callisthenes in National Library at, vi, 14
- Parmúda (*see too* Khán of Chín), 170, 171, viii, 75, 117, 130, 136 *seq.*, 146, 149 *seq.*, 164, 174
 hears of Bahrám Chúbina's victory and takes counsel, viii, 131
 marches toward Jihún, viii, 131
- Parmúda, approaches Balkh, viii, 134
 attacks and is defeated by Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 134 *seq.*
 escapes to Áwáza, viii, 138 besieged by Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 138 *seq.*
 negotiates surrender of Áwáza with Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 139 *seq.*
 surrenders Áwáza and sets out for Irán, viii, 143
 insulted by Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 144
 Bahrám Chúbina tries to placate, viii, 145
- Párs (Persis, Fársistán), country on the eastern shores of the Persian Gulf, 142, 153, 160, i, 351, 353, *seq.*, 357, 368, 371; ii, 23, 28, 76, 101, 226, 275, 286, 362, 410; iv, 146, 256, 269, 270, 318; v, 293; vi, 17, 25, 32 *note*, 37, 45, 115, 119, 194 and *passim*; vii, 86, 90, 95, 190, 194, 201, 206, 214, 224; viii, 109 *note*, 112, 216, 241, 393, 395; ix, 68
 corpse of Darius Codomanus sent to, vi, 33
- Ardshír Pápakan flees to, vi, 220
 marches from, against Ardalawán, vi, 227
 returns to, vi, 229
- Iránians, after the death of Yazdagird son of Shápúr, meet to consult in, vi, 394
- Parsís, ix, 64
- Part Kings. *See* Tribal Kings.
- Parthia, kingdom, v, 10
 Hystaspes governor of, v, 10
- Parthian, Parthians, i 10, 60, 64; vi, 203, 256, 322; vii, 156; viii, 73
 conquest of Irán by, i, 19
 Zoroastrianism under, i, 63

- Parthian, dynasty, iii, 9, 11 ; v, 281 ; vi, 194, 201
 uses the title of King of kings, vi, 197
 Great King, vi, 198
 history, events of, reproduced in distorted form in Sháhnáma, iii, 11
 kingdom, ii, 80
- Parwíz, Iránian chief, vi, 394
 Parwíz, meaning of, viii, 187.
See too Khusrau Parwíz.
- Pashan (Ládan), battle of, iii, 15, 80, 89 ; iv, 27, 36, 42, 90, 206 ; viii, 397 and *note*
- Pashang, father of Minúchihr, i, 90 ; iii, 25 (?) ; iv, 136, marries daughter of Iraj ; i, 205
- Pashang, ruler of Túrán and father of Afrásiyáb, 142 ; i, 92, 336, 337 ; ii, 11, 13, 18, 20, 21, 297, 401 ; i, 15 ; iv, 78, 136, 151, 174, 222, 266, 289
 consults his chiefs as to war with Irán, i, 342
 bids Afrásiyáb invade Frán, i, 343, 375
 advised by Ighríras not to make war, i, 344
 overrules Ighríras, i, 344
 Afrásiyáb's letter to, i, 346
 wroth with Afrásiyáb, i, 374
- Pashang (Shída, *q.v.*), son of Afrásiyáb, i, 92 ; iii, 15
- Pashín, son of Kai Kubád. *See* Kai Pashín.
- Pashín, Iránian noble, vi, 408
- Patashwárgar, region, vi, 202 and *note*
- Pát-khusrau, brother of Gush-tásp, v, 26
- Patrician, iv, 348
- Patrons of Firdausi, i, 29
- Pauravas, Indian race and dynasty, vi, 31
- Paurúshasp. *See* Pourushaspa.
- Perfumes, invention of, i, 133
- Periods, mythic and historic, of Sháhnáma, i, 49, 53
- Perozes (Pírúz), Sásánian king, vii, 159
- Persepolis (Istakhr), city in Párs, vi, 31, 32 *note*, 373 ; ix, 65
 buildings at, attributed to Humái, v, 293
- Zoroastrian scriptures said to have been burnt at, i, 63
- Persia, i, 308 ; ii, 191 ; iii, 109, 128 ; iv, 8 ; v, 306 *note* ; vi, 61, 278 ; vii, 118, 129, 381 ; viii, 195 ; ix, 66
 Chess brought to, vi, 201 ; vii, 280, 284 *seq.*
 Fables of Bidpai brought to, vii, 213, 423 *seq.*
- Persian, Persians, i, 6, 8 *seq.*, 73, 74 ; ii, 190 ; v, 74 ; vi, 30, 44, 45, 81, 143, 148, 157, 170, 201 and *passim*
- bard, quoted, vii, 265
 dispute with the Rúmans over Sikandar's burial, vi, 184
 empire, ii, 9 ; vi, 197, ix, 65
 war of, with Rúm, viii, 41
 history and legend in relation to Greek history and legend, ii, 9
 language, vi, 147, 205 ; vii, 134, 140, 143, 430 ; ix, 12, 65
 monks introduce the silk-worm into Europe, vi, 204
 mutilation of captives, vi, 323, 334, 348, 357, 404
 sea or gulf, vi, 204, 205, ix, 66, 68
 swords, vii, 135
 wisdom-literature, vii, 278 *seq.*, viii, 3
 verse, vii, 383
Fables of Bidpai translated into, vii, 383
 conquest of Yaman, viii, 24 *note*
 raid Syia, viii, 41

- Persian, Persians, defeat by Romans referred to, viii, 72
 war with Turks, viii, 72
 Book of Kings, viii, 73
 Tabarí. *See* Tabarí.
 =Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 113
 =Hurmuzd, viii, 116, 117
 prince= Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 319
 ideas on marriage, ix, 7
 =Ashtád and Kharrád, ix, 24
 exonerate Shírfín, ix, 38
 win 'The Battle of the Bridge,' ix, 67
 fail in attack on Híra, ix, 67
 defeat of, at Kádisíya, ix, 67, 84
 Jalúlá, ix, 68
 Nahávand, ix, 69
 Shu'ba Mughíra's embassy to, ix, 69
 robes, ix, 94
 transcribe Sháhnáma for Firdausí, ix, 121
- Persica*, of Ktesias, v, 293
- Persis (Párs, Fársistán), vi, 195
 Peshó-tanu (Bishútán *q.v.*), v, 12
- Pestilence, in reign of Kubád, ix, 3, 7
- Petroleum, in ancient cult and modern industry, i, 56 *seq.*
- Pharasmanes, King of Khárazm, vi, 72
- Philip II of Macedon, (Failakús, B.C. 382-336), father of Alexander the Great, i, 55 *note*, vi, 16, 29
 Nectanebus and, story of, vi, 18
 names his son Alexander, vi, 19
- Philon, Macedonian noble, vi, 76
- Philosophers, Greek, entertained by Núshírwán, vii, 280
- Phocas, Eastern Roman Emperor, viii, 187, 189, 193, 194
- Phosphor, morning star, ii, 123
- Phótus, quoted, viii, 107
- Phraates II, Parthian king, (B.C. 138-127), ii, 80, 81
- Phraates=Fárhád, iii, 11
- Phrygians, the, vi, 71
- Píl, as rhyme-word, i, 75
- Pillai, Bahrám Gú's, vii, 92, 160, 161, 164
- Pílsam, Túránian hero, 144, 146, ii, 112 *seq.*, 320, 323 *note*, 350 *seq.*; iii, 204
 pleads for Siyáwush, ii, 315
 summons Ifrán to save Farangís, ii, 322
- Pírán, son of Wísa, Túránian hero, cousin, commander-in-chief, and counsellor of Afrásiyáb, 145, 146, 148-152, i, 92; ii, 3, 112, 188, 257 *seq.*, 264, 277, 291, 311, 315, 316, 335, 350, 370, 377, 379 *seq.*, 397, 398; iii, 13, 26 *note*, 39, 42, 58, 90, 91, 98 *seq.*, 102, 108, 120, 122, 123, 125, 142, 149 *seq.*, 158, 160, 161, 169, 181 *seq.*, 192, 193, 199 *seq.*, 216 *seq.*, 222, 227, 232, 234, 242, 252, 253, 259, 305 *seq.*, 335 *seq.*, 349, 350, 357; iv, 7, 10 *seq.*, 15 *seq.*, 29 *seq.*, 36, 38, 41, 47, 59 *seq.*, 88 *seq.*, 93 *seq.*, 103, 106 *seq.*, 117, 118, 129, 134, 145, 159, 160, 162, 205, 206; viii, 414
 character of, i, 55
 identical with Harpagus in legend, ii, 191
 advises Afrásiyáb to receive Siyáwush, ii, 253 *note* and *seq.*
 goes to welcome Siyáwush, ii, 258 *seq.*
 daughter of, 145. *See* Jaríra.
 arranges marriages for Siyáwush, 145, ii, 268 *seq.*
 entertains Siyáwush, ii, 278

Píráñ, offers to help Siyáwush to build Gang-dizh, ii, 278
prophesy of Siyáwush to, ii, 282 *seq.*
goes to collect tribute, ii, 285
visits Siyáwush, ii, 287
Afrásiyáb, ii, 288
summoned to save Farangís, ii, 322 *seq.*
pleads for Farangís, ii, 324
takes charge of Farangís, ii, 325
dreams of Siyáwush, ii, 325
protects the infant Kai Khusrau, ii, 326 *seq.*
advises Afrásiyáb respecting Kai Khusrau, ii, 356
sends Kulpád and Nastíhan to pursue Kai Khusrau, ii, 377
overthrown with his host by Gív, ii, 385
appeals to Kai Khusrau, ii, 386
released, ii, 387
describes Gív's prowess to Afrásiyáb, ii, 389
disgraced, ii, 390
retires to Khutan, ii, 390
appointed to oppose the Iránians, iii, 71, 79
marches on Giravgard to surprise the Iránians, iii, 80
captures the Iránians' herds, iii, 81
defeats the Iránians, iii, 82, 94
Ruhhám's embassy to, iii, 87
grants a month's armistice to Faríburz, iii, 88
losses of, in battle, iii, 94
takes half of Káwa's standard, iii, 94
sends Rúín to attack Bahram, iii, 98
goes to see Bahram, iii, 99
hears of the Iránians' retreat, iii, 105
informs Afrásiyáb and returns in triumph, iii, 106

Píráñ, goes to Khutan, iii, 107
goes to oppose Tús, iii, 117
informs Afrásiyáb of the Iránian invasion, iii, 118
reinforced, iii, 118
joins battle with Tús, iii, 118
sends a warlock to bring a snowstorm on the Iránians, iii, 128
defeats the Iránians, iii, 131
takes counsel with his chiefs, iii, 133
pursues the Iránians, iii, 134
sends Láhhák and Húmán on in advance, iii, 135
reaches Mount Hamáwan, iii, 137
beleaguers the Iránians, iii, 138
attacked by Tús, iii, 139
hears of the approach of reinforcements, iii, 151
harangues his host, iii, 151
goes to meet his allies, iii, 153
plan of campaign of, rejected, iii, 162
hears of the arrival of Iránian succours, iii, 164 *seq.*
Rustam, iii, 174
takes counsel with Kámús and the chiefs, iii, 175, 182
attacks the Iránians, iii, 176
describes Rustam to Kámús, iii, 183
parleys with Rustam, iii, 202
reports to his kindred his interview with Rustam, iii, 206
declines Rustam's terms, iii, 217
retreats, iii, 231
counsels Afrásiyáb, iii, 253
urges Afrásiyáb to withdraw to Chín, iii, 265
city of, iii, 335
entertains Rustam in disguise, iii, 335
pursues Rustam, iii, 349
sent by Afrásiyáb to invade Irán, iv, 11

Píráñ, holds parley with Gív, iv, 20
 informs Afrásiyáb, iv, 20
 receives reinforcements, iv, 20
 rejects Gív's overtures, iv, 21
 occupies Kanábad, iv, 22
 arrays his host, iv, 25
 gives the centre to Húmán
 iv, 25
 left to Burjásp, iv, 26
 right to Lahhák and Farshídward, iv, 26
 sets scouts on the mountain-top, iv, 26
 dissuades Húmán from fighting, iv, 30
 hears of Húmán's death, iv, 51
 sends Nastíhan to make a night-attack, iv, 53
 hears of Nastíhan's death, iv, 55
 attacks Gúdarz, iv, 55
 proposes terms to Gúdarz, iv, 63
 sends Rúín with letter to Gúdarz, iv, 67
 receives Gúdarz' reply, iv, 74
 harangues his troops and prepares for battle, iv, 75
 sends messenger to Afrásiyáb, iv, 75
 receives Afrásiyáb's reply, iv, 80
 becomes despondent, iv, 81, 98
 sends Lahhák and Farshídward to take the Iránians in flank, iv, 82
 fights with Gív, iv, 84
 appeals to Lahhák and Farshídward for help, iv, 85
 announces the proposed Battle of Eleven Rukhs, iv, 94
 gives the chief command to Lahhák and Farshídward, iv, 94

Píráñ, instructs them, iv, 95
 holds a parley with Gúdarz and arranges with him the Battle of the Eleven Rukhs, iv, 95 *seq.*
 steed of, slain by Gúdarz, iv, 107
 falls under his steed and is injured, iv, 107
 flees from Gúdarz, iv, 107
 refuses to surrender, iv, 108
 wounds Gúdarz, iv, 108
 slain by Gúdarz, iv, 109
 lamented for by Lahhák and Farshídward, iv, 112
 Kai Khusráu, iv, 127
 buried with the Túránián champions by Kai Khusráu, iv, 128
 death of, announced to Afrásiyáb, iv, 151
 treasures of, taken possession of by Afrásiyáb, iv, 219
 Pírúz (Perozes), Sháh, 166, vi, 3; vii, 4, 153, 178 *seq.*, 335, 359; viii, 73, 75, 168, 242, 245, 267, 285
 passed over in the succession by Yazdagird, vii, 155
 helped by the Haitálians, vii, 156, 157
 defeats Húrmuz, vii, 157
 Húrmuz pardoned by, vii, 156, 158
 Reign of, 166, vii, 159 *seq.*
 Note on, vii, 159 *seq.*
 calamities of, vii, 159
 title of, vii, 159
 relic of, vii, 159
 measures of, against drought vii, 159, 162
 cities of, vii, 159, 163
 expedition of, against the Haitálians, vii, 159, 164 *seq.*
 tradition of, vii, 160
 in mythical story, vii, 161

Pírúz (Perozes), Bahrám Gúr's pillar said to have been moved by, vii, 161
 daughter of, taken prisoner, vii, 161
 child of, the wife of Kubád, vii, 161, 184
 accession of, vii, 161
 advances against Khúshnawáz, vii, 164
 gives the van to Hurmuz, vii, 164
 gives the rear to Kubád, vii, 164
 gives the regency to Balásh, vii, 164
 makes Súfarai (Sarkhán) minister to Balásh, vii, 164 and *note*
 replies to the appeal of Khúshnawáz, vii, 165, 167
 defeated by Khúshnawáz, vii, 168
 death of, vii, 168
 Iránian tradition of the revenge for, vii, 170
 Súfarai determines to avenge, vii, 173
 Pírúz, Iránian chief, vii, 85
 Pírúz, Iránian general, vii, 187
 Pírúz, Iránian warrior, vii, 219, 273 *seq.*
 exhorts Núshzáf to yield, vii, 273
 Pírúz, father of Ustád, viii, 296
 Pírúz, son of Khusrau, minister of Ardshír son of Shíráwí, 175
 appointed general, ix, 44
 letter of Guráz to, ix, 46
 takes counsel, ix, 46
 writes to Guráz, ix, 47
 Guráz marches against, ix, 48
 appeals to Tukhár, ix, 48
 feasts with Ardshír, ix, 48
 informs Guráz of the death of Ardshír, ix, 51
 put to death, ix, 57
 Pírúz, Iránian prince, ix, 59

Pírúz, son of Shápúr, Iránian noble, takes Rustam's letter to Sa'ad, ix, 80, 81
 Pírúzán, Persian general, commands Persian forces at Nahávand, ix, 68
 slain, ix, 69
 Pírúz-Rám (Rám-Pírúz), city built by Pírúz, 166, vii, 159, 163
 Pírúz Shápúr (Ambar *q.v.*), vi, 327, 357
 Pisces, constellation, i, 310 and *note*; ii, 407; iii, 26, 159, 318; iv, 364; vi, 395; vii, 245; viii, 51, 342; ix, 71
 Pishdádian, Pishdádians, i, 116, 373; vii, 161, 171
 Dynasty, i, 49, 115 *seq.*, 122; ii, 9, 336; iii, 9, 13; vi, 194
 Plague. *See Pestilence.*
 Planets, the seven, vi, 206; vii, 408
 created by Áhriaman, i, 52
 evil influence of, i, 52
 symbolized in the game of náid, vii, 382
 Plato (Fálatún), Greek philosopher (B.C. 427-347), vii, 100 *note*
 Planisphere, ii, 215, 216
 Pleiads, Pleiades, i, 114, 205, 244, 245, 267, 332; ii, 148, 282, 394, 408; iv, 183, 245, 329; v, 110, 131; vi, 169, 401; vii, 365; viii, 53, 158
 Plutarch, Greek writer (A.D. 46-120), vi, 67
 Poll-tax, vii, 215, 225
 Polo, game of, 145, ii, 263 *seq.*, 292; iv, 349, 350; vi, 329, 379, 382; vii, 57, 118, 143, 235; viii, 246, 247, 258, 371; ix, 16
 episode in 'Kárnáma' and Sháhnáma, vi, 196, 257, 263, 271
 -stick, ii, 292; iv, 350; vi, 271, 272; vii, 118; viii, 247

- Porus (Für *q.v.*), Indian king, vi, 17, 62 *seq.*, 66, 76, 83
son of, vi, 18, 63
Darius' letter to, vi, 31
origin of name of, vi, 31
kingdom of, vi, 31
Alexander and, historical account of, vi, 63
in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 64, 67
statue of, vi, 64
nephew of, vi, 80
Pourushspa, father of Zardusht (Zoroaster), ii, 9;
v, 14, 15, 17
Prefatory Note, vii, v
Prelate, or bishop *q.v.*, iv, 341,
348; vi, 184
as militarist, iv, 197; v,
306; vi, 124; viii, 47
and note
Prelude, to Sháhnáma, i, 99 *seq.*
Kai Káús, ii, 29
Suhráb, ii, 119
Siyáwush, ii, 191
Kai Khusráu, iii, 15
Farúd, iii, 37
Kámús, iii, 110
Akwán, iii, 272
Bízhan and Mauífha, iii, 287
Battle of the Twelve Rukhs,
iv, 9
Rustum and Shaghád, v, 261
Núshfrwán, vii, 220
Hurmuzd, viii, 77
Presbyter, iv, 348
Prithá, Indian princess, iv, 316
Procopius, Byzantine historian (6th century A.D.), vii, 187
Prometheus, i, 57
Pronunciation, Note on, preceding text in each volume.
Property-tax, remission of, 165
Prophet, the, Praise of, 139
Proverb, i, 194, 195, 197; vii,
185; viii, 187
Pseudo - Callisthenes, Greek Romance of Alexander the Great, ii, 9; vi,
30 *seq.*, 62 *seq.*, 71, 72,
74 *seq.*
- Pseudo-Calisthenes, account and versions of, vi, 13 *seq.*, 17
vogue of, vi, 17
treatise of Palladius interpolated in, vi, 61
Alexander and Porus in, vi,
64
historic elements in, vi, 83
Egyptian elements in, vi, 83
Persian elements in, vi, 83
Arabic elements in, vi, 83
diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
Ptolemy, son of Lagus, one of Alexander the Great's generals, king of Egypt (B.C. 323-283), and historian, vi, 12, 13, 66
Púlád, a dív, ii, 44, 54, 55, 64,
93; iii, 256; iv, 296 and note; v, 204
Púlád, Fránián hero, ii, 22
Púlád, Túránián hero, ii, 264;
iii, 199, 234
Púládwand, Túránián hero or dív, 149; iii, 191, 268,
270
summoned by Afrásiyáb, iii,
254
goes to help Afrásiyáb, iii,
255
takes counsel with Afrásiyáb, iii, 256
worsts Tús, iii, 257
Gív, Ruhhám, and Bízhan, iii, 258
cleaves in twain Káwa's standard, iii, 258
challenged by Rustam, iii,
259
overthrown by Rustam, iii,
264
withdraws with his army from the field, iii, 265
Pun-t (Berbera *q.v.*), ii, 79
Púrándukht, Sháh, 175, v, 294;
vi, 3; ix, 56
reproaches Kubád, ix, 17
makes Shahránguráz prime minister, ix, 56
True Cross and, ix, 56

Purmáya (Barmaiún), brother of Farídún, i, 90, 91; v, 261 referred to, i, 147, 165 Kaiánúsh and, summon the smiths to Faídún, i, 158 go with Farídún against Zahhák, i, 159 attempt to kill Farídún, i, 160

Pusfairukh, ix, 50

Python, Apollo and the, vi, 203

Q

QUEEN OF CHÍN (wife of the Khán), viii, 190 daughter of, slain by lion-ape, viii, 322 asks Bahrám Chúbína to avenge her daughter, viii, 324 steward of, plots with Khar-rád against Bahrám Chúbína viii, 335 daughter of, cured by Khar-rád, viii, 336 grants boon to Khar-rád, viii, 338 disgraced, viii, 344

Questions, Mountain of the Holy, i, 62

hard, vii, 102 *seq.*

Quince, omen of the, ix, 13, 14

Quintus Curtius, Roman writer (1st century A.D.), vi, 65 on the Amazons, vi, 72

R

RACES, duplicate in West and East, vi, 68 fair-haired, vi, 73 Rád, ruler of Zábulistán, vii, 86 Ráda, Mount, ix, 91, 94 Rádwí, archimage pleads with Máhwí for Yaz-dagird, ix, 102

* The village of Riwad to the south of the range may perhaps indicate what was once the western boundary of the district.

Rai, city and district near Tih-rán, 171, i, 363, 366 *seq.*; ii, 23, 399; iii, 242; iv, 147, 255, 256; v, 14, 18; vi, 32, 202, 219, 229; vii, 84, 160, 184; viii, 72, 155, 166, 171, 173, 174, 189, 214, 216, 240; ix, 68, 69, 89, 95, 96

seat of the Magi, i, 60

Khár of. *See* Khár. i, 368, 374, 381

Ardawán's capital, vi, 201

Shápúr of, vii, 184, 185, 191, 192

seat of Arsacid power, viii, 72

Bahrám Chúbína goes to, viii, 306

Khusrau Parwíz oppresses, viii, 365

misery of, viii, 367

Gurdya delivers, viii, 368

Rái. *See* Rája.

Raibad, town, about twenty miles west of Nishápúr, and district east of the Jagatai range, in Khurásán,* iv, 17, 22, 23, 47, 55, 76, 88, 112, 134 occupied by Gúdarz, iv, 16

arrival of Kai Khuslau at, iv, 111, 126

Rája (Rái) of Hind, *temp.* Luh-rásp, iv, 321; ix, 17

temp. Núshírwán, 169, vii, 140 and *note*, 143, 424

proposes wager to Núshírwán, vii, 5, 385, 387

receives game of nard from Núshírwán, vii, 5, 381, 389 *seq.*

fails to discover how to play the game, vii, 392

pays forfeit to Núshírwán, vii, 393

receives Núshírwán's gifts from Barzwí, vii, 425

- Rája, assists Barzwi in his mission to Hind, vii, 428.
letter of, ix, 17
put in charge of Shírin, ix, 17
- Rakhsh, Rustam's steed, 142, i, 386; ii, 13, 42 seq., 67, 74, 94, 97, 110, 116, 139, 143, 311 354; iii, 146, 177, 186, 189, 194, 195, 223, 224, 226, 227, 229, 259, 264, 275, 276, 278, 279, 313, 324, 326, 335, 342, 344, 345 seq., 350, 352; iv, 295; v, 117, 184, 192, 198, 207, 208, 214, 219, 228 seq., 234 seq., 266, 275
- caught by Rustam, i, 378 seq.
- described, i, 379, 380
- care taken of, i, 380
- slays a lion, ii, 45
- encounters a dragon, ii, 48
- stolen by Turkmans, ii, 121 seq.
- sire of Shuráb's charger, ii, 128
- saddled by Gív, Ruhám, and Tús for the fight with Suhráb, ii, 160
- referred to, iii, 184, 228, 253; v, 199
- wounded by Asfandiyár, v, 229
- returns home without Rustam, v, 229
- Rustam's thought of abandoning, v, 235
- healed by the Símurgh, v, 237
- tries to save Rustam, v, 270
- falls into the pit, v, 270
- body of, taken from pit by Farámaíz, v, 275
- tomb of, v, 276
- lord of=Rustam, v, 306
- Rakhshasas, vi, 13
- Rakka (Callinicus, Káliniyús *q.v.*, Nicephorium, Warigh), city, viii, 188
- Ram, personification of the Divine Grace, i, 371. *See* mountain-sheep.
- Rustam's life saved by a, ii, 46
- constellation, ii, 299; v, 129
- Rám, Fire-temple, vi, 202, 226
- Rám, Iránian warrior, viii, 291
- Rám Ardshír, city, vi, 202, 290 and *note*
- Rám Barzín, high priest and general, 167, vii, 275
- Kubád's testament kept by, vii, 210
- Núshírwán's instructions to, concerning Núshzád, vii, 267 seq.
- goes to fight with Núshzád, vii, 272
- hears of Núshzád's last wishes, vii, 276
- Rám Barzín, Persian official, viii, 313
- Rámbihisht, wife of Sásán, vi, 198
- Rám Hurmuz, city in Khúzistán, east of Ahwáz, vi, 199 plain of, vi, 199
- Rámishn - i - Ardshír, district, vi, 202
- Rám Kubád (Aragán), city, vii, 188
- Rám Pírúz. *See* Pírúz Rám.
- Rangví, Iránian warrior, viii, 296
- Rasafa, viii, 188
- Rashnawád, captain of the host to Húmái, 158
- assembles troops, v, 301
- Dáráb enlists under, v, 301
- host of, reviewed by Húmái, v, 302
- marches on Rúm, v, 302
- and the adventure of the ruined vault, v, 303
- gives presents to Dáráb, v, 304
- questions Dáráb, v, 304
- sends for the launderer and his wife, v, 304

- Rashnawád, Dáráb and, defeat the Rúmans v, 305, 306
praises Dáráb, v, 305, 306
offers Dáráb the spoil, v, 306
grants peace to Caesar, v, 307
returns to Irán, v, 307
hears from the launderer and his wife about the case of Dáráb, v, 308
writes to Humái about the case of Dáráb, v, 308
appears with Dáráb before Humái, v, 309 *seq.*
- Rás-Shápúr (Gund-i-Shápúr, *q.v.*), city, vi, 255, 256
- Ratl, weight, vi, 156 and *note*
- Raven, Raven-head, ix, 91 and *note*, 95 *note*, 96
- Ravi (Hydraotes), river in the Punjáb, vi, 64
- Rawalpindi, town and district in the Punjáb, vi, 62
- Rawlinson, Sir Henry, his account of Gotarzes' inscription at Bihistún, iii, 9
- Rawlinson, Professor, vi, 253
- Red Sea, ii, 364
- Reeds (bamboos), vi, 71
gigantic, seen by Sikandar, vi, 148
used in house-building, vi, 71, 148
- Religion, War of the, v, 19, 26
two campaigns of, v, 29
- Remus, *See* Romulus.
- Reseph, viii, 188
- Responses, of Núshírwán, viii, 14 *seq.*, 28 *seq.*
- Revellers, Rosary of, ix, 38, 40
- Rhyme-words, i, 74; ii, 228
note; v, 261; vi, 372; vii, 88 and *note*, 89 and *note*, 174 and *note*, 245 and *note*, 263 and *note*
- Firdausí and, viii, 397 *note*
- Ridge of Gushtásp, v, 29
- Rív-Ardšír, city east of the Jaráhí river near the head of the Persian Gulf, vi, 202
referred to, vi, 224
- Rívñíz, son-in-law of Tús, 147, iii, 14, 25, 45, 57, 60, 71
prepares to attack Fárid, iii, 51
referred to, iii, 55
burial of, iii, 68
- Rívñíz, son of Kai Káús, ii, 3; iii, 14, 96, 113, 114, 232
slain, iii, 93
battle for crown of, iii, 94
- Rívñíz, son of Zarasp, iv, 360
Zarfr and, go to Rúm, iv, 360
hails Gushtásp as Sháh, iv, 362
- Rizmihr (Zarmihr), son of Súfárai, 166, vii, 207; viii, 169
identical with Súfárai, vii, 185
- Kubád and, go to the Hatalians, vii, 186
fate of, vii, 186
loyalty of, to Kubád, vii, 196
helps Kubád to escape from prison, vii, 197
negotiates a marriage for Kubád, vii, 197
- made chief minister, vii, 200
- Rizwán, angel, ii, 39 and *note*, 288
- Roc, mythical bird, i, 51, 235
- Roman, Romans, i, 10; iii, 286; vi, 254, 318, 325, 326; vii, 214; viii, 188, 189, 195; ix, 50, 66
relations of, with the Frániacs, i, 14
empire, Eastern, i, 373; vi, 253
war of, with Persian, viii, 41, 193
Alexander's legendary visit to, vi, 30
emperors, vi, 321, 371, 372
neglect the defences of the Caucasus, vii, 187
so-called tribute of, to Persia, vii, 187
treatment of Munzir by, vii, 217
leads to war with Núshírwán, vii, 217

- Romans, defeat Bahrám Cháibína, viii, 76
- Romance of Alexander the Great (*Pseudo-Callisthenes*, *q.v.*), vi, 11 *seq.*, 88
- incorporation of, in Sháhnáma, vi, 16
- vogue of, vi, 17
- sources of marvels in, vi, 12, 69
- diagram to illustrate, vi, 84
- Rome, vi, 194, 197, 203, 301, 324
- Sháhpúr son of Ardshír's wars with, vi, 204, 207
- Bahrám Gúr's war with, vi, 373
- Romulus and Remus, foundling legend of, v, 203
- Rook, piece in chess. *See* Rukh.
- Rosary of Revellers, ix, 38, 40
- Roxana (Rúshanak, *q.v.*), vi, 33
- Alexander and, vi, 30
- account of, vi, 32
- Rúdába, daughter of Mihráb, king of Kábul, wife of Zál, and mother of Rustam, 141, 157, i, 145, 299; ii, 44, 180; v, 182, 184, 190 *note*
- Story of Zál and, i, 256 *seq.*
- referred to, iii, 285
- Zál hears of, i, 257
- description of, i, 257, 259, 264, 266, 272
- hears of Zál, i, 260
- falls in love with Zál, i, 260
- handmaids of, go in quest of Zál, i, 263
- interview Zál, i, 266
- invite Zál to visit Rúdába, i, 267
- reproached by the porter, i, 267
- describes Zál, i, 268
- prepares to receive Zál, i, 269
- entertains, and plights her troth to, Zál, i, 272
- Zál consults the archimages on the matter of, i, 273
- Rúdába, go-between of, with Zál, i, 280
- Zál sends Sám's letter to, i, 280
- rewards her go-between, i, 281
- go between of, discovered by Sindukht, i, 281
- reproached by her parents, i, 282, 287
- congratulated by Sindukht, i, 315
- seen and admired by Sám, i, 318
- married to Zál, i, 318
- Zál and, go to Sístán, i, 319
- grievous travail of, i, 320
- saved by the Simurgh, i, 321
- Caesarean operation performed upon, i, 322
- gives birth to Rustam, i, 322
- fasts in sorrow for Rustam, v, 278
- frenzy of, v, 278
- regains her wits, v, 279
- referred to, v, 190, 289
- lamentation of, v, 289
- Rúdagí, Persian poet, versifies the Fables of Bidpai, vii, 383, 431
- Rúdbár, district, v, 30
- Rúdyáb, father of Pápák (in Sháhnáma), vi, 200, 212
- Rue, wild, as a prophylactic, i, 380
- Ruhhlám, son of Gúdarz, Fránián hero, ii, 4, 62, 73, 144, 158, 340; iii, 19, 33, 48, 67, 115, 126 *seq.*, 139 *seq.*, 154, 157, 182, 187, 211, 248, 259, 264, 268, 273, 322, 350, 352; iv, 13, 15, 21, 31, 37, 147; vii, 156
- helps to saddle Rakhsh for the fight with Suhráb, ii, 160
- mortalily wounds Farúd, iii, 64
- embassy of, to Píráñ, iii, 87
- attacks Bázúr, iii, 128

Ruhhám, worsted by Ashkabús, iii, 179
 goes to the help of Rustam, iii, 227
 worsted by Púládwand, iii, 258
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
 commands the left wing, iv, 24
 superseded *pro tem.*, by Farhád, iv, 92
 chosen to fight with Bármán iv, 97
 slays Bármán, iv, 102
 sent by Gúdarz to fetch Pírán's corpse, iv, 110
 acts as Kai Khusrau's standard-bearer in his combat with Shída, iv, 171
 protests against Kai Khusrau's fighting on foot with Shída, iv, 174
 holds Kai Khusrau's steed, iv, 175
 instructed by Kai Khusrau to bury Shída, iv, 176
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles for refusing audience, iv, 275
 Ruhhám, king of Rai, *temp.* Bahrám Gúr, vii, 85
 Ruhhám, Iránian warrior, vii, 156.
 helps Píruz to gain the throne, vii, 156, 186; viii, 73
 Rúín, son of Pírán, 151, i, 92; iii, 207, 234; iv, 10, 71, 90, 102, 152, 153, 162
 summons Pírán to save Farangís, ii, 323 and *note* sent by Pírán to attack Bahrám, iii, 98
 wounded by Bahrám, iii, 99
 put in command of ambush, iv, 26
 bears letter from Pírán to Gúdarz, iv, 67

Rúín, entertained by Gúdarz, iv, 68
 returns to Pírán with Gúdarz' reply, iv, 74
 goes to help Pírán against Gív and is defeated, iv, 84
 chosen to fight with Bízhan, iv, 97
 slain by Bízhan, iv, 103
 Rúina, place, ix, 91
 Rukh, piece in chess (castle), vii, 385, 423
 position of, iv, 8; vii, 388, 422
 move of, iv, 8; vii, 422
 Rukhs, Battle of the Twelve, 151; iv, 7 *seq.*
 meaning of, iv, 7
 Battle of the Eleven, 151, iv, 88
 arranged by Gúdarz and Pírán, iv, 95 *seq.*
 Firðausí's reflections on, iv, 7, 98, 106
 referred to, v, 29; vii, 156
 Rúm, the Eastern Roman Empire, 154, 158, 162, 167, 172, 173, i, 15, 229; ii, 143, 297, 307, 360; iii, 106, 151, 164, 296; iv, 14, 133, 148, 196, 197, 208, 272, 312, 314, 316, 317, 323 *seq.*, 330, 331, 333 *seq.*, 339, 341 *seq.*, 345, 348, 349, 352, 353, 355, 356, 359, 361, 364; v, 75, 76, 102, 180, 188, 262, 301, 305; vi, 40, 41, 45, 51, 53, 81, 94, 104, 113 *seq.*, and *passim*
 king of =Mahmúd, i, 113
 =Sikandar, vi, 172
 West and, Salm's portion, i, 189
 brocade of, i, 157, 183, 210, 252, 263, 316 and *passim*; iii, 26, 235, 291, 297, 355; iv, 128, 271, 364; v, 295; vi, 56, 89; vii, 64, 67, 276, 384; viii, 157, 173, 278, 337, 367, 374; ix, 99, 101

Rúm, helm of, iii, 114
 sea of, iii, 177
 city in, founded by Salm, iv, 325
 ravaged by Rashnawád and Dáráb, v, 307
 ambassadors from, come to Dáráb, vi, 21
 Dáráb wars with, vi, 22
 prince of, vi, 22
 chiefs of, vi, 23, 153
 withdraw on Dáráb's approach, vi, 23
 tribute of, to Irán, vi, 24
 explained, vii, 187
 ambassadors from, come to Dárá, vi, 35
 reed (pen) of, vi, 85
 stuffs of, vi, 143
 philosophers of, vi, 115, 154; viii, 279, 382
 cavaliers of, vi, 167
 Sháh of=Sikandar, vi, 170
 Sikandar's policy to safeguard, vi, 178
 Arastálís' advice to Sikandar concerning, vi, 179
 invaded by Shápúr, vi, 350
 slave-girls of, chosen by Bahram Gúr, vi, 382
 Bahram Gúr's war with, vii, 4, 5, 84
 Núshírwán's wars with, vii, 213
 robes of, viii, 308
 captured cities of, restored to, viii, 312
 monks of, slain by Máhwí, ix, 113
 Rúman, Rúmans, 154, 158, 162, 167, 172, 173, iii, 309; iv, 357, 360, 363; v, 173, 205, 292; vi, 44, 45, 101 seq., 113, 114, 127, 142, 148, 168, 170, 179 seq., and *passim*
 slaves, i, 252; vi, 382; vii, 54, 259
 invade Irán, v, 301
 defeated by Rashnawád and Dáráb, v, 305 seq.

Rúman, Rúmans, king of=Philip of Macedon, vi, 19
 carry out works in Irán, vi, 21
 =Sikandar, vi, 50, 52, 154
 Iránians ask quarter of, vi, 51
 tongue, vi, 160; vii, 256, 261
 dispute with the Persians as to Sikandar's burial, vi, 184
 sages, vi, 185
 their sentences over the coffin of Sikandar, vi, 1, 85, *seq.*
 silk, vi, 280, ; vii, 424
 defeated by Shápúr, son of Ardshír, vi, 297
 engineers build bridge at Shúhtar, vi, 299
 astrologic tablets, vi, 376
 eunuchs, vii, 67, ; viii, 279
 pen, vii, 73
 helmet, vii, 89, 272, 274
 bishop, vii, 275, 276
 envoy, viii, 8 *seq.*
 surrender to Núshírwán, viii, 47
 entrench themselves, viii, 47
 sue for peace and pay tribute viii, 51 *seq.*
 architect, viii, 193, 401
 marches, viii, 252
 robes, viii, 253
 helms, viii, 105, 276, 417
 worsted by Bahram Chúbína, viii, 292
 artificers imprisoned by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 402
 released by Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 403
 Rúmiya (New Antioch, Súrsán g.v.), a suburb of Ctesiphon (Taisafún) on the east bank of the Tigris, vii, 218
 Rús (Russia), vi, 19; viii, 406
 king of, vi, 22

GENERAL INDEX

Rúshanak (Roxana, *q.v.*), daughter of Dárá (in Sháhnáma) and wife of Sikandar, 158, 159, ii, 3; vi, 86 *seq.*, 188 account of, vi, 32 derivation of, vi, 33 bestowed by Dáiá on Sikandar, vi, 55 son of, vi, 81, 181 visited by Náhíd, vi, 89 married to Sikandar, vi, 90 reference in Sikandar's Will, to, vi, 181 Rúshan Pírúz, city, vii, 160 Russia, vi, 19 Russian, Russians, vi, 19 empire, vi, 19 foundation of, vi, 19 cloth, ix, 110 Rustam, son of Zál, Iránian national hero, 141-150, 153, 154, 156, 157, i, 42, 68, 90, 174, 235 *seq.*, 376 *seq.*; ii, 4, 18, 25, 34, 35, 42 *seq.*, 79, 92 *seq.*, 188, 236, 237, 271, 286, 290, 311, 316, 318, 319, 335, 344 *seq.*, 349 *seq.*, 371, 372, 380, 394, 400; iii, 24, 35, 36, 40, 107 *seq.*, 121, 134, 138, 141 *seq.*, 155, 164 *seq.*, 182 *seq.*, 294, 307, 308; iv, 11, 13, 27, 30, 65, 157, 167, 172, 198, 226, 227, 277, 285, 289, 292, 319, 324; v, 9, 22, 30, 50, 73, 86, 165, 254 *seq.*, 278, 279, 281, *seq.*, 298; vi, 325, 395; vii, 151; viii, 106, 177, 219, 223, 332; ix, 25 Caesarean birth of, i, 236, 321 *seq.* account of, in Moses of Chorene, i, 236 presage of, by the astrologers, i, 278, 307 Simurgh, i, 321 origin of name, i, 322 and note effigy of, sent to Salm, i, 322 nurturing of, i, 324

Rustam, goes with Zál and Míhrát to meet Sám, i, 325 slays the white elephant, i, 327, 377 bidden by Zál to take Mount Sipand, i, 329 takes Mount Sipand, i, 331, 377 sends the Spoil to Zál, i, 333 sets fire to Mount Sipand, i, 333 bidden by Zál to prepare for war, i, 376 reply of, i, 376 Zál gives Sám's mace to, i, 378 obtains Rakhs, i, 378 goes in quest of Kai Kubád, i, 382 *seq.* slays Kulún, i, 386 first campaign of, ii, 11 *seq.* nearly takes Afrásiyáb prisoner, ii, 14, 116, 354 rewarded by Kai Kubád, ii, 21 Seven Courses of (Haft Khrwán) 143, ii, 44 *seq.* life of, saved by a ram, ii, 46 song of, ii, 51 rescues Kai Káús in Mázandarán, ii, 58 handgrip of, ii, 66, 67 encounter of, with Kaláhúr, ii, 67 Juyá, ii, 71 audience of, with the king of Mázandarán, ii, 67 *seq.* encounter of, with the king of Mázandarán, ii, 73 rewarded by Kai Káús, ii, 77 entertains Kai Káús, ii, 83 takes the king of Shám prisoner, ii, 97 defeats Afrásiyáb, ii, 100 made paladin of paladins by Kai Káús, ii, 101 goes in search of Kai Káús, ii, 104 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.* slays Alkús, ii, 115

- Rustam, and Suhráb, Story of, ii, 118 *seq.*
 loses Rakhsh, ii, 121
 Afrásiyáb's plot against, ii, 129
 holds a drinking-bout, ii, 141
 quarrels with Kai Káús, ii, 142
 reconciled by Gúdarz, ii, 144 *seq.*
 goes in disguise to see Suhráb, ii, 149
 adventure of, with Zhanda Razm, ii, 149 *seq.*
 Suhráb described by, ii, 151, 166
 encampment of, described, ii, 154
 armed by Tús, Cív, and Ruhhám for his fight with Suhráb, ii, 160
 challenges Suhráb, ii, 161
 charge of, to Zawára, ii, 167
 declines Suhráb's advances, ii, 169
 saves his life by a ruse, ii, 170
 prays that his strength may be restored, ii, 171
 learns too late that Suhráb is his son, ii, 173
 grief of, ii, 173 *seq.*
 makes a truce with Húmán, ii, 176
 tries to slay Hajír, ii, 176 himself, ii, 177
 brings up Siyáwush, ii, 196
 marches with him against Afrásiyáb, ii, 225, *seq.*
 returns and quarrels with Kai Káús, ii, 242 *seq.*
 grief and wrath of, at the death of Siyáwush, ii, 338 *seq.*
 puts Surkha to death, ii, 346
 fights with the Túrániens, ii, 349 *seq.*
 appoints Tús ruler of Chách, ii, 358
 Gúdarz ruler of Sughd and Sipanjáb, ii, 358
- Rustam, daughter of, ii, 383, 384, iii, 323
 wife of, ii, 384, iii, 323
 hears of Kai Khusrau's arrival in Irán, ii, 395
 Turkman occupation of Zábulistán, account of by, iii, 14
 goes to do homage to Kai Khusrau, iii, 17
 witnesses Kai Khusrau's oath to avenge Siyáwush, iii, 22
 proposes to Kai Khusrau to expel Turkmans from Zábulistán, iii, 30
 asks Kai Khusrau to pardon Tús and the Iránians in the matter of Faríd, iii, 113
 summoned by Kai Khusrau, iii, 143
 advocates the marriage of Faríburz and Farangís, iii, 146
 marches to succour Tús, iii, 148
 meets Gúdarz, iii, 171
 takes counsel with Tús and the chiefs, iii, 172
 arrays the host, iii, 177
 fight of, with Ashkabús, legend about, iii, 109 referred to, viii, 75
 parleys with Ashkabús, iii, 180
 slays Ashkabús, iii, 181
 described by Pírán, iii, 183
 harangues the troops, iii, 186, 219, 223, 232, 235
 challenged by Kámús, iii, 187
 spear-bearer of, slain by Kámús, iii, 188
 parleys with Kámús, iii, 188
 takes Kámús prisoner, iii, 189
 and the Khán of Chín, Story of, 149, iii, 191 *seq.*
 referred to, iii, 193
 slays Chingish, iii, 195

Rustam, parleys with Húmán,
 iii, 196
 conditions of peace offered
 by, iii, 197, 205
 parleys with Pírán, iii, 202
 proposes peace on terms to
 the Iránians, iii, 211
 warned by Gúdarz not to
 trust Pírán, iii, 212
 wrath of, with Pírán, iii, 218
 unhoises Shangul, iii, 221
 prowess of, in battle, iii, 222
seq.
 overthrows Kundur, iii, 224
 slays Sáwa, iii, 224
 Gahár, iii, 225
 attacks the Khán of Chín,
 iii, 225, *seq.*
 victorious, iii, 231, *seq.*
 wroth with Tús and the
 Iránians, iii, 234
 sends Fariburz to Kai Khus-
 rau with tidings of victory,
 iii, 236, *seq.*
 leads on the host, iii, 238
 reaches Sughd, iii, 244
 sends troops to attack
 Bídád, iii, 244
 slays Káfúi, iii, 245
 besieges and storms Bídád,
 iii, 246
 sends Gív to raid Khutan,
 iii, 247
 praised by Gúdarz, iii, 248
 described by Afrásiyáb, iii,
 251
 attacks the Túrániens, iii,
 257
 challenges Púládwand, iii,
 259
 overthrows Púládwand, iii,
 264
 defeats the Túrániens, iii,
 266
 divides the spoil, iii, 266
 ravages Túrán, iii, 266
 returns in triumph, iii, 267
 asks Kai Khusrau's leave to
 return to Zál, iii, 269
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau,
 iii, 269

Rustam, Story of fight of, with
 the dív Akwán, 149, iii,
 271 *seq.*
 summoned to court by Kai
 Khusrau, iii, 274
 pursues the dív Akwán, iii,
 275
 foiled by Akwán, iii, 276
 taken at a disadvantage by
 Akwán, iii, 276
 offered a choice of deaths by
 Akwán, iii, 277
 outwits Akwán, iii, 277
 finds Rakhsh among Afrá-
 siyáb's herds, iii, 278
 encounters Afrásiyáb's
 herdsmen, iii, 279
 defeats Afrásiyáb, iii, 280
 slays Akwán, iii, 281
 carries off the spoil, iii,
 281
 welcomed by Kai Khusrau,
 iii, 282
 tells his adventure with
 Akwán, iii, 282
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau,
 iii, 283
 returns home, iii, 283
 summoned to court in the
 matter of Bízhan, iii, 319
seq.
 visited by Giv, iii, 322
 promises to help Giv, iii,
 324
 goes with Gív to court, iii,
 326
 address of, to Kai Khusrau,
 iii, 327
 undertakes the rescue of
 Bízhan, iii, 330
 plan of, iii, 333
 chooses his comrades, iii,
 334
 goes disguised to Túrán, iii,
 335
 gives presents to Pírán, iii,
 336
 welcomed by Pírán, iii, 336
 opens a market, iii, 337
 interviews of, with Manizha,
 iii, 337, 342

Rustam, sends food and his ring to Bízhan, iii, 340
 removes boulder of Akwán from pit's mouth, iii, 345
 makes conditions for release with Bízhan, iii, 345
 releases Bízhan, iii, 346
 arrays his troops against Afrásiyáb, iii, 350
 mocks Afrásiyáb, iii, 351
 defeats Afrásiyáb, iii, 352
 triumphant return of, iii, 353
 presents Bízhan to Kai Khusrau, iii, 354
 rewarded by Kai Khusrau, iii, 356
 goes to Sístán, iii, 356
 sent to Hindústán by Kai Khusrau, iv, 14
 successes of, iv, 60, 71
 troops of, recalled, iv, 145
 commands the right wing, iv, 147
 attacks with Kai Khusrau from the centre, iv, 180
 goes with Zawára to the right wing, iv, 180
 sent to the desert to attack Tawurg, iv, 188
 reports his defeat of Tawurg, iv, 193
 advances, iv, 194
 failure of Afrásiyáb's attempt to surprise, iv, 195
 takes part in the siege of Gang-bihisht, iv, 199, 208 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's converse with, iv, 198, 199
 captures Jahn and Garsíwaz, iv, 210
 advises Kai Khusrau to reject Afrásiyáb's overtures, iv, 222
 ordered to prepare for a night-attack from Afrásiyáb, iv, 224
 supports Kai Khusrau's proposal to pursue Afrásiyáb to Gang-dizh, iv, 231

Rustam, left by Kai Khusrau in Chín, iv, 241
 welcomes Kai Khusrau on his return from Gang-dizh, iv, 251
 accompanies Kai Khusrau to Siyáwushgird, iv, 252
 summoned by the Iránians to remonstrate with Kai Khusrau, iv, 278
 with Zál and the sages, sets forth for Irán, iv, 279
 met on arrival by Gúdarz and other chiefs, iv, 282
 holds converse with the Iránians, iv, 282
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*
 holds, with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv, 295
 confirmed by Kai Khusrau in possession of Ním-rúz, iv, 297
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
 turns back at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
 laments the loss of the paladins and returns to Irán, iv, 310
 Zál and, welcome Gushtásp to Sístán, v, 85
 rivalry in legend between Asfandiýár and, v, 116
 Haft Khwán of, compared with that of Asfandiýár, v, 117
 Asfandiýár's fight with, Story of, 156, v, 166 *seq.* recited by Nadr, son of Hárith, at Mecca, v, 166
 referred to, v, 169, 170, 306
 Gushtásp bids Asfandiýár go against, v, 173
 Asfandiýár's message to, v, 179

Rustam, life of, attempted by Bahman, v, 184
 interview of, with Bahman v, 185
 entertains Bahman, v, 186
 great appetite of, v, 186, 210
 jests with Bahman on his small appetite, v, 186
 sends Zawára and Farámarz to bid Zál and Rúdába prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190
 goes to the Hírmund, v, 191
 parleys with Asfandiyár, v, 192, *seq.*
 invites Asfandiyár to visit him, v, 193
 accepts Asfandiyár's invitation to a feast, v, 195
 tells Zál, of his interview with Asfandiyár, v, 196
 indignation of, at not being summoned to the feast, v, 197
 sets forth to reproach Asfandiyár, v, 198
 wrangle of, with Asfandiyár, v, 198 *seq.*
 demands his proper seat at the feast, v, 200
 Zál and, vilified by Asfandiyár, v, 201
 details his ancestry, v, 202
 recounts Sám's exploits, v, 202
 his own exploits, v, 203, 207
 patents of, from Kai Káús and Kai Khusrau, v, 203
 aged six hundred years, v, 204
 tries a handgrip with Asfandiyár, v, 209
 accepts Asfandiyár's challenge, v, 209
 asks for neat wine, v, 211
 makes fresh overtures to Asfandiyár, v, 211 *seq.*
 addresses the royal tent-enclosure, v, 215

Rustam, bids Zawára bring him his arms, v, 218
 rejects Zál's counsels, v, 220
 arms for battle, v, 222
 gives Zawára charge of the troops, v, 222
 goes with Zawára to the Hírmund, v, 222
 instructs Zawára, v, 222
 crosses the Hírmund and summons Asfandiyár to the combat, v, 223
 suggests a general engagement, v, 224
 distress of, at the death of Núsh Ázar and Mihr-i-Núsh, v, 228
 offers to surrender Zawára and Farámarz to Asfandiyár, v, 228
 wounded by Asfandiyár, v, 229
 flees from Asfandiyár, v, 229
 sends Zawára with a message to Zál, v, 230
 parleys with Asfandiyár, v, 231
 recrosses the Hírmund, v, 231
 kin of, grieve over his wounds, v, 234
 bids the leeches to attend to Rakhs first, v, 234
 despair of, v, 235
 advised by Zál, v, 235
 Zál summons the Símurgh to the aid of, v, 235
 healed by the Símurgh, v, 237
 instructed by the Símurgh how to overcome Asfandiyár, v, 237, *seq.*
 cuts the fatal branch of tamarisk, v, 239
 prepares the arrow, v, 240
 summons Asfandiyár to renew the fight, v, 240
 makes a final effort for peace with Asfandiyár, v, 241 *seq.*

Rustum, bewails Asfandiyár to Bishútán, v, 246
 Asfandiyár confides Bahman to, v, 248
 foretells an evil future for, v, 248
 laments Asfandiyár, v, 250
 warned by Zawára against Bahman, v, 250
 sends Asfandiyár's corpse to Gushtásp, v, 251
 Bahman remains with, v, 252, 256
 instructs Bahman, v, 256
 writes to Gushtásp to excuse himself in the matter of Asfandiyár, v, 256
 overtures of, to Gushtásp supported by Bishútán, v, 257
 Gushtásp accepts the excuses of, and writes to, v, 257
 requested by Gushtásp to send back Bahman, v, 258
 equips Bahman for his journey, v, 258
 Story of, and Shaghád, 157, v, 260 seq.
 provenance of, v, 260 seq.
 death of, v, 261, 273, 289
 versions of, v, 261
 Kábúl's tribute to, question of, v, 265
 Shaghád and the king of Kábúl plot against, v, 265
 takes up Shaghád's cause, v, 267
 prepares to occupy Kábúl with a host, v, 268
 persuaded by Shaghád to go with Zawára and a small escort, v, 268
 pardons king of Kábúl, v, 269
 entertained by king of Kábúl, v, 269
 goes hunting with Zawára, v, 270
 falls a victim to treachery, v, 270

Rustum, Shaghád, glories over, v, 271
 slays Shaghád, v, 272
 last words of, v, 272
 corpse of, taken from the pit by Farámarz, v, 274
 obsequies of, v, 274 seq.
 Artabanus and, v, 282
 burial place of, v, 287
 scene of the battle between Bahman and Farámarz, v, 287
 personification of the Sacae, i, 68; vi, 194
 conduct of, in Hámávarán, viii, 104, 168
 banner of, bestowed on Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 105, 217
 Rustam, Persian commander in chief under Yazdagird III, 176; ix, 66, 67, 69, 73, 81 seq., 90, 95
 brother of Farrukhzád, viii, 413 and note
 revolt of, viii, 413
 overthrows Ázarmdukht, ix, 59
 advances to Kádisíya, ix, 67, 73
 end of, ix, 69
 finds evil aspects in the stars ix, 73
 writes to his brother, ix, 73
 hears of Shu'ba Mughíra's arrival, ix, 82
 Rúzbih, Bahrám Gúr's high priest, 164, vii, 26 seq., 54, 67
 bewails Bahrám Gúr's course of life, vii, 56
 reproached by Bahrám Gúr for his parsimony, vii, 83
 Rúzbih, scribe, viii, 252

S

SA'AD, son of Wakkás, Arab general, 176, ix, 67, 68, 82 seq., 90

- Sa'ad, succeeds Abú 'Ubaida, ix, 67
 at Kádisíya, ix, 67, 69
 sounds Kúta, ix, 67
 takes Ctesiphon, ix, 67
 recalled, ix, 68
 sent by 'Umar to invade Irán, ix, 72
 letter of Rustam to, ix, 78
 taken by Píruz, ix, 80, 81
- Sabbákh, king of Yamán, iv, 146
- Sabz dar sabz, melody, viii, 399
 and note
- Sacae (Scythians), i, 17, 19
 Rustam a personification of, i, 68; vi, 194
- Sacaestán. *See* Sístán.
- Sacrifice, human, and serpent-worship, i, 143
- Sada, feast of, 140, i, 23; iv, 317; v, 309; vi, 33, 55, 230 and note, 245, 273, 389; vii, 11, 94, 200; viii, 68, 133, 216, 313; ix, 40^o 92
 institution of, i, 124
- Sáda, Iránian noble, vii, 312
- Safid Rúd, river flowing through Gilán into the Caspian, v, 13, 16
- Sagastán (Sístán *q.v.*), v, 13
- Sage, sages, 159, vi, 101, 103
 Indian, vi, 62
 naked (Brahmans *q.v.*)
 of Kaid. *See* Kaid.
 saying of, viii, 155
- Sagittarius, constellation, i, 188; iv, 355
- Sagsár, Sagsárs, district and tribe, i, 279 and note, 290, 323, 339; ii, 143; iii, 152, 207
- Sahadeva, one of the five Pándavas, iv, 138
 referred to, iv, 139
- Sahí, wife of Íraj, i, 188
 referred to, i, 182 *seq.*
- Sahl, son of Máhán, Iránian noble, v, 260, 261, 263
- Saifu'd-Daula, title of Sultán Mahmúd, i, 21
- Sakíl, son of Cæsar, *lump*. Luhrásپ, iv, 355
 commands the left wing, iv, 355
- Sakfála, mountain, 169, iv, 342; viii, 41
 dragon of, 154, iv, 342 *seq.*
 referred to, iv, 343, 351, 358
 stronghold of, taken by Rúmans, viii, 47
- Sakláb (Slavonia), ii, 360; iii, 152, 164, 177, 185, 204, 218, 221 *seq.*, 235, 238, 243, 255; vi, 179; vii, 112, 115, 364; viii, 379
- Salm, eldest son of Farídún, 140, 141, i, 42, 90, 91, 183 *seq.*, 335, 342, 344, 362; ii, 19, 237, 318; iii, 37, 115, iv, 66, 69, 269, 272; v, 205, 261, 284; vi, 353; vii, 101; viii, 266, 270, 300, 376 *note*, 378, 381
 racial significance of, i, 54
 etymology of, Firdausí's, i, 174
 naming of, i, 187
 horoscope of, i, 188
 receives Rúm and the West, i, 189
 envies Íraj, i, 190
 plots with Túr, i, 190
 Túr and, demand the abdication of Íraj, i, 191
 Íraj visits, i, 198
 Íraj not welcomed by, i, 198 *seq.*
 slay Íraj, i, 201
 send Íraj's head to Farídún, i, 202
 hear of Minúchihr, i, 208
 send an embassy to Farídún, i, 208
 receive Farídún's reply, i, 213 *seq.*
 prepare for war, i, 215
 worsted by Minúchihr, i, 220
 plan night-surprise, i, 220
 worsted, i, 221

- Salm, hears of Túr's defeat and death, i, 223
 retreats on the castle of the Aláns, i, 223
 prevented by Minúchihr, i, 223
 flees from Minúchihr, i, 227
 slain by Minúchihr, i, 228
 troops of, ask quarter of Minúchihr, i, 228
 head of, sent to Farídún, i, 229
 Scimitar of, iv, 335 *seq.*
 Salt, Rustam's caravan of, i, 330 *seq.*
 desert, i, 3
 fish, legend of the, vi, 76 *seq.*
- Sám, son of Narímán, Iránian hero, father of Zál and grandfather of Rustam, 141, 142, i, 42, 207, 212, 231, 235, 238 *seq.*, 337, 344, 375; ii, 4, 16, 17, 33, 34, 49, 125, 126, 137, 140, 173, 182, 183; iii, 35, 121, 202, 215, 260, 279, 283; iv, 222, 251, 290, 301, 319; v, 14, 15, 58, 62, 63, 196, 198 *seq.*, 242, 262 *seq.*, 266, 267, 274, 285, 286, 289, 290; vii, 74; viii, 223
 pronunciation of, i, 95 *note*
 etymology of, i, 171 *seq.*
 Minúchihr confided to, by Farídún, i, 231
 mace of, i, 235, 290, 297, 328 given by Zál to Rustam, i, 378
 speech of, to Minúchihr, i, 238
 casts away his son Zál at birth, i, 241
 hears rumours of Zál, i, 243
 dreams of, concerning Zál, i, 243, 244
 consults the archmages and bidden to seek his son, i, 243
 finds his son on Mount Alburz, i, 244 *seq.*
- Sám, son of, restored to him by the Símurgh, i, 247
 returns home with Zál, i, 248
 congratulated by Minúchihr, i, 248
 goes with Zál to court, i, 249
 tells of his quest to Minúchihr, i, 250
 Minúchihr's gifts to, i, 251
 public rejoicings at his home-coming, i, 252
 goes to the wars and leaves Zál to rule in Zábulistán, i, 253
 Mihráb tributary to, i, 256
 Zál writes to, about Rúdába, i, 275
 receives Zál's letter, i, 277
 consults the astrologers, i, 278
 Rustam's birth foretold to, i, 278
 replies to Zál's letter, i, 279
 returns from the war, i, 280
 summoned to court, i, 289
 welcomed by Minúchihr, i, 289
 tells of his campaign, i, 290
 slays Karkwí, i, 291
 bidden to destroy Mihráb and all his belongings, i, 292
 welcomes and promises to help Zál, i, 293
 writes to Minúchihr and pleads past services, i, 295
 tells of the slaying of the dragon of the Kashaf, i, 296
 "One blow," i, 297, 299
 receives Síndukht in audience i, 302
 invited by Síndukht to visit Kábul, i, 305
 dismisses Síndukht with gifts, i, 305
 hears of Zál's success with Minúchihr and informs Mihráb, i, 314
 goes with Zál to Kábul, i, 317

Sám, sees Rúdába and felicitates
 Zál, i, 318
 returns to Sístán, i, 319
 entertains Míhráb and Sín-
 duklít, i, 319
 leaves Zál the regent of Sís-
 tán and goes on a cam-
 paign, i, 319
 hears of the birth of Rustam,
 i, 323
 writes to congratulate Zál,
 i, 323
 comes to see Rustam, i, 324
 bids Zál and Rustam fare-
 well, i, 327
 hears of Rustam's success
 at Mount Sipand and
 writes to Zál, i, 334
 Naudar's appeal to, i, 339
 goes to court, i, 340
 met and offered the crown
 by the Fránian chiefs, i,
 340
 refuses the crown, i, 340
 reconciles the chiefs and
 Naudar, i, 341
 counsels Naudar, i, 341
 rewarded by Naudar, i, 341
 departs, i, 341
 death of, referred to, i, 345,
 346, 349
 obsequies of, 358
 mace of, given by Zál to
 Rustam, i, 378
 exploits of, recounted by
 Rustam, v, 202
 Sám, Fránian warrior, *temp.*
 Yazdagird son of Shápúr,
 vi, 395
 Sáma Keresáspa Narimanau,
 Fránian hero, i, 171 seq.
 Samangán, city south-east of
 Balkh (?), 144 ii, 121 seq.,
 130
 king of, 144, ii, 118, 140, 184
 entertains Rustam, ii, 122
 father of Zhanda Razm,
 ii, 150
 Sámánid, Sámánids, i, 14, 20,
 21, 67; vii, 5, 383
 end of dynasty of, i, 21

Samarkand (Sogdiana, Sughd),
 city and district in Turk-
 istán, ii, 241; vii, 167,
 358, 359; viii, 377; ix,
 96, 115
 early seat of Aryan civiliza-
 tion (?), i, 7
 settlement of the Huns at,
 i, 19
 Sambáz, Fránian chief, speech of,
 viii, 242
 Samíráñ, king, vi, 405 and *note*
 Samkurán, Fránian hero, iv, 149
 Sandar, Sandarús, the Arar tree,
 vi, 19
 Sandal, Sandali, city in Hind,
 vii, 395, 396, 401 seq.
 king of, entertained by
 Bahram Gúr, vii, 140 seq.
 Sanja, a dív, ii, 39, 40, 44, 55;
 iv, 296; v, 204
 Sanscrit, vii, 382
 Sapad, mountain. *See* Spentó-
 dáta.
 Sapandámad. *See* Sipandá-
 mad.
 Sapínúd, daughter of Shangul, vi,
 3; vii, 144
 married to Bahram Gúr,
 vii, 128
 finds out who her husband is,
 vii, 131
 plans Bahram Gúr's flight
 from Hind, vii, 132
 reproached by Shangul, vii,
 135
 converted to Zoroastrian-
 ism, vii, 139
 visited by Shangul, vii, 142
 Sapor I (Shápúr son of Ardshír
q.v.), Sásánian king, vi,
 294, 321
 Sapor II (Shápúr son of Urmuzd
q.v.), Sásánian king, i,
 374; v, 13; vi, 294, 321;
 viii, 41
 Sapor III (Shápúr son of Shá-
 púr *q.v.*), vi, 365
 Sarakhs, city in Khurásán, be-
 tween Nishápúr and Mary,
 ii, 108

- Saraparda, i, 84
Sarcostemma viminale. See Homa.
 Sargon I. of Agani, v, 293
 foundling legend of, v, 393
 Sarf, city in Mázandarán, i, 230, 289, 366; v, 174; vii, 237; viii, 168, 341, 355, 392; ix, 86
 Iránian captives imprisoned at, i, 363
 released, i, 367
 Sar-i-pul-i-Zohab, vii, 187
 Sarkab, Rúman general, viii, 281, 292
 Sarkash (Sorgius), minstrel, 174, viii, 193, 398 seq. 406
 Story of, 174, viii, 396
 disgrace of, viii, 399
 Sarkhán. See Súfarai.
 Sarúch, desert in Kirmán, ii, 226
 vii, 362
 Sarúg, Jacob of, Syriac poet. See Jacob.
 Sarv, king of Yamán, 140, i, 211, 286; v, 260; vi, 73
 daughters of, asked in marriage by Farídún for his sons, i, 178
 consults his chiefs, i, 179
 agrees, conditionally, to Farídún's request, i, 181
 attempts to outwit Farídún's sons, i, 183 seq.
 gives his daughters in marriage to Farídún's sons, i, 185
 Sarv == Ázad Sarv, *q.v.*
 Sásán, eponym of Sásánian dynasty, viii, 219, 220, 330, 341
 Sásán, son of Bahman, ii 3; v, 290
 disinherited and flees from court, v, 291
 account of, v, 291
 Sásán, name of Dárá's son and several of his descendants, ii 3; vi, 200, 211, 224, 255; ix, 105 and note
 Sásán, descendants of, help Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 224
 House of, vi, 251, 270 and note
 lineage of, ix, 56, 105 and note
 Sásán, father of Ardshír Pápakán, 160, vi, 3, 193, 198, 200, 201, 240
 legend of, vi, 211 seq.
 marries daughter of Pápak, vi, 213
 Sásánian, Sásánians, i, 11, 374; iii, 9; v, 13, 281; vi, 81, 209, 225, 253, 257; vii, 85, 185, 212, 237; viii, 65, 72, 73, 214, 262, 330, 413
 note; ix, 4, 5, 46, 47, 50, 54, 65, 72, 73, 76, 77, 83, 105
 dynasty, i, 49, 374; ii, 10; v, 10, 282; vi, 249 seq., 253, 257, 321; vii, 1 seq., 381; viii, 73; ix, 4
 Tabarí on the rise of the, vi, 198
 characterised, vi, 249
 Zoroastrianism under, vi, 251
 Mas'údī on Church and State under, vi, 251
 duration of, vi, 257
 empire, i, 11; vi, 193, 327; viii, 193
 conquered by the Arabs, ix, 65 seq.
 genealogical table of, vi, 3, 253
 Tabarí's history of, vi, 14
 note
 fictitious genealogies of, v, 290; vi, 199, 211, 256
 view of Sikandar, vi, 15, 224
 and note, 240 and note
 rivalry with Arsacids, viii, 73
 usage, viii, 190
 architecture, viii, 193
 race viii, 285, 386, note
 Satire, Firdausí's, on Sultán Mahmúd, i, 40 seq.

- Satrapy, satrapies, Núshírwán's four ix, 69
- Saturn, planet, i, 72, 100, 161, 204, 245, 295, 311; ii, 183, 208, 215, 247, 263, 310, 319, 394, 407; iii, 32, 110, 178, 232, 237, 254, 268, 318; iv, 31, 214; v, 68, 89, 136, 154, 159, 220, 233; vi, 97, 115, 176, 281, 318, 385; vii, 92, 151, 252, 267, 346, 418; viii, 24, 66, 321, 392, 395; ix, 73
sphere of, ix, 92
- Sav (the Sóvbar of the Pahlavi texts, now Chashmali-i-Sabz), a lake, among the hills in the neighbourhood of Tús and Mashad, 163, vi, 373, 392
legend of, vi, 372, 391 *seq.*
- Savalán, mountain in Ázarbáján v, 14
- Sáwa, Túránian hero, 149, iii, 224 slain by Rustam, iii, 224
- Sáwa, fránián hero, v, 154 left in charge of the Brazen Hold by Asfandiyár, i, 154
- Sáwa, ruler of the Turks, 170; viii, 74, 94 *seq.*, 100 *seq.*, 107, 108, 110 *seq.*, 123, 129 132, 133, 135, 137, 139, 164, 169, 174, 216, 219, 222, 224, 240
=Chao-wou, viii, 72 attacks Hurmuzd, viii, 92 letter of, to Hurmuzd, viii, 93 prophecy about, viii, 98 Hurmuzd sends Kharrád, son of Barzín, to, viii, 110 hears of Bahrám Chúbína's army and blames Kharrád viii, 110 offers of, to Bahrám Chúbína, viii, 113 *seq.*, 117 *seq.* employs sorcery against the frániáns, viii, 123 defeated and slain, viii, 126
- Sáwa, head of, set on lance, viii, 130 wealth of, sent to Hurmuzd, viii, 133
- Sawurg, Indian king, 159, vi, 64, 118
- Sayce, Professor, on the Amazons, vi, 71
- Scandinavians, vi, 73 found the Russian empire, vi, 19
- Scimitar of Salm, iv, 335 *seq.*
- Scotland, vi, 79 vitrified forts in, vi, 79
- Scribe, scribes, office of, highly esteemed, i, 27 and *note*; vii, 311; viii, 50 put to death by Hurmuzd, viii, 71, 81 *seq.*
- Scriptures, Zoroastrian. See Zandavasta.
- Scylla, Níus and, story of, vi, 323 *note*
- Scythia, iv, 316
- Scythians (Sacae), their relations with the frániáns, i, 17 wars of, with Darius Hystapsis, v, 11
- Seasons, confusion of the, ix, 77 *note*
- Sects, Muhammadan, i, 99 parable of, i, 107
- Seleucia (Bih Ardshir *q.v.*), city on the right bank of the Tigris, opposite to Ctesiphon (Taisafún), ii, 80; vi, 254, 291 *note*, 322; viii, 189, 194, 196
- Semiramis, legendary queen of Assyria, historically Samuramat, wife (?) of Samsi Adad king of Assyria (B.C. 824-804), ii, 10; vi, 66, 405 *note*
legend of, v, 292, 293
- Humái and, v, 292, 293
- Semites, the, i, 9 relations of, with the frániáns, i, 9 *seq.*, ix, 65
- Seneca the younger, Nero's tutor (B.C. 3—A.D. 65), vii, 279

- Seoses (Súfarai ?), Persian commander-in-chief, *temp.*
 Kubál, vii, 187
- Sergiopolis, viii, 188
- Sergius, Saint and Martyr, viii, 188
 patron saint of Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 188, 195
 Roman leader in Tabarí, viii, 188
- Sergius (Sarkash), minstrel, viii, 193
- Serpent, serpents, on Zahhák's shoulders, i, 139
 worship and human sacrifice, i, 143
- Seven, favourite number in Persian story, vii, 186, 280,
 Banquets of Núshírwán. *See* Banquet.
- Climes. *See* Climes.
- Courses (Haft Khwán) of Rustam. *See* Rustam.
- Planets. *See* Planet.
- Persian nobles, legend of the vi, 207
 transferred to Ardshír Pápákán (?), vi, 207
- Stages (Haft Khwán) of Asfandiyár. *See* Asfandiyár.
- Warriors, Flight of the, 143, ii, 25, 82, 107 *seq.*
- Founts, jewel, viii, 392
 and forty Sháhs, viii, 395
 and note
- Severus, Roman Emperor (A.D. 146-211), vi, 322
 Hatra besieged by, vi, 322
- Shabáhang, Farhád's steed, iii, 313; iv, 8
 Bízhan's steed, iv, 47
- Shabdíz, Bahrám Gúr's steed, vii, 37, 80
 Gív's steed, iii, 257
 Luhrásp's steed, iv, 323
 taken by Gushtásp, iv, 323
- Mihráb's steed, i, 326
 Khusrau Parwíz' steed, viii, 407; ix, 30
- Shabrang, Bahrám Gur's steed, vii, 37, 80
 Bízhan's steed, iii, 296, 302, 313; iv, 8, 39, 50, 119, 124
- Shádán son of Barzín, one of Firdausí's authorities, i, 67, 69; vii, 382, 423
- Shaddád, son of 'Ad, legend of, i, 100
- Shádward, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*
- Shaghád, son of Zál, 157, v, 261
 Story of Rustam and, 157, v, 260 *seq.*
 provenance of, v, 260
 birth of, v, 263
 astrologers' evil prognostic of, v, 264
 sent to be brought up at Kábul, v, 264
 marries the daughter of the king of Kábul, v, 264
 king of Kábul and, plot against Rustam, v, 265 *seq.*
 pretended quarrel of, with the king of Kábul, v, 266
 goes to Zábul, v, 267
 cause of, taken up by Rustam, v, 267
 persuades Rustam to go with Zawára and a small escort to Kábul, v, 268
 warns the king of Kábul of Rustam's coming, v, 269
 glories over Rustam, v, 271
 outwitted and slain by Rustam, v, 272
 corpse of, burnt, v, 277
- Sháh, accession of, ceremony at, vi, 409
- Sháhá, city in Hámávarán, ii, 89
- Sháhábád, the modern name for the ruins of Gund-i-Shápur in Khúzistán, vi, 295
- Sháhd, river, ii, 108; iii, 11, 116, 118, 123, 152, 173, 230, 241; vi, 391, 392
- Sháhd, mountain, iii, 237

Sháhnáma (Bastán-náma, Khudai-náma), 139, i, 66; ix, 4 seq., 43, 50, 61, 70
 subject-matter of, how preserved, i, 56
 origin of, i, 65 seq.
 put into writing, i, 66
 Prose, compilers of, referred to, viii, 71, 73
 probably compiled by Magi, i, 69
 referred to, by Firdausí, i, 108, 109; iv, 141 seq.; vi, 196
 more than one, i, 29, 66, 67, 69
 Dakíkí and. *See* Dakíhí.
 Sháhnáma, Firdausí's, 139, 176, 3, 23 seq.; iii, 7, 9, 11, 14, 271, 286; iv, 7, 8, 136 seq., 316, v.9 seq., 19, 20, 22 seq., 27 seq., 293, 294; vi, 3 and note, 30, 31, 66 seq., 72, 79, 82 seq., 194 seq., 205 seq., 249 seq., 253, 256, 270 note, 294, 301, 307, 310, 325, 326; vii, 5, 156, 184, 185, 215, 217, 317, 381; viii, 3, 41, 42, 71, 72, 74 seq., 187 seq. 191, 192
 scene of, i, 3
 theme of, i, 8, 47
 Baisinghar Khán's edition of, i, 23
 completion of, Firdausí on, 176; ix, 121
 date of completion of, i, 24; ix, 122
 length, metre, and language of, i, 47; iv, 8; ix, 122
 anomalies of, i, 48
 explained, i, 48
 divisions and chief characters of, i, 49
 machinery of, i, 51
 leading motives of, i, 53
 cosmogony of, i, 71; iv, 136
 imagery of, i, 72
 editions of, i, 76
 translations of, i, 77, 87

Sháhnáma, principles of the present translation of, i, 77 seq.
 certain terms used in, explained, i, 80 seq.
 Firdausí on the compilation of, i, 108
 historic element in mythical period of, iii, 8 seq.
 Greek subject-matter in, vi, 11
 derivation of *Sikandar* given in, vi, 19
 historic period of, i, 49; vi, 29
 Irán and, analogy between, vi, 193
 portion of, corresponding to Kárnámak, vi, 196
 Kárnámak and, compared, vi, 200 seq., 255 seq.
 Wisdom-literature in, vii, 278 seq.
 Sháhnáma, of Abú- 'Alí Muhammad, i, 69
 Shahra, chief, 165, vii, 92
 made king of Túrán by Bahram Gúr, vii, 92
 Shahrám-Píruz. *See* Bádán Píruz.
 Shahrán, ix, 102
 pleads with Máhwí for Yazdagird, ix, 102
 Shahrán Guráz, Iránian warrior, speech of, viii, 239
 Shahránguráz (Hurmuzd Shahránguráz, Guráz q.v.), 175; ix, 50
 heads conspiracy against Guráz; ix, 54
 Shahr-Bánú-Iram, sister of Gív and wife of Rustam, ii, 4, 384
 Shahrbaráz (Guráz q.v.), Iránian general, viii, 194; ix, 43, 50
 revolt of, viii, 195
 sons of, viii, 196
 rebellion of, ix, 43, 44
 alliance of, with Heraclius, ix, 44
 Shahr-Baiz. *See* Shahrbaráz.

- Shahrgír, warrior in Sikandar's host, vi, 125, 126
 takes Kaidáku's son and daughter-in-law prisoners, vi, 125
 Shahrgír, captain of the host to Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 241
 Ardshír's instructions to, vi, 241
 goes to Ardshír's help, vi, 244 and *note*
 Shahrguráz (Shahribaráz *q.v.*), ix, 50
 Shahrináz, sister of Jamshíd, wife of Zahhák and Fáridún, and mother of Salm and Túr, i, 90, 142, 164 *seq.*, 177
 married to Zahhák, i, 146
 sons of, by Farklún, i, 177
 Shahífr, Shahrívar, ameshaspenta, i, 88; iii, 286, 328 month and day, i, 88; v, 310; vii, 76
 Shahrwaráz (Shahribaráz *q.v.*), ix, 50
 Shahrwí, archimage, vi, 329
 minister during Shápúr son of Urmuzd's minority, vi, 329
 Shahryár, son of Shíín and Khusráu Parwiz, ix, 39
 father of Yazdagírd, ix, 64
 Sháhwí, eldest son of Haftwád, vi, 237
 referred to, vi, 206
 helps his father against Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 236
 executed, vi, 245
 Sháhwí (=Máhwí ?), one of Firdausí's authorities, vii, 382, 394
 Shakespeare, quoted, iii, 286; v, 156 *note*; vii, 383; viii, 187
 Shákn, region, iii, 152, 177, 185, 192, 204, 222, 223, 228, 237
 Shám (Syria), ii, 80, 84; vi, 357; viii, 170
 Shám, king of, taken prisoner by Rustam, ii, 97
 Shamásás, Túránian hero, 142; i, 346; ii, 12, 18
 Khazarwán and, invade Kábulistán, i, 345, 358
 parleyed with by Mihráb to gain time, i, 358
 flees from Zál, i, 361
 met and defeated by Káran, 1, 361
 Shambalid, daughter of Barzín, vii, 53
 married to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 53
 Shamíráñ, Túránian hero, iii, 185
 comes to aid Píráñ, iii, 152
 Shamíráñ, stronghold north of Harát (?), ix, 91, 94
 Shammákh, king of Súr, iv, 57, 146
 Shammás, legendary founder of Fire-worship, vi, 339 *note*
 Shammás, Núshzáf's general, vii, 219, 272
 Shamtí, viii, 195, 196
 Shangul, king of Hind, *temp.* Kai Khusráu, 149, iii, 161, 172, 185, 198, 205, 210, 217, 251
 comes to aid Píráñ, iii, 152
 volunteers to fight Rustam, iii, 209, 216
 challenges Rustam, iii, 221
 worsted, iii, 221
 temp. Bahrám Gúr, 165, vi, 325; vii, 109 *seq.*
 border-raids of, vii, 110
 gives audience to the Fránian envoy (Bahrám Gúr), vii, 112
 state of, described, vii, 112
 brother of, vii, 113
 vaunts his own greatness, vii, 114
 wife of, the daughter of the Faghfúr, vii, 115
 son of, vii, 115
 entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 116

Shangul, Bahrám Gúr wrestles before, vii, 117
 plays at polo, vii, 118
 Bahrám Gúr displays his markmanship before, vii, 118
 tries to find out who the Persian envoy (Bahrám Gúr) is, vii, 118 *seq.*
 takes counsel with his sages, vii, 126
 offers a daughter and great advancement to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 127
 marries Sapínúd to Bahrám Gúr, vii, 128 *seq.*
 goes to a festival, vii, 134
 hears of Bahrám Gúr's flight vii, 135
 reproaches Sapínúd, vii, 135
 makes a league with Bahrám Gúr, 137
 bids farewell to Sapínúd, vii, 137
 makes a new treaty with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140
 entertained with seven other kings by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
 visits his daughter Sapínúd, vii, 142
 farewells Sapínúd, vii, 143
 makes Bahrám Gúr his heir, vii, 143
 Bahrám Gúr's parting gifts to, vii, 144
 sends Gipsies to Irán, vii, 149
 Shapigán, treasury of, i, 61, 62
 Shápúr, Fishdádian hero, i, 210, 211, 215
 slain, i, 352
 Shápúr, Kaiánian hero,¹ ii, 271, 338, 340; iii, 19, 289, 322, 331; iv, 292
 hails Gushtasp as Sháh, iv, 362
 Shápúr, Ashkánian (Parthian) king, vi, 197, 210

Shápúr, son of Pápak, vi, 199
 Shápúr, son of Ardshír Pápakán, Sháh (Sapor I), 161, i, 42; vi, 3, 256, 303, 307, 313, 315, 321 *seq.*, viii, 265
 compilation of Zandavasta under, i, 62, 63
 stories of, in Kárnámak, vi, 196, 255
 Tabarí, vi, 255, 257
 crowned in his father's life-time, vi, 257
 secret birth of, vi, 261
 origin of name, vi, 262
note
 recognised and acknowledged by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 264
 discovers the daughter of Mihrak, vi, 268 *seq.*
 summoned and counselled by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 286 *seq.*
 confused with Shápúr son of Urmuzd, vi, 294, 321, 324, 327
 Reign of, 161, vi, 294 *seq.*
Note on, vi, 294
 historical inaccuracies of, vi, 294
 wars of, with Rome, vi, 294, 297
 Odenathus and, vi, 294
 defeats the Rúmans, vi, 297
 receives tribute from Cæsar, vi, 298
 builds cities, vi, 298
 bids Bazánúsh build a bridge at Shúshtar, vi, 298
 summons and counsels Urmuzd, vi, 299
 Shápúr, son of Urmuzd, Sháh (Sapor II), 162, 163, i, 374; v, 16 *note*; vi, 3, 294, 295, 307, 371, 373, 405 (?); vii, 359; viii, 41
 provides for uniformity of Zoroastrian doctrine, i, 62

¹ May be identical with the above in legend.

Shápúr, son of Urmuzd, Zoroastrian canon closed under, i, 63
referred to, vi, 318
Reign of, 162, vi, 321 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 321 *seq.*
bridge of, at Taisafún, vi, 321, 329
residences of, vi, 321, 330
confused with Shápúr, son of Ardshír, vi, 294, 321, 324, 327
triumphant treaty of, with the Rúmans, vi, 326, 355
cities of, vi, 327, 357
birth of, vi, 328
crowned as an infant, vi, 328
education of, vi, 329
Málíka offers to betray her father's hold to, vi, 331
 opens the gate to, vi, 333
sends Málíka to his camp, vi, 333
treatment of Ábab captives by, vi, 323, 334
receives the title of Zú'l Aktáf *q.v.*, vi, 335
returns to Párs and receives tribute, vi, 335
consults the astrologers, vi, 335
visits Cæsar in disguise, vi, 336
entertained by Cæsar, vi, 337
denounced by a Persian resident at Cæsar's court, vi, 337
arrested, vi, 337
sewed up in an ass's skin and imprisoned, vi, 338
pitied by an Iránian slave-girl, vi, 339
freed from ass's skin by slave-girl, vi, 340
entertained by a gardener, vi, 341 *seq.*
sends the gardener to the high priest, vi, 344
described by the gardener, vi, 344

Shápúr, praises the slave-girl, vi, 346
prepares to attack Cæsar, vi, 346
sends spies to Taisafún, vi, 346
sends tidings of his victory over Cæsar to the provinces, vi, 348
treatment of Cæsar by, vi, 349
invades Rúm, vi, 350
defeats Yánus, vi, 352
bids Bazánúsh come to him, vi, 354
dictates terms of peace, vi, 355
returns to Istakhr, vi, 356
takes Nasíbín, vi, 356
names and honours the slave-girl, vi, 356
rewards the gardener, vi, 357
keeps Cæsar captive, vi, 357
sends Cæsar's corpse to Rúm, vi, 357
arranges a disputation between Mání and the high priest, vi, 358
Mání executed by, vi, 359
arranges for the succession with his brother Ardshír, vi, 360 *seq.*
dies, vi, 362

- Shápúr of Rai, conference of, with Kubád, vii, 192
goes to Shíráz and arrests Súfarai, vii, 193
conveys Súfarai to Sháh Kubád, vii, 194
- Shápúr, Iránian noble, *temp.*
Núshírwán, vii, 304, 333
- Shápúr, Iránian warrior, 172, viii, 202, 225, 257, 259, 269, 293, 296
deceived by Cæsar's talisman, viii, 273
praised by Cæsar, viii, 279
Bahrám Chúbína writes to, viii, 285
receives Istakhr and Dáráb-gird, viii, 313
- Shápúr, father of Píruz, ix, 80
- Shápúr Gird (Gund-i-Shápúr *q.v.*)
city, vi, 295, 298
- Shatt-al-Arab, the combined streams of the Tigris and Euphrates, ix, 67
- Sháwarán, Iránian hero, 151, ii, 73, 90, 111, 228, 249, 250, 255, 271, 318; iii, 20, 34, 43, 45, 48, 67, 115, 334, iv, 97, 105, 147, 275
- Shawwál, the tenth Muhammadian month, vi, 208
- Sheep's heads, Bahrám Chúbína and the, viii, 74, 107
omen of, reported to Hurmuzd, viii, 108
- Shem, patriarch, vi, 65
- Shepherds, Kai Khusrau brought up by, ii, 328 *seq.*
- Sher-kappí, viii, 322 *note*
- Shíbán, vi, 397
- Shída (Pashang), son of Afrásiyáb, 152, i, 92; iii, 262, 350; iv, 10 *seq.*, 15, 135, 156, 158 *seq.*, 206, 222, 287, 290
consulted by his father, iii, 250 *seq.*
goes on embassy to Púladwand, iii, 255
- Shida, refuses to interfere in the fight between Rustam and Púladwand, iii, 363
sent by Afrásiyáb to Khárazm, iv, 111
defeated by Ashkash, iv, 60, 72
commands the left wing, iv, 155
surname of, meaning of, iv, 155 *note*
urges Afrásiyáb to attack Kai Khusrau, iv, 159
Afrásiyáb's reply to, iv, 160
wishes to meet Kai Khusrau in single combat, iv, 161
goes on an embassage to Kai Khusrau, iv, 161
skirmish of, with Iránian outposts, iv, 164
welcomed by Káran, iv, 165
mail and steed of, iv, 168
receives Kai Khusrau's reply, iv, 170
returns to Afrásiyáb, iv, 170
goes to fight Kai Khusrau, iv, 171
parley of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 172
challenges Kai Khusrau to a wrestling-bout, iv, 173
urged by his interpreter to flee from Kai Khusrau, iv, 174
refuses, iv, 174
wrestles and is overthrown, iv, 175
Kai Khusrau instructs Ruhám to bury, iv, 176
- Shídásp, minister to Tahmúras, i, 127
- Shídasp, son of Gushtásp, 155, ii, 3; v, 26, 58
death of, foretold by Jámásp, v, 50
given command of one wing, v, 55
slain, v, 58

Shídúsh, Iránian hero, i, 211; ii, 58, 85, 158, 340; iii, 33, 45, 48, 127, 129, 130, 139, 141, 157, 248, 253; iv, 13, 15, 25, 191
 with Káran and Kishwád, pursues Kurákhán, i, 354 put in command of the rear, iv, 92
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275
 Shí'ite, Shí'ites, Muhammadan sect, i, 13
 origin of, i, 13
 Firðausí a, i, 24
 Shikbán, Iránian warrior, vi, 395
 Shiknán, place, vii, 359
 Shingán, region, iii, 228, 238; iv, 65
 Shíráz, city in Párs (Farsistán), 166, i, 236; vi, 198 *note*, 210; vii, 6, 173, 190, 193, 194
 Shírín, wife of Khusrau Parwíz, 174, 175, viii, 187, 194, 363, 383, 407; ix, 28, 36 enmity of, to Shírwí, viii, 189, 191, 193 account of, viii, 192 Khusrau and, Persian poem, viii, 192 meaning of, viii, 193 Maryam murdered by, viii, 193, 389 a Christian, viii, 195 warns Khusrau Parwíz against Gurdyá, viii, 364 Khusrau Parwíz and, ix, 7 Story of, 174, viii, 382 married to, viii, 386 gilded chamber given to, viii, 389 hears Kubád proclaimed Sháh, viii, 416 informs Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 416 has charge of Shírwí's horoscope, ix, 16

Shírín, has charge of Rája's letter ix, 17
 companions Khusrau Parwíz in prison, ix, 29 reproached and summoned by Shírwí, ix, 36 makes her Will, ix, 36 goes to Court, ix, 37 justifies herself, ix, 38, 40 exonerated, ix, 38, 41 sons of, ix, 39 unveils to the Court, ix, 39 Shírwí enamoured of, ix, 39 makes request of Shírwí, ix, 40, 41 goes home, ix, 40 distributes her wealth, ix, 40 frees her slaves, ix, 41 poisons herself, ix, 42 Shírkhán (Shirván, district and town west of the Caspian between the Kur river and Darband ?), i, 169 Shírkhún, a Zabulí, v, 184 guides Bahman to Rustam, v, 184 Shírú, son of Gushtásp, 155, v, 26 slain, v, 57 Shírúya, son of Jázhan, iv, 360 goes with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360 Shírwán (Shirván ?) iii 216. See Shírkhán. Shírwí, Iránian hero, i, 207, 215 helps to take the Castle of the Alans, i, 223 *seq.* conveys the spoil to Farídún, i, 230, 232 Shírwí, Núshírwán's commander-in-chief, vii, 251 appointed to receive the Rúman tribute, vii, 262 Shírwí (Kubád *q.v.*), Sháh, 174, 175, viii, 188, 190, 371 *seq.*; ix, 7, 8, 11, 27, 28, 31 *seq.*, 36, 45, 47, 64 Shírín's enmity to, viii, 189, 191, 193 internment of, viii, 194, 196, 391 released, viii, 196, 415

- Shírwí (Kubád), secret and public names of, viii, 372, 416 astrologers consulted at birth of, viii, 372 ill-omened horoscope of, viii, 372; ix, 16 referred to, viii, 373, 390 kept by Shírín, ix, 16 Khusrau Parwíz gives Caesar's gifts to, viii, 381 boorishness of, viii, 390 Khusrau Parwíz' displeasure with, viii, 390 sends to take Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 419 Reign of, 175, ix, 3 Note on, ix, 3 Length of, ix, 42 treatment of Khusrau Parwíz by, ix, 7 writes to Heraclius, ix, 7 Ashtád and Kharrád report their interview with Khusrau Parwíz to, ix, 27 reproaches and summons Shírín, ix, 36, 37 falls in love with Shírín, ix, 39 grants Shírín's requests, ix, 40, 42 poisoned, ix, 42 son of, ix, 42 Shírzád, herald in Núshírwán's host, vii, 252 Shírzil, Iránian warrior, viii, 296 Shíz (Takht-i-Sulaimán), seat of the Magi in Ázarbáján, i, 60; viii, 190 Fire-temple at, vii, 5 Khátún sent to, vii, 5 Shoemaker, Bahrám Gúr and the, 164, vii, 24 Núshírwán and the, 169, vii, 218, 260 offer of, to advance money to Núshírwán, viii, 48 rejected, viii, 50, 71 Shu'bá Mughírá, companion of the Prophet, ix, 69, 83 embassy of, ix, 69, 82 Shu'fb, Arab chief, 158, vi, 21 attacks Dáráb, vi, 21 defeated and slain, vi, 22 Shúlak, Gushtásp's steed (Dakíkí), v, 73 Asfandiyár's steed (Firdausí), v, 126 Shúráb (Sura), city on the Euphrates, east of Antioch, vii, 217 place of Gushtásp's exile, vii, 254 taken by Núshírwán, vii, 217, 254 Shúrsán, vi, 379 Shús (Sús, Susa), city on the Karkhah river north west of Shúhtar in Khúzistán, vi, 327 Shúhtar, Shústar, city on the Dujayl (Kárún) river in Khúzistán, vi, 199, 295 and note, 299; viii, 381 dam and bridge at, vi, 298, 326 Sicily, vi, 30 Alexander the Great's legendary visit to, vi, 30 Siege-operations, iii, 246; iv, 208 seq.; vii, 254, 257 Signs, the Twelve (Zodiac), vii, 408 Sigz, man of (Rustum), ii, 100 and note; iii, 183, 209, 218, 221 Sigzian, a native of Sigz, v, 226 and note 228 = Rustam, iii, 209, 225, 227; v, 241 = Zawára, v, 226, 228 = Farámarz, v, 228 Sikandar (Iskandar, Alexander the Great, q.v.), Sháh, 158-160, i, 42, 49; ii, 3, 8 seq.; v, 30; vi, 11, 13, 16, 18, 29, 30, 33, 193, 210, 240 and note, 325, 353; viii, 52, 214, 217, 242, 262, 381, 387, 392; ix, 26 paternity of, i, 55 and note

Sikandar, derivation of, in *Tabarí*, vi, 19
 derivation of, in *Sháhnáma*, vi, 19, 26
 birth of, vi, 18, 26
 adopted as his heir by Failakús, vi, 27
 counselled by Arastálís, vi, 35
 refuses tribute to Dárá, vi, 36
 prepares for war with Dárá, vi, 37
 invades, and defeats king of, Misr, vi, 30, 37
Iráu, vi, 30, 37 *seq.*
 visit of, to the camp of Dárá, vi, 38
 invited to banquet with Dárá, vi, 40
 takes the golden cups of Dárá, vi, 40
 recognised, vi, 40
 escapes, vi, 41
 defeats Dárá, vi, 43, 44, 46
 issues proclamation to the Iránians, vi, 44, 47
 gives the spoil to his troops, vi, 44, 47
 marches from 'Irák against Dárá, vi, 46
 enters Istakhr, vi, 46
 answers Dárá's letter, vi, 50
 marches from Istakhr, vi, 51
 hears of Dárá's murder, vi, 52
 arrests Dárá's murderers, vi, 53
 finds Dárá still living, vi, 53
 promises to avenge Dárá, vi, 53
 promises to carry out Dárá's last wishes, vi, 54
 Dárá bestows Rúshanak upon, vi, 55, 86
 laments for, and buries, Dárá, vi, 55, 56
 executes Dárá's murderers, vi, 56
 hailed as ruler by the Iránians, vi, 56

Sikandar, sends envoys to Ispahán and to the family of Dárá, and letters to the provinces, to announce his accession, vi, 57
 crowned Sháh at Istakhr, vi, 59
 Reign of, 158, vi, 60 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 60 *seq.*
 diagram to illustrate Persian Romance of, vi, 84
 inaugural address of, vi, 85
 correspondence of, with the wife and daughter of Dárá, vi, 33 86, *seq.*
 marries Rúshanak, vi, 90
 invades Hind, vi, 98
 Kaid and, vi, 61, 98
 approaches Mflád, vi, 61, 98
 inquires about the Four Wonders of Kaid, vi, 100
 Four Wonders and other gifts sent by Kaid to, vi, 103
 marries daughter of Kaid, vi, 104
 sage of Kaid and, vi, 62, 104 *seq.*
 principle of the cup explained to, vi, 109
 conceals his treasures, vi, 110 and *note*
 advances to Kannáj, vi, 110
 troops of, protest, vi, 113
 remonstrates with his troops vi, 113
 troops of, ask pardon, vi, 114
 war of, with Fúr (Porus), vi, 67, 110 *seq.*
 hears of Fúr's elephants, vi, 115
 his device to overcome, vi, 115
 challenges Fúr to single combat, vi, 116
 slays Fúr, vi, 117
 Fúr's troops submit to, vi, 118
 becomes king of Hind, vi, 118

Sikandar, bestows Hind on Sawurg, vi, 118
 visit of, to Mecca and the Kaaba, vi, 64, 67, 119 seq.
 ends the rule of the Khuzá' in Arabia, vi, 120
 sets up Nasr instead of the Khuzá', vi, 120,
 goes to Judda, vi, 121
 marches to Misr, vi, 121
 welcomed by king of, vi, 121
 stays for a year in, vi, 121
 Kaidáfa (Candace) and, vi, vi, 65, 121 seq.
 portrait of, obtained by Kaidáfa, vi, 122
 Kaidáfa praised by Kabtún to, vi, 122
 writes to Kaidáfa, vi, 123
 Kaidáfa's answer to, vi, 123
 assumes the name of Naitkún (Antigonus), vi, 66, 125 seq.
 pleads (as Naitkún) for Kaidrúsh and his wife, vi, 126
 goes (as Naitkún) to Kaidáfa, vi, 127
 graciously received by Kaidáfa, vi, 128
 audiences of, with Kaidáfa, vi, 128 seq.
 recognised by Kaidáfa, vi, 129 seq.
 delivers his message, as envoy, to Kaidáfa, vi 129, 134
 covenant of, with Kaidáfa, vi, 132, 138
 warned by Kaidáfa against Tainúsh, vi, 133
 insulted by Tainúsh, vi, 134
 counsels Kaidáfa about Tainúsh, vi, 135
 covenant of, with Tainúsh, vi, 136
 Kaidáfa's gifts to, vi, 140
 returns with Tainúsh, vi, 141
 welcomed by his troops, vi, 141

Sikandar, reveals himself to Tainúsh, vi, 142
 entertains at a banquet, gives gifts to, and dismisses, Tainúsh, vi, 143
 final message of, to Kaidáfa, vi, 143
 Brahmans hear of the coming of, and write to, vi, 143
 interview of, with the Brahmans, vi, 67, 144 seq.
 quits the Brahmans, vi, 147
 Fish-eaters (*Ichthyophagi*, q.v.) and, vi, 69, seq., 147, 177
 adventure of, with a whale, vi, 71, 147
 sees gigantic reeds (bamboos), vi, 71, 148
 attacked by snakes, scorpions, and boars, vi, 148
 the people of Habash, vi, 149
 the Narmpái, vi, 150
 adventure of, with a dragon, vi, 71, 151
 visits the temple of Dionysus, vi, 71, 152, 166
 warned of his death, vi, 152, 161, 166
 marches toward Harúm, the City of Women (Amazons q.v.), vi, 153 seq.
 encounters snow and frost, vi, 156
 encounters great heat, vi, 157
 encounters the negroes, vi, 157
 reaches and inspects Harúm, vi, 157
 marches westward and finds a fair-haired race, vi, 73, 158
 hears of the Gloom, q.v., and of the Fount of Life, q.v., and prepares to visit them vi, 158
 sets forth with Khísr as guide, vi, 159

Sikandar, Khisr and, part company, vi, 160
 fails to find the Fount of Life, vi, 160
 interview of, with birds, vi, 160
 interview of, with Isráfil, vi, 78, 161
 emerges from the Gloom, vi, 162
 marches eastward, vi, 163
 hears of Yájúj and Májúj, vi, 163
 barrier of, 160, i, 16; vi, 78, 164, 249
 Speaking Tree visited by, vi, 167 *seq.* *See* Tree.
 reaches "The World's End," vi, 168
 receives gifts, vi, 169
 expedition of, to Chín, vi, 80, 169 *seq.*
 goes as his own ambassador to the Faghfúr, vi, 170
 describes himself, vi, 171
 Faghfúr's gifts to, vi, 173
 departs with Faghfúr's envoy, vi, 173
 identity of, discovered by the envoy, vi, 173
 dismisses the envoy with gifts and a message to Faghfúr, vi, 174
 arrives at Chaghwán, vi, 174
 marches to Sind, vi, 175
 defeats Bandáwa, chief of the Sindians, vi, 175
 marches to Nímrúz, vi, 175
 receives gifts from the king of Yaman, vi, 175
 meets Gúsh-bistar, vi, 177
 carries off the treasures of Kai Khusrau, vi, 178
 policy of, for safeguarding Rúm after his decease, vi, 81, 178, 197
 adopts the advice of Arastálís, vi, 180

Sikandar, arrives at Bábil, vi, 180
 prodigious birth at, vi, 81, 180
 consults the astrologers on, vi, 180
 warned of his end, vi, 180
 sickens, vi, 181
 Will of, vi, 81, 181
 grief of the troops for, vi, 183, 184
 dies, vi, 183
 dispute as to burial of, vi, 184
 body of, taken to Iskandaríya, vi, 185
 sentences of sages over, vi, 82, 83, 185
 cities of, vi, 83, 189
 Zoroastrian and Sásánian view of, i, 59 and *note*, 61 *seq.*; vi, 15 and *note*, 224, 240; vii, 79 and *note*
 Silk, account of, vi, 204
 introduction of, into the West, vi, 204
 Silk-worm. *See* Silk.
 Silvia, vestal, v, 293
 Símáh Barzín, scribe, Húrmuzd plots against, 170, viii, 85, *seq.*
 Simmas, chief herdsman of Ninus, v, 292
 Símurgh, mythical bird, 156, 157, i, 51; iii, 158, 313, 330; v, 117, 132 *seq.*, 166, 246, 248, 255
 described, i, 235 and *note*, 253, 276, 302, 326, v, 132
 nest of, on Mount Alburz, i, 241, 244, 250
 young of, i, 242, 250, v, 132, 133
 finds and brings up the infant Zál, i, 242
 informs Zál of his parentage, i, 245
 gives Zál one of her feathers, i, 246, 321
 their efficacy, i, 246, 320
 restores Zál to Sám, i, 247

GENERAL INDEX

374

Símurgh, referred to, i, 251
succours Rúdába, i, 320 *seq.*
foretells Rustam's future
greatness, i, 321
slain by Aslandiyár, v, 133
summoned to Rustam's aid
by Zál, v, 235 *seq.*
heals Rustam and Rakhsh,
v, 237
instructs Rustam how to
overcome Asfandiyár, v,
237

Sind, the river Indus and the
parts adjacent, i, 113; ii,
285; iii, 10 *note*, 117, 185,
216, 238 iv, 65, 71; v,
75, 180, 203, 277; vi, 113;
vii, 110, 112, 390
king of, iii, 185; vi, 113,
entertained by Bahram
Gúr, vii, 140 *seq.*
kings of, send tribute to
Gushtásp, v, 75
chiefs of, vi, 123
warriors of, vi, 132, 137
Sikandar marches to, vi, 175

Sindbad, the sailor, vi, 71
lands on a whale, vi, 71

Sinde, river, iii, 10 and *note*

Sindian, Sindians, 160, vii, 126
defeated by Sikandar, vi,
175

Síndukht, wife of Mihráb and
mother of Rúdába, 141, i,
259, 299
Mihráb praises Zál to, i, 260
discovers the loves of Zál
and Rúdába, i, 281
reproaches Rúdába, i, 282
informs Mihráb about Zál
and Rúdába, i, 284
goes with gifts to Sám, i,
300 *seq.*
well received by Sám, i, 302
invites Sám to visit Kábul,
i, 305
returns to Kábul, i, 306
hears of Zál's success with
Minúchihr, i, 315
felicitates Rúdába, i, 315

¹ Cf. Vol. v., p. 30.

Síndukht, Mihráb and, prepare
to welcome Sám and Zál,
i, 315, 317
entertain Sám and Zál, i,
317 *seq.*
visit Sám in Sístán, i, 319

Sinjibú, first historical Khán of
the Turks, vii, 317
relations of, with Núshírwán,
vii, 317
Haitálans and, vii, 317

Sipahram, Túránian hero, 151;
ii, 228, 229, 388; iv, 26,
103
chosen to fight with Hajr,
iv, 97
slain by Hajr, iv, 104

Sipand (Spentó-dáta, *q.v.*, Spen-
dyad, Sapad, White
Castle), mountain north-
west of Nishápúr, 142, i,
377; ii, 118; v, 30, 116,
117

Malcolm's identification and
description of, i, 236

Zál bids Rustam take, i, 329
described, i, 329
taken by Rustam, i, 331
treasures of, i, 331, 332
hold of, destroyed by Zál's
orders, i, 333

Sipandármad, ameshaspenta,
q.v., iii, 287, 328; v, 18
month, i, 89; iv, 252; ix,
70, 122
day, i, 88, 89, viii, 331

Sipanjáb (Farghána ?), region, i,
375; ii, 241, 342, 344, 345
358; iii, 151

Sipansár, Iránian warrior, viii, 293

Sistán = Nimrúz = Zábulistán,²
144, 149, 155; i, 319;
ii, 80, 335, 365; iii, 165,
166, 191, 207, 321, 356;
iv, 14, 278; v, 13, 17, 29,
85, 86, 89, 94, 173, 174,
201, 220, 248, 261, 264,
267; vi, 32, 198; vii, 214
former capital of, i, 4
lake of, i, 4; v, 239 *note*

² See p. 333 *note*.

- Sístán, origin of name, i, 19
 invaded by Shamásás and Khazarwán, i, 358
 mourning in, for Rustam, v, 278
 invaded by Bahman, v, 284 *seq.*
- Sitír, Persian measure of weight, iii, 184
- Sítúh, Túránián hero, v, 86, 87
 goes as a spy to Irán and reports to Arjásp, v, 86, 87
- Siyah Chasm, slave of Farrukh-zád, ix, 62
 handmaid of Farrukhzád and, ix, 62
 imprisoned, ix, 62
 released, ix, 62
 poisons Farrukhzád, ix, 63
- Siyámak, son of Gaiúmart, 139, i, 117, 119
 slain by the Black Dív, i, 120
 lamentations over, i, 120
- Siyámak, Túránián hero, 151, iv, 97
 chosen to fight with Guráza, iv, 97
 slain by Guráza, iv, 100
- Siyávakhsh. *See* Siyáwush.
- Siyávashána. *See* Siyáwush.
- Siyáwush, son of Kai Káús, and father of Faríd and Kai Khusrau, 144-148; i, 55, 92; ii, 3, 25, 82, 104 *note* 187 *seq.*, 335, 338 *seq.*, 346 *seq.*, 363, 371, 372, 374 *seq.*, 383, 386, 388, 396, 403, 411; iii, 8, 13, 18, 19, 21, 22, 29, 39, 42, 43, 51, 52, 57, 66, 67, 71, 72, 87, 93, 99, 112, 117, 118, 137, 146, 148, 149, 156, 163, 183, 197, 199, 200, 201, 203 *seq.*, 211, 214, 226, 237, 238, 256, 283, 289, 297, 307, 315, 324, 347; iv, 7, 17, 18, 34, 50, 51, 70 *seq.*, 89, 90, 95, 96, 102, 109, 120, 127, 129, 130, 137, 152, 159, 162, 167, 168,
- Siyáwush—*cont.*
 172, 201, 202, 204, 205, 214, 215, 221, 223, 231, 235, 240, 250, 252, 257, 267, 270, 271, 283, 285, 289, 299, 305, 307, 310; v, 174, 176, 192, 208, 272; viii, 104, 349, 395 *note*; ix, 25 and *note*, 26 *note*, 103
- mother of, 144, ii, 3
- Story of, 144, ii, 188 *seq.*
 Note on, ii, 188 *seq.*
 good example of Fir-dausi's method, ii, 188
 Prelude to, ii, 191
- identical with Cambyses, the father of Cyrus the Great, in legend, ii, 191
- adventure of the mother of, ii, 193
- destined to misfortune from birth, ii, 196
- brought up by Rustam, ii, 196
- horoscope of, ii, 196, 205, 234
- returns to court, ii, 197
- made ruler of Kuhistán, ii, 199
- mourns for his mother's death, ii, 199
- temptation of, by Súdába, ii, 200 *seq.*
- marches against Afrásiyáb, ii, 225 *seq.*
- demands hostages of Afrásiyáb, ii, 239 *seq.*
- goes over to Afrásiyáb, ii, 258 *seq.*
- plays at polo with Afrásiyáb, ii, 264
- archery of, ii, 266, 293
- marriage of, with Jaríra, ii, 268 *seq.*
- marriage of, with Farangís, ii, 270 *seq.*
- entertained by Pírán, ii, 278
- builds cities, ii, 278 *seq.*
- consults the astrologers, ii, 282

- Siyáwush, foretells the future to
 Píráñ, ii, 282 *seq.*
 entertains Píráñ, ii, 287
 entertains Garsíwaz, ii, 290
seq.
 plays at polo with Garsíwaz, ii,
 ii, 292
 challenged by Garsíwaz, ii,
 294
 overthrows Gurví and Dámúr, ii, 295
 slandered by Garsíwaz to
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 296 *seq.*
 summoned to court by
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 300 *seq.*
 betrayed by Garsíwaz, ii,
 301 *seq.*
 excuses himself from going
 to court, ii, 306
 passion of, ii, 307 *seq.*
 foretells the future to Faran-
 gís, ii, 310 *seq.*
 charges and turns loose
 Biházad, ii, 312
 attacked and taken by
 Afrásiyáb, ii, 314
 execution of, ii, 320
 referred to, iv, 268
 Blood of (plant), ii, 321
 birth-mark of, iii, 49
 mail of, iii, 58, 60, 61, 69, 81,
 iv, 40 *seq.*, 51
 murderer of=Afrásiyáb, iv,
 198
 garth of=Siyáwushgírd, iv,
 238
 goods of, viii, 148, 151
 Siyáwush, Iránian chief, 172;
 viii, 128, 163, 187, 233
 son of=Bahrám, viii, 247
 Siyáwush, wild duck, ii, 104
note
 Siyáwushgírd, city built by Siyá-
 wush, 145, 146, 153; ii,
 301, 314, 373; iv, 250,
 252
 building and description of,
 ii, 285 *seq.*
 becomes the home of Kai
 Khusrau, ii, 333
 referred to, iv, 238
- Skirts, binding together of, in
 battle, iv, 85 and *note*, 177
 and *note*, 209
 Slavs, viii, 191
 Smerdis, the false, v, 11; vi, 207
 Snakes=Arabs, ix, 91
 Snowstorm, iii, 108
 fránian host distressed by,
 iii, 71, 128; v, 137; vi, 156
 paladins of Kai Khusrau
 lost in, iv, 308 *seq.*
 Sohrab and Rustam, Matthew
 Arnold's, ii, 118
 Sol, planet, viii, 395
 Soma. *See* Homa.
 Son of Firdausí, death of, viii,
 190
 Song, of a dív, ii, 31
 of Rustam, ii, 51
 of Asfandiyár, v, 129
 of the daughter of Barzín,
 vii, 52
 of the daughter of Máhiyái,
 vii, 60, 61, 66
 Sophia, Empress, her treatment
 of Narses, viii, 76
 Sorcerer, a Jewish, brings about
 the death of Núshírwán's
 minister, Mahbúd, vii, 320
seq.
 Sorceress, Rustam and a, 143, ii,
 50 *seq.*
 Súdába and a, 144, ii, 214
seq.
 Asfandiyár and a, 156, v, 128
seq.
 Sóshyans, the Zoroastrian Mes-
 siah, i, 131
 Souterrain, ii, 137 iv, 212
 Spain (Andalús), vi, 66
 Spand-dát (Spento-dáta, Asfan-
 diyár), v, 24 *seq.*
 Span-dát-náma (Asfandiyár—
 náma), v, 26, 27
 Speaking Tree, the, 160. *See*
 Tree.
 Speech, modes of, viii, 30
 Spendyád, mountain. *See*
 Spento-dáta.
 Spento-dáta (Spand-dát, As-
 fandiyár *q.v.*), v, 12

Spentó-dáta (Spendyad, Sapad, Sipand *q.v.*), mountain north-west of Nishápúr, ii, 118; v, 30, 116, 117
 Sphínés. *See* Calanus.
 Spica, star, i, 245, 271; viii, 379
 Spitama, clan name of Zarduhsh (Zoroaster), i, 236; iv, 15
 Spityura, brother of Yima (Jamsíd), i, 130
 Spring, a, 143
 of Sav, *q.v.*, 163
 Sróvbar, mythical serpent, i, 172
 Stages, the Seven, 156. *See* Asfandiyár.
 Stateira. *See* Barsine.
 Steed, piece in chess. *See* Horse.
 Steeds, iron, Sikandar's, 159, vi, 115
 filled with naphtha, vi, 115
 Fúr's elephants and troops routed by, vi, 116
 Stone, the Black. *See* Black.
 Strabo, Greek geographer (born c. 63 B.C.), vi, 68, 81
 Strength, handgrip as test of.
 See Handgrip.
 Subuktigin, father of Sultán Mahmúd, account of, i, 20
 title of, i, 21
 referred to by, i, 100, 114
 Súdába, daughter of the king of Hámávarán and wife of Kai Káús, 143-146, ii, 3, 79, 188, 189, 200, *seq.* 225, 249, 257, 335, 339
 description of, ii, 86
 marries Kai Káús, ii, 88
 imprisoned with Kai Káús by her father, ii, 91
 released by Rustam, ii, 97
 temptation of Siyáwush by, ii, 200 *seq.*
 slain by Rustam, ii, 340
 referred to, v, 174
 Súfarai (Sarkhán, Sukhrá, Seoses?), 166, vii, 170
 and *note*, 171, 173 *seq.*; viii, 72, 75, 168, 285
 appointed minister to the regent Balásh, vii, 164

Súfarai, glorification of, in Iránian tradition, vii, 170
 account of, vii, 173, 184, 185
 resolves to avenge Pírúz, vii, 173
 writes to Balásh, vii, 173
 marches on Marv, vii, 174
 correspondence of, with Khúshnawáz, vii, 174
 defeats Khúshnawáz, vii, 177
 gives the spoil to the troops, vii, 177
 Khúshnawáz sues for peace to, vii, 178
 consults his troops, vii, 178
 resolves to make peace, vii, 179
 replies to Khúshnawáz, vii, 179
 returns to Irán in triumph, vii, 180
 welcomed by Balásh and the chiefs, vii, 181
 greatness of, vii, 181, 190
 dethrones Balásh and makes Kubád Sháh, vii, 182
 proverb concerning, vii, 185
 identical with Rizmihr, vii, 185
 fall of, vii, 190 *seq.*
 Kubád's letter to, vii, 193
 arrest of, vii, 193
 property of, confiscated, vii, 194
 conveyed to Sháh Kubád, vii, 194
 executed, vii, 195
 son of, (Rizmihr), vii, 196
 Súfís, vi, 59 and *note*
 Sughd (Sughdiana, Samarkand), district and city in Turkistán between the Oxus and Jaxartes, i, 19; ii, 230, 232, 237, 241, 249, 358; iii, 244; iv, 65, 188, 189, 255; vii, 331, 337, 358, 359
 Sughdiana, vi, 72. *See* Sughd.

- Suhráb, son of Rustam and Tahmína daughter of the king of Samangán, 144, ii, 4, 25; iv, 296; v, 204; vi, 325
- Story of, 144. ii, 118 *seq.*
Note on, ii, 118
purely episodic, ii, 118
Sir John Malcolm's version of, ii, 118
Matthew Arnold's version of, ii, 118
Prelude to, ii, 119
lament of, for the loss of Gurdáfríd, ii, 119, *note*
questions his mother as to his father, ii, 126
chargee of, sired by Rakhsh, ii, 128
- Afrásiyáb's plot against, ii, 129
gifts to, ii, 130
invades Irán, ii, 130
takes Hajír prisoner, ii, 131
beguiled by Gurdáfríd, ii, 133
described by Gazhdaham, ii, 136
sees from White Castle the Iránian host advancing, ii, 148
seen while feasting by Rustam, ii, 150
hears of the death of Zhanda Razm, ii, 151
misled by Hajír, ii, 152 *seq.*
overthrows the camp-en closure of Káús, ii, 160
challenged by Rustam, ii, 161
- Rustam described by, ii, 154, 169
advances of, to Rustam, ii, 169
spares Rustam's life, ii, 170
again encounters Rustam, ii, 172
makes himself known to Rustam, ii, 173
last requests of, to Rustam, ii, 175
mourning for, ii, 182 *seq.*
- Súkhrá. *See* Súfarai.
- Súkhta, treasure, viii, 406 and *note*
- Sultán. *See* Maḥmúd.
- Sunai, viii, 195
- Sun, on the Nature of the, 139, i, 105
one of the seven planets, i, 72
in astrology, i, 188, 310
and *note*
total eclipse of, vii, 159
- Sunday, viii, 378, 380
- Sunnites, orthodox Muhamma-dans, i, 13
origin of, i, 13
- Súr, city near Ispahán, 176, iv, 146, 180; ix, 74, 89, 95, 97, 100, 116, 118
- Sura. *See* Shúráb.
- Surkha, son of Afrásiyáb, 146, i, 92; ii, 344 *seq.*
taken prisoner by Fará-marz, ii, 345
death of, ii, 347
- Súrsán (Zíb-i-Khusrau, Rúmiya *q.v.*) city built by Núshfí-wán, 168, vii, 317, 327, 328
- Surúsh, angel, the messenger of Urmuzd, 153, 172, i, 51, 175, 182; ii, 288, 280, 364, 408; iii, 277; iv, 139, 203, 265, 285, 307; v, 170, 253; vi, 199 *note*, 372; vii, 38; viii, 173
warns Gaiúmart against the Black Dív, i, 119
bids Gaiúmart avenge Siyá-mak, i, 120
visits and instructs Farídún, i, 159
counsels Farídún about Zah-hák, i, 169
appears to Gúdarz in a dream, ii, 363
referred to, iv, 273
informs Kai Khuṣráu that his prayer is granted, iv, 281

Surúsh, angel, bids Kai Khusrau appoint Luhírásp as his successor, iv, 281
 may be assumed to have accompanied Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 139, 303, 308
 saves Khusrau Parwiz from Bahrám Chúbina, viii, 189, 299
 Surúsh, day, i, 88; vi, 411
 Surúsh, astrologer, vi, 372
 takes Bahrám Gúr's horoscope, vi, 376
 Súsanak, a miller's daughter, vii, 32 and *note*
 taken to wife by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 33
 Susiana (Khúzistán *q.v.*), vi, 295, 321; vii, 184
 Sviatoi, island lying off western shore of the Caspian, i, 58
note
 Swat, river in Northern India, vi, 65
 Swyamvara, Indian form of marriage, iv, 316
 Syávarshána (Siyáwush *q.v.*), ii, 189; iv, 137
 Syria (Shám), country, ii, 80; vi, 30; viii, 193
 raided by Persians, viii, 41
 Syriac, version of the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 14, 16, 18, 30, 31 *seq.*, 61, 63, 65, 66, 68, 71, 72, 74, 78 *seq.*
 Christian Legend of Alexander, vi, 14, 15, 74, 78, 84
 quoted, vi, 15
 metrical version of, vi, 15, 78, 84
 Syrian, ix, 66

T

TABÁK, Iránian chief, 161, vi, 202, 225
 suspected by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 225

Tabák, justifies himself, vi 226
 Ardshír Pápakán and, defeat Bahman, vi, 226
 buries Ardawán, vi, 229
 advises Ardshír Pápakán to marry the daughter of Ardawán, vi, 229
 Tabarí, Arabic historian (A.D. 838-923), iii, 108; vi, 14
note, 16, 19, 30, 198, 200,
 291 *note*, 310, 313, 315,
 321, 326; vii, 3 *seq.*, 156,
 159, 160, 170, 171, 185
 186, 217; viii, 73, 75 *seq.*,
 188; ix, 4, 56, 61, 64,
 69
 account of death of Rustam by, v, 261
 etymology of Dáráb, v,
 297 *note*
 Sásániens, vi, 14 *note*
 Alexander's battles with Darius, vi, 30
 Yájúj and Májúj, vi, 78
 rise of Sásánián dynasty, vi, 198
 Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 198, 203
 genealogies of Pápak, vi,
 200
 Worm, vi, 205, 206
 Haftwád, vi, 205, 206
 length of Ardshír Pápakán's reign, vi, 254
 Ardawán's daughter, vi,
 255
 Shápúr, son of Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 255, 257
 death of Shápúr, son of Shápúr, vi, 365
 Bahrám, son of Shápúr, vi, 368
 Yazdagird, son of Shápúr, vi, 371 *seq.*
 Kubád and Núshírván's reform of taxation, vii,
 183 *note*, 215
 Turks, vii, 317
 Persian, vii, 5; viii, 42, 73
seq., 187 *seq.*; ix, 4, 5, 43,
 70

- Tabarí, Persian, story from, concerning Kubád, vii, 183
note
 Arabic, viii, 42, 73, 187, 190
 195; ix, 4, 5, 7, 43, 50
- Tabaristán (Mázandarán, *q.v.*), i, 39, 40; ix, 74
 Firðausí's stay in, i, 39
 chief of, i, 39, 40
 patron of Firðausí, i, 39
- Table of Contents, General, ix, 139
- Tables, Genealogical. *See* Genealogical.
- Tacitus, Roman historian (A.D. 55-120), iii, 10 and *note*, 15; vi, 73
- Tahmásپ, father of Zav, i, 90, 369, 370; ii, 11; iv, 283
- Tahmína, daughter of the king of Samangán and mother of Suhráb, 144; ii, 4, 118
 precautions of, for her son's safety, ii, 127, 140, 149
 mourning of, for Suhráb, ii, 184 *seq.*
 death of, ii, 186
- Tahmúras, Sháh, 140, i, 42, 90, 91, 214; ii, 168; iii, 293; iv, 133; vii, 9 and *note*, 273; viii, 277, 332, 376; ix, 25
 Reign of, 140, i, 125 *seq.*
 Note on, i, 125
- Binder of the Dív (Áhri-man), i, 125, 127, 214
 Áhri-man and, legend of, i, 125
 culture hero, i, 125, 126
 dívs rebel against, i, 127
 conquers and enslaves the dívs, i, 127
 taught writing by the dívs, i, 127
 dies, i, 128
 Firðausí's reflections on, i, 128
 horn of, iii, 335
- Tainúsh (Chaiogos, Kerátór, Kanír), son of Kaidáfa, 159; vi, 66, 67, 134 *seq.*
- Kaidáfa warns Sikandar against, vi, 133
- Tainúsh, Fúr's son in law, vi, 133
 insults Sikandar, vi, 134
 Kaidáfa chides, vi, 135
 Kaidáfa and Sikandar consult about, vi, 135
 makes a covenant with Sikandar, vi, 136
 accompanies Sikandar on his return, vi, 141
 Sikandar discovers himself to, vi, 142
 asks grace of Sikandar, vi, 142
 pardoned by Sikandar, vi, 142
 entertained at a banquet, presented with gifts, and dismissed, by Sikandar, vi, 143
- Tainúsh (Theodosius), 163, vi, 372, 389, 404
 goes to Yazdagird as ambassador, vi, 389
 asked by Bahrám Gúr to intercede with Yazdagird for him, vi, 389
 obtains Bahrám Gúr's release, vi, 390, 404
- Táír (Daízan, *q.v.*), Arab chief, 162; vi, 3, 322, 324, 330 *seq.*
- Taisafún (Ctesiphon, *q.v.*), 168, 174; vi, 397; vii, 188, 194, 361, 363; viii, 53, 90, 109 *note*, 118, 173, 175, 180, 182, 229, 241; ix, 9, 10, 90
- Ardshír Pápakán goes to, vi, 245
- Shápur's bridge at, vi, 321, 329
 sacked by Táír, vi, 330
 Shápur sends spies to, vi, 346
 Cæsar defeated and taken prisoner by Shápur at, vi, 347
- Núshírwán returns to, viii, 53
- Bahrám Chubína marches from province of, viii, 106

Taisafún, Khusrau Parwíz imprisoned at viii, 421; ix, 9
Bárbad visits Khusrau Parwíz at, ix, 29

Táj, viii, 71

Tákdlís, Throne of, 174, viii, 391
account of, viii, 391
added to by Jámásp, viii, 392

Takht (*or* Ták)-i-Bústán, place some four miles north-east of Kirmánszáh in the Persian province of Ardešan and famous for its Sásánian bas-reliefs, vi, 257; viii, 192
inscription at, vi, 257

Takht-i-Khusrau. *See* Madá'in.

Takht-i-Sulaimán (Shíz, *q.v.*), viii, 189

Talhand, Indian prince, 169, vii, 394, 396 *seq.*
Story of Gav and, 169, vii, 394, *seq.*
mother of. *See* Gav.
birth of, vii, 396
tutor of, vii, 397, 398, 401, 402, 408, 410, 414
rivalry between Gav and, vii, 397 *seq.*
war between Gav and, vii, 404 *seq.*
rejects Gav's offer of accommodation, vii, 406, 409
death of, foretold, vii, 408, 413, 418
defeated by Gav, vii, 412

Tálíkán, city and stronghold east of Marv, ii, 228; iv, 65, 255
ceded by Píráz to the Haitálians, vii, 156, 160
importance of, vii, 156

Tálímán, Iánian hero, i, 211, 217
252
meets Kai Khusrau in Sughd, vi, 255

Talisman, Cæsar's, 172
described, viii, 271, 275
deceives Persian envoys, viii, 272
mastered by Kharrád, viii, 274

Tamarisk, plant, i, 4; v, 240, 243, 246, 247, 256
branch of, fatal to Asfandiyár, v, 239 and *note*

Tammísha (Kús), town in Eastern Mázandarán, formerly a seat of Farídún's, between Sáriyah and Astarábád, i, 177, 216, 230

Tamúz, viii, 77 *note*

Tanais, river, iv, 315 and *note*

Tarak, river (the Atrak, the boundary between Gur-gán and Dahistán, or the Turk flowing into the Jaxartes west of Táshkand?), vii, 164, 165, 359

Taráz, city now in ruins, north-east of Táshkand near the present town of Aulich-Ata, i, 257, 266; v, 157; vi, 268; viii, 370; ix, 41
Cypress of=Rúdába, i, 269
Idols of, ii, 123, 206; iii, 248; iv, 218; viii, 370

Tartary, iv, 156

Taurus, constellation, iii, 168; iv, 177; vi, 151; vii, 282

Tausar, high priest under Ardshír Pápakán, i, 62
letter of, i, 63

Tawába, Iánian hero, iii, 25

Tawurg, Túrárian hero, iv, 188
sent on an expedition by Afrásiyáb, iv, 188
defeated by Rustam, iv, 193

Taxation, 167, vii, 224
Firdausi's exemption from, i, 35, 39; ix, 121
reform of, by Kubád, vii, 183
note, 215, 225
Núshfrwán, vii, 215, 225
seq.

Taxila, Indian city, vi, 63
situation of, vi, 62

- Tazháv, an Iránian deserter to, and son-in-law of, Afrásiyáb, 148; iii, 27, 28
 sends Kabúda to spy out the Iránian host, iii, 73
 paileys with Gív, iii, 75
 defeated, iii, 77
 flees with Ispanwí, iii, 77
 pursued by Bízhan, iii, 77
 escapes to Afrásiyáb, iii, 78
 attacks Bahrám, iii, 100
 taken prisoner by Gív, iii, 102
 Temperaments, the four, vii, 381
 symbolised in the game of nard, vii, 381
 Tennyson, quoted, v, 281
 Tharthar, river in northern Mesopotamia, vi, 322
 Theodore, brother of Heraclius, viii, 194
 Theodosiopolis, city in Armenia, vii, 187
 Theodosius II. (Tainúsh, *q.v.*), Eastern Roman Emperor (A.D. 401-450), vi, 372; vii, 187
 Theodosius (Niyátús, *q.v.*), viii, 189
 Theophanes, Greek Chronicler, account of last days of Khusrau Parwíz by, ix, 6
 Thermodon, river on the southern shores of the Euxine, vi, 72
 Thornbrake town, the world, i, 310
 Thraétaona, i, 171 *seq.*; ii, 81
 Thrita, i, 171 *seq.*
 Tiber, river, v, 294
 Tiberius II., Eastern Roman Emperor, vii, 212; viii, 42
 Tigris (Arwand), river, vi, 294
 322; viii, 193, 194; ix, 67
 small, the, vi, 199 and *note*
 lower, vi, 291 *note*
 bridge over, vi, 321
 Tíhrán, city, ii, 28; iii, 109; v, 14, 18
 edition of Sháhnáma, i, 76
 Tír, genius, iii, 287, 328
 month and day, i, 88, viii, 394
 Tíri, eunuch of Gúzihr, vi, 198
 Tirmid, city and fortress north of the Oxus (Jíhún) where the route from Balkh to Samarkand crosses that river, ii, 229, 258; iv, 65; vii, 156, 157, 331
 Tírudih, village in the neighbourhood of Istakhr (Persepolis), and the birth-place of Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 198
 Tishtar, Sirius, i, 235
 Tobit, Book of, iii, 272
 Toll-house and ford of Zark, ix, 100 and *note*, 116
 Tollman, Gív and the, 146; ii, 390
 Gushtásp and the, iv, 324, 332 and *note*, 334 *seq.*, 344 *seq.*, 351
 Trade-routes, ancient, i, 11, 57
 Traitana, i, 7, 8, 171 *seq.*
 Trajan, Roman Emperor (A.D. 98-117), vi, 322
 siege of Hatra by, vi, 322
 Translation, the principles adopted in the present, i, 76 *seq.*
 Translators of the Sháhnáma, list of previous, i, 87
 Treasure, of Jamshíd, 164, vii, 36
 Kai Khisrau, 160, iv, 295; vi, 178
 Sikandar, vi, 110 and *note*
 Khusrau Parwíz, viii, 406
 Tree, the Speaking, 160, vi, 79
 described, vi, 167 *seq.*
 Sikandar visits, vi, 167, *seq.*
 warns Sikandar of his death, vi, 168, 169
 Triad of evil, Zoroastrian, i, 59 and *note*
 Tribal, or Part, Kings, the, 160, vi, 180, 203, 204, 225, 252, 253
 origin of, vi, 179, 181, 210
 character of their rule, vi, 197, 198
 number of, vi, 198

- Tribal, or Part Kings, Ardashán,
the chief of, vi, 201
- Firdausí on, vi, 210
- Tribute, Rúm's to Irán, vi, 24;
vii, 214, 215, 248, 262, 333,
338, 362; viii, 52, 53
- Trita, i, 7, 8, 171 *seq.*
- Tshatrang-Námak, Pahlaví text,
vii, 380, 381
- Tughral, a species of falcon, vii,
49
described, vii, 48
- Bahrám Gúr's, vii, 48 *seq.*
- Tukhár, Farúd's counsellor, i 47,
iii, 43 *seq.*
tells Farúd the blazons of
the Iránian chiefs, iii, 44
counsels Farúd, iii, 47, 52 *seq.*
- Tukhár, king of Dahistán, iv, 148
commands with Fariburz
the troops from Kháwar,
iv, 148
- slays a scout from Makrán,
iv, 242 .
- Tukhár, Iránian chief, viii, 228
takes letter to Cæsar, viii,
263
- Tukhár, Iránian general, con-
spires against Khusráu
Parwiz, viii, 414
releases Shírwí, viii, 415
refuses to help Píruz against
Guráz, ix, 48
- Tukhára, Iránian warrior, viii,
296
son of, viii, 314
- Túmaspa (Tahmásپ, *q.v.*), i, 369
- Túr, second son of Faridún and
ruler of Túrán, 140, 141,
i, 42, 90 *seq.*, 335, 337,
342, 344, 362; ii, 8, 17, 19,
99, 237, 262, 297, 302, 303,
318, 327, 363, 390; iii,
7, 30, 37, 115, 197, 245,
246; iv, 11, 34, 66, 69, 70,
78, 166, 167, 188, 201, 203,
206, 269, 272, 290; v, 42,
206, 261, 284; vi, 353;
vii, 73; viii, 266, 300, 376
note, 378; ix, 103
racial significance of, i, 54
- Túr, etymology of, i, 174
naming of, i, 187
horoscope of, i, 188
made ruler over the Turk-
mans and Chín, i, 189
plots with Salm, i, 190
Salm and, demand the abdi-
cation of Iraj, i, 191
Iraj visits, i, 198
reception of Iraj by, i,
198, *seq.*
slay Iraj, i, 201
send Iraj's head to Farí-
dún, i, 202
heir of Minúchihr, i, 208
send an embassy to Farí-
dún, i, 208
receive Faridún's reply,
i, 213 *seq.*
prepare for war, i, 215
parley of, with Kubád, i, 217
Salm and, worsted by Minú-
chihr, i, 220
plan a night-surprise, i,
220
worsted, i, 221
slain by Minúchihr, i, 221
head of, sent to Faridún, i,
222
- Fire-temple at Bukhárá
built by, iv, 255
- daughter of, iv, 304
=Túráن, iv, 51, 164
chief of=Húmán, iv, 51
prince of=Shída, iv, 164
- Túrán (Turkistán), the legendary
patrimony of Túr, *q.v.* and
a general name for the
non-Iránian regions north
of the Oxus (Jihún), 142,
146, 148, 152, 153, 165-
167; i, 189, 229, 351, 371,
ii, 9, 18, 25, 79, 82, 101,
112 and *passim*; iii, 8, 11,
15, 25, 29 and *passim*;
iv, 10, 15, 17, 19, 20, and
passim; v, 12, 20 *seq.*, 25,
32, 41, 43, 45, 53, 61, and
passim; vi, 43, 182, 398;
vii, 43, 92, 136, 156, 178;
viii, 118, 123, 130, 242,

- Túrán—*cont.*
- 329, 331, 349, 350, 376,
405, 407; ix, ii, 89, 99
 - monarch of Chín and = Afrá-
siyáb, ii, 99
 - host of, ii, 110
 - lord of = Mahmúd, iv, 142
- Túrániāns (Tuīkmans), 143, 148,
149, 151-153, 155, 165;
i, 9, 10, 54; ii, 11, 81, 265;
iii, 30, 115, 320, 322; iv,
7, 81, 129, 223, 227; v,
13, 20, 116; vii, 90; viii,
123, 320
- historical relations of, with
the Frániāns, i, 16
- Turk, Turks, i, 10, 20; viii, 95,
103, 121, 135, 136, 138
seq., 142, 164, 169, 170,
189, 316, 320, 349, 352;
ix, 70, 96 *seq.*, 105, 114,
117, 120
- confused with the Haitá-
lians, vii, 4
 - historical appearance of, vii,
317
- Tabarí on, vii, 317
- defeat the Haitálians, vii,
332
 - described, vii, 332
- War of, with Persians, viii,
72
- prophesied, viii, 98
 - = Sáwa, viii, 98
- defeated, viii, 126
- find Sáwa's corpse, viii, 127
 - sorcerer, sends ill dream to
Bahrám Chúbina, viii,
121, 128
 - put to death, viii, 129
 - heads of chiefs of, sent to
Hurmuzd, viii, 130
 - retreat to Túrán, viii, 131
 - three, the, viii, 187, 204
 - one of, attacks Khusrau
Parwíz, viii, 220
 - reproved by Bahrám
Chúbina, viii, 221
 - lead night-attack on Khus-
rau Parwíz, viii, 227
 - = Makátúra, viii, 319
- Turk, Turks = Kulún, viii, 345
defeated by Yalán-sína, viii,
353
- Turkhán, Túrániān hero, v, 151
sent with troops to recon-
noitie outside the Brazen
Hold, v, 151
- Turkish, ix, 87
- Turkistán (Túrán), 147, ii, 19;
iii, 109, 228; iv, 233; v,
55; vi, 179, 278, 280, 397;
vii, 84, 92, 118, 334, 365;
viii, 324, 336, 363, 376,
377, 407
- Turkman, Turkmans (Túrániāns), 148, 155, i, 20, 189,
263, 343, 352, 357; ii,
12, 14, 15, 92, 100 and
passim; iii, 30, 63, 81, 93,
and *passim*; iv, 10, 13,
15, 19, 20, 22, 29 and
passim; v, 22, 25, 36, 39,
40, 44, 47, 51, 52, 61, 72,
90 *seq.*, 98 *seq.*, 104 *seq.*,
108, 110, 113, 114, 116,
135, 152, 157, 158, 171,
173, 206, 254; vii, 48, 88,
92, 97, 177, 179, 239, 344,
364; viii, 377; ix, 25, 76,
94
- slave-boy of Zál meets the
damsels of Rúdába, i, 263
seq.
 - make peace with Zav, i, 371
 - army of, surrenders to As-
fandiyár, v, 72, 113
 - monarch of = Arjásپ, v, 74
 - led by Kuhram, storm
Balkh, burn the Fire-
temple, and slay Zar-
duhsh and the priests, v,
92, 93
 - take Gushtásp's daughters
captive, v, 93
 - kingdom of, offered by
Asfandiyár to Gurgsár in
return for faithful service,
v, 120
 - ordered by Arjásپ to march
out from the Brazen Hold
in force to attack the in-

- Turkman, Turkmans—*cont.*
 vaders under Bishútán, v, 152
 hear the cries of the Iránian watch in the Brazen Hold, v, 155
 refused quarter by Asfandi-yár, v, 158
 language, vi, 147
 defeated by Bahrám Gúí, vii, 90, 91
 sue for peace, vii, 91
 war of Píruz with, vii, 164 *seq.*
 inroads of, through the Caucasus, vii, 238
 make submission to Núshírwán, vii, 360
 =Turk, viii, 87, 89, 94, 217
 king=Afrásiyáb, ix, 25
 Tús, son of Naudar, Iránian hero, 146-149, 154, 176; i, 90 353, 370; ii, 33, 35, 38, 58, 62, 70, 73, 85, 90, 91, 127, 138, 142, 148, 177, 188, 193, 197, 199, 226, 257, 316, 319, 335, 338, 340, 349, 353 *seq.*, 371, 383, 394; iii, 11, 18, 19, 24, 25, 37 *seq.*, 45 *seq.*, 60, 62, 64, 66 *seq.*, 76, 78, 80, 82 *seq.*, 108, 111 *seq.*, 132 *seq.*, 136 *seq.*, 145, 149 *seq.*, 154, 155, 159, 161, 163, 166, 167, 169, 170, 172, 174, 177 *seq.*, 182, 183, 187, 206, 211, 213 *seq.*, 225, 228, 230, 232, 234, 235, 238, 246, 248, 253, 254, 255, 257, 259, 268, 273, 277, 289, 294, 307, 322, 327, 329; iv, 13, 15, 62, 79, 91, 157, 180, 191, 224, 226, 227, 242, 292, 296, 306 *seq.*; v, 57, 116, 207, 208; viii, 168
 Gustaham and, sent by Naudar to conduct the Iránian women to Alburz, i, 351
 Tús, Gustaham and, hear of Naudar's death, i, 364 passed over in the succession i, 369, 370
 character of, i, 369 appointed captain of the host, ii, 78 taken prisoner in Hámávarán, ii, 90 released by Rustam, ii, 97 goes in search of Kai Káús, ii, 104 engaged in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 *seq.* commanded by Kai Káús to hang Rustam and Gív, ii, 143 encampment of, described, ii, 153 summons Rustam to fight Suhráb and helps to saddle Rakhsh, ii, 160 quarrels with Gív over the future mother of Siyáwush, ii, 194 supersedes Siyáwush, ii, 246 *seq.* leads the host home, ii, 258 intercedes for Surkha, ii, 347 worsted in fight by Afrásiyáb, ii, 353 appointed ruler of Chách, ii, 358 returns to Irán, ii, 362 dispute of, with Gúdarz over Kai Khusrau, ii, 400 *seq.* advocates the claims of Faríburz, ii, 401 asks pardon of Khusrau, ii, 410 hostility of, to Farúd, iii, 13, 51, 62 marches on Kalát, iii, 40 sends chiefs to attack Farúd, iii, 47 *seq.* Bahrám's remonstrance with, iii, 51 horse of, slain by Farúd, iii, 56

- Tús, resolves to attack Kalát, iii, 62
 remorse of, for the death of Farúd, iii, 67
 builds a charnel for Farúd, Rívníz, and Zarásp, iii, 68
 marches from Kalát, iii, 68
 defeats Tazháv, iii, 77
 occupies Giravgard, iii, 78
 defeated by the Turkmans, iii, 82
 deprived of his command, iii, 83
 Kai Khusrau's wrath with, iii, 84, 111, 112
 superseded, iii, 86
 returns to Kai Khusrau, iii, 86
 disgraced, iii, 86
 imprisoned, iii, 87
 pardoned, iii, 114
 challenges Píráن to battle, iii, 117
 joins battle with Píráن, iii, 118, 126
 parleys with Húmán, iii, 121
 prays to be delivered from the snowstorm, iii, 128
 retreats to Mount Hamáwan, iii, 132
 makes a night-attack upon Píráن, iii, 139
 harangues the host, iii, 141
 hears of the approach of succours, iii, 159
 takes counsel with the host, iii, 167
 arrays the host, iii, 169
 chiefs and, take counsel with Rustam, iii, 172
 Rustam's wrath with, iii, 234
 collects the spoil, iii, 235
 worsted by Púládwand, iii, 257
 leads a host to Khárazm, iv, 61
 son of = Zarásp, iv, 135
 made overseer of the host, iv, 149
- Tús, posted on Khusrau's right, iv, 146
 takes part in the siege of Gang-bihisht, iv, 199
 ordered to prepare for a night-attack from Afrásiyáb, iv, 224
 Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275
 Gúdarz, and other nobles take counsel, iv, 277
 audience of, with Kai Khusrau, iv, 283 *seq.*
 holds with other chiefs, at the bidding of Kai Khusrau, an assembly on the plain, iv, 291 *seq.*
 Kai Khusrau's gifts to, iv, 295, 300
 asks for further recognition from Kai Khusrau, iv, 299
 retains the charge of Káwa's flag and receives Khurásán, iv, 300
 sets out with Kai Khusrau on his pilgrimage, iv, 306
 refuses to turn back when bidden by Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
 Kai Khusrau farewells and wains, and his comrades, iv, 308
 disappears and is sought in vain by, and his comrades, iv, 308
 end of, iv, 309
- Tús, city, now in ruins, north of Mashad in Khurásán, i, 39; v, 28; vi, 393; ix, 90, 95
 birthplace of Firdausí, i, 38, 41, 45
 governor of, i, 39
 prince of, i, 100, 114
 legendary origin of, iii, 14
 legend concerning Firdausí's burial at, iii, 191

Tús, city, treasure of Kai Káüs called "The Bride" stored at, iv, 295
 Sám and the dragon of, v, 202
 local legend of, vi, 372, 391 *seq.*
 governor of, ix, 92
 Tuwurg, Túriánian hero, ii, 253
 Tuwurg, brother of Khán, 173, viii, 364
 reports flight of Gurdya, viii, 351
 sent in pursuit, viii, 351
 parleys with Gurdya, viii, 352
 Twelve Rukhs (Champions), Battle of the. *See* Rukhs.
 Signs (Zodiac), vii, 408
 Tyre, city, vi, 30
 siege of, vi, 30

U

Úlád, a dív, 143, ii, 28, 59, 61; iv, 296 *note*; v, 204 *note*
 Rustam and, ii, 52 *seq.*
 made king of Mázandarán, ii, 76
 'Umar, Khalifa (A.D. 634-643), i, 11 *seq.*, 67; ix, 66 *seq.*, 72, 76, 121
 founds Basra, ix, 69
 sends Hásim in pursuit of Yazdagird, ix, 68
 Nu'mán to fight Yazdagird, ix, 68
 Sa'ad to invade Frán, ix, 72
 'Umar Khayyám, Persian poet and scientist (died A.D. 1123), v, 30
 Ummayyads, Muhammadan dynasty, i, 12, 13
 Uné, daughter of Alexander the Great in the Pseudo-Callisthenes, vi, 77
 Ural Mountains, iii, 192

Urmuzd, the Good Principle, i, 5, 50, 116 *seq.*, 236, ii, 82, iii, 271, 286, 317, 327; iv, 139, 185; v, 15 *seq.*; vi, 55, 362, 372, 387; vii, 228, 406 and *note*; viii, 285; ix, 24
 Unity of, symbolised in the game of nard, vii, 381
 day, i, 88; iii, 323; vi, 302 and *note*, 306, 375
 Urmuzd, Ashkánián (Parthian) king, vi, 197, 210
 Urmuzd, son of Shápúr, Sháh (Hormisdas I), 161, 162, vi, 3, 257, 273, 280, 313, 327
 discovery of, by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 257, 271
 birth of, vi, 271
 counselled by Ardshír Pápakán, vi, 280
 Shápúr, vi, 299
 Reign of, 162, vi, 301 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 301
 title of, vi, 301
 story about, vi, 301
 Urmuzd, son of Narsí, Sháh (Hormisdas II), 162, vi, 3, 294, 295, 307, 315, 316, 325; vii, 359; viii, 41
 Reign of, vi, 318 *seq.*
 Note on, vi, 318
 sons of, vi, 318
 inaugural address of, vi, 318
 pregnant wife of, enthroned, vi, 320
 Urmuzd (Hormisdas), son of Urmuzd, Persian Prince, vi, 318, 325
 referred to (?), vi, 337
 Urmuzd Ardshír (Ahwáz), city in Khúzistán, vi, 290 and *note*
 Urmuzd, Iránián warrior, viii, 296
 Uroscopy, vi, 101, 107, 108
 Urumiah (Khanjast or Chijast), lake in Ázarbáiján, iv, 136; viii, 195
 Afrásiyáb escapes from Húm into, iv, 262 and *note*

Ustád, Iránian general, vii, 251
 commands Núshírván's
 right wing, vii, 251
 Ustád, Iránian warrior, viii, 296
 Ustukilá, Túránian hero, iv, 182
 fights with Kai Khusrav, iv,
 182
 'Utbí, Al, secretary to Sultán
 Mahmúd, i, 32
 'Uthmán, Khalífa, i, 12
 Utterakuri, a legendary people,
 vi, 74
 Uzava (Zav), Sháh, i, 369

V

VALE of heroes, vii, 6
 Valerian (Bazánúsh), Roman
 Emperor (A.D. 253-260),
 vi, 323 *seq.*
 defeat and capture of, by
 Shápúr son of Ardshír, vi,
 294, 295
 memorials of, vi, 295
 confused with Odenathus,
 Julian, and Jovian, vi,
 324 *seq.*
 death of, in captivity, vi,
 326
 Valkash (Vologeses I), Parthian
 (Ashkánian) king, i, 62, 63
 Vandaremaini (Andarímán),
 brother of Arjásپ, v, 13
 Varahran I (Bahrám son of
 Urmuzd), Sásánian king,
 vi, 307
 Varahran II (Bahrám son of
 Bahrám), Sásánian king,
 vi, 310
 Varahran III (Bahrám Bahrámi-
 yán), Sásánian king, vi,
 313, 368
 Varahran IV (Bahrám son of
 Shápúr), Sásánian king,
 vi, 313, 368
 Varahran V (Bahrám Gúr),
 Sásánian king, vii, 3
 Vardanes (Bahrám), Parthian
 (Ashkánian) king, iii, 9
seq., 109

Vardanes, wars of, with Gotarzes,
 iii, 10, 11
 assassination of, iii, 10, 11
 character of, iii, 15
 Varengana, the raven, i, 235, 236
 Vedas, i, 129, 144, 171, 234, 337,
 ii, 8, 11, 25
 Vega, star, vii, 245
 Vendídád, Nask, vii, 188
 reference to Mazdak in, vii,
 188
 Venus, planet, i, 72, 100, 194,
 276, 303, 322, 332, 339; ii,
 115, 275, 345; iii, 143,
 159, 254, 318, 332; v,
 159; vi, 98, 102, 171, 190,
 212, 224, 332; vii, 53,
 151, 263; viii, 152, 359,
 394, 395; ix, 26, 73
 Verethraglma, the raven, ii, 25
 Victory of Victories, The, ix, 69
 Vídráfsh (Bídirafsh), v, 24, 26
 Village-chief, 154
 Vineyards, taxes on, vii, 215, 225
 Virgo, constellation, iii, 24; viii,
 359; ix, 71
 Vishtásp (Vistaspa, Gushtásp,
q.v.), v, 24
 Vistáspa (Vishtásp, Gushtásp,
q.v.), iv, 316; v, 11
 Vistásp-sást, v, 11
 Vitrified fortifications, vi, 79, 165
 Vivanghat, i, 129
 Vohúman. *See* Vohu Manau.
 Vohu Manau (Vohúman, Bah-
 man), ameshaspenta, iii,
 271; v, 16, 17
 Volga, river of European Russia,
 falling into the Caspian,
 iv, 316
 Vologeses I (Valkash), Parthian
 (Ashkánian) king (A.D. 51
 -77), i, 62, 63
 Vologeses II, Parthian (Ashká-
 nian king), i, 19
 Vologeses (Balásh), king of Kir-
 mán, *temp.* Ardshír Pápa-
 kán, vi, 205
 Vologeses (Balásh), Sháh, vii, 170
 Vonones I, Parthian (Ashkánian)
 king (A.D. 8-12)

- Vouru-Kasha, sea, iv, 137
 Viitra, demon, ii, 25
 Indra and, vi, 203
 Vullers-Landauer edition of the
 Sháhnáma, i, 77; vi, 60
- W
- WAHR, region, iii, 177, 228, 235
 Wakkás, father of Sa'ad *q.v.*,
 176; ix, 72, 78, 82, 90
 Wálid, Khalífa, vi, 325
 Walnuts, taxes on, vii, 225
 War of the Religion, v, 19, 26, 29
 two campaigns of, v, 29
 Warázád, king of Sipanjáb, i 16,
 ii, 341 *seq.*, 346
 Warígh (Callinicus, Kálíníyús,
 q.v., Nicéphorium, Rakka)
 city, viii, 188, 253, 257,
 280
 Khusrau I Parwíz takes up his
 abode at, viii, 257
 Warriors, the Seven, Story of the
 Flight of, i 43, ii, 25, 82,
 107 *seq.*
 Warstoald=Bídád, iii, 245
 Wash, city, viii, 24 and *note*
 Water, scarcity of, i, 3
 —courses, underground, i, 3
 —horse, 163, vi, 373, 392
 referred to, vi, 373
 legend of Yazdagird and
 the, vi, 392
 —stealing demons, i, 7, 338
 of Life, 160, v, 30; vi, 159,
 160
 Wazír (minister), piece in chess,
 vii, 385, 423
 position of, vii, 388, 422
 move of, vii, 422
 West, Dr. E. W., referred to, v,
 11
 West, the, Salm's portion of the
 world, i, 189
 gateway of, viii, 369 and
 note
 Western sea, the, 160, vi, 158
 Whale, mistaken for an island,
 vi, 71, 147
- Whale, Sikandar's adventure
 with a, vi, 71, 147
 Wheeler, James Talboys, quoted,
 vi, 81
 Whip, Bahrám Gúr's, vii, 47, 54,
 63, 64
 object of reverence, vii, 47,
 54, 63
 White Castle (Mount Sipand,
 q.v.), stronghold north-
 west of Nishápúr, 144, i,
 369; ii, 118, 131, 138
 Malcolm's identification
 and description of, 1,
 236; v, 30
 besieged by Bármán, 1,
 354
 evacuated by Gazhdaham
 ii, 137
 Dív, i 43. *See* Dív.
 Elephant, i 41. *See* Elephant.
 Huns (Haitálians, *q.v.*), 1, 20
 Will, of Alexander the Great, vi,
 81
 provisions of, vi, 81, 181
 Kubád, son of Píráz, vii, 210
 Wine-drinking, forbidden by
 Bahrám Gúr, vii, 23
 again permitted, vii, 25
 Firðausí's love of. *See* Fir-
 dausí.
 Wísa, Túránián hero, uncle of
 Afrásiyáb, 142, i, 92, 337,
 342, 353, 361, 362; ii, 112
 354; iii, 79, 102, 105, 121,
 197, 202, 206; iv, 32, 39,
 50, 54, 55, 74, 84, 95, 99,
 103, 113, 115, 122
 pursues Káran, i, 355
 finds Bármán dead, i, 356
 defeated by Káran, i, 357
 returns to Afrásiyáb, i, 357
 sayings of, iv, 32
 Wisagírd, city in Túrán, 151, iv,
 19, 20, 65; vii, 157, 331.
 Wisdom, praise of, vii, 103
 Firðausí's, 139
 referred to, vii, 278
 —literature, Persian, vii, 278
 seq., viii, 3
 Mohl on, vii, 280

Wisdom, literature, Noldeke on, vii, 281
apportionment of, viii, 202
Witch, 143, 156. *See* Sorceress.
Wizard-land, vii, 120 and *note*
Wolf, 154, 156, 165, vii, 121 *seq.*
and *note*
slain by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 123
of Fáskún. *See* Fáskún.
Women, City of, 160 *See* Harúm.
Wonders, 160, iv, 245
the Four, of Kaid, 159. *See* Kaid.
World, on the making of the, 139
Worm, the, 161, vi, 195, 206, 238 *seq.*
Story of, 161; vi, 196, 203 *seq.*, 232 *seq.*
Mohl, Nöldeke, and Darmesteter on, vi, 203 *seq.*
cult of, vi, 235
Ardshír Pápakán's strata-
gem against, vi, 242
servants of, vi, 242 *seq.*
Writing, art of, taught by the
dívls to Tahmúras, i, 127

X

XERXES, Persian king (B.C. 485-
465), v, 282
Asfandiyyár and, v, 282
effigy of, falls, vi, 30

Y

YÁJÚJ and MÁJÚJ (Gog and
Magog, *q.v.*), 160, vi, 79,
163 *seq.*, 211 *note*
legend of, in the Kurán, vi,
78
Tabarí on, vi, 78
described, vi, 163
Ya'kúb bin Lais, Persian chieftain
and founder of the Saffári
dynasty, i, 67, 68
Ya'kúbi, Arabic historian (died
A.D. 891)

Yalán-sína (Mardánsháh), bro-
ther of Bahrám Chúbína,
viii, 74, 102, 122, 135, 138,
157, 163, 169, 204, 288,
291, 296 *seq.*, 303, 316,
356, 357; ix, 6
goes hunting with Bahrám
Chúbína, viii, 156
pursues and brings back
archscribe viii, 159
speech of, viii, 165, 170
worsted by Khusráu Parwíz,
viii, 229
commands the centre, viii,
289
Bahrám Chúbína makes his
mandatory, viii, 342
defeats the Turks, viii,
353
negotiates marriage between
Gurdya and Gustaham,
viii, 357
Yama. *See* Yima.
Yaman (Hámáyarán), south-
western Arabia, 140, 160,
162, i, 181 *seq.*, 266, 286;
ii, 80; iv, 146; v, 260;
vi, 73, 120, 121, 324, 331,
385, 386, 396, 401; vii,
262; viii, 98
king of =Sarv, 140, i, 178,
179, 182
Yaman, carnelians of, ii, 123; iii,
289
Canopus of, ii, 203; iii, 297;
vi, 382
onyx of, vi, 128
striped stuff of, vi, 175
monarch of, vi, 175; viii,
16
gives gifts to Sikandar,
vi, 175
=Munzir, vi, 378, 387,
390
Bahrám Gúr goes to, vi, 378,
390
conquered by Persians, viii,
24 *note*
curtains of, viii, 148, 151
Yánús (Julian), brother of Cæsar,
162, vi, 324, 326

Yánus, leads a host against Shá-púr, vi, 351
defeated, vi, 352

Yasht XXII, metrical para-phrase of, vii, 318

Yátkár-i-Zarífrán, Pahlaví text, v, 13, 24, 27 and *note*; vii, 380
compared with Dakíki's work, v, 24 *seq.*
resembles Kárnámak, vi, 195, 196

Yazates (Izads), the, iii, 286

Yazd, city in central Persia, vi, 368

Yazdagird, son of Shápúr, Sháh (Isdigerd I), 163, 164, vi, 3; vii, 4, 10, 109, 119, 171, 185, 359
referred to, vi, 369; vii, 74
Reign of, 163, vi, 371 *seq.*
Note on, vi, 371 *seq.*
parentage of, uncertain, vi, 371
lover of peace like Aknaton of Egypt, vi, 371
titles of, vi, 371, 372

Tabarí on, vi, 372, 373
coins of, vi, 373
evil administration of, vi, 374, 404
makes search for a governor for his son Bahrám Gúr, vi, 376 *seq.*

Nu'mán and Munzir visit, vi, 377
puts Bahrám Gúr in Munzir's charge, vi, 378
receives from Munzir a picture of Bahrám Gúr shooting, vi, 385

Bahrám Gúr returns to, vi, 386
gives presents to, and sends a letter by, Nu'mán to Munzir, vi, 387
disgraces Bahrám Gúr, vi, 389
sends Bahrám Gúr back to Munzir, vi, 390

Yazdagird, consults the astrologers, vi, 390
death of foretold, vi, 391
attacked by bleeding of the nose, vi, 390
death of, vi, 373, 393
Nöldeke on, vi, 373
corpse of embalmed and taken to Párs, vi, 393

Yazdagird, son of Bahrám Gúr (Isdigerd II), Sháh, 166, vi, 3; vii, 4, 152, 156, 160, 187
welcomes his father on his return from Hind, vii, 137
appointed by Bahrám Gúr to succeed him, vii, 150
Reign of, 166, vii, 153 *seq.*
Note on, vii, 153
a blank in Sháhnáma, vii, 153
historically important, vii, 153
wars of, vii, 153
fortifies passes in the Caucasus, vii, 153, 187
title of, vii, 153
sons of, vii, 153
appoints Hurmuz to succeed him, vii, 155
dies, vii, 155

Yazdagird (Isdigerd III), Sháh, 176, v, 294; vi, 3; viii, 55, 73; ix, 5, 61, 64 *seq.*, 68 *seq.*, 72, 81, 90, 101, 105, 106, 113, 115, 116, 122
Reign and Era of, 176, ix, 64
Note on, ix, 64
taken for safety to Istakhr, ix, 64
age of, at accession, ix, 65
difficult position of, ix, 65

Yazdagird, historical importance of reign of, ix, 65
flight of, from Ctesiphon, ix, 67
Hulwán, ix, 68
last attempt of, to recover his empire, ix, 68

Yazdagírd, concentrates his forces at Nahávand, ix, 68 defeated and a fugitive, ix, 69 death of, referred to, ix, 69 host returns to, after Kádísíya, ix, 85 hears of Rustam's death, ix, 85 quits Baghdád, ix, 88 makes for Marv, ix, 89 entrusted to Máhwí by Farrukhzád, ix, 95, 96 at Marv, ix, 97, 116 hears of the coming of the Turks, ix, 97 betrayed by Máhwí, ix, 98 defeated, ix, 98, 116 miller and, ix, 99 seq. described, ix, 99, 101 Máhwí bids miller slay, ix, 107, 116 slain, stripped and flung into stream, ix, 108, 109 and note corpse of, recovered, lamented over and entombed, ix, 109 seq.

Firdausí on, ix, 111

Yazdagírd, chief scribe, *temp. Núshírwán*, vii, 304, 307, 312, 333, 337, 339, 391 discourse of, vii, 305 questions Búzurjmihr, vii, 308

Yazdán, viii, 75

Yazdánbaklîsh (Áyín Gashasp *q.v.*), viii, 75, 76

Yazdín, viii, 195, 196

Year, New, festival at, i, 104

Yima (Yama, Jamshíd), i, 7, 130, 374 legend of, i, 129

Yokel, a, 164 entertains Bahrám Gúr, vii, 43 seq.

wife of, her converse with Bahrám Gúr, vii, 45 presage of, vii, 46 rewarded by Bahrám Gúr, vii, 48

Youths, two, bid Ardshír Pápákán not to tarry in his flight from Ardawán, vi, 201, 222 Youths, two¹, entertain and counsel Ardshír Pápákán in the matter of the Worm, vi, 207, 239 *seq.* help Ardshír Pápákán to slay the Worm, vi, 242, 244

Yudhishthíra, eldest of the five Pándavas, iv, 138 renunciation of the world, and pilgrimage to heaven of, compared with that of Kai Khusráu, iv, 138

Yúnán, vi, 95 and *note*, viii, 258 Faith of, vi, 95

Z

Zár, lesser, tributary of Tigris, viii, 189

Zábúl, Zábúlistán=Nímruz= Sístán,² 141, 142, 144, 156; i, 248, 252, 254, 264, 282, 324, 332, 357, 361, 364, 366, 367, 371, 375, 381; ii, 21, 28, 42, 61, 83, 92, 126, 138, 141, 142, 156, 168, 227, 228, 245, 260, 338, 362, 363; iii, 14, 134, 141, 145, 153, 165, 171, 174, 175, 186, 190, 199, 200, 202, 206 *seq.*, 217 246, 250, 269, 274, 321, 326, 342, 347, 354, 356; iv, 147, 279, 283, 296, 311; v, 85, 86, 167, 169 *seq.*, 173, 175 *seq.*, 181 *seq.*, 193, 194, 212, 215, 219, 223, 224, 235, 248, 251, 252, 255, 256, 258, 265, 266, 273, 275 *seq.*, 281, 283, 285 *seq.*; vi, 207; vii, 173, 174, 193; viii, 369; ix, 75 invaded by Shamásás and Khazarwán, i, 345, 358

¹ Not the same apparently as those above.

² See p. 333 *note*.

- Zábúl, vintage of, ii, 110
 occupied by the Turkmans, i, 19; iii, 14, 30
 Gushtísp goes to, v, 85
 Moon of=Rúdába, v, 190
 and *note*
 called "Babblestead" by Asfandiyár, v, 216
 Bahman's sojourn in, v, 252, 256
 pillaged by Bahman, v, 287
 Bahman quits, v, 290
 Zábúlí, a native of Zábúl, iii, 188, 201, 257, 326; v, 212
 a, made king of Kábúl, v, 277
 Zál Farrukh, suggests Bahrám Chúbína to Hurnuzd, viii, 99
 speech of, viii, 241
 Zádsham, king of Túrán and grandfather of Afrásiyáb, i, 92, 342 *seq.*, 376; iv, 149, 163, 166, 203
 offspring of =Afrásiyáb, iv, 178
 Zagros, mountain-range in western Frán, viii, 189
 Zahhák (Azhi Daháka), son of Mardás, Arab king and Sháh, 140, 141; i, 42, 90, 91; ii, 33, 81, 318; iii, 257; iv, 89, 206, 272, 274, 290; v, 12, 180, 203, 204, 284; vi, 15, 45, 172, 209, 240 and *note*; vii, 185, 199; viii, 218, 239, 241, 387, 391; ix, 25, 65, 103
 protagonist of idolatry and of the Semitic race, i, 54, 143, 226, 256
 one of the Zoroastrian triad of evil, i, 59 and *note*
 referred to by Moses of Chórene, i, 72, 144
 Story of, 140, i, 135 *seq.*
 tempted by Iblís, i, 136 *seq.*
 father of, 140
 murdered by, i, 137
 referred to, viii, 387
- Zahhák, becomes king of the Arabs, i, 137
 serpents grow out of the shoulders of, i, 139*
 Iblís' advice to, i, 139
 invades Frán, i, 139
 captures and slays Jamshíd, i, 140
 Reign of, 140, i, 141, *seq.*
 Note on, i, 141, *seq.*
 not destroyed, i, 143
 feast in celebration of overthrow of, i, 143
 dream of, i, 147
 Arnawáz' advice to, concerning, i, 148
 takes counsel with the archimages, i, 149
 warned by Zirak, i, 149
 seeks for Farídún, i, 150
 slays Abtí, i, 151, 153
 Birmáya, i, 152
 burns Farídún's palace, i, 152, 158
 Káwa and, Story of, 140, i, 154 *seq.*
 Káwa revolts against, i, 156
 Farídún resolves to war with, i, 157
 marches against, i, 159
 capital of, i, 161
 entered by Farídún, i, 161
 talisman of, overthrown by Farídún, i, 161
 sought for in vain by Farídún, i, 162
 minister of, 140, i, 164 *seq.*
 hears from Kundrav of Farídún's doings, i, 165
 goes to fight with Farídún, i, 166
 enters his palace, i, 167
 overthrown by Farídún, i, 168
 Surísh's counsel to Farídún concerning, i, 168, 169
 fettered to Mount Damáwand, i, 169
 future final destruction of, i, 173
 saying of, ii, 171 and *note*

Zahhák, an Aryan myth, ix, 65
 king of Babylon, ix, 65
 an Arab, ix, 65

Zahír, Iránian hero, iv, 148
 commands the Bedouins in
 Kai Khusrau's army, iv,
 148

Zainig/vi, Záinígáv, ii, 81

Zairi-vairi (Zariadres, Zarír, *q.v.*),
 iv, 316; v, 12

Zál (Dástán, Dástán-i-Sám, Dás-tán-i-Zand, Zál-i-zá), son
 of Sám and father of
 Rustum, 141, 142, 153,
 154, 156, 157; i, 145, 235,
 384, 387; ii, 4, 11 *seq.*,
 18, 19, 21, 33 *seq.*, 49, 58,
 61, 62, 69, 77, 140, 168,
 169, 180, 182, 227, 228,
 271, 286, 290, 318, 319,
 338, 362, 371; iii, 8, 17,
 18, 21, 22, 35, 121, 132,
 138, 141, 147, 190, 202,
 221, 245, 269, 274, 279,
 283, 307, 321, 322, 325,
 328, 331, 347, 351, 354,
 355; iv, 13, 147, 222, 251,
 277, 319; v, 11, 14, 15,
 58, 86, 169, 173 *seq.*, 197,
 200, 204, 210, 212, 219
 seq., 231, 240 *seq.*, 246,
 255, 256, 261, 277 *seq.*,
 281, 283, 290; vi, 79;
 viii, 223; ix, 25

various names of, i, 84, 245
 and *note*, 248 and *note*
 born with white hair, i,
 240
 cast away by Sám, i, 241
 found and brought up by
 the Simurgh, i, 242
 seen by a caravan, i,
 242
 informed of his parentage by
 the Simurgh, i, 245
 given a feather by the
 Simurgh, i, 246
 restored to Sám by the
 Simurgh, i, 247
 goes with Sám to court, i,
 249

Zál, horoscope of, taken, i, 251
 made regent of Zábul by
 Sám, i, 253
 progress of, in the arts, i, 255
 makes a progress through
 his realm, i, 256

Rúdába and, story of, i, 257
 seq.
 referred to, iii, 285
 hears of, and falls in love
 with Mihráb's daughter,
 i, 257 *seq.*
 described, i, 260, 268
 sees Rúdába's handmaids,
 i, 263
 interview of, with Rúdába's
 handmaids, i, 266
 invited to visit Rúdába, i,
 267, 269
 goes to Rúdába, i, 270 *seq.*
 plights his troth to Rúdába,
 i, 272
 consults the archimages on
 the matter of Rúdába, i,
 273
 writes to Sám, i, 275
 go-between of, with Rúdába,
 i, 280
 sends Sám's letter to Rú-
 dába, i, 280
 goes to plead his cause with
 Sám, i, 292
 bears a letter of appeal from
 Sám to Minúchihr, i, 295
 well received by Minú-
 chihr i, 306
 astrologer's presage con-
 cerning, i, 307
 questioned by the arch-
 images, i, 308
 answers the archimages, i,
 309
 displays his accomplishment
 before Minúchihr, i, 311
 returns to Sám, i, 316
 goes with Sám to Kábul, i,
 317
 felicitated by Sám, i, 318
 married to Rúdába, i, 318
 and Rúdába go to Sístán, i,
 319

Zál, left regent of Sístán by Sám
i, 319
summons the Símurgh to
succour Rúdába, i, 320
goes with Rustam and Mihráb to meet Sám, i, 324
bids Rustam take Mount
Sipand, i, 329
hears of Rustam's success,
i, 332
bids Rustam destroy the
hold of Mount Sipand, i,
333
informs Sám of Rustam's
exploit, i, 334
buries Sám, i, 358
hears from Mihráb that
Shamásás and Khazarwán are invading Zábulistán, i, 359
goes to the help of Mihráb,
i, 359
shoots arrows into the enemies' camp, i, 359
slays Khazarwán, i, 360
wounds Kulbád, i, 361
puts Shamásás to flight, i,
361
hears of the death of
Naudar, i, 364
fights with Afrásiyáb, i,
368
proposes the election of a
new Sháh, i, 370
reproached by the Iránians, i, 375
reply of, i, 375
bids Rustam prepare for
war, i, 376
gives Sám's mace to Rustam, i, 378
collects horses for Rustam,
i, 378
marches against Afrásiyáb,
i, 381
urges the Iránians to choose
a Sháh, i, 381
sends Rustam to summon
Kai Kubád, i, 382
goes to do homage to Kai
Khusrau, iii, 17

Zál, witnesses Kai Khusrau's
oath to avenge Siyáwush,
iii, 22
son of =Rustam, iii, 132
meets Gív, iii, 321
sayings of, iii, 316, 351
summoned by the Iránians
to remonstrate with Kai
Khusrau, iv, 278
sets out for Irán with Rus-
tam and sages, iv, 279
met on arrival by Gúdarz
and other chiefs, iv, 282
holds converse with the
Iránians, iv, 282
audience of, with Kai Khus-
rau, iv, 283 *seq.*
asks pardon of Kai Khus-
rau, iv, 290
holds, with other chiefs, at
the bidding of Kai Khus-
rau, an assembly on the
plain, iv, 291 *seq.*
Kai Khusrau's gift to, iv,
295
companions of, rewarded by
Kai Khusrau, iv, 297
returns thanks, iv, 298
protests against Luhrásp's
succession, iv, 301
acknowledges Luhrásp as
Sháh, iv, 302
sets out with Kai Khusrau
on his pilgrimage, iv,
306
turns back at the bidding of
Kai Khusrau, iv, 307
laments the loss of the pala-
dins and returns to Irán,
iv, 310
promises fealty to Luhrásp,
iv, 311
Rustum and, welcome Gush-
tásپ to Sístán, v, 85
hears of Bahman's ap-
proach, v, 182
interview of, with Bahman,
v, 183
give Bahman a guide to
conduct him to Rustam,
v, 184

Zál, Rúdába and, bidden by Rustam to prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190
 Rustam recounts his interview with Asfandiyár to, v, 196
 Rustam and, vilified by Asfandiyár, v, 201
 receives a message from Rustam by Zawára, v, 230
 grieves over Rustam's wounds, v, 234
 summons the Símurgh to Rustam's aid, v, 235
 goes to Rustam and Asfandiyár, v, 247
 forebodes Rustam's future, v, 247
 father of Shaghád, v, 260, 263
 sends Shaghád to be brought up at Kából, v, 264
 laments for Rustam, v, 273
 sends Farámarz against Kából, v, 274
 bids Rúdába to cease to mourn for Rustam, v, 278
 receives and replies to Bahman's hostile message, v, 285
 goes to meet Bahman, v, 286
 palace of, sacked, v, 286
 Bishútán intercedes for, v, 288
 released and returns to his palace, v, 289
 Zál-i-zar (Zál, *q.v.*), i, 84, 248 and *note*
 Zam (now Karkhí), town on the left bank of the Oxus between Ámwi (Charjui) and Tirmid, where, there was a crossing-place, ii, 394, 395; iv, 65, 157; vii, 359
 = Oxus, ii, 97
 Zámyád, Yasht, i, 338
 Zamzam, iv, 258 *note*

Zand, comment, i, 65
 Zandavasta, i, 116, 129, 144, 171 seq., 231, 337, 338, 369; ii, 8, 25 seq., 81, 118, 189, 190; iii, 8; iv, 151, 228, 253, 259, 308; v, 11 seq., 30, 36, 41, 43, 51, 82, 85, 100, 173, 176, 216, 241, 294, 299, 309; vi, 17, 55, 226, 252, 343, 356; vii, 200, 207, 283, 302; viii, 96, 246, 283, 312
 traditional origin of, i, 61
 discussed, i, 62
 language of, i, 63 seq.
 meaning of, i, 65
 origin of chief characters in, i, 65
 diffusion of traditions in, i, 65
 extant portions of, i, 70
note
 quoted, i, 99, 130, 141, 142, 172, 235, 369; viii, 218, 240
 sent by Gushtásp to every clime, v, 77
 burnt by the Turkmans at Balkh, v, 92
 passage from, metrically paraphrased, vii, 318
 Zanga, Iránian hero, 145, 157, ii, 73, 90, 228, 249, 271, 318; iii, 20, 34, 43, 45, 48, 67, 92, 115, 350; iv, 13, 15, 24, 105, 147
 takes part in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 107 seq.
 accompanies Siyáwush against Afrásiyáb, ii, 226
 sent on an embassy to Afrásiyáb, ii, 250 seq.
 goes with Rustam to rescue Bízhan, iii, 334
 opposes Farshidward, iv, 83
 chosen to fight Akhást, iv, 97
 slays Akhást, iv, 106

Zanga, Kai Khusrau remonstrated with by, and other nobles, for refusing audience, iv, 275

Zangúla or Zangula, Túráanian hero, 151, iv, 26 chosen to fight with Furúhil, iv, 97 slain by Furúhil, iv, 101

Zarang, former capital of Sístán, situated some twenty miles from the north-eastern shores of Lake Zirih, i, 4

Zarár, vi, 200

Zarasp, son of Minúchihr, i, 248; iv, 147 (?)¹ kindred of, go to the temple of Ázargashasp, iv, 270 go to meet Zál and Rustam, iv, 282 go with Zarír to Rúm, iv, 360

Zarásp or Zarasp, son of Tús, 147, iii, 24, 54, 57, 59, 60, 67, 72, 113, 114; iv, 135 goes against Farúd, iii, 53 referred to, iii, 55; iv, 149 burial of, iii, 68

Zarasp, treasurer of Kai Khusrau, iv, 269 makes gifts to Ázargashasp, iv, 269

Zarasp, Iranian hero, iv, 180, 301

Zarathustra, Zarathushtra. See Zarduhsh.

Zarduhsh (Zarathushtra, Zoroaster), prophet, law-giver, and evangelist of ancient Irán, 155, i, 53, 116, 235, 236; ii, 8, 9; iv, 272; v, 9 seq., 23 seq., 27, 28, 42, 51, 77, 173, 206, 216, 217, 241, 255; vi, 55, 252, 328; vii, 9, 207, 264, 318; viii, 67, 213, 308

Zandavasta revealed to, i, 61 title of a line of priest-princes, i, 61

Zarduhsh, account of, i, 62 meaning of, v, 13 legend of, v, 14 seq. converts Gushtásp, v, 18, 33 success of evangl of, v, 34 plants the Cypress of Kishmar, v, 27, 34 advises Gushtásp not to pay tribute to Arjásp, v, 35 referred to, v, 36, 38, 41 slain at Balkh, v, 92, 93 amulet given to Asfandiýár by, v, 130 religion of, under the Sásáanian empire, vi, 251 girdle of, v, 16; vi, 332 note. Fire-fane of, vii, 139 high priest of, converts Sapínud, vii, 139 saying of, viii, 218, 240

Zarduhsh, high priest, 170, viii, 81 visits Izid Gashasp in prison, viii, 82 visit of, reported to Hurmuzd, viii, 83 poisoned by Hurmuzd, viii, 83 seq.

Zariadres (Zairi-vairi, Zarír, q.v.), v, 26 legend of, iv, 314 seq.

Zarír (Zariadres, Zairi-vairi), brother of Sháh Gushtásp, 154, 155, i, 42; ii, 3; iv, 315, 316, 318, 347; v, 12, 13, 24 seq., 37, 41 seq., 49 seq., 60 seq., 73, 94, 109, 169, 181, 193, 254, 261 sent by Luhrásp in pursuit of Gushtásp, iv, 320 charger of, iv, 321 returns with Gushtásp, iv, 322 consulted by Luhrásp, iv, 323, 358 advises Luhrásp, iv, 358 goes with other chiefs on a mission to Rúm, iv, 359 reaches Halab, iv, 360

¹ It is not clear which Zarasp is intended,

- Zarír entrusts the host to Bahrám, iv, 360
 goes to Cæsar's court, iv, 360
 audience with Cæsar of, and recognition of Gushtásp by, iv, 360
 gives Luhrásپ's answer to Cæsar, iv, 361
 visited in his camp by Gush-tásp, iv, 361
 informs Gushtásp of Luh-rásپ's abdication in his favour, iv, 362
 Love-story of, v, 26, 27
 Death-story of v, 26, 27
 converted by Zarduhsh, v, 33
 answers, in conjunction with Asfandiyár and Jámásp, Arjásپ's letter, v, 42
 death of, foretold by Jámásp, v, 51
 receives the standard and the command of the centre from Gushtásp, v, 55
 prowess of, v, 61 *seq.*
 slain by Bídirafsh, v, 63
- Zarfr-náma, v, 26, 27
 Zark, town south-east of Marv, ix, 98
 canal of, ix, 98
 corpse of Yazdagird flung into, ix, 109
 recovered from, ix, 109
 ford and toll-house of, ix, 100 and *note*
 chief of, ix, 100
 hears from miller about Yazdagird, ix, 109
- Zarmihr. *See* Rizmihr.
- Zarnúsh, city in Khúzistán, vi, 35
- Zartusht - Bahrám Pazdhu, author of the Zartusht-náma, v, 18
- Zartusht-náma, poem, v, 18
- Zav, Sháh, 142, 143; i, 90, 91, 381; ii, 11, 36; iv, 283
 Reign of, 142, i, 369 *seq.*
 Note on, i, 369
 mentioned in the Zanda-vasta, i, 369
- Zav, accession of, i, 370
 drought and famine in the time of, i, 371
 concludes peace with the Turkmans, i, 371
 dies, i, 372
- Zawára, brother of Rustam, 146, 157, ii, 4, 96, 228, 347, 349; iii, 30, 202, 325, 328; iv, 24, 34; v, 173, 174, 182 *seq.*, 187, 191, 231, 260, 261
 engaged in the Fight of the Seven Warriors, ii, 110 *seq.*
 worsted by Alkús, ii, 115
 rescued by Rustam, ii, 115
 made leader of Rustam's host, ii, 142
 left in charge of Rustam's host, ii, 161
 goes on embassy to Húmán, ii, 176
 safe-conducts Húmán from Irán, ii, 176, 181, 182
 incites Rustam to avenge Siyáwush, ii, 360
 given a command, iv, 149
 goes with Rustam to the right wing, iv, 180
 referred to, v, 186, 228, 261
- Farámarz and, sent by Rustam to bid Zál and Rúdába prepare to receive Asfandiyár, v, 190
 brings Rustam's armour, v, 218
 put in charge of the troops, v, 222
 goes with Rustam to the Hírmund, v, 222
 Rustam's instructions to, v, 222
 provokes the Iránians to combat, v, 225
 slays Núsh Ázar, v, 227
 goes in quest of Rustam, v, 230
 takes from Rustam a message for Zál, v, 230

- Zawára, grieves over Rustam's wounds, v, 234
- goes to Rustam and Asfan-diyár, v, 247
- warns Rustam against Bahman, v, 250
- Rustam and, with small escort, go to Kábul, v, 268
- goes hunting with Rustam, v, 270
- falls a victim to treachery, v, 270, 273
- death of, v, 273
- body of, taken from the pit by Farámarz, and buried v, 275
- Zend, language, i, 64
- improper use of term, i, 64
- Zeus, Babylonian, vi, 22
- oracle of, consulted, vi, 22
- Zhanda Razm, maternal uncle of Suhráb, i, 44, ii, 149, 151
- accompanies Suhráb to Irán, ii, 150
- death of, ii, 150
- referred to, ii, 160
- Zhangwí, Turkman noble, viii, 331
- Zíb-i-Khusrau (Rúmiya, *q.v.*), city, 167, vii, 259
- Zijának, daughter of Ardawán, *q.v.*, 161, vi, 255
- Story of, in Kárnáma, vi, 255
- Tabarí, vi, 255
- Sháhnáma, vi, 259 *seq.*
- Zinígáv, ii, 81
- Zira, father of Gurwí, 152, ii, 295, 314; iii, 120, 197, 199; iv, 97, 99, 127, 219; v, 272
- Zirak, an archimage, i, 150
- warns Zahhák, i, 149
- Zirih, sea or lake, i, 4; ii, 80; iv, 136
- the Lake of Sístán, i, iv; ii, 80
- Zirih, son of Sháh Píruz, vii, 170
- Zodiac, viii, 394
- Zoroaster. *See* Zarduhsh.
- Zoroastrian, Zoroastrians, v, 17; vi, 206, 251, 328
- Zoroastrian, cosmogony, i, 5
- view of Buddhism as idolatrous, i, 16
- conception of destiny, i, 52
- propaganda, i, 58 *seq.*
- triad of evil, i, 59 and *note*
- scriptures. *See* Zandavasta.
- calendar, i, 88
- adopted by Darius Hys-taspis, i, 59
- Zoroastrianism, i, 49; vi, 15, 196, 251, 252, 327, 328; vii, 188, 317
- conceptions of, i, 5, 51, 52
- original seat of, i, 56 *seq.*, 62
- becomes the state religion, i, 59
- declines after Alexander's conquest, i, 60
- scriptures of, *See* Zanda-vasta.
- under the Parthians, i, 60, 63
- revival of, i, 63
- based on nature-worship, i, 116
- existed before Zoroaster, i, 116
- under the Sásánian empire, vi, 251
- millenia of, vi, 252
- Zú'l Aktáf, title of Shápúr, son of Urmuzd, 162, vi, 323
- meaning of, vi, 323
- Zú'l-fakar, ii, 337 and *note*
- Zú'l-karnain (Sikandar, Alexander the Great), vi, 51
- legend of, in Kurán, vi, 78, 84
- barrier of, vi, 78
- site of, vi, 79
- Zú'r. *See* Gúr.
- Zú'rán, Núshírwán's chamberlain, 168
- envies Mahbúd, vii, 319
- plots with a Jew against Mahbúd, vii, 320 *seq.*
- makes confession to Núshírwán, vii, 324

